Third Edition

Shallow Foundations

Bearing Capacity and Settlement

Braja M. Das

CRC Press
Taylor & Francis Group

Shallow Foundations

Bearing Capacity and Settlement

Third Edition

Shallow Foundations

Bearing Capacity and Settlement

Third Edition

Braja M. Das

CRC Press
Taylor & Francis Group
Boca Raton London New York

CRC Press is an imprint of the
Taylor & Francis Group, an **informa** business

CRC Press
Taylor & Francis Group
6000 Broken Sound Parkway NW, Suite 300
Boca Raton, FL 33487-2742

Printed on acid-free paper

International Standard Book Number-13: 978-1-4987-3117-1 (Hardback)

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Names: Das, Braja M., 1941- author.
Title: Shallow foundations : bearing capacity and settlement / Braja M. Das.
Description: Third edition. | Boca Raton : CRC Press, 2017.
Identifiers: LCCN 2016034462 | ISBN 9781498731171 (978-1-4987-3118-8)
Subjects: LCSH: Foundations. | Settlement of structures. | Soil mechanics.
Classification: LCC TA775 .D2275 2017 | DDC 624.1/5--dc23
LC record available at https://lccn.loc.gov/2016034462

Visit the Taylor & Francis Web site at
http://www.taylorandfrancis.com

and the CRC Press Web site at
http://www.crcpress.com

To our granddaughter, Elizabeth Madison

Contents

Preface

Shallow Foundations: Bearing Capacity and Settlement was originally published with a 1999 copyright and was intended for use as a reference book by university faculty members and graduate students in geotechnical engineering as well as by consulting engineers. The revised second edition of the book was published with a 2009 copyright. During the last 17 years, the text has served intended readers well. More recently there have been several requests to update the material and prepare a new edition. This third edition of the text has been developed in response to those requests.

The text is divided into eight chapters. Chapter 1 is a general introduction to shallow foundations. Chapters 2, 3, and 4 present various theories developed during the past 70 years for estimating the ultimate bearing capacity of shallow foundations under various types of loading and subsoil conditions. Chapter 5 discusses the principles for estimating the settlement of foundations—both elastic and consolidation. Chapter 6 relates to the dynamic bearing capacity and associated settlement. Also included in this chapter are some details regarding the permanent foundation settlement due to cyclic and transient loading derived from experimental observations obtained from laboratory and field tests. During the past 35 years, steady progress has been made to evaluate the possibility of using reinforcement in granular soil to increase the ultimate and allowable bearing capacities of shallow foundation and also to reduce their settlement under various types of loading conditions. The reinforcement materials include galvanized steel strips and geogrid. Chapter 7 presents the state-of-the-art on this subject. Shallow foundations (such as transmission tower foundations) are on some occasions subjected to uplifting forces. The theories relating to the estimations of the ultimate uplift capacity of shallow foundations in granular and clay soils are presented in Chapter 8.

Additional materials included in this edition are briefly summarized below:

- Each chapter includes a number of new example problems.
- Chapter 1 now has an expanded discussion on settlement of foundations on granular soil. This is primarily based on the laboratory study of DeBeer (1967).
- Results of recent studies on the variation of bearing capacity factors N_c and N_q using Kötter's equation coupled with limit equilibrium conditions are added in Chapter 2. In addition, early works of Meyerhof (1955) on the effect of the location of ground water table on ultimate bearing capacity of shallow foundations are summarized in this chapter.
- Recently developed empirical relationships for the ultimate bearing capacity of eccentrically obliquely loaded foundation on granular soil are presented in Chapter 3.
- General description and parameters of stone columns constructed in weak clay to improve bearing capacity of shallow foundations are provided in

Chapter 4. This chapter also has a new section on the ultimate bearing capacity of wedge-shaped foundations.

- Chapter 5 now has a more detailed discussion about the strain influence factor for solution of elastic settlement of foundation on granular soil. A new section describing the L_1–L_2 method for elastic settlement estimation in granular soils has been added. Some discussion of elastic settlement in granular soil considering the variation of soil modulus of elasticity with strain is also added in this chapter. A brief overview of the additional settlement occurring in granular soil due to rise of ground water has also been included in this chapter.
- In Chapter 6, solutions for the ultimate bearing capacity of shallow foundations under earthquake loading as developed by Budhu and al-Karin (1993) and Choudhury and Subba Rao (2005) have been introduced. Also added in this chapter is a new section on strip foundations at the edge of a granular slope subjected to earthquake loading.
- Chapter 7 now includes recently developed reduction factor methods for the ultimate bearing capacity of (a) strip foundation subjected to centric inclined load, and (b) eccentrically loaded rectangular foundation supported by geogrid-reinforced sand.
- A new section describing the procedure to estimate the ultimate uplift capacity of shallow foundations on multi-helix anchors has been added to Chapter 8.

I am grateful to my wife, Janice Das, for her help in typing the new material in the text and in preparing the new figures.

Braja M. Das
Henderson, Nevada

Author

Braja M. Das earned a PhD in geotechnical engineering at the University of Wisconsin, Madison, USA. In 2006, after serving 12 years as dean of the College of Engineering and Computer Science at California State University, Sacramento, Professor Das retired and now lives in the Las Vegas, Nevada area.

A fellow and life member in the American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE), Professor Das served on the ASCE's Shallow Foundations Committee, Deep Foundations Committee, and Grouting Committee. He was also a member of the ASCE's editorial board for the *Journal of Geotechnical Engineering.* From 2000 to 2006, he was the coeditor of *Geotechnical and Geological Engineering—An International Journal* published by Springer in the Netherlands. Now an emeritus member of the Committee of Chemical and Mechanical Stabilization of the Transportation Research Board of the National Research Council of the United States, he served as committee chair from 1995 to 2001. He is also a life member of the American Society for Engineering Education. He is now the editor-in-chief of the new journal—the *International Journal of Geotechnical Engineering*—published by Taylor & Francis (UK). The first issue of the journal was released in October 2007.

Dr. Das has received numerous awards for teaching excellence. He is the author of several geotechnical engineering text and reference books and has authored numerous technical papers in the area of geotechnical engineering. His primary areas of research include shallow foundations, earth anchors, and geosynthetics.

1 Introduction

1.1 SHALLOW FOUNDATIONS: GENERAL

The lowest part of a structure that transmits its weight to the underlying soil or rock is the foundation. Foundations can be classified into two major categories—*shallow foundations* and *deep foundations*. Individual footings (Figure 1.1), square or rectangular in plan, that support columns and strip footings that support walls and other similar structures are generally referred to as shallow foundations. *Mat foundations*, also considered shallow foundations, are reinforced concrete slabs of considerable structural rigidity that support a number of columns and wall loads. Several types of mat foundations are currently used. Some of the common types are shown schematically in Figure 1.2 and include

1. Flat plate (Figure 1.2a). The mat is of uniform thickness
2. Flat plate thickened under columns (Figure 1.2b)
3. Beams and slab (Figure 1.2c). The beams run both ways, and the columns are located at the intersections of the beams
4. Flat plates with pedestals (Figure 1.2d)
5. Slabs with basement walls as a part of the mat (Figure 1.2e). The walls act as stiffeners for the mat

When the soil located immediately below a given structure is weak, the load of the structure may be transmitted to a greater depth by *piles* and *drilled shafts*, which are considered *deep foundations*. This book is a compilation of the theoretical and experimental evaluations presently available in the literature as they relate to the load-bearing capacity and settlement of shallow foundations.

The shallow foundation shown in Figure 1.1 has a width B and a length L. The depth of embedment below the ground surface is equal to D_f. Theoretically, when B/L is equal to zero (i.e., $L = \infty$), a plane strain case will exist in the soil mass supporting the foundation. For most practical cases, when $B/L \leq 1/5$ to $1/6$, the plane strain theories will yield fairly good results. Terzaghi[1] defined a shallow foundation as one in which the depth D_f is less than or equal to the width B ($D_f/B \leq 1$). However, research studies conducted since then have shown that D_f/B can be as large as 3–4 for shallow foundations.

1.2 TYPES OF FAILURE IN SOIL AT ULTIMATE LOAD

Figure 1.3 shows a shallow foundation of width B located at a depth of D_f below the ground surface and supported by dense sand (or stiff, clayey soil). If this foundation is subjected to a load Q that is gradually increased, the load per unit area, $q = Q/A$

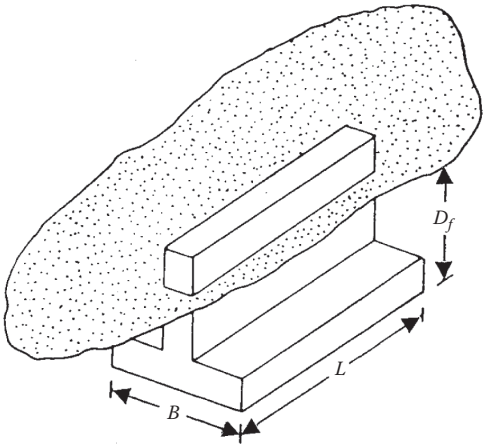


FIGURE 1.1 Individual footing.

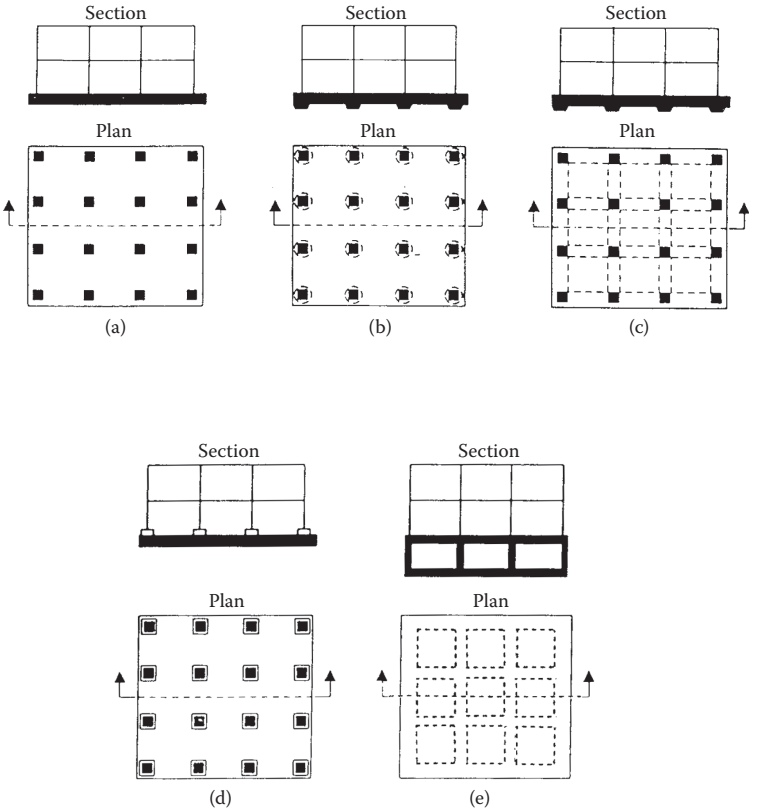


FIGURE 1.2 Various types of mat foundations: (a) flat plate; (b) flat plate thickened under columns; (c) beams and slab; (d) flat plate with pedestals; (e) slabs with basement walls.

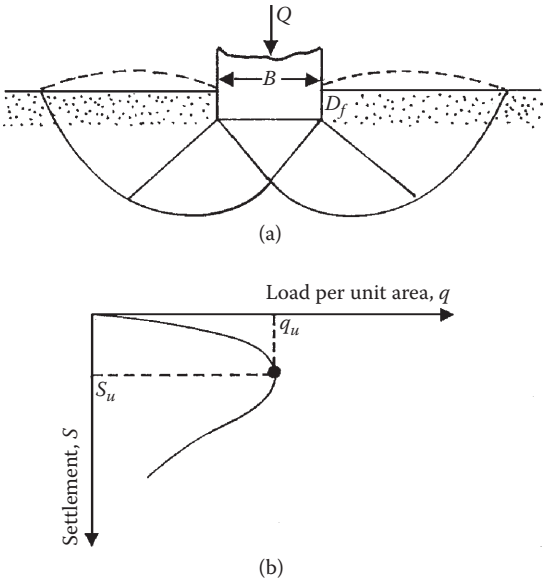


FIGURE 1.3 General shear failure in soil: (a) nature of failure surface in soil; (b) plot of load per unit area versus settlement.

(A = area of the foundation), will increase and the foundation will undergo increased settlement. When q becomes equal to q_u at foundation settlement $S = S_u$, the soil supporting the foundation undergoes sudden shear failure. The failure surface in the soil is shown in Figure 1.3a, and the q versus S plot is shown in Figure 1.3b. This type of failure is called a *general shear failure*, and q_u is the *ultimate bearing capacity*. Note that, in this type of failure, a peak value of $q = q_u$ is clearly defined in the load-settlement curve.

If the foundation shown in Figure 1.3a is supported by a medium dense sand or clayey soil of medium consistency (Figure 1.4a), the plot of q versus S will be as shown in Figure 1.4b. Note that the magnitude of q increases with settlement up to $q = q'_u$, and this is usually referred to as the *first failure load*.[2] At this time, the developed failure surface in the soil will be as shown by the solid lines in Figure 1.4a. If the load on the foundation is further increased, the load-settlement curve becomes steeper and more erratic with the gradual outward and upward progress of the failure surface in the soil (shown by the jagged line in Figure 1.4b) under the foundation. When q becomes equal to q_u (ultimate bearing capacity), the failure surface reaches the ground surface. Beyond that, the plot of q versus S takes almost a linear shape, and a peak load is never observed. This type of bearing capacity failure is called a *local shear failure*.

Figure 1.5a shows the same foundation located on a loose sand or soft clayey soil. For this case, the load-settlement curve will be like that shown in Figure 1.5b. A peak value of load per unit area q is never observed. The ultimate bearing capacity q_u is defined as the point where $\Delta S/\Delta q$ becomes the largest and remains almost constant

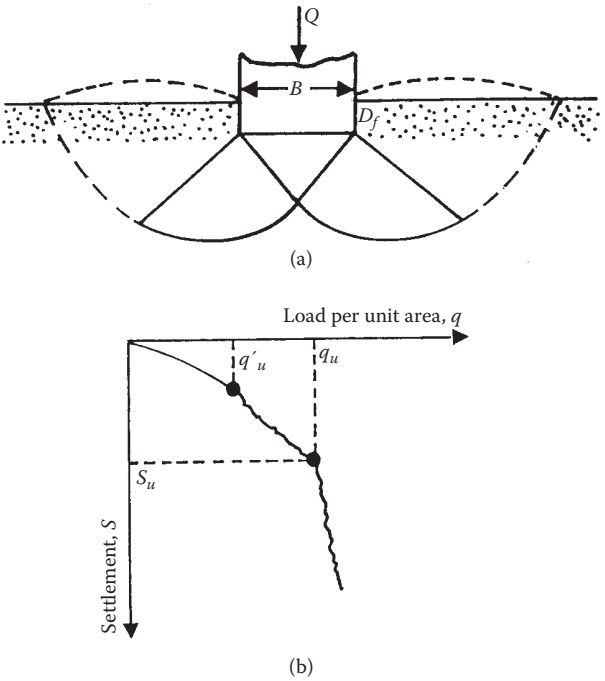


FIGURE 1.4 Local shear failure in soil: (a) nature of failure surface in soil; (b) plot of load per unit area versus settlement.

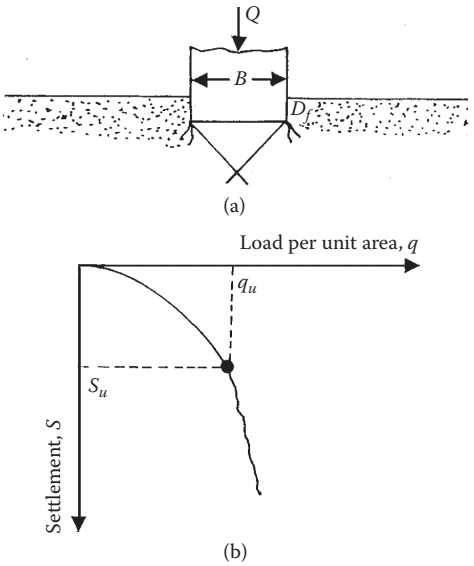


FIGURE 1.5 Punching shear failure in soil: (a) nature of failure surface in soil; (b) plot of load per unit area versus settlement.

thereafter. This type of failure in soil is called a *punching shear failure*. In this case the failure surface never extends up to the ground surface. In some cases of punching shear failure, it may be difficult to determine the ultimate load per unit area q_u from the q versus S plot shown in Figure 1.5. DeBeer[3] recommended a very consistent ultimate load criteria in which a plot of log $q/\gamma B$ versus log S/B is prepared (γ = unit weight of soil). The ultimate load is defined as the point of break in the log–log plot as shown in Figure 1.6.

The nature of failure in soil at ultimate load is a function of several factors such as the strength and the relative compressibility of the soil, the depth of the foundation (D_f) in relation to the foundation width B, and the width-to-length ratio (B/L) of the foundation. This was clearly explained by Vesic,[2] who conducted extensive laboratory model tests in sand. The summary of Vesic's findings is shown in a slightly different form in Figure 1.7. In this figure D_r is the relative density of sand, and the hydraulic radius R of the foundation is defined as

$$R = \frac{A}{P} \tag{1.1}$$

where

A = area of the foundation = BL

P = perimeter of the foundation = $2(B+L)$

Thus,

$$R = \frac{BL}{2(B+L)} \tag{1.2}$$

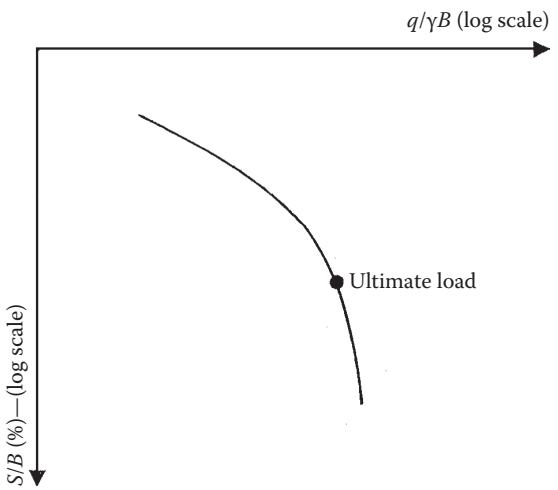


FIGURE 1.6 Nature of variation of $q/\gamma B$ with S/B in a log–log plot.

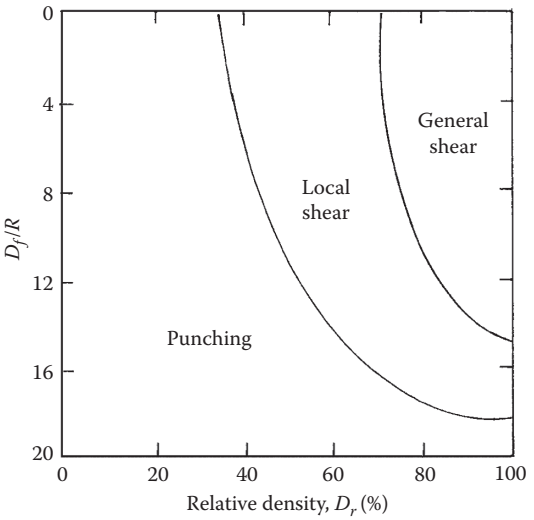


FIGURE 1.7 Nature of failure in soil with relative density of sand D_r and D_f/R.

The relative density is defined as

$$D_r(\%) = \frac{e_{\max} - e}{e_{\max} - e_{\min}} \tag{1.3}$$

where

$e_{\max}$ = maximum void ratio of sand
$e_{\min}$ = minimum void ratio of sand
e = void ratio during the test

for a square foundation $B = L$. So,

$$R = \frac{B}{4} \tag{1.4}$$

From Figure 1.7 it can be seen that when $D_f/R \geq$ about 18, punching shear failure occurs in all cases irrespective of the relative density of compaction of sand.

1.3 SETTLEMENT AT ULTIMATE LOAD

The settlement of the foundation at ultimate load S_u is quite variable and depends on several factors. A general sense can be derived from the laboratory model test results in *sand* for surface foundations ($D_f/B = 0$) provided by Vesic[4] and which are presented in Figure 1.8. From this figure it can be seen that, for any given foundation, a decrease in the relative density of sand results in an increase in the settlement at ultimate load. Also, for any given relative density of sand, the ultimate load per unit area of a rectangular foundation with $L/B = 6$ (which may be considered a strip or continuous

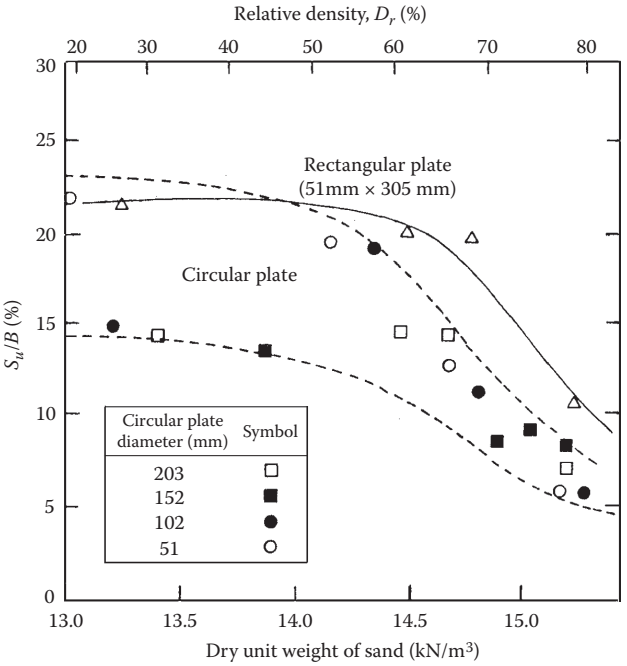


FIGURE 1.8 Variation of S_u/B for surface foundation ($D_f/B = 0$) on sand. (From Vesic, A. S. 1963. Bearing capacity of deep foundations in sand. *Highway Res. Rec.*, National Research Council, Washington, DC, 39: 112.)

foundation) occurs at S_u/B which is about 60%–70% more compared to a circular foundation. DeBeer[3] provided laboratory test results of circular surface foundations (with diameters, B, of 38 mm, 90 mm, and 150 mm) and rectangular foundations (having dimensions, $B \times L$, of 38 mm × 228 mm, 49 mm × 297 mm, and 76 mm × 450 mm) on sand at various relative densities, D_r, of compaction. These results of these tests are summarized in Figure 1.9 as a plot of $\gamma B^*/p_a$ versus S_u/B (*Note*: p_a = atmospheric pressure ≈ 100 kN/m²; S_u = settlement at ultimate load). The term B^* is defined as

$$B^* = \frac{2BL}{B+L} \tag{1.5}$$

Table 1.1 gives the variation of B^* with L/B.

Hence, it can be seen from Figure 1.9 that, for granular soils, the settlement at ultimate load S_u increases with the width of the foundation.

Patra, Behera, Sivakugan, and Das[5] approximated the plots for *circular and square foundations* ($B^* = B$) in Figure 1.9 as

$$\frac{S_u}{B}(\%) = 30e^{-0.9D_r} + 1.67\ln\left(\frac{\gamma B^*}{p_a}\right) - 1 \quad \left(\text{for } \frac{\gamma B^*}{p_a} \le 0.025\right) \tag{1.6}$$

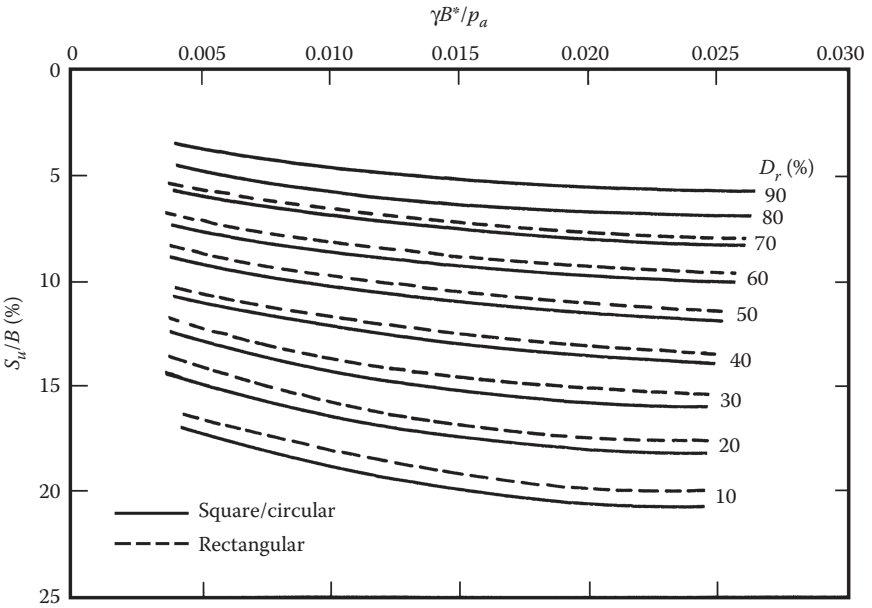


FIGURE 1.9 DeBeer's laboratory test results on circular and rectangular surface foundations on sand—variation of S_u/B versus $\gamma B^*/p_a$.

TABLE 1.1
Variation of *B with *L/B***

L/B	*B**
1	B
2	$1.33B$
3	$1.5B$
4	$1.6B$
5	$1.67B$
6 ≈ strip	$1.71B$
Circle	B = diameter

and

$$\frac{S_u}{B}(\%) = 30e^{-0.9D_r} - 7.16 \quad \left(\text{for } \frac{\gamma B^*}{p_a} > 0.025\right) \tag{1.7}$$

where D_r is expressed as a fraction.

Figure 1.10 shows the comparison of Equation 1.6 with plots for square and circular foundations shown in Figure 1.9. Therefore, in the opinion of the author,

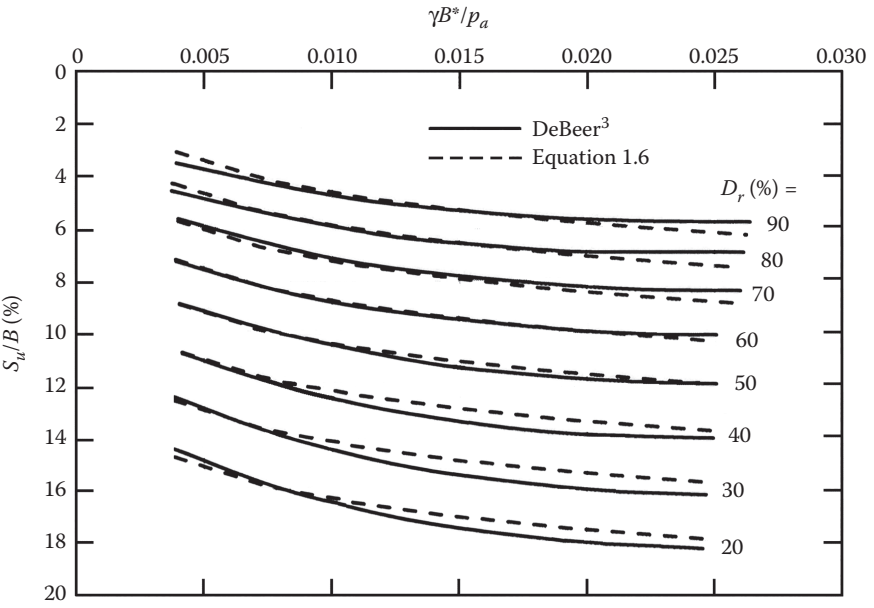


FIGURE 1.10 Comparison of Equation 1.6 with the experimental results shown in Figure 1.9 for square and circular surface foundations.

TABLE 1.2
Approximate Ranges of S_u

Soil	$\frac{D_f}{B}$	$\frac{S_u}{B}$ (%)
Sand	0	5–12
Sand	Large	25–28
Clay	0	4–8
Clay	Large	15–20

Equations 1.6 and 1.7 can also be used to estimate the *approximate* settlement at ultimate load.

Based on laboratory and field test results, the approximate ranges of values of S_u in various types of soil are given in Table 1.2.

EXAMPLE 1.1

Consider a foundation with $B = 1$ m and $L = 2$ m supported by a sand layer with $D_r = 70\%$. Estimate the settlement at ultimate load. Given: unit weight of sand, γ, to be 17 kN/m^3.

Solution

Given:

$B = 1$ m,
$L = 2$ m
$L/B = 2/1 = 2$

From Table 1.1 for $L/B = 2$, the value of B^* is $1.33B$.

$$\frac{\gamma B^*}{p_a} = \frac{(17)(1.33 \times 1)}{199} = 0.226$$

From Equation 1.7

$$\frac{S_u}{B}(\%) = 30e^{-0.9D_r} - 7.16 \ = 30e^{-(0.9 \times 0.7)} - 7.16 = 8.82\%$$

$$S_u(\%) \approx \left(\frac{8.82}{100}\right)(1000 \text{ mm}) = \mathbf{88.2\ mm}$$

1.4 ULTIMATE AND ALLOWABLE BEARING CAPACITIES

For a given foundation to perform to its optimum capacity, one must ensure that the load per unit area of the foundation does not exceed a limiting value, thereby causing shear failure in soil. This limiting value is the ultimate bearing capacity q_u. Considering the ultimate bearing capacity and the uncertainties involved in evaluating the shear strength parameters of the soil, the allowable bearing capacity q_{all} can be obtained as

$$q_{\text{all}} = \frac{q_u}{FS} \tag{1.8}$$

A factor of safety of three to four is generally used. However, based on limiting settlement conditions, there are other factors that must be taken into account in deriving the allowable bearing capacity. The total settlement S_t of a foundation will be the sum of the following:

1. Elastic, or immediate, settlement S_e (described in Section 1.3) and
2. Primary and secondary consolidation settlement S_c of a clay layer (located below the groundwater level) if located at a reasonably small depth below the foundation

Most building codes provide an allowable settlement limit for a foundation, which may be well below the settlement derived corresponding to q_{all} given by Equation 1.8. Thus, the bearing capacity corresponding to the allowable settlement must also be taken into consideration.

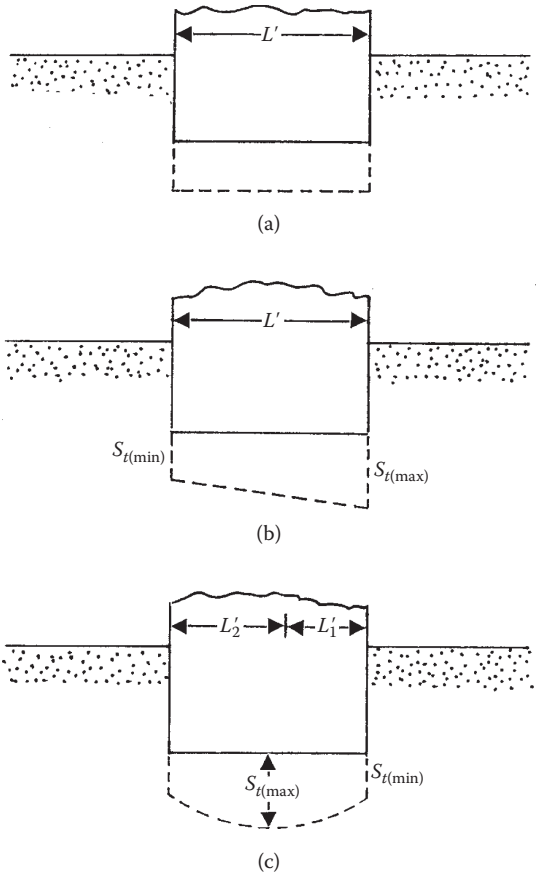


FIGURE 1.11 Settlement of a structure. (a) Uniform settlement; (b) uniform tilt; (c) nonuniform settlement.

A given structure with several shallow foundations may undergo uniform settlement (Figure 1.11a). This occurs when a structure is built over a very rigid structural mat. However, depending on the loads on various foundation components, a structure may experience *differential settlement*. A foundation may undergo uniform tilt (Figure 1.11b) or nonuniform settlement (Figure 1.11c). In these cases, the angular distortion Δ can be defined as

$$\Delta = \frac{S_{t(\max)} - S_{t(\min)}}{L'} \quad \text{(for uniform tilt)} \tag{1.9}$$

and

$$\Delta = \frac{S_{t(\max)} - S_{t(\min)}}{L_1'} \quad \text{(for nonuniform tilt)} \tag{1.10}$$

Limits for allowable differential settlements of various structures are also available in building codes. Thus, the final decision on the allowable bearing capacity of a foundation will depend on (a) the ultimate bearing capacity, (b) the allowable settlement, and (c) the allowable differential settlement for the structure.

REFERENCES

1. Terzaghi, K. 1943. *Theoretical Soil Mechanics*. New York: Wiley.
2. Vesic, A. S. 1973. Analysis of ultimate loads on shallow foundations. *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div.,* 99(1): 45.
3. DeBeer, E. E. 1967. Proefondervindelijke bijdrage tot de studie van het gransdraagvermogen van zand onder funderingen op staal, Bepaling von der vormfactor s_b. *Annales des Travaux Publics de Belgique*, 6: 481.
4. Vesic, A. S. 1963. Bearing capacity of deep foundations in sand. *Highway Res. Rec.*, National Research Council, Washington, DC, 39: 112.
5. Patra, C. R., R. N. Behera, N. Sivakugan, and B. M. Das. 2013. Estimation of average settlement of shallow strip foundation on granular soil under eccentric loading. *Int. J. Geotech. Eng.*, 7(2): 218.

2 Ultimate Bearing Capacity Theories
Centric Vertical Loading

2.1 INTRODUCTION

Over the last 70 years, several bearing capacity theories for estimating the ultimate bearing capacity of shallow foundations have been proposed. This chapter summarizes some of the important works developed so far. The cases considered in this chapter assume that the soil supporting the foundation extends to a great depth and also that the foundation is subjected to centric vertical loading. The variation of the ultimate bearing capacity in anisotropic soils is also considered.

2.2 TERZAGHI'S BEARING CAPACITY THEORY

In 1943 Terzaghi[1] proposed a well-conceived theory to determine the ultimate bearing capacity of a shallow, rough, rigid, *continuous* (strip) foundation supported by a homogeneous soil layer extending to a great depth. Terzaghi defined a shallow foundation as a foundation where the width B is equal to or less than its depth D_f. The failure surface in soil at ultimate load (that is, q_u per unit area of the foundation) assumed by Terzaghi is shown in Figure 2.1. Referring to Figure 2.1, the failure area in the soil under the foundation can be divided into three major zones:

1. Zone *abc*. This is a triangular *elastic* zone located immediately below the bottom of the foundation. The inclination of sides *ac* and *bc* of the wedge with the horizontal is $\alpha = \phi$ (soil friction angle).
2. Zone *bcf*. This zone is the Prandtl's radial shear zone.
3. Zone *bfg*. This zone is the *Rankine passive zone*. The *slip lines* in this zone make angles of $\pm(45 - \phi/2)$ with the horizontal.

Note that a Prandtl's radial shear zone and a Rankine passive zone are also located to the left of the elastic triangular zone *abc*; however, they are not shown in Figure 2.1.

Line *cf* is an arc of a *log spiral* and is defined by the equation

$$r = r_0 e^{\theta \tan \phi} \tag{2.1}$$

Lines *bf* and *fg* are straight lines. Line *fg* actually extends up to the ground surface. Terzaghi assumed that the soil located above the bottom of the foundation could be replaced by a surcharge $q = \gamma D_f$.

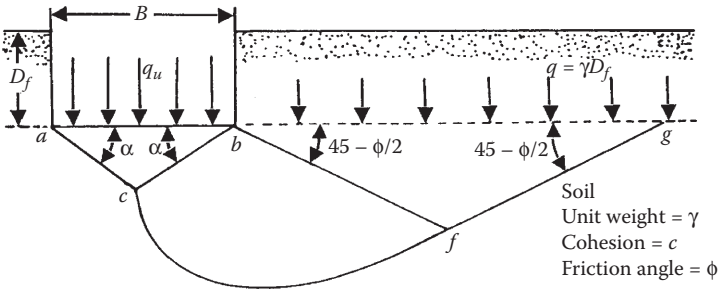


FIGURE 2.1 Failure surface in soil at ultimate load for a continuous rough rigid foundation as assumed by Terzaghi.

The shear strength of the soil can be given as

$$s = \sigma' \tan \phi + c \tag{2.2}$$

where

σ' = effective normal stress
c = cohesion

The ultimate bearing capacity q_u of the foundation can be determined if we consider faces *ac* and *bc* of the triangular wedge *abc* and obtain the passive force on each face required to cause failure. Note that the passive force P_p will be a function of the surcharge $q = \gamma D_f$, cohesion c, unit weight γ, and angle of friction of the soil ϕ. So, referring to Figure 2.2, the passive force P_p on the face *bc* per unit length of the foundation at a right angle to the cross section is

$$P_p = P_{pq} + P_{pc} + P_{p\gamma} \tag{2.3}$$

where

P_{pq}, P_{pc}, and $P_{p\gamma}$ = passive force contributions of q, c, and γ, respectively

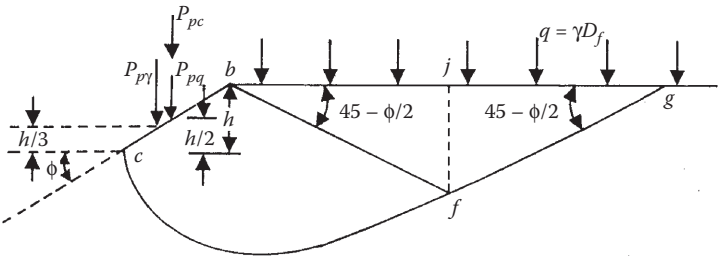


FIGURE 2.2 Passive force on the face *bc* of wedge *abc* shown in Figure 2.1.

It is important to note that the directions of P_{pq}, P_{pc}, and $P_{p\gamma}$ are vertical since the face *bc* makes an angle ϕ with the horizontal, and P_{pq}, P_{pc}, and $P_{p\gamma}$ must make an angle ϕ to the normal drawn to *bc*. In order to obtain P_{pq}, P_{pc}, and $P_{p\gamma}$, the method of superposition can be used; however, it will not be an exact solution.

2.2.1 Relationship for P_{pq} ($\phi \neq 0$, $\gamma = 0$, $q \neq 0$, $c = 0$)

Consider the free body diagram of the soil wedge *bcfj* shown in Figure 2.2 (also shown in Figure 2.3). For this case, the center of the log spiral (of which *cf* is an arc) will be at point *b*. The forces *per unit length of the wedge bcfj* due to the surcharge *q* only are shown in Figure 2.3a, and they are

1. P_{pq}
2. Surcharge q
3. The Rankine passive force $P_{p(1)}$
4. The frictional resisting force F along the arc *cf*

The Rankine passive force $P_{p(1)}$ can be expressed as

$$P_{p(1)} = qK_pH_d = qH_d \tan^2\left(45 + \frac{\phi}{2}\right) \tag{2.4}$$

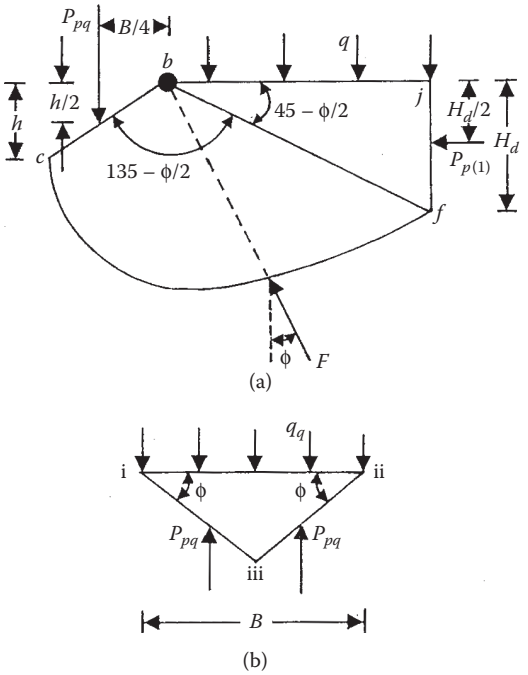


FIGURE 2.3 Determination of P_{pq} ($\phi \neq 0$, $\gamma = 0$, $q \neq 0$, $c = 0$): (a) forces per unit length of wedge *bcfj*; (b) stability of elastic wedge *abc*.

where

$H_d = \overline{fj}$

K_p = Rankine passive earth pressure coefficient = $\tan^2(45 + \phi/2)$

According to the property of a log spiral defined by the equation $r = r_0 e^{\theta \tan \phi}$, the radial line at any point makes an angle ϕ with the normal; hence, the line of action of the frictional force F will pass through b (the center of the log spiral as shown in Figure 2.3a). Taking the moment of all forces about point b:

$$P_{pq}\left(\frac{B}{4}\right) = q(\overline{bj})\left(\frac{\overline{bj}}{2}\right) + P_{p(1)}\frac{H_d}{2} \tag{2.5}$$

let

$$\overline{bc} = r_0 = \left(\frac{B}{2}\right)\sec\phi \tag{2.6}$$

From Equation 2.1:

$$\overline{bf} = r_1 = r_0 e^{\left(\frac{3\pi}{4} - \frac{\phi}{2}\right)\tan\phi} \tag{2.7}$$

So,

$$\overline{bj} = r_1 \cos\left(45 - \frac{\phi}{2}\right) \tag{2.8}$$

and

$$H_d = r_1 \sin\left(45 - \frac{\phi}{2}\right) \tag{2.9}$$

Combining Equations 2.4, 2.5, 2.8, and 2.9:

$$\frac{P_{pq}B}{4} = \frac{qr_1^2\cos^2\left(45 - \frac{\phi}{2}\right)}{2} + \frac{qr_1^2\sin^2\left(45 - \frac{\phi}{2}\right)\tan^2\left(45 + \frac{\phi}{2}\right)}{2}$$

or

$$P_{pq} = \frac{4}{B}\left[qr_1^2\cos^2\left(45 - \frac{\phi}{2}\right)\right] \tag{2.10}$$

Now, combining Equations 2.6, 2.7, and 2.10:

$$P_{pq} = qB\sec^2\phi\left[e^{2\left(\frac{3\pi}{4}-\frac{\phi}{2}\right)\tan\phi}\right]\left[\cos^2\left(45-\frac{\phi}{2}\right)\right] = \frac{qBe^{2\left(\frac{3\pi}{4}-\frac{\phi}{2}\right)\tan\phi}}{4\cos^2\left(45+\frac{\phi}{2}\right)} \tag{2.11}$$

Considering the stability of the elastic wedge *abc* under the foundation as shown in Figure 2.3b

$$q_q(B\times 1) = 2P_{pq}$$

where

q_q = load per unit area on the foundation, or

$$q_q = \frac{2P_{pq}}{B} = q\underbrace{\left[\frac{e^{2\left(\frac{3\pi}{4}-\frac{\phi}{2}\right)\tan\phi}}{2\cos^2\left(45+\frac{\phi}{2}\right)}\right]}_{N_q} = qN_q \tag{2.12}$$

2.2.2 Relationship for P_{pc} ($\phi \neq 0$, $\gamma = 0$, $q = 0$, $c \neq 0$)

Figure 2.4 shows the free body diagram for the wedge *bcfj* (also refer to Figure 2.2). As in the case of P_{pq}, the center of the arc of the log spiral will be located at point *b*. The forces on the wedge, which are due to cohesion *c*, are also shown in Figure 2.4, and they are

1. Passive force P_{pc}
2. Cohesive force $C = c(\overline{bc}\times 1)$
3. Rankine passive force due to cohesion

$$P_{p(2)} = 2c\sqrt{K_p}H_d = 2cH_d\tan\left(45+\frac{\phi}{2}\right)$$

4. Cohesive force per unit area *c* along arc *cf*

Taking the moment of all the forces about point *b*:

$$P_{pc}\left(\frac{B}{4}\right) = P_{p(2)}\left[\frac{r_1\sin\left(45-\frac{\phi}{2}\right)}{2}\right] + M_c \tag{2.13}$$

where

$$M_c = \text{moment due to cohesion } c \text{ along arc } cf = \frac{c}{2\tan\phi}(r_1^2 - r_0^2) \tag{2.14}$$

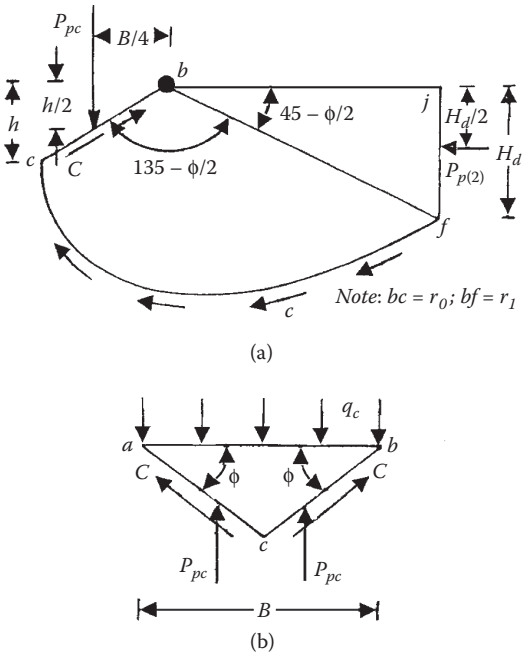


FIGURE 2.4 Determination of P_{pc} ($\phi \neq 0$, $\gamma = 0$, $q = 0$, $c \neq 0$): (a) forces per unit length of wedge *bcfj*; (b) stability of elastic wedge *abc*.

So,

$$P_{pc}\left(\frac{B}{4}\right) = \left[2cH_d \tan\left(45 + \frac{\phi}{2}\right)\right]\left[\frac{r_1 \sin\left(45 - \frac{\phi}{2}\right)}{2}\right] + \left(\frac{c}{2\tan\phi}\right)(r_1^2 - r_0^2) \qquad (2.15)$$

The relationships for H_d, r_0, and r_1 in terms of B and ϕ are given in Equations 2.9, 2.6, and 2.7, respectively. Combining Equations 2.6, 2.7, 2.9, and 2.15, and noting that $\sin^2(45 - \phi/2) \times \tan(45 + \phi/2) = \frac{1}{2}\cos\phi$,

$$P_{pc} = Bc(\sec^2\phi)\left[e^{2\left(\frac{3\pi}{4} - \frac{\phi}{2}\right)\tan\phi}\right]\left(\frac{\cos\phi}{2}\right) + \left(\frac{Bc}{2\tan\phi}\right)\sec^2\phi\left[e^{2\left(\frac{3\pi}{4} - \frac{\phi}{2}\right)\tan\phi}\right] \qquad (2.16)$$

Considering the equilibrium of the soil wedge *abc* (Figure 2.4b):

$$q_c(B \times 1) = 2C\sin\phi + 2P_{pc}$$

or

$$q_c B = cB\sec\phi\sin\phi + 2P_{pc} \qquad (2.17)$$

where

q_c = load per unit area of the foundation

Combining Equations 2.16 and 2.17:

$$q_c = c\sec\phi e^{2\left(\frac{3\pi}{4}-\frac{\phi}{2}\right)\tan\phi} + \frac{c\sec^2\phi}{\tan\phi}e^{2\left(\frac{3\pi}{4}-\frac{\phi}{2}\right)\tan\phi} - \frac{c\sec^2\phi}{\tan\phi} + c\tan\phi \tag{2.18}$$

or

$$q_c = ce^{2\left(\frac{3\pi}{4}-\frac{\phi}{2}\right)\tan\phi}\left[\sec\phi + \frac{\sec^2\phi}{\tan\phi}\right] - c\left[\frac{\sec^2\phi}{\tan\phi} - \tan\phi\right] \tag{2.19}$$

However,

$$\sec\phi + \frac{\sec^2\phi}{\tan\phi} = \frac{1}{\cos\phi} + \frac{1}{\cos\phi\sin\phi} = \cot\phi\left(\frac{1+\sin\phi}{\cos^2\phi}\right) = \cot\phi\left[\frac{1}{2\cos^2(45+(\phi/2))}\right] \tag{2.20}$$

Also,

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\sec^2\phi}{\tan\phi} - \tan\phi &= \cot\phi(\sec^2\phi - \tan^2\phi) = \cot\phi\left(\frac{1}{\cos^2\phi} - \frac{\sin^2\phi}{\cos^2\phi}\right)\\ &= \cot\phi\left(\frac{\cos^2\phi}{\cos^2\phi}\right) = \cot\phi\end{aligned} \tag{2.21}$$

Substituting Equations 2.20 and 2.21 into Equation 2.19

$$q_c = c\cot\phi\left[\frac{e^{2\left(\frac{3\pi}{4}-\frac{\phi}{2}\right)\tan\phi}}{2\cos^2\left(45+\frac{\phi}{2}\right)} - 1\right] = cN_c = c\cot\phi(N_q - 1) \tag{2.22}$$

2.2.3 Relationship for $P_{p\gamma}$ ($\phi \neq 0$, $\gamma \neq 0$, $q = 0$, $c = 0$)

Figure 2.5a shows the free body diagram of wedge *bcfj*. Unlike the free body diagrams shown in Figures 2.3 and 2.4, the center of the log spiral of which *bf* is an arc is at a point *O* along line *bf* and not at *b*. This is because the minimum value of $P_{p\gamma}$ has to be determined by several trials. Point *O* is only one trial center. The forces per unit length of the wedge that need to be considered are

1. Passive force $P_{p\gamma}$
2. The weight *W* of wedge *bcfj*

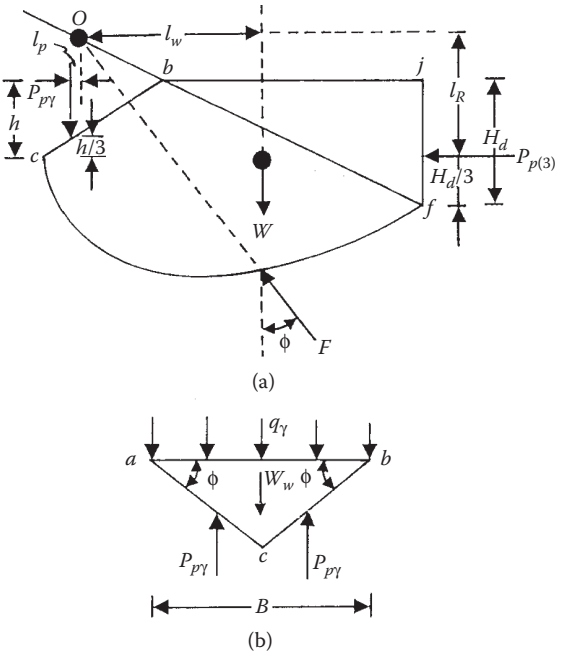


FIGURE 2.5 Determination of $P_{p\gamma}$ ($\phi \neq 0$, $\gamma \neq 0$, $q = 0$, $c = 0$): (a) forces per unit length of wedge *bcfj*; (b) stability of elastic wedge *abc*.

3. The resultant of the frictional resisting force F acting along arc *cf*
4. The Rankine passive force $P_{p(3)}$

The Rankine passive force $P_{p(3)}$ can be given by the relation

$$P_{p(3)} = \frac{1}{2}\gamma H_d^2 \tan^2\left(45 + \frac{\phi}{2}\right) \tag{2.23}$$

Also note that the line of action of force F will pass through O. Taking the moment of all forces about O:

$$P_{p\gamma} l_p = W l_w + P_{p(3)} l_R$$

or

$$P_{p\gamma} = \frac{1}{l_p}[W l_w + P_{p(3)} l_R] \tag{2.24}$$

If a number of trials of this type are made by changing the location of the center of the log spiral O along line *bf*, then the minimum value of $P_{p\gamma}$ can be determined.

Considering the stability of wedge *abc* as shown in Figure 2.5, we can write that

$$q_\gamma B = 2P_{p\gamma} - W_w \tag{2.25}$$

where
q_γ = force per unit area of the foundation
W_w = weight of wedge *abc*

However,

$$W_w = \frac{B^2}{4}\gamma \tan\phi \tag{2.26}$$

So,

$$q_\gamma = \frac{1}{B}\left(2P_{p\gamma} - \frac{B^2}{4}\gamma \tan\phi\right) \tag{2.27}$$

The passive force $P_{p\gamma}$ can be expressed in the form

$$P_{p\gamma} = \frac{1}{2}\gamma h^2 K_{p\gamma} = \frac{1}{2}\gamma\left(\frac{B\tan\phi}{2}\right)^2 K_{p\gamma} = \frac{1}{8}\gamma B^2 K_{p\gamma}\tan^2\phi \tag{2.28}$$

where
$K_{p\gamma}$ = passive earth pressure coefficient

Substituting Equation 2.28 into Equation 2.27

$$\begin{aligned} q_\gamma &= \frac{1}{B}\left(\frac{1}{4}\gamma B^2 K_{p\gamma}\tan^2\phi - \frac{B^2}{4}\gamma\tan\phi\right) \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\gamma B\left(\frac{1}{2}K_{p\gamma}\tan^2\phi - \frac{\tan\phi}{2}\right) = \frac{1}{2}\gamma B N_\gamma \end{aligned} \tag{2.29}$$

2.2.4 Ultimate Bearing Capacity

The ultimate load per unit area of the foundation (that is, the ultimate bearing capacity q_u) for a soil with cohesion, friction, and weight can now be given as

$$q_u = q_q + q_c + q_\gamma \tag{2.30}$$

Substituting the relationships for q_q, q_c, and q_γ given by Equations 2.12, 2.22, and 2.29 into Equation 2.30 yields

$$q_u = cN_c + qN_q + \frac{1}{2}\gamma B N_\gamma \tag{2.31}$$

where

N_c, N_q, and N_γ = bearing capacity factors, and

$$N_q = \frac{e^{2\left(\frac{3\pi}{4}-\frac{\phi}{2}\right)\tan\phi}}{2\cos^2\left(45+\frac{\phi}{2}\right)} \tag{2.32}$$

$$N_c = \cot\phi(N_q - 1) \tag{2.33}$$

$$N_\gamma = \frac{1}{2}K_{p\gamma}\tan^2\phi - \frac{\tan\phi}{2} \tag{2.34}$$

Table 2.1 gives the variations of the bearing capacity factors with soil friction angle ϕ given by Equations 2.32 through 2.34. The values of N_γ were obtained by Kumbhojkar.[2]

Krizek[3] gave simple empirical relations for Terzaghi's bearing capacity factors N_c, N_q, and N_γ with a maximum deviation of 15%. They are as follows:

$$N_c = \frac{228+4.3\phi}{40-\phi} \tag{2.35}$$

$$N_q = \frac{40+5\phi}{40-\phi} \tag{2.36}$$

$$N_\gamma = \frac{6\phi}{40-\phi} \tag{2.37}$$

where

ϕ = soil friction angle, in degrees

Equations 2.35, 2.36, and 2.37 are valid for $\phi = 0°$ to 35°. Thus, substituting Equation 2.35 into 2.31,

$$q_u = \frac{(228+4.3\phi)c + (40+5\phi)q + 3\phi\gamma B}{40-\phi} \quad (\text{for } \phi = 0° \text{ to } 35°) \tag{2.38}$$

For foundations that are rectangular or circular in plan, a plane strain condition in soil at ultimate load does not exist. Therefore, Terzaghi[1] proposed the following relationships for square and circular foundations:

$$q_u = 1.3cN_c + qN_q + 0.4\gamma BN_\gamma \quad (\text{square foundation; plan } B\times B) \tag{2.39}$$

and

$$q_u = 1.3cN_c + qN_q + 0.3\gamma BN_\gamma \quad (\text{circular foundation; diameter } B) \tag{2.40}$$

TABLE 2.1
Terzaghi's Bearing Capacity Factors (Equations 2.32 through 2.34)

ϕ	N_c	N_q	N_γ
0	5.70	1.00	0.00
1	6.00	1.10	0.01
2	6.30	1.22	0.04
3	6.62	1.35	0.06
4	6.97	1.49	0.10
5	7.34	1.64	0.14
6	7.73	1.81	0.20
7	8.15	2.00	0.27
8	8.60	2.21	0.35
9	9.09	2.44	0.44
10	9.61	2.69	0.56
11	10.16	2.98	0.69
12	10.76	3.29	0.85
13	11.41	3.63	1.04
14	12.11	4.02	1.26
15	12.86	4.45	1.52
16	13.68	4.92	1.82
17	14.60	5.45	2.18
18	15.12	6.04	2.59
19	16.57	6.70	3.07
20	17.69	7.44	3.64
21	18.92	8.26	4.31
22	20.27	9.19	5.09
23	21.75	10.23	6.00
24	23.36	11.40	7.08
25	25.13	12.72	8.34
26	27.09	14.21	9.84
27	29.24	15.90	11.60
28	31.61	17.81	13.70
29	34.24	19.98	16.18
30	37.16	22.46	19.13
31	40.41	25.28	22.65
32	44.04	28.52	26.87
33	48.09	32.23	31.94
34	52.64	36.50	38.04
35	57.75	41.44	45.41
36	63.53	47.16	54.36
37	70.01	53.80	65.27
38	77.50	61.55	78.61
39	85.97	70.61	95.03
40	95.66	81.27	115.31

(*Continued*)

TABLE 2.1 (*Continued*)
Terzaghi's Bearing Capacity Factors
(Equations 2.32 through 2.34)

ϕ	N_c	N_q	N_γ
41	106.81	93.85	140.51
42	119.67	108.75	171.99
43	134.58	126.50	211.56
44	151.95	147.74	261.60
45	172.28	173.28	325.34
46	196.22	204.19	407.11
47	224.55	241.80	512.84
48	258.28	287.85	650.87
49	298.71	344.63	831.99
50	347.50	415.14	1072.80

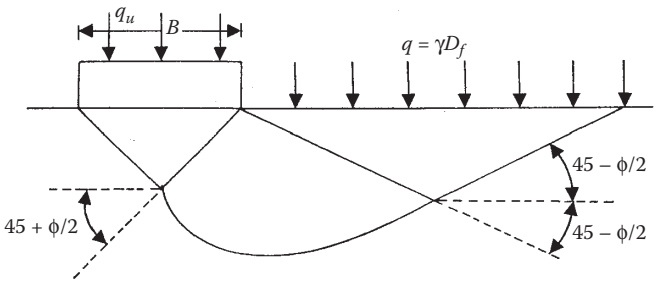


FIGURE 2.6 Modified failure surface in soil supporting a shallow foundation at ultimate load.

Since Terzaghi's founding work, numerous experimental studies to estimate the ultimate bearing capacity of shallow foundations have been conducted. Based on these studies, it appears that Terzaghi's assumption of the failure surface in soil at ultimate load is essentially correct. However, the angle α that sides *ac* and *bc* of the wedge (Figure 2.1) make with the horizontal is closer to $45 + \phi/2$ and not ϕ, as assumed by Terzaghi. In that case, the nature of the soil failure surface would be as shown in Figure 2.6.

The method of superposition was used to obtain the bearing capacity factors N_c, N_q, and N_γ. For derivations of N_c and N_q, the center of the arc of the log spiral *cf* is located at the edge of the foundation. That is not the case for the derivation of N_γ. In effect, two different surfaces are used in deriving Equation 2.31; however, it is on the safe side.

EXAMPLE 2.1

A square foundation is 1.5 m × 1.5 m in plan. The soil supporting the foundation has a friction angle of $\phi = 20°$ and $c = 15.2$ kN/m^2. The unit weight of soil γ is 17.8 kN/m^3. Determine the ultimate gross load the foundation can carry. Assume

the depth of the foundation (D_f) to be one meter, and general shear failure occurs in soil.

Solution

From Equation 2.39,

$$q_u = 1.3cN_c + qN_q + 0.4\gamma BN_\gamma$$

From Table 2.1, for $\phi = 20°$, $N_c = 17.69$, $N_q = 7.44$, $N_\gamma = 3.64$. Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} q_u &= (1.3)(15.2)(17.69) + (1\times 17.8)(7.44) + (0.4)(17.8)(1.5)(3.64) \\ &= 349.55 + 132.44 + 25.92 = 507.91 \text{ kN/m}^2 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the ultimate gross load,

$$Q_u = (507.91)B^2 = (507.91)(1.5\times 1.5) = 1142.8 \text{ kN} \approx \mathbf{1143\ kN}$$

2.3 TERZAGHI'S BEARING CAPACITY THEORY FOR LOCAL SHEAR FAILURE

It is obvious from Section 2.2 that Terzaghi's bearing capacity theory was obtained assuming general shear failure in soil. However, Terzaghi[1] suggested the following relationships for local shear failure in soil:

Strip foundation ($B/L = 0$; L = length of foundation):

$$q_u = c'N_c' + qN_q' + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_\gamma' \tag{2.41}$$

Square foundation ($B = L$):

$$q_u = 1.3c'N_c' + qN_q' + 0.4\gamma BN_\gamma' \tag{2.42}$$

Circular foundation (B = diameter):

$$q_u = 1.3c'N_c' + qN_q' + 0.3\gamma BN_\gamma' \tag{2.43}$$

where

N_c', N_q', and N_γ' = modified bearing capacity factors

$$c' = \frac{2c}{3}$$

TABLE 2.2
Terzaghi's Modified Bearing Capacity Factors N_c', N_q', and N_γ'

ϕ	N_c'	N_q'	N_γ'
0	5.70	1.00	0.00
1	5.90	1.07	0.005
2	6.10	1.14	0.02
3	6.30	1.22	0.04
4	6.51	1.30	0.055
5	6.74	1.39	0.074
6	6.97	1.49	0.10
7	7.22	1.59	0.128
8	7.47	1.70	0.16
9	7.74	1.82	0.20
10	8.02	1.94	0.24
11	8.32	2.08	0.30
12	8.63	2.22	0.35
13	8.96	2.38	0.42
14	9.31	2.55	0.48
15	9.67	2.73	0.57
16	10.06	2.92	0.67
17	10.47	3.13	0.76
18	10.90	3.36	0.88
19	11.36	3.61	1.03
20	11.85	3.88	1.12
21	12.37	4.17	1.35
22	12.92	4.48	1.55
23	13.51	4.82	1.74
24	14.14	5.20	1.97
25	14.80	5.60	2.25
26	15.53	6.05	2.59
27	16.03	6.54	2.88
28	17.13	7.07	3.29
29	18.03	7.66	3.76
30	18.99	8.31	4.39
31	20.03	9.03	4.83
32	21.16	9.82	5.51
33	22.39	10.69	6.32
34	23.72	11.67	7.22
35	25.18	12.75	8.35
36	26.77	13.97	9.41
37	28.51	15.32	10.90
38	30.43	16.85	12.75
39	32.53	18.56	14.71
40	34.87	20.50	17.22

(*Continued*)

TABLE 2.2 (*Continued*)
Terzaghi's Modified Bearing Capacity Factors N'_c, N'_q, and N'_γ

ϕ	N'_c	N'_q	N'_γ
41	37.45	22.70	19.75
42	40.33	25.21	22.50
43	43.54	28.06	26.25
44	47.13	31.34	30.40
45	51.17	35.11	36.00
46	55.73	39.48	41.70
47	60.91	44.54	49.30
48	66.80	50.46	59.25
49	73.55	57.41	71.45
50	81.31	65.60	85.75

The modified bearing capacity factors can be obtained by substituting $\phi' = \tan^{-1}(0.67 \tan \phi)$ for ϕ in Equations 2.32 through 2.34. The variations of N'_c, N'_q, and N'_γ with ϕ are shown in Table 2.2.

Vesic[4] suggested a better mode to obtain ϕ' for estimating N'_c and N'_q for foundations on sand in the forms

$$\phi' = \tan^{-1}(k \tan \phi) \tag{2.44}$$

$$k = 0.67 + D_r - 0.75D_r^2 \quad (\text{for} \quad 0 \le D_r \le 0.67) \tag{2.45}$$

where

D_r = relative density

EXAMPLE 2.2

Repeat Example 2.1 assuming local shear failure occurs in the soil supporting the foundation.

Solution

From Equation 2.42,

$$q_u = 1.3c'N'_c + q'N'_q + 0.4\gamma BN'_\gamma$$

From Table 2.2, for $\phi = 20°$, $N'_c = 11.85$, $N'_q = 3.85$, $N'_\gamma = 1.12$.
Thus,

$$q_u = (1.3)\left[\left(\frac{2}{3}\right)(15.2)\right](11.85) + (1 \times 17.8)(3.88) + (0.4)(17.8)(1.5)(1.12)$$
$$= 237.12 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

Ultimate gross load,

$$Q_u = q_u B^2 = (237.12)(1.5)^2 \approx \mathbf{533.52\ kN}$$

2.4 MEYERHOF'S BEARING CAPACITY THEORY

In 1951, Meyerhof published a bearing capacity theory that could be applied to rough, shallow, and deep foundations. The failure surface at ultimate load under a continuous shallow foundation assumed by Meyerhof[5] is shown in Figure 2.7. In this figure *abc* is the elastic triangular wedge as shown in Figure 2.6, *bcd* is the radial shear zone with *cd* being an arc of a log spiral, and *bde* is a mixed shear zone in which the shear varies between the limits of radial and plane shears depending on the depth and roughness of the foundation. The plane *be* is called an *equivalent free surface*. The normal and shear stresses on plane *be* are p_o and s_o, respectively. The superposition method is used to determine the contribution of cohesion c, p_o, γ, and ϕ on the ultimate bearing capacity q_u of the *continuous* foundation and is expressed as

$$q_u = cN_c + qN_q + \frac{1}{2}\gamma B N_\gamma \tag{2.46}$$

where

N_c, N_q, and N_γ = bearing capacity factors
B = width of the foundation

2.4.1 Derivation of N_c and N_q ($\phi \neq 0$, $\gamma = 0$, $p_o \neq 0$, $c \neq 0$)

For this case, the center of the log spiral arc (Equation 2.1) is taken at *b*. Also, it is assumed that along *be*

$$s_o = m(c + p_o \tan\phi) \tag{2.47}$$

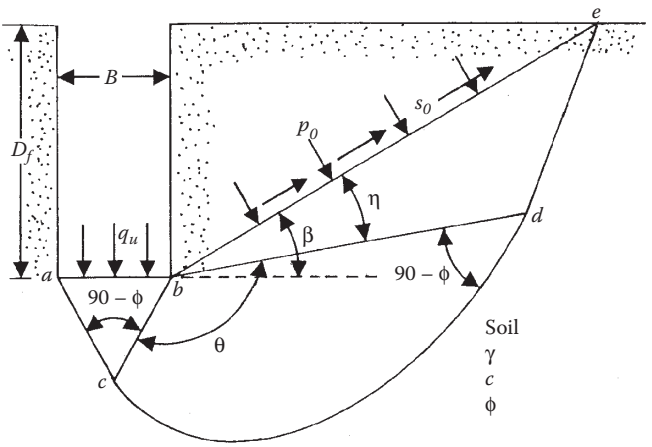
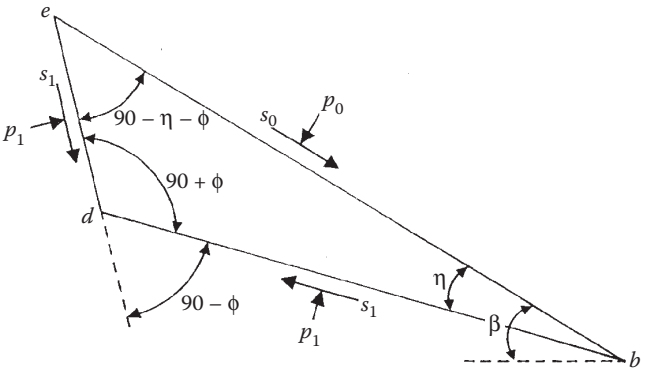


FIGURE 2.7 Slip line fields for a rough continuous foundation.

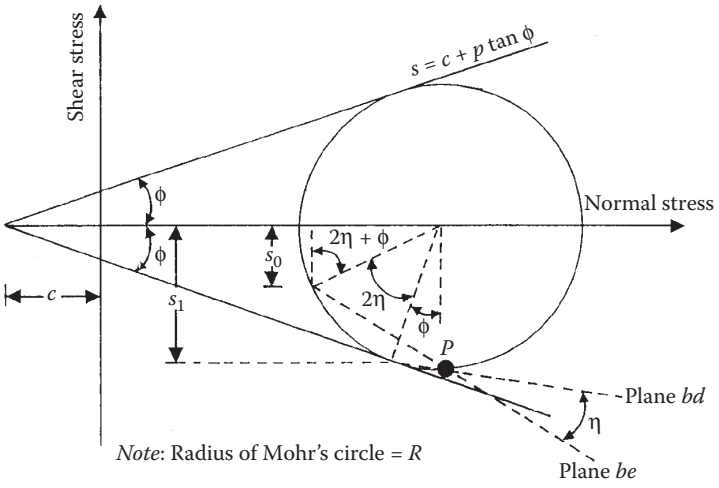
where
c = cohesion
ϕ = soil friction angle
m = degree of mobilization of shear strength ($0 \le m \le 1$)

Now consider the linear zone *bde* (Figure 2.8a). Plastic equilibrium requires that the shear strength s_1 under the normal stress p_1 is fully mobilized, or

$$s_1 = c + p_1 \tan \phi \tag{2.48}$$

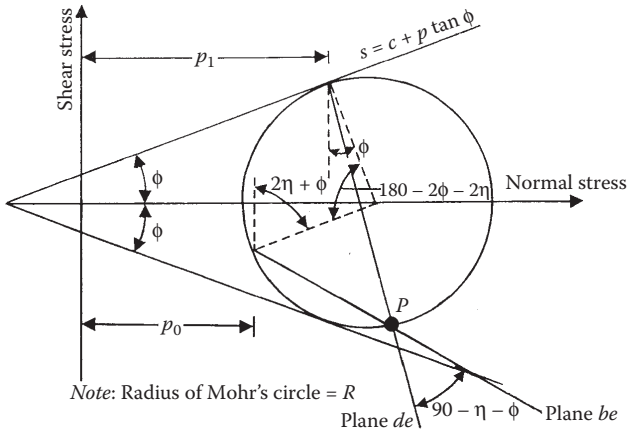


(a) Linear zone *bde*

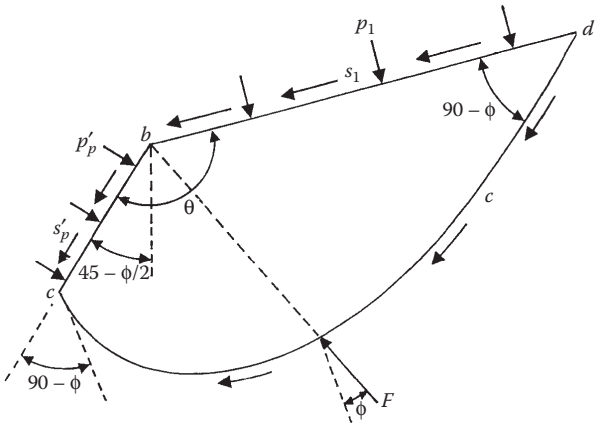


(b)

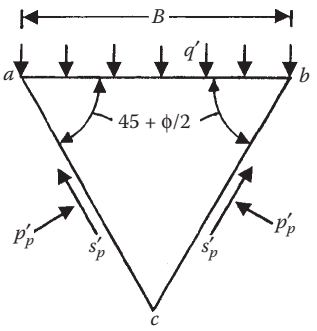
FIGURE 2.8 Determination of N_q and N_c: (a) forces in the linear zone *bde*; (b) Mohr's circle for stress conditions on zone *bde*. (*Continued*)



(c)



(d)



(e)

FIGURE 2.8 (Continued) Determination of N_q and N_c: (c) trace of plane *de* in Mohr's circle; (d) free body diagram for zone *bcd*; (e) free body diagram for *abc* wedge.

Figure 2.8b shows the Mohr's circle representing the stress conditions on zone *bde*. Note that *P* is the pole. The traces of planes *bd* and *be* are also shown in the figure. For the Mohr's circle,

$$R = \frac{s_1}{\cos\phi} \tag{2.49}$$

where
R = radius of the Mohr's circle

Also,

$$s_o = R\cos(2\eta + \phi) = \frac{s_1\cos(2\eta + \phi)}{\cos\phi} \tag{2.50}$$

Combining Equations 2.47, 2.48, and 2.50:

$$\cos(2\eta + \phi) = \frac{s_o\cos\phi}{c + p_1\tan\phi} = \frac{m(c + p_o\tan\phi)\cos\phi}{c + p_1\tan\phi} \tag{2.51}$$

Again, referring to the trace of plane *de* (Figure 2.8c),

$$s_1 = R\cos\phi$$

$$R = \frac{c + p_1\tan\phi}{\cos\phi} \tag{2.52}$$

Note that

$$p_1 + R\sin\phi = p_0 + R\sin(2\eta + \phi)$$

$$p_1 = R[\sin(2\eta + \phi) - \sin\phi] + p_o = \frac{c + p_1\tan\phi}{\cos\phi}[\sin(2\eta + \phi) - \sin\phi] + p_o \tag{2.53}$$

Figure 2.8d shows the free body diagram of zone *bcd*. Note that the normal and shear stresses on the face *bc* are p'_p and s'_p, or

$$s'_p = c + p'_p\tan\phi$$

or

$$p'_p = (s'_p - c)\cot\phi \tag{2.54}$$

Taking the moment of all forces about *b*,

$$p_1\left(\frac{r_1^2}{2}\right) - p_p'\left(\frac{r_0^2}{2}\right) + M_c = 0 \tag{2.55}$$

where

$$r_0 = \overline{bc}$$

$$r_1 = \overline{bd} = r_0 e^{\theta \tan\phi} \tag{2.56}$$

it can be shown that

$$M_c = \frac{c}{2\tan\phi}(r_1^2 - r_0^2) \tag{2.57}$$

Substituting Equations 2.56 and 2.57 into Equation 2.55 yields

$$p_p' = p_1 e^{2\theta\tan\phi} + c\cot\phi(e^{2\theta\tan\phi} - 1) \tag{2.58}$$

Combining Equations 2.54 and 2.58

$$s_p' = (c + p_1\tan\phi)e^{2\theta\tan\phi} \tag{2.59}$$

Figure 2.8e shows the free body diagram of wedge *abc*. Resolving the forces in the vertical direction,

$$2p_p'\left[\frac{\frac{B}{2}}{\cos\left(45+\frac{\phi}{2}\right)}\right]\cos\left(45+\frac{\phi}{2}\right) + 2s_p'\left[\frac{\frac{B}{2}}{\cos\left(45+\frac{\phi}{2}\right)}\right]\sin\left(45+\frac{\phi}{2}\right) = q'B$$

where

q' = load per unit area of the foundation, or

$$q' = p_p' + s_p'\cot\left(45-\frac{\phi}{2}\right) \tag{2.60}$$

Substituting Equations 2.53, 2.54, and 2.59 into Equation 2.60 and further simplifying yields

$$q' = c\left\{\cot\phi\left[\underbrace{\frac{(1+\sin\phi)e^{2\theta\tan\phi}}{1-\sin\phi\sin(2\eta+\phi)}}_{N_c} - 1\right]\right\} + p_o\left[\underbrace{\frac{(1+\sin\phi)e^{2\theta\tan\phi}}{1-\sin\phi\sin(2\eta+\phi)}}_{N_q}\right] = cN_c + p_oN_q \tag{2.61}$$

where

N_c, N_q = bearing capacity factors

The bearing capacity factors will depend on the degree of mobilization m of shear strength on the equivalent free surface. This is because m controls η. From Equation 2.51

$$\cos(2\eta + \phi) = \frac{m(c + p_o \tan\phi)\cos\phi}{c + p_1 \tan\phi}$$

For $m = 0$, $\cos(2\eta + \phi) = 0$, or

$$\eta = 45 - \frac{\phi}{2} \tag{2.62}$$

For $m = 1$, $\cos(2\eta + \phi) = \cos\phi$, or

$$\eta = 0 \tag{2.63}$$

Also, the factors N_c and N_q are influenced by the angle of inclination of the equivalent free surface β. From the geometry of Figure 2.7,

$$\theta = 135^\circ + \beta - \eta - \frac{\phi}{2} \tag{2.64}$$

From Equation 2.62, for $m = 0$, the value of η is $(45 - \phi/2)$. So,

$$\theta = 90^\circ + \beta \quad (\text{for } m = 0) \tag{2.65}$$

Similarly, for $m = 1$ (since $\eta = 0$; Equation 2.63):

$$\theta = 135^\circ + \beta - \frac{\phi}{2} \quad (\text{for } m = 1) \tag{2.66}$$

Figures 2.9 and 2.10 show the variations of N_c and N_q with ϕ, β, and m. It is of interest to note that, if we consider the surface foundation condition (as done in Figures 2.3 and 2.4 for Terzaghi's bearing capacity equation derivation), then $\beta = 0$ and $m = 0$. So, from Equation 2.65,

$$\theta = \frac{\pi}{2} \tag{2.67}$$

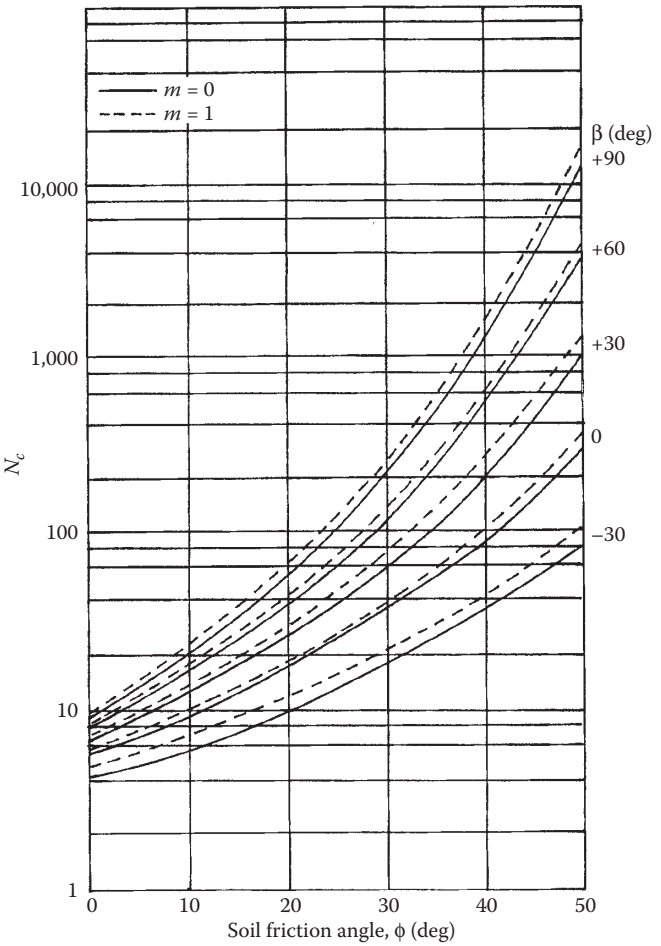


FIGURE 2.9 Meyerhof's bearing capacity factor—variation of N_c with β, ϕ, and m (Equation 2.61).

Hence, for $m = 0$, $\eta = 45 - \phi/2$, and $\theta = \pi/2$, the expressions for N_c and N_q are as follows (surface foundation condition):

$$N_q = e^{\pi \tan \phi} \left(\frac{1 + \sin \phi}{1 - \sin \phi} \right) \tag{2.68}$$

and

$$N_c = (N_q - 1) \cot \phi \tag{2.69}$$

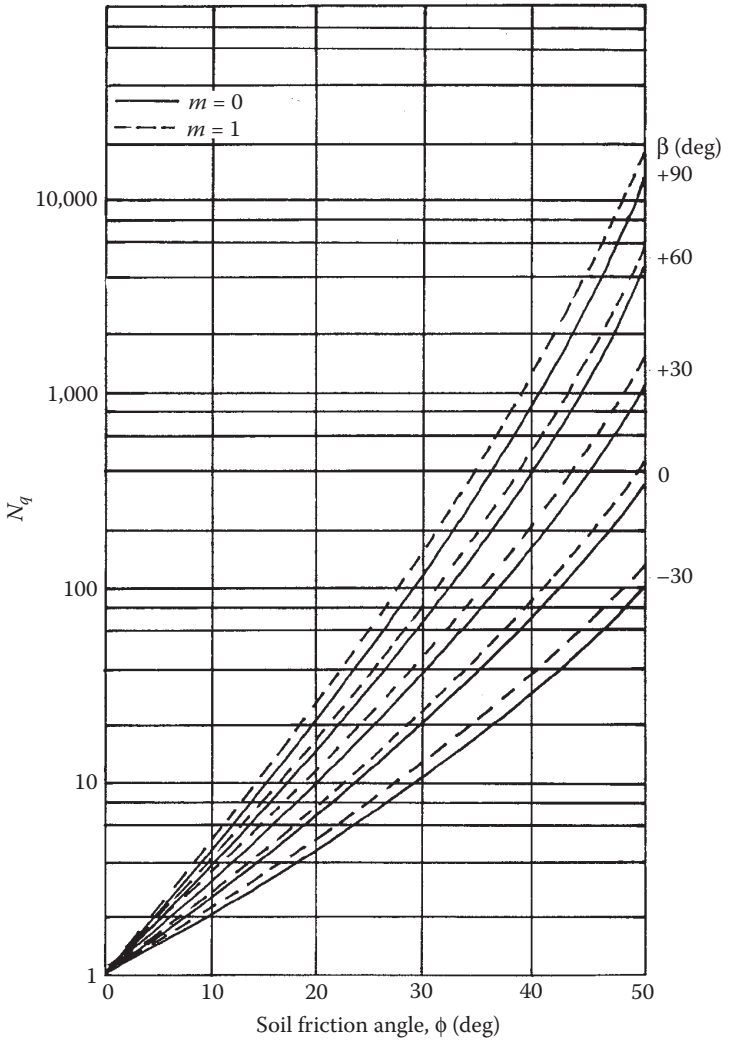


FIGURE 2.10 Meyerhof's bearing capacity factor—variation of N_q with β, ϕ, and m (Equation 2.61).

Equations 2.68 and 2.69 are the same as those derived by Reissner[6] for N_q and Prandtl[7] for N_c. For this condition $p_o = \gamma D_f = q$. So Equation 2.61 becomes

$$q' = c \underbrace{N_c}_{\uparrow \text{(Eq. 2.69)}} + q \underbrace{N_q}_{\uparrow \text{(Eq. 2.68)}} \tag{2.70}$$

2.4.2 Derivation of N_γ ($\phi \neq 0$, $\gamma \neq 0$, $p_o = 0$, $c = 0$)

N_γ is determined by trial and error as in the case of the derivation of Terzaghi's bearing capacity factor N_γ (section 2.2). Referring to Figure 2.11a, following is a step-by-step approach for the derivation of N_γ:

1. Choose values for ϕ and the angle β (such as +30°, +40°, –30°…).
2. Choose a value for m (such as $m = 0$ or $m = 1$).
3. Determine the value of θ from Equation 2.65 or 2.66 for $m = 0$ or $m = 1$, as the case may be.
4. With known values of θ and β, draw lines bd and be.
5. Select a trial center such as O and draw an arc of a log spiral connecting points c and d. The log spiral follows the equation $r = r_0 e^{q \tan \phi}$.

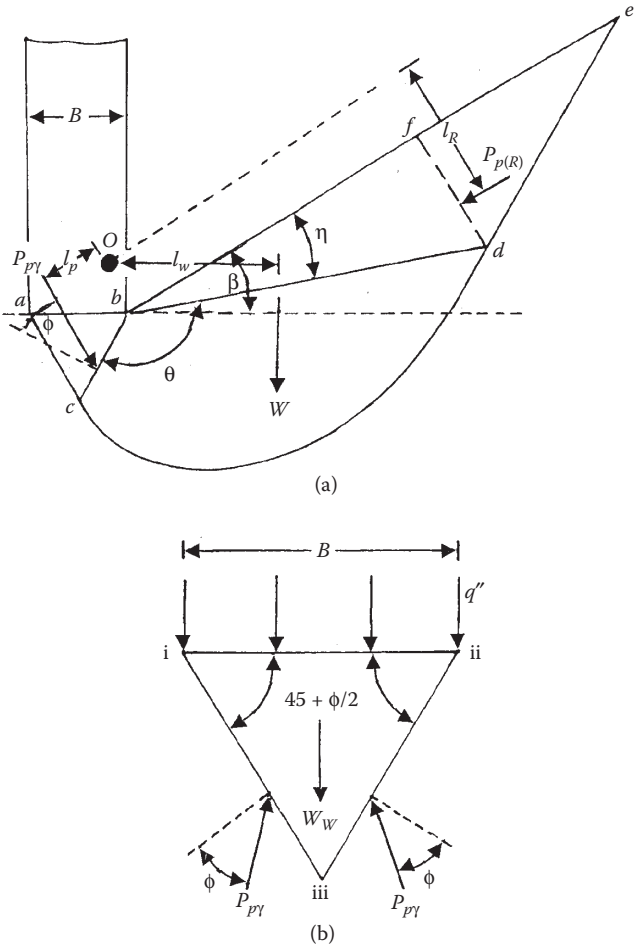


FIGURE 2.11 Determination of N_γ: (a) forces on the failure surface in soil; (b) free body diagram for wedge *abc*.

6. Draw line *de*. Note that lines *bd* and *de* make angles of $90 - \phi$ due to the restrictions on slip lines in the linear zone *bde*. Hence the trial failure surface is not, in general, continuous at *d*.
7. Consider the trial wedge *bcdf*. Determine the following forces per unit length of the wedge at right angles to the cross section shown: (a) weight of wedge *bcdf*—*W*, and (b) Rankine passive force on the face *df*—$P_{p(R)}$.
8. Take the moment of the forces about the trial center of the log spiral *O*, or

$$P_{p\gamma} = \frac{Wl_w + P_{p(R)}l_R}{l_p} \tag{2.71}$$

where

$P_{p\gamma}$ = passive force due to γ and ϕ only

Note that the line of action of $P_{p\gamma}$ acting on the face *bc* is located at a distance of $2\overline{bc}/3$.

9. For given values of β, ϕ, and *m*, and by changing the location of point *O* (that is, the center of the log spiral), repeat steps 5 through 8 to obtain the minimum value of $P_{p\gamma}$.

Refer to Figure 2.11b. Resolve the forces acting on the triangular wedge *abc* in the vertical direction, or

$$q'' = \frac{\gamma B}{2}\left[\frac{4P_{p\gamma}\sin(45 + (\phi/2))}{\gamma B^2} - \frac{1}{2}\tan\left(45 + \frac{\phi}{2}\right)\right] = \frac{1}{2}\gamma B N_\gamma \tag{2.72}$$

where

q'' = force per unit area of the foundation

N_γ = bearing capacity factor

Note that W_w is the weight of wedge *abc* in Figure 2.11b. The variation of N_γ (determined in the above manner) with β, ϕ, and *m* is given in Figure 2.12.

Combining Equations 2.61 and 2.72, the ultimate bearing capacity of a continuous foundation (for the condition $c \neq 0$, $\gamma \neq 0$, and $\phi \neq 0$) can be given as

$$q_u = q' + q'' = cN_c + p_o N_q + \frac{1}{2}\gamma B N_\gamma$$

The above equation is the same form as Equation 2.46. Similarly, for *surface foundation conditions* (that is, $\beta = 0$ and $m = 0$), the ultimate bearing capacity of a continuous foundation can be given as

$$q_u = q' + q'' = c\underbrace{N_c}_{\uparrow\ \text{(Eq. 2.69)}} + q\underbrace{N_q}_{\uparrow\ \text{(Eq. 2.68)}} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma B N_\gamma \tag{2.73}$$

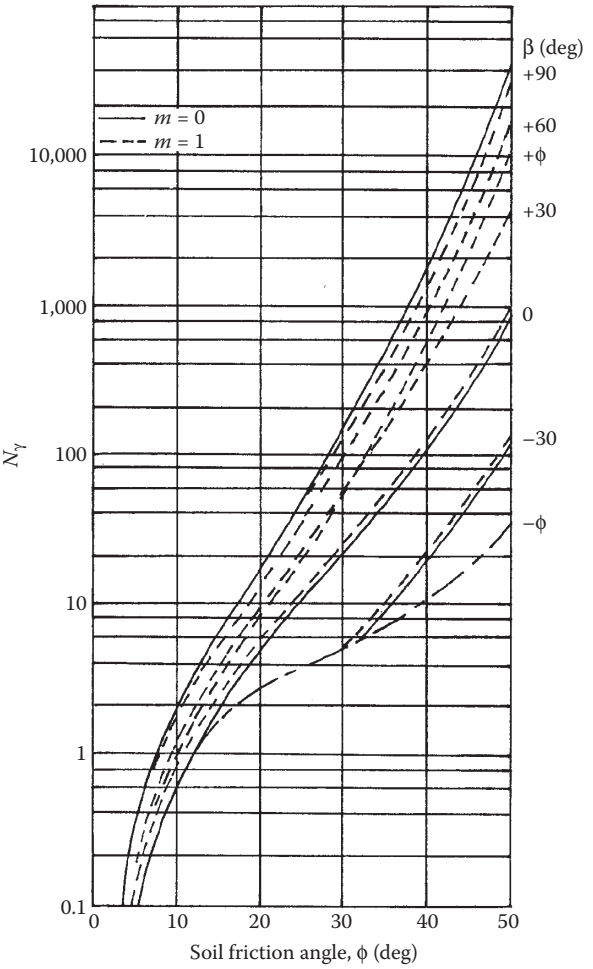


FIGURE 2.12 Meyerhof's bearing capacity factor—variation of N_γ with with β, ϕ, and m (Equation 2.72).

For shallow foundation designs, the ultimate bearing capacity relationship given by Equation 2.73 is presently used. The variation of N_γ for surface foundation conditions (that is, $\beta = 0$ and $m = 0$) is given in Figure 2.12. In 1963 Meyerhof[8] suggested that N_γ could be approximated as

$$N_\gamma = \left(\underbrace{N_q}_{\text{(Eq. 2.68)}} - 1 \right) \tan(1.4\phi) \tag{2.74}$$

Table 2.3 gives the variations of N_c and N_q obtained from Equations 2.68 and 2.69 and N_γ obtained from Equation 2.74.

TABLE 2.3
Variation of Meyerhof's Bearing Capacity Factors N_c, N_q, and N_γ (Equations 2.68, 2.69, and 2.74)

ϕ	N_c	N_q	N_γ
0	5.14	1.00	0.00
1	5.38	1.09	0.002
2	5.63	1.20	0.01
3	5.90	1.31	0.02
4	6.19	1.43	0.04
5	6.49	1.57	0.07
6	6.81	1.72	0.11
7	7.16	1.88	0.15
8	7.53	2.06	0.21
9	7.92	2.25	0.28
10	8.35	2.47	0.37
11	8.80	2.71	0.47
12	9.28	2.97	0.60
13	9.81	3.26	0.74
14	10.37	3.59	0.92
15	10.98	3.94	1.13
16	11.63	4.34	1.38
17	12.34	4.77	1.66
18	13.10	5.26	2.00
19	13.93	5.80	2.40
20	14.83	6.40	2.87
21	15.82	7.07	3.42
22	16.88	7.82	4.07
23	18.05	8.66	4.82
24	19.32	9.60	5.72
25	20.72	10.66	6.77
26	22.25	11.85	8.00
27	23.94	13.20	9.46
28	25.80	14.72	11.19
29	27.86	16.44	13.24
30	30.14	18.40	15.67
31	32.67	20.63	18.56
32	35.49	23.18	22.02
33	38.64	26.09	26.17
34	42.16	29.44	31.15
35	46.12	33.30	37.15
36	50.59	37.75	44.43
37	55.63	42.92	53.27
38	61.35	48.93	64.07
39	67.87	55.96	77.33
40	75.31	64.20	93.69

(*Continued*)

TABLE 2.3 (*Continued*)
Variation of Meyerhof's Bearing Capacity Factors N_c, N_q, and N_γ (Equations 2.68, 2.69, and 2.74)

ϕ	N_c	N_q	N_γ
41	83.86	73.90	113.99
42	93.71	85.38	139.32
43	105.11	99.02	171.14
44	118.37	115.31	211.41
45	133.88	134.88	262.74
46	152.10	158.51	328.73
47	173.64	187.21	414.32
48	199.26	222.31	526.44
49	229.93	265.51	674.91
50	266.89	319.07	873.84

2.5 GENERAL DISCUSSION ON THE RELATIONSHIPS OF BEARING CAPACITY FACTORS

At this time, the general trend among geotechnical engineers is to accept the method of superposition as a suitable means to estimate the ultimate bearing capacity of shallow rough foundations. For *rough continuous foundations*, the nature of the failure surface in soil shown in Figure 2.6 has also found acceptance, as have Reissner's[6] and Prandtl's[7] solutions for N_c and N_q, which are the same as Meyerhof's[5] solution for surface foundations, or,

$$N_q = e^{\pi \tan\phi}\left(\frac{1+\sin\phi}{1-\sin\phi}\right) \tag{2.68}$$

and

$$N_c = (N_q - 1)\cot\phi \tag{2.69}$$

Dewaikar et al.[9] revisited the computation of N_c by using Kötter's equation coupled with limit equilibrium conditions. This was done by considering

1. Terzaghi's failure mechanism (see Figure 2.1; $\alpha = \phi$)
2. Prandtl's failure mechanism (see Figure 2.1; $\alpha = 45 + (\phi/2)$)

When Terzaghi's failure mechanism was used, the derived relationship was similar to that given in Equation 2.22; that is,

$$N_c = \cot\phi\left[\frac{e^{2\left(\frac{3\pi}{4}-\frac{\phi}{2}\right)\tan\phi}}{2\cos^2\left(45+\frac{\phi}{2}\right)} - 1\right] \tag{2.75}$$

When Prandtl's failure mechanism was used, the relationship for N_c was of the form

$$N_c = \left[1 - \frac{1}{2^{\frac{1}{2}} \cos\left(45 + \frac{\phi}{2}\right)}\right](A + B) \tag{2.76}$$

where

$$A = \left(\cos\frac{\phi}{2} + \sin\frac{\phi}{2}\right)\left[\left(1 + \frac{1}{\sin\phi}\right)e^{\pi \tan\phi} - 1\right] \tag{2.77}$$

and

$$B = \frac{1}{\sin\phi}\left[2\cos\frac{\phi}{2}(\sin\phi - \cos\phi) + \left(\cos\frac{\phi}{2} - \sin\frac{\phi}{2}\right)\right] \tag{2.78}$$

The numerical values of N_c with ϕ obtained from Equations 2.76 through 2.78 are the same as those obtained using Equations 2.68 and 2.69.

There has been considerable controversy over the theoretical values of N_γ. Hansen[10] proposed an approximate relationship for N_γ in the form

$$N_\gamma = 1.5 N_c \tan^2\phi \tag{2.79}$$

In the preceding equation, the relationship for N_c is that given by Prandtl's solution (Equation 2.68). Caquot and Kerisel[11] assumed that the elastic triangular soil wedge under a rough continuous foundation is of the shape shown in Figure 2.6. Using integration of Boussinesq's differential equation, they presented numerical values of N_γ for various soil friction angles ϕ. Vesic[4] approximated their solutions in the form

$$N_\gamma = 2(N_q + 1)\tan\phi \tag{2.80}$$

where

N_q is given by Equation 2.68

Equation 2.80 has an error not exceeding 5% for $20° < \phi < 40°$ compared to the exact solution. Lundgren and Mortensen[12] developed numerical methods (using the theory of plasticity) for the exact determination of rupture lines as well as the bearing capacity factor (N_γ) for particular cases. Chen[13] also gave a solution for N_γ in which he used the upper bound limit analysis theorem suggested by Drucker and Prager.[14] Biarez et al.[15] also recommended the following relationship for N_γ:

$$N_\gamma = 1.8(N_q - 1)\tan\phi \tag{2.81}$$

Booker[16] used the slip line method and provided numerical values of N_γ. Poulos et al.[17] suggested the following expression that approximates the numerical results of Booker[16]:

$$N_\gamma \approx 0.1045e^{9.6\phi} \tag{2.82}$$

where

ϕ is in radians
$N_\gamma = 0$ for $\phi = 0$

Kumar[18] proposed another slip line solution based on Lundgren and Mortensen's failure mechanism.[12] Michalowski[19] also used the upper bound limit analysis theorem to obtain the variation of N_γ. His solution can be approximated as

$$N_\gamma = e^{(0.66+5.1\tan\phi)}\tan\phi \tag{2.83}$$

Hjiaj et al.[20] obtained a numerical analysis solution for N_γ. This solution can be approximated as

$$N_\gamma = e^{(1/6)(\pi+3\pi^2\tan\phi)}(\tan\phi)^{(2\pi/5)} \tag{2.84}$$

Martin[21] used the method of characteristics to obtain the variations of N_γ. Salgado[22] approximated these variations in the form

$$N_\gamma = (N_q - 1)\tan(1.32\phi) \tag{2.85}$$

Table 2.4 gives a comparison of the N_γ values recommended by Meyerhof,[8] Terzaghi,[1] Vesic,[4] and Hansen.[10] Table 2.5 compares the variations of N_γ obtained by Chen,[13] Booker,[16] Kumar,[18] Michalowski,[19] Hjiaj et al.,[20] and Martin.[21]

The primary reason several theories for N_γ were developed, and their lack of correlation with experimental values, lies in the difficulty of selecting a representative value of the soil friction angle ϕ for computing bearing capacity. The parameter ϕ depends on many factors, such as intermediate principal stress condition, friction angle anisotropy, and curvature of the Mohr-Coulomb failure envelope.

Dewaikar and Mohapatra[23] evaluated the bearing capacity factor N_γ based on Prandtl's mechanism using limit equilibrium approach coupled with Kötter's equation. For Prandtl's failure mechanism, refer to Figure 2.1, for which $\alpha = 45 + \phi/2$ and the center of the arc of the logarithmic spiral *cf* lies on the line *bf*. The N_γ values obtained in this analysis are given in Table 2.6.

Mrunal, Mandal, and Dewaikar[24] also evaluated the variation of N_γ with ϕ using Prandtl's mechanism and Kötter's equation in a similar manner as Dewaikar and Mohapatra.[23] However, for the analysis in Figure 2.1, the center of the logarithmic spiral is located at *b*. (*Note*: In Figure 2.1, $\alpha = 45 + \phi/2$.) The variation of N_γ obtained from this analysis is given in Table 2.7.

TABLE 2.4
Comparison of N_γ Values (Rough Foundation)

	N_γ			
Soil Friction Angle ϕ (deg)	**Terzaghi (Equation 2.34)**	**Meyerhof (Equation 2.74)**	**Vesic (Equation 2.80)**	**Hansen (Equation 2.79)**
0	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
1	0.01	0.002	0.07	0.00
2	0.04	0.01	0.15	0.01
3	0.06	0.02	0.24	0.02
4	0.10	0.04	0.34	0.05
5	0.14	0.07	0.45	0.07
6	0.20	0.11	0.57	0.11
7	0.27	0.15	0.71	0.16
8	0.35	0.21	0.86	0.22
9	0.44	0.28	1.03	0.30
10	0.56	0.37	1.22	0.39
11	0.69	0.47	1.44	0.50
12	0.85	0.60	1.69	0.63
13	1.04	0.74	1.97	0.78
14	1.26	0.92	2.29	0.97
15	1.52	1.13	2.65	1.18
16	1.82	1.38	3.06	1.43
17	2.18	1.66	3.53	1.73
18	2.59	2.00	4.07	2.08
19	3.07	2.40	4.68	2.48
20	3.64	2.87	5.39	2.95
21	4.31	3.42	6.20	3.50
22	5.09	4.07	7.13	4.13
23	6.00	4.82	8.20	4.88
24	7.08	5.72	9.44	5.75
25	8.34	6.77	10.88	6.76
26	9.84	8.00	12.54	7.94
27	11.60	9.46	14.47	9.32
28	13.70	11.19	16.72	10.94
29	16.18	13.24	19.34	12.84
30	19.13	15.67	22.40	15.07
31	22.65	18.56	25.99	17.69
32	26.87	22.02	30.22	20.79
33	31.94	26.17	35.19	24.44
34	38.04	31.15	41.06	28.77
35	45.41	37.15	48.03	33.92
36	54.36	44.43	56.31	40.05
37	65.27	53.27	66.19	47.38
38	78.61	64.07	78.03	56.17

(*Continued*)

TABLE 2.4 (*Continued*)
Comparison of N_γ Values (Rough Foundation)

	N_γ			
Soil Friction Angle ϕ (deg)	**Terzaghi (Equation 2.34)**	**Meyerhof (Equation 2.76)**	**Vesic (Equation 2.80)**	**Hansen (Equation 2.79)**
39	95.03	77.33	92.25	66.75
40	115.31	93.69	109.41	79.54
41	140.51	113.99	130.22	95.05
42	171.99	139.32	155.55	113.95
43	211.56	171.14	186.54	137.10
44	261.60	211.41	224.64	165.58
45	325.34	262.74	271.76	200.81

TABLE 2.5
Other N_γ Values (Rough Foundation)

Soil Friction Angle ϕ (deg)	**Chen[13]**	**Booker[16]**	**Kumar[18]**	**Michalowski[19]**	**Hjiaj et al.[20]**	**Martin[21]**
5	0.38	0.24	0.23	0.18	0.18	0.113
10	1.16	0.56	0.69	0.71	0.45	0.433
15	2.30	1.30	1.60	1.94	1.21	1.18
20	5.20	3.00	3.43	4.47	2.89	2.84
25	11.40	6.95	7.18	9.77	6.59	6.49
30	25.00	16.06	15.57	21.39	14.90	14.75
35	57.00	37.13	35.16	48.68	34.80	34.48
40	141.00	85.81	85.73	118.83	85.86	85.47
45	374.00	198.31	232.84	322.84	232.91	234.21

TABLE 2.6
Variation of N_γ with ϕ

ϕ (deg)	**N_γ**
20	6.24
25	13.16
30	28.00
35	62.53
40	151.45
45	412.55

Source: Dewaikar, D. M. and B. G. Mohapatra. 2003. *Soils Found.*, 43(3): 1.

TABLE 2.7
Variation of N_γ with ϕ

ϕ (deg)	N_γ
20	7.65
25	15.80
30	30.31
35	73.79
40	176.89
45	425.52

Source: Mrunal, P., J. N. Mandal, and D. M. Dewaikar. 2014. *Intl. J. Geotech. Eng.*, 8(4): 372.

It has been suggested that the plane strain soil friction angle ϕ_p, instead of ϕ_t, be used to estimate bearing capacity.[10] To that effect Vesic[4] raised the issue that this type of assumption might help explain the differences between the theoretical and experimental results for long rectangular foundations; however, it does not help to interpret results of tests with square or circular foundations. Ko and Davidson[25] also concluded that, when plane strain angles of internal friction are used in commonly accepted bearing capacity formulas, the bearing capacity for rough footings could be seriously overestimated for dense sands. To avoid the controversy Meyerhof[8] suggested the following:

$$\phi = \left[1.1 - 0.1\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\right]\phi_t$$

where

ϕ_t = triaxial friction angle

2.6 OTHER BEARING CAPACITY THEORIES

Hu[26] proposed a theory according to which the base angle a of the triangular wedge below a rough foundation (refer to Figure 2.1) is a function of several parameters, or

$$\alpha = f(\gamma, \phi, q) \tag{2.86}$$

The minimum and maximum values of α can be given as follows:

$$\phi < \alpha_{\min} < 45 + \frac{\phi}{2}$$

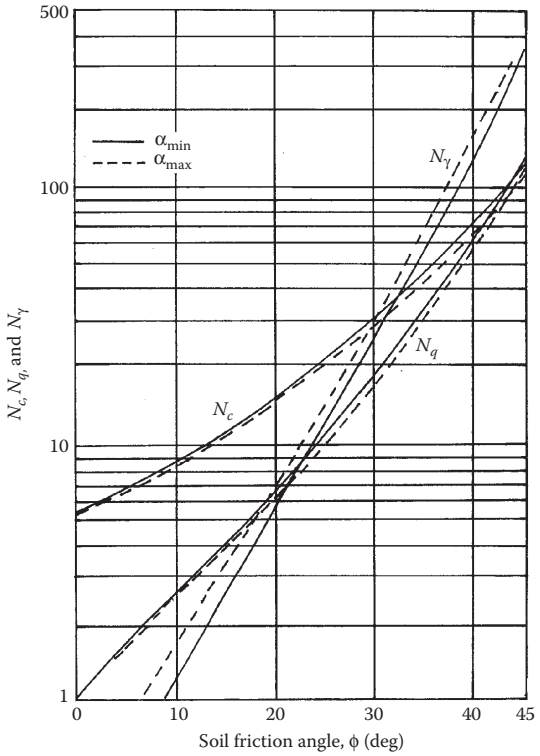


FIGURE 2.13 Hu's bearing capacity factors.

and

$$\alpha_{max} = 45 + \frac{\phi}{2}$$

The values of N_c, N_q, and N_γ determined by this procedure are shown in Figure 2.13.

Balla[27] proposed a bearing capacity theory that was developed for an assumed failure surface in soil (Figure 2.14). For this failure surface, the curve *cd* was assumed to be an arc of a circle having a radius *r*. The bearing capacity solution was obtained

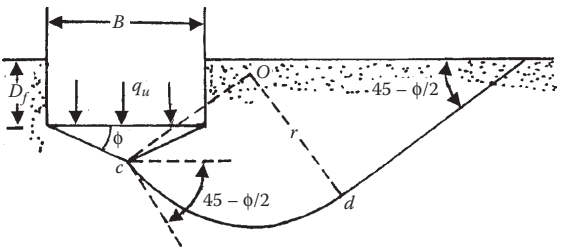


FIGURE 2.14 Nature of failure surface considered for Balla's bearing capacity theory.

using Kötter's equation to determine the distribution of the normal and tangential stresses on the slip surface. According to this solution for a continuous foundation,

$$q_u = cN_c + qN_q + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_\gamma$$

The bearing capacity factors can be determined as follows:

1. Obtain the magnitude of $c/B\gamma$ and D_f/B.
2. With the values obtained in step 1, go to Figure 2.15 to obtain the magnitude of $\rho = 2r/B$.
3. With known values of ρ, go to Figures 2.16 through 2.18, respectively, to determine N_c, N_q, and N_γ.

2.7 SCALE EFFECTS ON ULTIMATE BEARING CAPACITY

The problem in estimating the ultimate bearing capacity becomes complicated if the *scale effect* is taken into consideration. Figure 2.19 shows the average variation of $N_\gamma/2$ with soil friction angle obtained from small footing tests in sand conducted in the laboratory at Ghent as reported by DeBeer.[28] For these tests, the values of ϕ were obtained from triaxial tests. This figure also shows the variation of $N_\gamma/2$ with ϕ obtained from tests conducted in Berlin and reported by Muhs[29] with footings having an area of 1 m^2. The soil friction angles for these tests were obtained from direct shear tests. It is interesting to note that

1. For loose sand, the field test results of N_γ are higher than those obtained from small footing tests in the laboratory.
2. For dense sand, the laboratory tests provide higher values of N_γ compared to those obtained from the field.

The reason for the above observations can partially be explained by the fact that, in the field, *progressive rupture* in the soil takes place during the loading process. For loose sand at failure, the soil friction angle is higher than at the beginning of loading due to compaction. The reverse is true in the case of dense sand.

Figure 2.20 shows a comparison of several bearing capacity test results in sand compiled by DeBeer,[28] which are plots of N_γ with γB. For any given soil, the magnitude of N_γ decreases with B and remains constant for larger values of B. The reduction in N_γ for larger foundations may ultimately result in a substantial decrease in the ultimate bearing capacity that can primarily be attributed to the following reasons:

1. For larger-sized foundations, the rupture along the slip lines in soil is progressive, and the average shear strength mobilized (and thus ϕ) along a slip line decreases with the increase in B.
2. There are zones of weakness that exist in the soil under the foundation.
3. The curvature of the Mohr-Coulomb envelope.

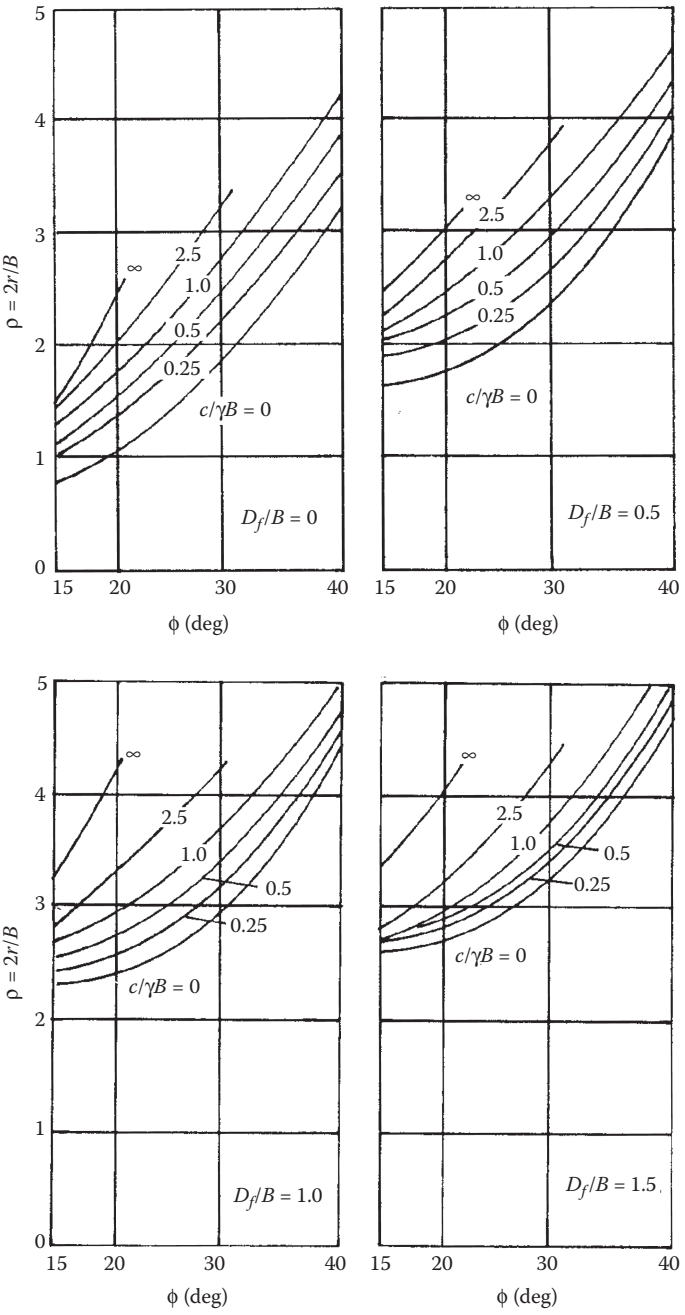


FIGURE 2.15 Variation of ρ with soil friction angle for determination of Balla's bearing capacity factors.

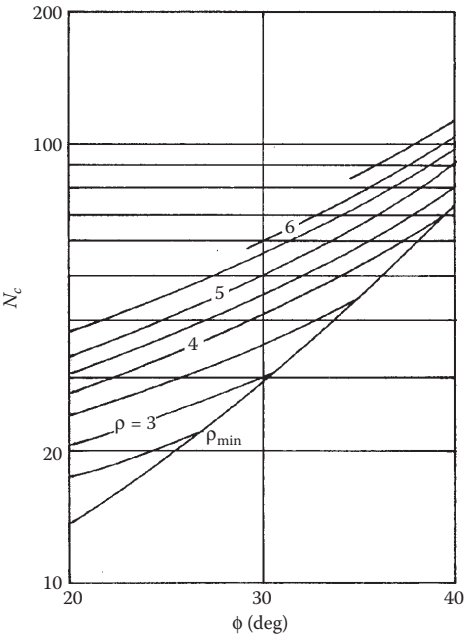


FIGURE 2.16 Balla's bearing capacity factor N_c.

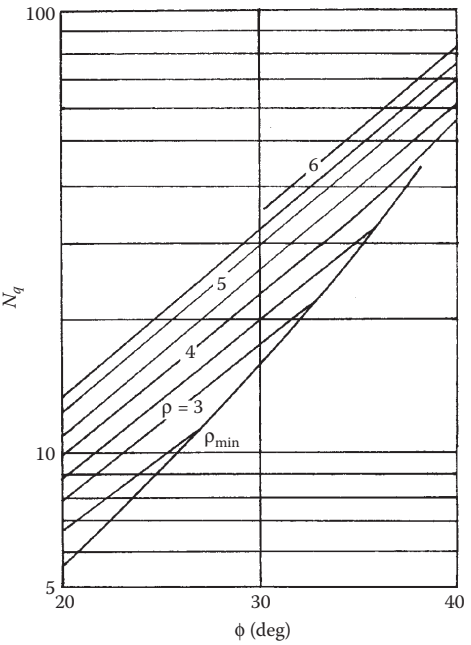


FIGURE 2.17 Balla's bearing capacity factor N_q.

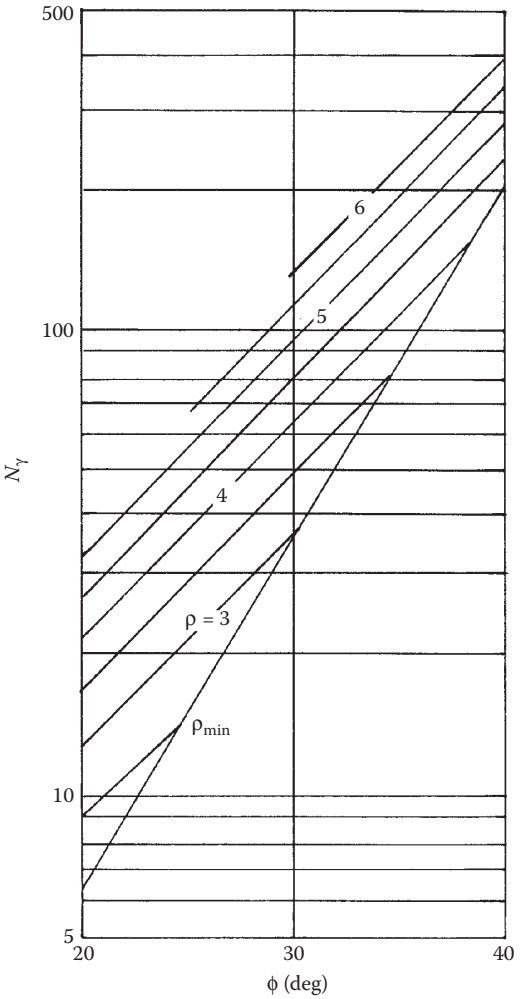


FIGURE 2.18 Balla's bearing capacity factor N_γ

2.8 EFFECT OF WATER TABLE

The preceding sections assume that the water table is located below the failure surface in the soil supporting the foundation. However, if the water table is present near the foundation, the terms q and γ in Equations 2.31, 2.39 through 2.43, and 2.73 need to be modified. In a very early study, Meyerhof[30] evaluated the effect of water table on the ultimate bearing capacity of a shallow continuous (strip) foundation supported by a granular soil ($c = 0$). It was assumed that, for a continuous foundation, the depth of the failure surface in soil extends up to about twice the width of the foundation depending on the soil friction angle ϕ. Meyerhof's[30] analysis can be summarized by referring to the Figure 2.21 in which d is the depth of the ground water table below

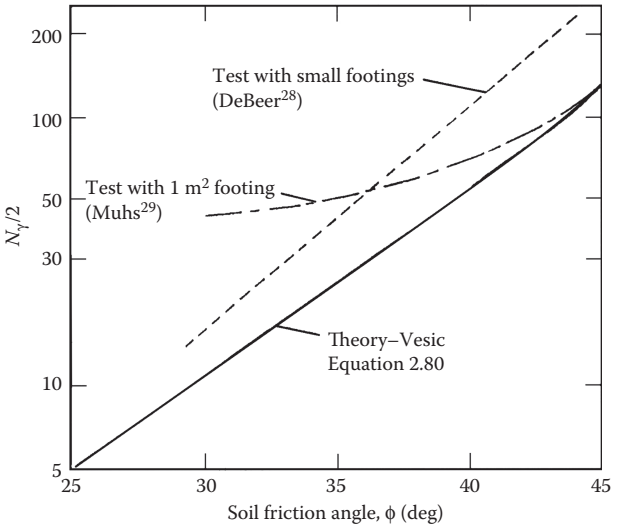


FIGURE 2.19 Comparison of N_γ obtained from tests with small footings and large footings (area = 1 m^2) on sand.

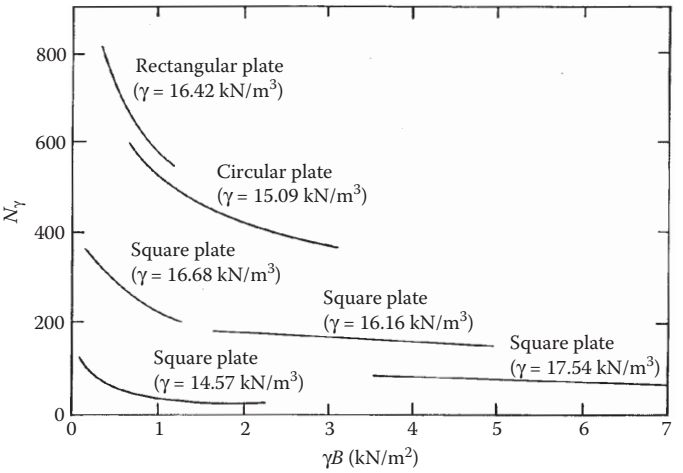


FIGURE 2.20 DeBeer's study on the variation of N_γ with γB.

the ground surface. For $D_f/B \leq 1$, if $d < D_f$, then the ultimate bearing capacity can be expressed as,

$$q_u = \frac{1}{2}\gamma' B N'_\gamma + [\gamma' D_f + (\gamma - \gamma')d]N_q + \gamma_w(D_f - d) \tag{2.87}$$

where

γ_w = unit weight of water.

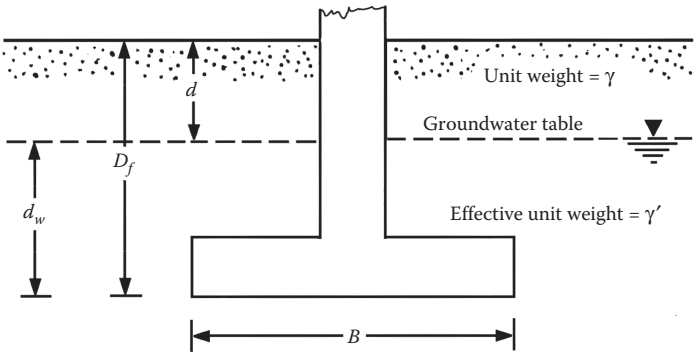


FIGURE 2.21 Effect of ground water table on ultimate bearing capacity.

Again, if $d > D_f$ (i.e., the water level between the bottom of the foundation and depth of the failure zone in soil),

$$q_u = \frac{1}{2}\left[\gamma' + F(\gamma - \gamma')\right]BN_\gamma + \gamma D_f N_q \tag{2.88}$$

where

F is a factor of ϕ and $(d - D_f)/B$ (Figure 2.22)

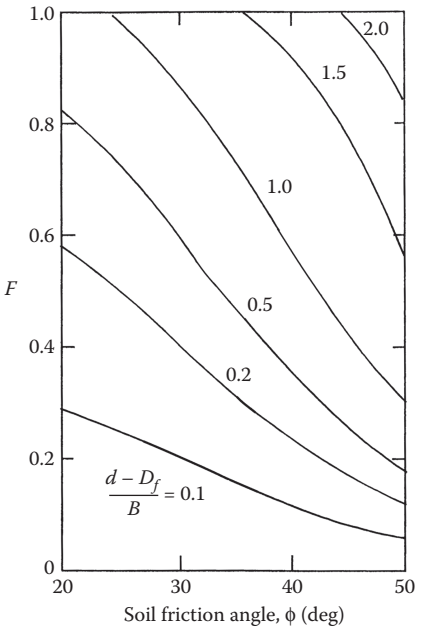


FIGURE 2.22 Meyerhof's ground water table correction factor F (Equation 2.88).

The present trend of correcting the ultimate bearing capacity equation is to consider the following four cases.

Case 1: $d = 0$ For $d = 0$, the term $q = \gamma D_f$ associated with N_q should be changed to $q = \gamma' D_f$ (γ' = effective unit weight of soil). Also, the term γ associated with N_γ should be changed to γ'.

Case 2: $0 < d \le D_f$ For this case, q will be equal to $\gamma d + (D_f - d)\,\gamma'$, and the term γ associated with N_γ should be changed to γ'.

Case 3: $D_f \le d \le D_f + B$ This condition is one in which the groundwater table is located at or below the bottom of the foundation. In such case, $q = \gamma D_f$ and the last term γ should be replaced by an average effective unit weight of soil $\bar{\gamma}$, or

$$\bar{\gamma} = \gamma' + \left(\frac{d - D_f}{B}\right)(\gamma - \gamma') \tag{2.89}$$

Case 4: $d > D_f + B$ For $d > D_f + B$, $q = \gamma D_f$ and the last term should remain γ. This implies that the groundwater table has no effect on the ultimate capacity.

EXAMPLE 2.3

Consider a square foundation measuring 1.5 m × 1.5 m located at a depth of 1 m below the ground surface. The ground water table is located at a depth of 0.75 m below the ground surface. Determine the ultimate bearing capacity using Terzaghi's bearing capacity equation. For the soil, use $\gamma = 16.7$ kN/m^3, $\gamma_{sat} = 17.63$ kN/m^3, $\phi = 27°$, $c = 19$ kN/m^2.

Solution

From Equation 2.39,

$$q_u = 1.3cN_c + qN_q + 0.4\gamma BN_\gamma$$

For $\phi = 27°$, from Table 2.1, $N_c = 29.24$, $N_q = 15.9$, $N_\gamma = 11.6$. Since $0 < d \le D_f$, Case II is applicable for the ground water correction. Thus the modified form of Equation 2.39 will be

$$\begin{aligned} q_u &= 1.3cN_c + [\gamma d + (D_f - d)\gamma']N_q + 0.4\gamma' BN_\gamma \\ &= 1.3)(19)(29.24) + [(16.7)(0.75) + (1 - 0.75)(17.63 - 9.81)](15.9) \\ &\quad + (0.4)(17.63 - 9.81)(1.5)(11.6) \\ &= 1006.887 \text{ kN/m}^2 \approx \mathbf{1007\ kN/m^2} \end{aligned}$$

2.9 GENERAL BEARING CAPACITY EQUATION

The relationships to estimate the ultimate bearing capacity presented in the preceding sections are for continuous (strip) foundations. They do not give (a) the relationships for the ultimate bearing capacity for rectangular foundations (that is, $B/L > 0$; B = width and L = length), and (b) the effect of the depth of the foundation on the increase in the ultimate bearing capacity. Therefore, a general bearing capacity may be written as

$$q_u = cN_c\lambda_{cs}\lambda_{cd} + qN_q\lambda_{qs}\lambda_{qd} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_\gamma\lambda_{\gamma s}\lambda_{\gamma d} \tag{2.90}$$

where

λ_{cs}, λ_{qs}, $\lambda_{\gamma s}$ = shape factors
λ_{cd}, λ_{qd}, $\lambda_{\gamma d}$ = depth factors

Most of the shape and depth factors available in the literature are empirical and/or semi-empirical, and they are given in Table 2.8.

If Equations 2.69, 2.68, and 2.80 are used for N_c, N_q, and N_γ, respectively, it is recommended that DeBeer's shape factors and Hansen's depth factors be used. However, if Equations 2.69, 2.68, and 2.74 are used for bearing capacity factors N_c, N_q, and N_γ, respectively, then Meyerhof's shape and depth factors should be used.

EXAMPLE 2.4

A shallow foundation is 0.6 m wide and 1.2 m long. Given: $D_f = 0.6$ m. The soil supporting the foundation has the following parameters: $\phi = 25°$, $c = 48$ kN/m^2, and $\gamma = 18$ kN/m^3. Determine the ultimate vertical load that the foundation can carry by using

1. Prandtl's value of N_c (Equation 2.69), Reissner's value of N_q (Equation 2.68), Vesic's value of N_γ (Equation 2.76), and the shape and depth factors proposed by DeBeer and Hansen, respectively (Table 2.8)
2. Meyerhof's values of N_c, N_q, and N_γ (Equations 2.69, 2.68, and 2.74) and the shape and depth factors proposed by Meyerhof[8] given in Table 2.8

SOLUTION

From Equation 2.90,

$$q_u = cN_c\lambda_{cs}\lambda_{cd} + qN_q\lambda_{qs}\lambda_{qd} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_\gamma\lambda_{\gamma s}\lambda_{\gamma d}$$

TABLE 2.8
Summary of Shape and Depth Factors

Factor	Relationship	Reference
Shape	For $\phi = 0^\circ$: $\lambda_{cs} = 1 + 0.2\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)$ $\lambda_{qs} = 1$ $\lambda_{\gamma s} = 1$	Meyerhof[8]
	For $\phi \geq 10^\circ$: $\lambda_{cs} = 1 + 0.2\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\tan^2\left(45 + \frac{\phi}{2}\right)$ $\lambda_{qs} = \lambda_{\gamma s} = 1 + 0.1\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\tan^2\left(45 + \frac{\phi}{2}\right)$	
	$\lambda_{cs} = 1 + \left(\frac{N_q}{N_c}\right)\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)$ [*Note:* Use Equation 2.69 for N_c and Equation 2.68 for N_q as given in Table 2.3]	DeBeer[31]
	$\lambda_{qs} = 1 + \left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\tan\phi$ $\lambda_{\gamma s} = 1 - 0.4\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)$	
	$\lambda_{cs} = 1 + (1.8\tan^2\phi + 0.1)\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)^{0.5}$ $\lambda_{qs} = 1 + 1.9\tan^2\phi\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)^{0.5}$ $\lambda_{\gamma s} = 1 + (0.6\tan^2\phi - 0.25)\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)$ (for $\phi \leq 30°$) $\lambda_{\gamma s} = 1 + (1.3\tan^2\phi - 0.5)\left(\frac{L}{B}\right)^{1.5} e^{-\left(\frac{L}{B}\right)}$ (for $\phi > 30°$)	Michalowski[32]
	$\lambda_{cs} = 1 + C_1\left(\frac{B}{L}\right) + C_2\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)^{0.5}$ (for $\phi = 0$)	Salgado et al.[33]

B/L	C_1	C_2
Circle	0.163	0.210
1.00	0.125	0.219
0.50	0.156	0.173
0.33	0.159	0.137
0.25	0.172	0.110
0.20	0.190	0.090

Salgado et al.[33]

(*Continued*)

TABLE 2.8 (*Continued*)
Summary of Shape and Depth Factors

Factor	Relationship	Reference
Depth	For $\phi = 0^\circ$: $\lambda_{cd} = 1 + 0.2\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)$ $\lambda_{qd} = \lambda_{\gamma d} = 1$	Meyerhof[8]
	For $\phi \geq 10^\circ$: $\lambda_{cd} = 1 + 0.2\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)\tan\left(45 + \frac{\phi}{2}\right)$ $\lambda_{qd} = \lambda_{\gamma d} = 1 + 0.1\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)\tan\left(45 + \frac{\phi}{2}\right)$	
	For $D_f/B \leq 1$: $\lambda_{cd} = 1 + 0.4\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)$ (for $\phi = 0$) $\lambda_{cd} = \lambda_{qd} - \frac{1 - \lambda_{qd}}{N_q \tan\phi}$ $\lambda_{qd} = 1 + 2\tan\phi(1 - \sin\phi)^2\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)$ $\lambda_{\gamma d} = 1$	Hansen[10]
	For $D_f/B > 1$: $\lambda_{cd} = 1 + 0.4\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)$ $\lambda_{qd} = 1 + 2\tan\phi(1 - \sin\phi)^2\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)$ $\lambda_{\gamma d} = 1$ $\left[\textit{Note:}\ \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)\text{ is in radians.}\right]$	Hansen[10]
	$\lambda_{cd} = 1 + 0.27\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)^{0.5}$	Salgado et al.[33]

Part a: From Table 2.3 for $\phi = 25°$, $N_c = 20.72$ and $N_q = 10.66$. Also, from Table 2.4 for $\phi = 25°$, Vesic's value of $N_\gamma = 10.88$. DeBeer's shape factors are as follows:

$$\lambda_{cs} = 1 + \left(\frac{N_q}{N_c}\right)\left(\frac{B}{L}\right) = 1 + \left(\frac{10.66}{20.72}\right)\left(\frac{0.6}{1.2}\right) = 1.257$$

$$\lambda_{qs} = 1 + \left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\tan\phi = 1 + \left(\frac{0.6}{1.2}\right)\tan 25 = 1.233$$

$$\lambda_{\gamma s} = 1 - 0.4\left(\frac{B}{L}\right) = 1 - (0.4)\left(\frac{0.6}{1.2}\right) = 0.8$$

Hansen's depth factors are as follows:

$$\lambda_{qd} = 1 + 2\tan\phi(1-\sin\phi)^2\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right) = 1 + 2(\tan 25)(1-\sin 25)^2\left(\frac{0.6}{0.6}\right) = 1.115$$

$$\lambda_{cd} = \lambda_{qd} - \frac{1-\lambda_{qd}}{N_c \tan\phi} = 1.115 - \frac{1-1.155}{20.72(\tan 25)} = 1.099$$

$$\lambda_{\gamma d} = 1$$

So,

$$\begin{aligned} q_u &= (48)(20.72)(1.257)(1.099) + (0.6)(18)(10.66)(1.233)(1.115) \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{2}(18)(0.6)(10.88)(0.8)(1) \\ &= 1373.9 + 163.96 + 47 \approx \mathbf{1585\ kN/m^2} \end{aligned}$$

Part b: From Table 2.3 for $\phi = 25°$, $N_c = 20.72$, $N_q = 10.66$, and $N_\gamma = 6.77$. Now referring to Table 2.6, Meyerhof's shape and depth factors are as follows:

$$\lambda_{cs} = 1 + 0.2\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\tan^2\left(45 + \frac{\phi}{2}\right) = 1 + (0.2)\left(\frac{0.6}{1.2}\right)\tan^2\left(45 + \frac{25}{2}\right) = 1.246$$

$$\lambda_{qs} = \lambda_{\gamma s} = 1 + 0.1\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\tan^2\left(45 + \frac{\phi}{2}\right) = 1 + 0.1\left(\frac{0.6}{1.2}\right)\tan^2\left(45 + \frac{25}{2}\right) = 1.123$$

$$\lambda_{cd} = 1 + 0.2\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)\tan\left(45 + \frac{\phi}{2}\right) = 1 + 0.2\left(\frac{0.6}{0.6}\right)\tan\left(45 + \frac{25}{2}\right) = 1.314$$

$$\lambda_{qd} = \lambda_{\gamma d} = 1 + 0.1\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)\tan\left(45 + \frac{\phi}{2}\right) = 1 + 0.1\left(\frac{0.6}{0.6}\right)\tan\left(45 + \frac{25}{2}\right) = 1.157$$

So,

$$\begin{aligned} q_u &= (48)(20.72)(1.246)(1.314) + (0.6)(18)(10.66)(1.123)(1.157) \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{2}(18)(0.6)(6.77)(1.123)(1.157) \\ &= 1628.37 + 149.6 + 47.7 \approx \mathbf{1826\ kN/m^2} \end{aligned}$$

2.10 EFFECT OF SOIL COMPRESSIBILITY

In Section 2.3 the ultimate bearing capacity equations proposed by Terzaghi[1] for local shear failure were given (Equations 2.41 through 2.43). Also, suggestions by Vesic[4] shown in Equations 2.44 and 2.45 address the problem of soil compressibility

and its effect on soil bearing capacity. In order to account for soil compressibility Vesic[4] proposed the following modifications to Equation 2.90, or

$$q_u = cN_c\lambda_{cs}\lambda_{cd}\lambda_{cc} + qN_q\lambda_{qs}\lambda_{qd}\lambda_{qc} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_\gamma\lambda_{\gamma s}\lambda_{\gamma d}\lambda_{\gamma c} \tag{2.91}$$

where

λ_{cc}, λ_{qc}, $\lambda_{\gamma c}$ = soil compressibility factors

The soil compressibility factors were derived by Vesic[4] from the analogy of expansion of cavities.[34] According to this theory, in order to calculate λ_{cc}, λ_{qc}, and $\lambda_{\gamma c}$, the following steps should be taken:

1. Calculate the rigidity index I_r of the soil (approximately at a depth of $B/2$ below the bottom of the foundation), or

$$I_r = \frac{G}{c + q\tan\phi} \tag{2.92}$$

where

G = shear modulus of the soil
ϕ = soil friction angle
q = effective overburden pressure at the level of the foundation

2. The critical rigidity index of the soil $I_{r(\mathrm{cr})}$ can be expressed as

$$I_{r(\mathrm{cr})} = \frac{1}{2}\left\{\exp\left[\left(3.3 - 0.45\frac{B}{L}\right)\cot\left(45 - \frac{\phi}{2}\right)\right]\right\} \tag{2.93}$$

The variations of $I_{r(\mathrm{cr})}$ with B/L are given in Table 2.9.

3. If $I_r \geq I_{r(\mathrm{cr})}$, then use λ_{cc}, λ_{qc}, and $\lambda_{\gamma c}$ equal to one. However, if $I_r < I_{r(\mathrm{cr})}$,

$$\lambda_{\gamma c} = \lambda_{qc} = \exp\left\{\left[-4.4 + 0.6\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\right]\tan\phi + \frac{(3.07\sin\phi)(\log 2I_r)}{1 + \sin\phi}\right\} \tag{2.94}$$

For $\phi = 0$,

$$\lambda_{cc} = 0.32 + 0.12\frac{B}{L} + 0.6\log I_r \tag{2.95}$$

For other friction angles,

$$\lambda_{cc} = \lambda_{qc} - \frac{1 - \lambda_{qc}}{N_c\tan\phi} \tag{2.96}$$

TABLE 2.9
Variation of $I_{r(cr)}$ with ϕ' and B/L (Equation 2.93)

ϕ'	$I_{r(cr)}$					
(deg)	$B/L = 0$	$B/L = 0.2$	$B/L = 0.4$	$B/L = 0.6$	$B/L = 0.8$	$B/L = 1.0$
0	13.56	12.39	11.32	10.35	9.46	8.54
5	18.30	16.59	15.04	13.63	12.36	11.20
10	25.53	22.93	20.60	18.50	16.62	14.93
15	36.85	32.77	29.14	25.92	23.05	20.49
20	55.66	48.95	43.04	37.85	33.29	29.27
25	88.93	77.21	67.04	58.20	50.53	43.88
30	151.78	129.88	111.13	95.09	81.36	69.62
35	283.20	238.24	200.41	168.59	141.82	119.31
40	593.09	488.97	403.13	332.35	274.01	225.90
45	1440.94	1159.56	933.19	750.90	604.26	486.26

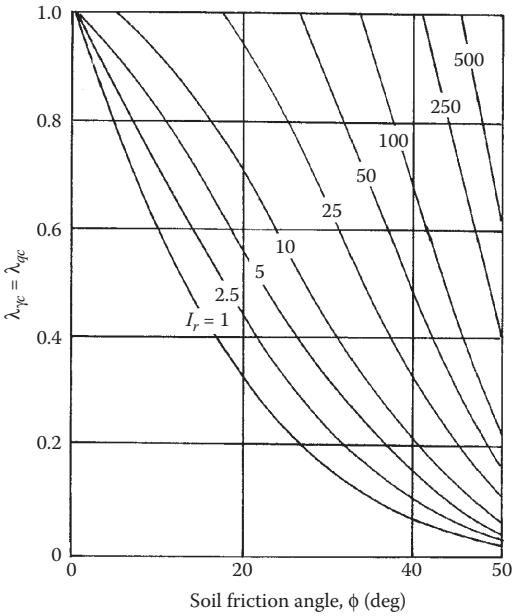


FIGURE 2.23 Variation of $\lambda_{\gamma c} = \lambda_{qc}$ with ϕ and I_r for foundation ($B/L = 1$).

Figures 2.23 and 2.24 show the variations of $\lambda_{\gamma c} = \lambda_{qc}$ (Equation 2.94) with ϕ and I_r for $B/L = 1$ and $L/B > 5$, respectively.

EXAMPLE 2.5

Refer to Example 2.4a. For the soil, given: modulus of elasticity $E = 620$ kN/m^2; Poisson's ratio $v = 0.3$. Considering the compressibility factors, determine the ultimate bearing capacity.

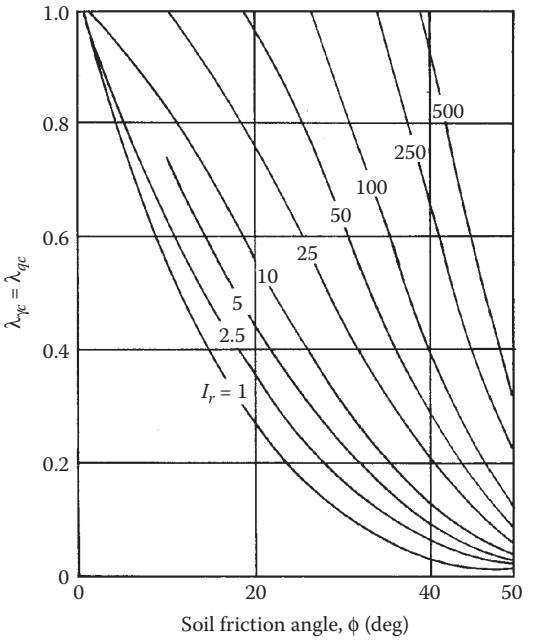


FIGURE 2.24 Variation of $\lambda_{\gamma c} = \lambda_{qc}$ with ϕ and I_r for foundation with $L/B > 5$.

SOLUTION

$$I_r = \frac{G}{c + q\tan\phi} = \frac{E}{2(1+\nu)(c + q\tan\phi)} = \frac{620}{2(1+0.3)[48 + (18\times 0.6)\tan 25]} = 4.5$$

From Equation 2.93:

$$I_{r(\text{cr})} = \frac{1}{2}\left\{\exp\left[\left(3.3 - 0.45\frac{B}{L}\right)\cot\left(45 - \frac{\phi}{2}\right)\right]\right\}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}\left\{\exp\left[\left(3.3 - 0.45\times\frac{0.6}{1.2}\right)\cot\left(45 - \frac{25}{2}\right)\right]\right\} = 62.46$$

Since $I_{r(\text{cr})} > I_r$, use λ_{cc}, λ_{qc}, and $\lambda_{\gamma c}$ relationships from Equations 2.94 and 2.96:

$$\lambda_{\gamma c} = \lambda_{qc} = \exp\left\{\left[-4.4 + 0.6\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\right]\tan\phi + \frac{(3.07\sin\phi)(\log 2I_r)}{1+\sin\phi}\right\}$$

$$= \exp\left\{\left[-4.4 + 0.6\left(\frac{0.6}{1.2}\right)\right]\tan 25 + \frac{(3.07\sin 25)\log(2\times 4.5)}{1+\sin 25}\right\} = 0.353$$

Also,

$$\lambda_c = \lambda_{qc} - \frac{1-\lambda_{qc}}{N_c \tan\phi} = 0.353 - \frac{1-0.353}{20.72\tan 25} = 0.286$$

Equation 2.91:

$$q_u = (48)(20.72)(1.257)(1.099)(0.286) + (0.6)(18)(10.66)(1.233)(1.115)(0.353) + \frac{1}{2}(18)(0.6)(10.88)(0.8)(1)(0.353)$$
$$= 392.94 + 55.81 + 16.59 \approx \mathbf{465.4\ kN/m^2}$$

2.11 BEARING CAPACITY OF FOUNDATIONS ON ANISOTROPIC SOILS

2.11.1 Foundation on Sand ($c = 0$)

Most natural deposits of cohesionless soil have an inherent anisotropic structure due to their nature of deposition in horizontal layers. The initial deposition of the granular soil and the subsequent compaction in the vertical direction cause the soil particles to take a preferred orientation. For a granular soil of this type Meyerhof suggested that, if the *direction of application of deviator stress* makes an angle i with the direction of deposition of soil (Figure 2.25), then the soil friction angle ϕ can be approximated in a form

$$\phi = \phi_1 - (\phi_1 - \phi_2)\left(\frac{i^\circ}{90^\circ}\right) \tag{2.97}$$

where

ϕ_1 = soil friction angle with $i = 0^\circ$
ϕ_2 = soil friction angle with $i = 90^\circ$

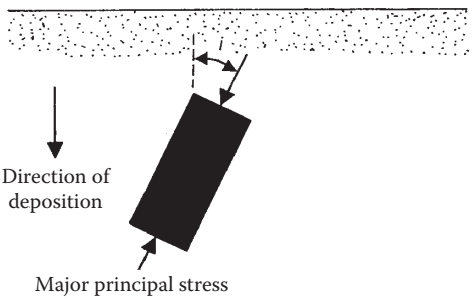


FIGURE 2.25 Anisotropy in sand deposit.

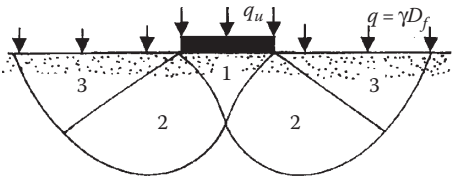


FIGURE 2.26 Continuous rough foundation on anisotropic sand deposit.

Figure 2.26 shows a continuous (strip) rough foundation on an anisotropic sand deposit. The failure zone in the soil at ultimate load is also shown in the figure. In the triangular zone (zone 1) the soil friction angle will be $\phi = \phi_1$; however, the magnitude of ϕ will vary between the limits of ϕ_1 and ϕ_2 in zone 2. In zone 3 the effective friction angle of the soil will be equal to ϕ_2. Meyerhof[35] suggested that the ultimate bearing capacity of a continuous foundation on anisotropic sand could be calculated by assuming an equivalent friction angle $\phi = \phi_{eq}$, or

$$\phi_{eq} = \frac{(2\phi_1 + \phi_2)}{3} = \frac{(2+m)\phi_1}{3} \tag{2.98}$$

where

$$m = \text{friction ratio} = \frac{\phi_2}{\phi_1} \tag{2.99}$$

Once the equivalent friction angle is determined, the ultimate bearing capacity for vertical loading conditions on the foundation can be expressed as (neglecting the depth factors)

$$q_u = qN_{q(eq)}\lambda_{qs} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_{\gamma(eq)}\lambda_{\gamma s} \tag{2.100}$$

where

$N_{q(eq)}$, $N_{\gamma(eq)}$ = equivalent bearing capacity factors corresponding to the friction angle $\phi = \phi_{eq}$

In most cases the value of ϕ_1 will be known. Figures 2.27 and 2.28 present the plots of $N_{\gamma(eq)}$ and $N_{q(eq)}$ in terms of m and ϕ_1. Note that the soil friction angle $\phi = \phi_{eq}$ was used in Equations 2.68 and 2.74 to prepare the graphs. So, combining the relationships for shape factors (Table 2.8) given by DeBeer,[31]

$$q_u = qN_{q(eq)}\left[1 + \left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\tan\phi_{eq}\right] + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_{\gamma(eq)}\left[1 - 0.4\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\right] \tag{2.101}$$

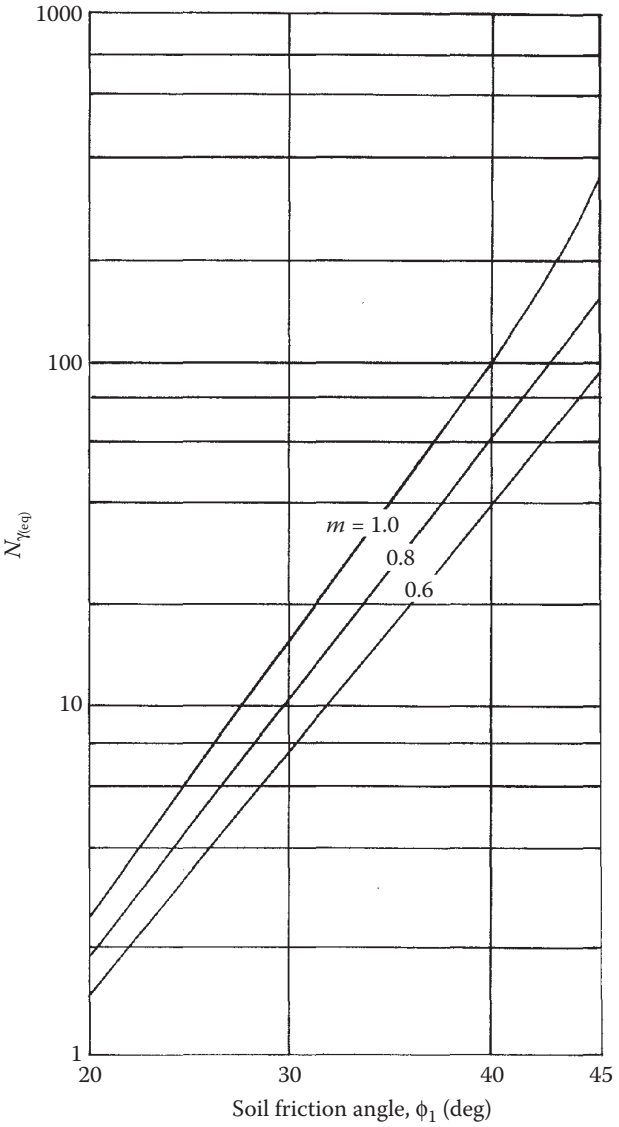


FIGURE 2.27 Variation of $N_{\gamma(eq)}$ (Equation 2.100).

EXAMPLE 2.6

Consider a shallow foundation supported by a granular soil. Given:

For the foundation: $B = 0.75$ m, $L = 1.5$ m, $D_f = 0.5$ m
For the soil: $\phi_1 = 38°$ ($i = 0$; see Figure 2.25), $\phi_2 = 42°$ ($i = 90°$; see Figure 2.25); $\gamma = 17$ kN/m^3
Determine the ultimate bearing capacity q_u using Equation 2.101.

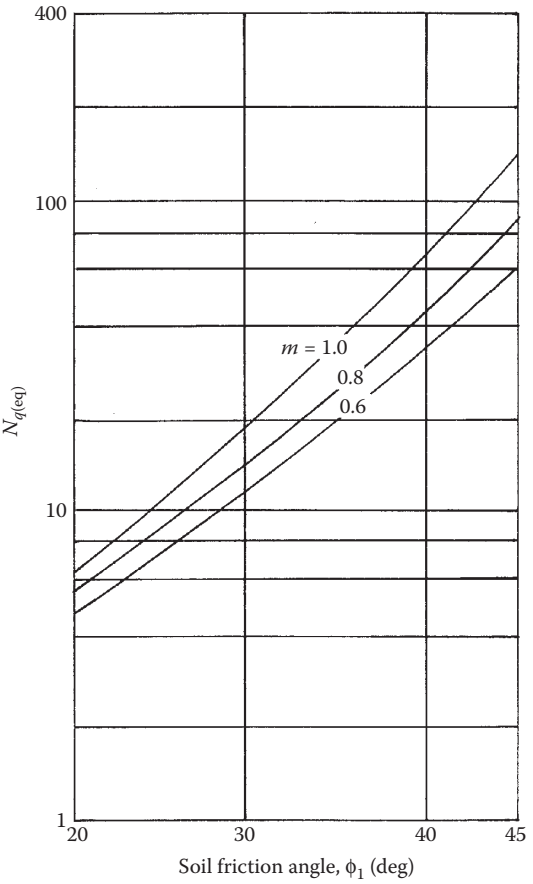


FIGURE 2.28 Variation of $N_{q(eq)}$ (Equation 2.100).

Solution

From Equation 2.98,

$$\phi_{eq} = \frac{(2\phi_1 + \phi_2)}{3} = \frac{(2)(38) + 42}{3} = 39.3^{\circ}$$

From Table 2.3, with $\phi = \phi_{eq}$, $N_{q(eq)} \approx 58$ and $N_{\gamma(eq)} \approx 83$. From Equation 2.101

$$q_u = qN_{q(eq)}\left[1 + \left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\tan\phi_{eq}\right] + \frac{1}{2}\gamma B N_{\gamma(eq)}\left[1 - 0.4\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\right]$$

$$= (17 \times 0.5)(58)\left[1 + \left(\frac{0.75}{1.5}\right)(\tan 39.4)\right] + \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)(17)(0.75)(83)\left[1 - 0.4\left(\frac{0.75}{1.5}\right)\right]$$

$$\approx \mathbf{1118\ kN/m^2}$$

2.11.2 Foundations on Saturated Clay ($\phi = 0$ Concept)

As in the case of sand discussed above, saturated clay deposits also exhibit anisotropic undrained shear strength properties. Figure 2.29a,b shows the nature of variation of the undrained shear strength of clays c_u with respect to the direction of principal stress application.[36] Note that the undrained shear strength plot shown in Figure 2.29b is elliptical; however, the center of the ellipse does not match the origin. The geometry of the ellipse leads to the equation

$$\frac{b}{a} = \frac{c_{u(i=45^\circ)}}{\sqrt{(c_{uV})(c_{uH})}} \tag{2.102}$$

where

c_{uV} = undrained shear strength with $i = 0^\circ$
c_{uH} = undrained shear strength with $i = 90^\circ$

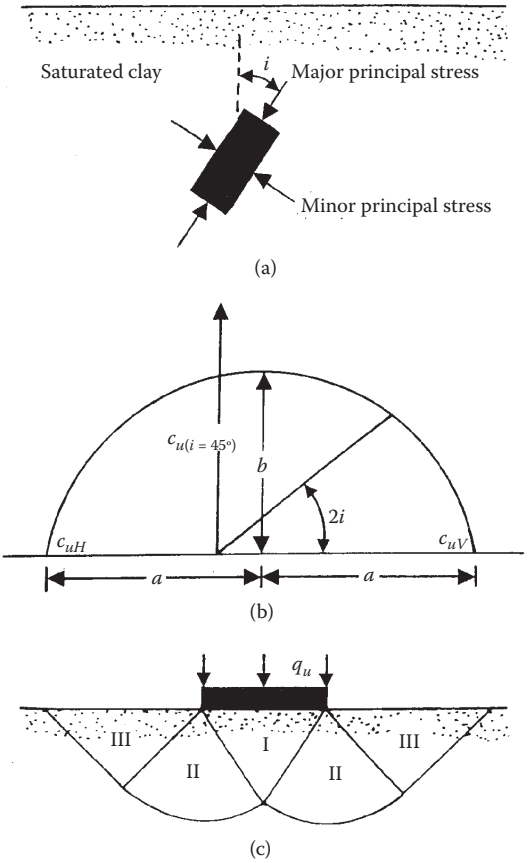


FIGURE 2.29 Bearing capacity of continuous foundation on anisotropic saturated clay: (a) direction of principal stress application; (b) variation of c_u with respect to the direction of principal stress application; (c) failure surface in soil at ultimate load.

A continuous foundation on a saturated clay layer ($\phi = 0$) whose directional strength variation follows Equation 2.102 is shown in Figure 2.29c. The failure surface in the soil at ultimate load is also shown in the figure. Note that, in zone I, the major principal stress direction is vertical. The direction of the major principal stress is horizontal in zone III; however, it gradually changes from vertical to horizontal in zone II. Using the stress characteristic solution, Davis and Christian[36] determined the bearing capacity factor $N_{c(i)}$ for the foundation. For a surface foundation,

$$q_u = N_{c(i)}\left(\frac{c_{uV} + c_{uH}}{2}\right) \tag{2.103}$$

The variation of $N_{c(i)}$ with the ratio of a/b (Figure 2.29b) is shown in Figure 2.30. Note that, when $a = b$, $N_{c(i)}$ becomes equal to $N_c = 5.14$ (isotropic case; Equation 2.69).

In many practical conditions, the magnitudes of c_{uV} and c_{uH} may be known but not the magnitude of $c_{u(i=45°)}$. If such is the case, the magnitude of a/b (Equation 2.102) cannot be determined. For such conditions, the following approximation may be used:

$$q_u \approx 0.9 \underbrace{N_c}_{=5.14}\left(\frac{c_{uV} + c_{uH}}{2}\right) \tag{2.104}$$

The preceding equation was suggested by Davis and Christian,[36] and it is based on the undrained shear strength results of several clays. So, in general, for a rectangular foundation with vertical loading condition,

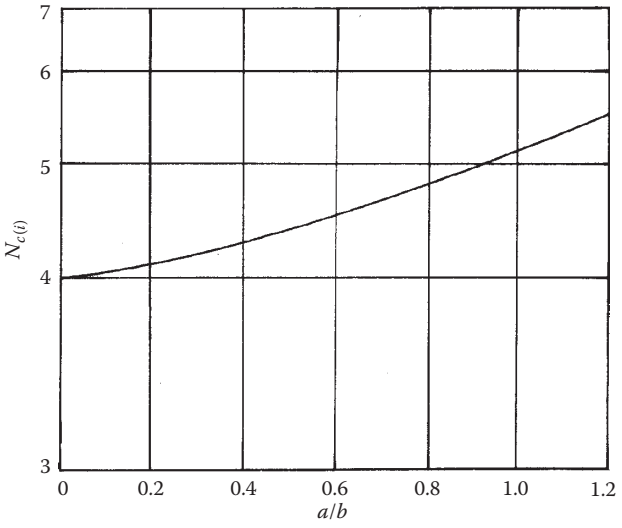


FIGURE 2.30 Variation of $N_{c(i)}$ with a/b based on the analysis of Davis and Christian.

$$q_u = N_{c(i)}\left[\frac{c_{uV} + c_{uH}}{2}\right]\lambda_{cs}\lambda_{cd} + qN_q\lambda_{qs}\lambda_{qd} \tag{2.105}$$

For $\phi = 0$ condition, $N_q = 1$ and $q = \gamma D_f$. So,

$$q_u = N_{c(i)}\left(\frac{c_{uV} + c_{uH}}{2}\right)\lambda_{cs}\lambda_{cd} + \gamma D_f\lambda_{qs}\lambda_{qd} \tag{2.106}$$

The desired relationships for the shape and depth factors can be taken from Table 2.8 and the magnitude of q_u can be estimated.

EXAMPLE 2.7

Consider an anisotropic saturated clay deposit. For the clay, referring to Figure 2.29, $c_{uH} = 56$ kN/m^2 and $c_{uV} = 30$ kN/m^2.

The variation of c_u can be given by the equation,

$$c_{u(i)} = c_{uH} + (c_{uV} - c_{uH})\cos^2 i$$

A shallow foundation with $B = 0.3$ m, $L = 1$ m and $D_f = 0.3$ is constructed in the clay ($\gamma = 17.5$ kN/m^3). Estimate the ultimate bearing capacity of the foundation.

Solution

Given,

$$c_{u(i)} = c_{uH} + (c_{uV} - c_{uH})\cos^2 i$$

So,

$$c_{u(i=45^\circ)} = 56 + (30 - 56)\cos^2 45 = 43 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

From Equation 2.102,

$$\frac{b}{a} = \frac{c_{u(i=45^\circ)}}{\sqrt{(c_{uV})(c_{uH})}} = \frac{43}{\sqrt{(30)(56)}} \approx 1.05$$

So

$$\frac{a}{b} = \frac{1}{1.05} = 0.95$$

From Figure 2.30, for $a/b = 0.5$, the value of $N_{c(i)} \approx 5$.

From Equation 2.106,

$$q_u = N_{c(i)}\left(\frac{c_{uV} + c_{uH}}{2}\right)\lambda_{cs}\lambda_{cd} + \gamma D_f \lambda_{qs}\lambda_{qd}$$

From Table 2.8, using DeBeer's shape factors,

$$\lambda_{cs} = 1 + \left(\frac{N_q}{N_c}\right)\left(\frac{B}{L}\right) = 1 + \left(\frac{1}{5}\right)\left(\frac{0.3}{2.0}\right) = 1.06$$

$$\lambda_{qs} = 1 + \left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\tan\phi$$

With $\phi = 0$,

$$\lambda_{qs} = 1 + \left(\frac{0.3}{1}\right)\tan 0 = 1$$

Again, using Hansen's depth factors ($\phi = 0$),

$$\lambda_{cd} = 1 + 0.4\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right) = 1 + (0.4)\left(\frac{0.3}{1}\right) = 1.12$$

$$\lambda_{qd} = 1 + 2\tan\phi(1 - \sin\phi)^2\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right) = 1$$

Hence,

$$q_u = (5)\left(\frac{30 + 56}{2}\right)(1.06)(1.12) + (17.5)(0.3)(1)(1)$$
$$= 255.25 + 5.25 = \mathbf{260.5\ kN/m^2}$$

2.11.3 Foundations on c–ϕ Soil

The ultimate bearing capacity of a continuous shallow foundation supported by anisotropic c–ϕ soil was studied by Reddy and Srinivasan[37] using the method of characteristics. According to this analysis the shear strength of a soil can be given as

$$s = \sigma' \tan\phi + c$$

It is assumed, however, that the soil is anisotropic only with respect to cohesion. As mentioned previously in this section, the direction of the major principal stress (with respect to the vertical) along a slip surface located below the foundation changes. In anisotropic soils, this will induce a change in the shearing resistance to

the bearing capacity failure of the foundation. Reddy and Srinivasan[37] assumed the directional variation of c at a given depth z below the foundation as (Figure 2.31a)

$$c_{i(z)} = c_{H(z)} + [c_{V(z)} - c_{H(z)}]\cos^2 i \tag{2.107}$$

where

$c_{i(z)}$ = cohesion at a depth z when the major principal stress is inclined at an angle i to the vertical (Figure 2.31b)
$c_{V(z)}$ = cohesion at depth z for $i = 0°$
$c_{H(z)}$ = cohesion at depth z for $i = 90°$

The preceding equation is of the form suggested by Casagrande and Carrillo.[38]

Figure 2.31b shows the nature of variation of $c_{i(z)}$ with i. The anisotropy coefficient K is defined as the ratio of $c_{V(z)}$ to $c_{H(z)}$:

$$K = \frac{c_{V(z)}}{c_{H(z)}} \tag{2.108}$$

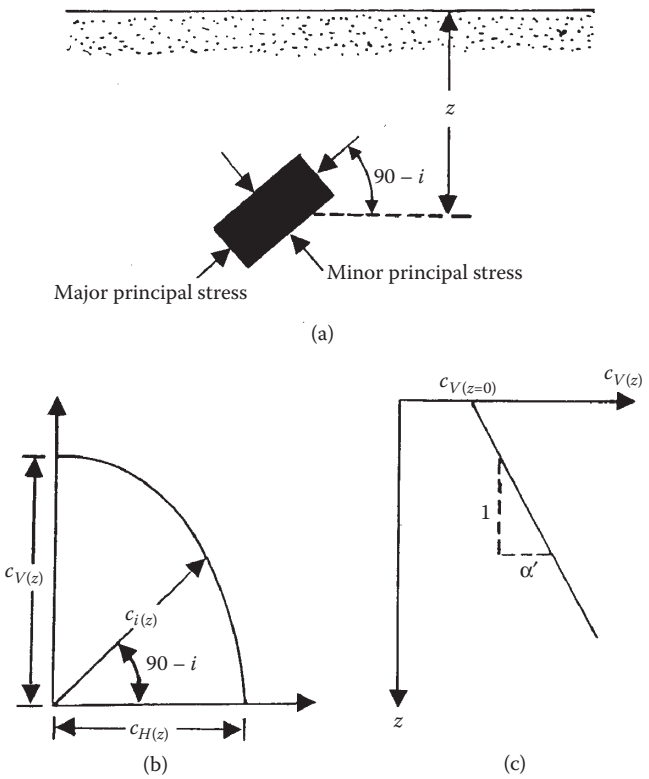


FIGURE 2.31 Anisotropic clay soil—assumptions for bearing capacity evaluation: (a) directions of principal stresses; (b) directional variation of $c_{i(z)}$; (c) variation of $c_{V(z)}$ with depth.

In *overconsolidated* soils, K is less than one; for *normally consolidated* soils, the magnitude of K is greater than one.

For many consolidated soils, the cohesion increases linearly with depth (Figure 2.31c). Thus,

$$c_{V(z)} = c_{V(z=0)} + \alpha' z \tag{2.109}$$

where

$c_{V(z)}$, $c_{V(z=0)}$ = cohesion in the vertical direction (that is, $i = 0$) at depths of z and $z = 0$, respectively

α' = the rate of variation with depth z

According to this analysis, the ultimate bearing capacity of a continuous foundation may be given as

$$q_u = c_{V(z=0)} N_{c(i')} + q N_{q(i')} + \frac{1}{2} \gamma B N_{\gamma(i')} \tag{2.110}$$

where

$N_{c(i')}$, $N_{q(i')}$, $N_{\gamma(i')}$ = bearing capacity factors

$q = \gamma D_f$

This equation is similar to Terzaghi's bearing capacity equation for continuous foundations (Equation 2.31). The bearing capacity factors are functions of the parameters β_c and K. The term β_c can be defined as

$$\beta_c = \frac{\alpha' l}{c_{V(z=0)}} \tag{2.111}$$

where

$$l = \text{characteristic length} = \frac{c_{V(z=0)}}{\gamma} \tag{2.112}$$

Furthermore, $N_{c(i')}$ is also a function of the nondimensional width of the foundation, B':

$$B' = \frac{B}{l} \tag{2.113}$$

The variations of the bearing capacity factors with β_c, B', ϕ, and K determined using the method of analysis by Reddy and Srinivasan[37] are shown in Figures 2.32 through 2.37. This study shows that the rupture surface in soil at ultimate load extends to a smaller distance below the bottom of the foundation for the case where

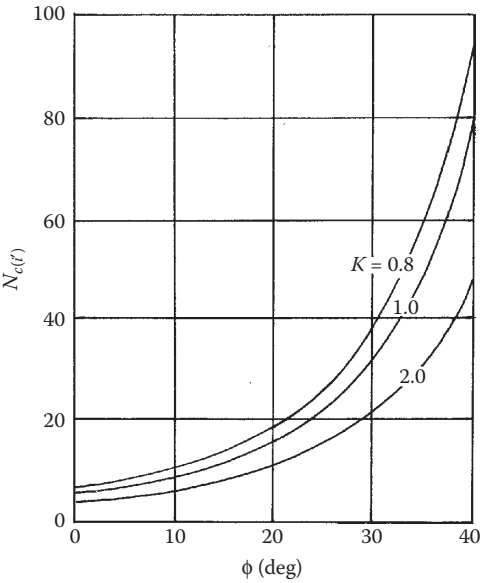


FIGURE 2.32 Reddy and Srinivasan's bearing capacity factor, $N_{c(i')}$—influence of K ($\beta_c = 0$).

the anisotropic coefficient K is greater than one. Also, when K changes from one to two with $\alpha' = 0$, the magnitude of $N_{c(i')}$ is reduced by about 30%–40%.

EXAMPLE 2.8

Estimate the ultimate bearing capacity q_u of a continuous foundation with the following: $B = 3$ m; $c_{V(z=0)} = 12$ kN/m^2; $\alpha' = 3.9$ kN/m^2/m; $D_f = 1$ m; $\gamma = 17.29$ kN/m^3; $\phi = 20°$. Assume $K = 2$.

SOLUTION

From Equation 2.112:

$$\text{Characteristic length,} \quad l = \frac{c_{V(z=0)}}{\gamma} = \frac{12}{17.29} = 0.69$$

$$\text{Nondimensional width,} \quad B' = \frac{B}{l} = \frac{3}{0.69} = 4.34$$

Also,

$$\beta_c = \frac{\alpha' l}{c_{V(z=0)}} = \frac{(4.34)(0.69)}{12} = 0.25$$

Now, referring to Figures 2.33, 2.34, 2.36, and 2.37 for $\phi = 20°$, $\beta_c = 0.25$, $K = 2$, and $B' = 4.34$ (by interpolation),

$$N_{c(i')} \approx 14.5; \quad N_{q(i')} \approx 6, \quad \text{and} \quad N_{\gamma(i')} \approx 4$$

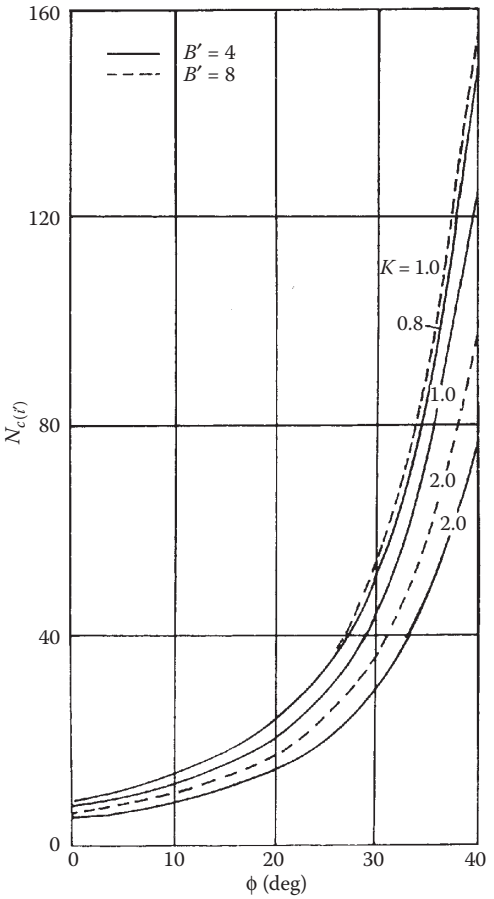


FIGURE 2.33 Reddy and Srinivasan's bearing capacity factor, $N_{c(i')}$—influence of K ($\beta_c = 0.2$).

From Equation 2.110,

$$q_u = c_{V(z=0)}N_{c(i')} + qN_{q(i')} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_{\gamma(i')} = (12)(14.5) + (1)(17.29)(6)$$
$$+ \frac{1}{2}(17.29)(3)(4) \approx \mathbf{381\ kN/m^2}$$

2.12 ALLOWABLE BEARING CAPACITY WITH RESPECT TO FAILURE

Allowable bearing capacity for a given foundation may be (a) to protect the foundation against a bearing capacity failure, or (b) to ensure that the foundation does not undergo undesirable settlement. There are three definitions for the allowable capacity with respect to a bearing capacity failure.

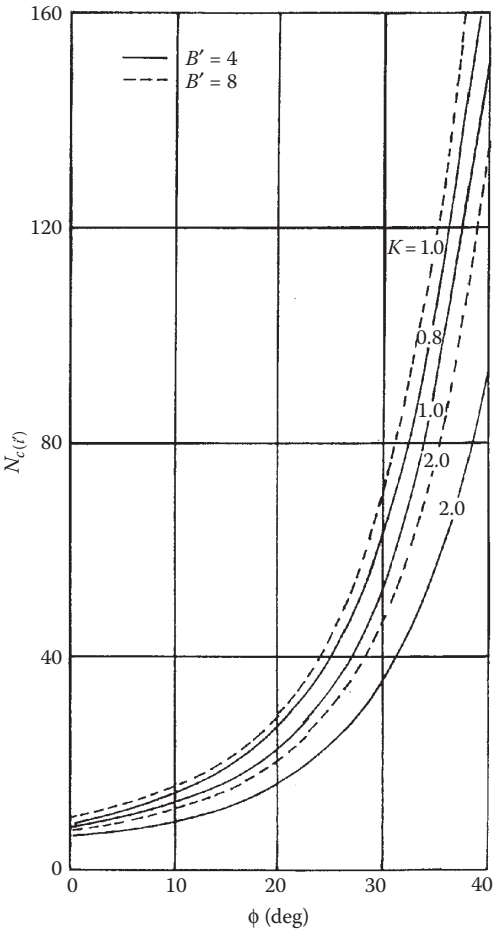


FIGURE 2.34 Reddy and Srinivasan's bearing capacity factor, $N_{c(i')}$—influence of K ($\beta_c = 0.4$).

2.12.1 Gross Allowable Bearing Capacity

The gross allowable bearing capacity is defined as

$$q_{\text{all}} = \frac{q_u}{FS} \tag{2.114}$$

where

q_{all} = gross allowable bearing capacity
FS = factor of safety

In most cases a factor of safety of 3 to 4 is generally acceptable.

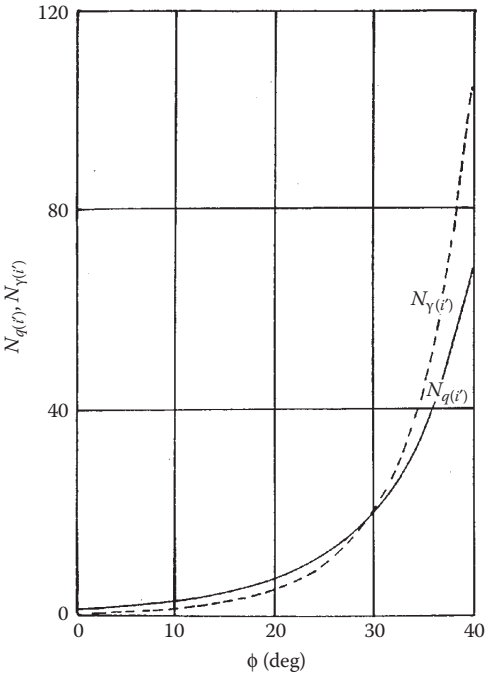


FIGURE 2.35 Reddy and Srinivasan's bearing capacity factor, $N_{\gamma(i')}$ and $N_{q(i')}$—influence of K ($\beta_c = 0$).

2.12.2 Net Allowable Bearing Capacity

The net ultimate bearing capacity is defined as the ultimate load per unit area of the foundation that can be supported by the soil in excess of the pressure caused by the surrounding soil at the foundation level. If the difference between the unit weight of concrete used in the foundation and the unit weight of the surrounding soil is assumed to be negligible, then

$$q_{u(\text{net})} = q_u - q \tag{2.115}$$

where

$q = \gamma D_f$

$q_{u(\text{net})}$ = net ultimate bearing capacity

The net allowable bearing capacity can now be defined as

$$q_{\text{all(net)}} = \frac{q_{u(\text{net})}}{FS} \tag{2.116}$$

A factor of safety of 3 to 4 in the preceding equation is generally considered satisfactory.

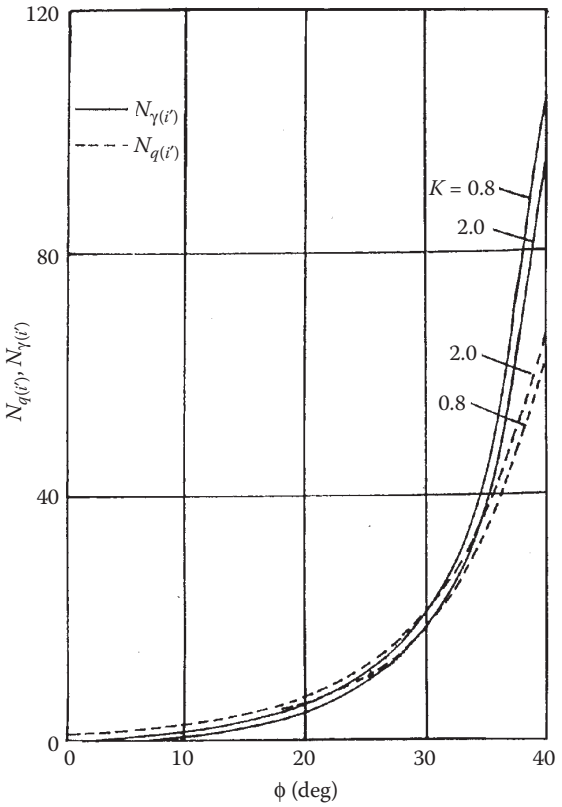


FIGURE 2.36 Reddy and Srinivasan's bearing capacity factor, $N_{\gamma(i')}$ and $N_{q(i')}$—influence of K ($\beta_c = 0.2$).

2.12.3 Allowable Bearing Capacity with Respect to Shear Failure [$q_{\text{ALL(SHEAR)}}$]

For this case a factor of safety with respect to shear failure $FS_{(\text{shear})}$, which may be in the range of 1.3–1.6, is adopted. In order to evaluate $q_{\text{all(shear)}}$, the following procedure may be used:

1. Determine the developed cohesion c_d and the developed angle of friction ϕ_d as

$$c_d = \frac{c}{FS_{(\text{shear})}} \tag{2.117}$$

$$\phi_d = \tan^{-1}\left[\frac{\tan\phi}{FS_{(\text{shear})}}\right] \tag{2.118}$$

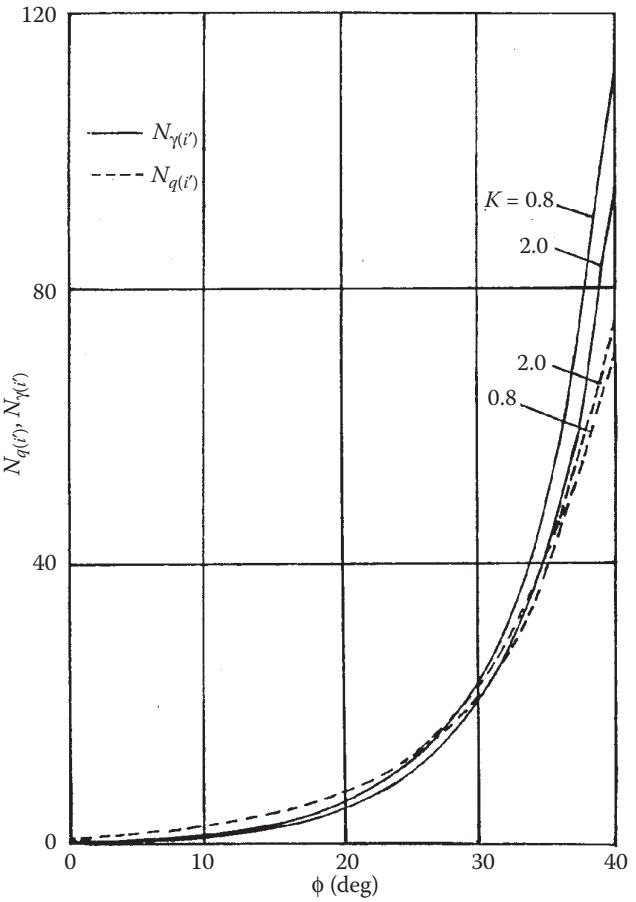


FIGURE 2.37 Reddy and Srinivasan's bearing capacity factor, $N_{\gamma(i')}$ and $N_{q(i')}$—influence of K ($\beta_c = 0.4$).

2. The gross and net ultimate allowable bearing capacities with respect to shear failure can now be determined as (Equation 2.90)

$$q_{\text{all(shear)}-\text{gross}} = c_d N_c \lambda_{cs} \lambda_{cd} + q N_q \lambda_{qs} \lambda_{qd} + \frac{1}{2} \gamma B N_\gamma \lambda_{\gamma s} \lambda_{\gamma d} \tag{2.119}$$

$$q_{\text{all(shear)}-\text{net}} = q_{\text{all(shear)}-\text{gross}} - q = c_d N_c \lambda_{cs} \lambda_{cd} + q(N_q - 1) \lambda_{qs} \lambda_{qd} + \frac{1}{2} \gamma B N_\gamma \lambda_{\gamma s} \lambda_{\gamma d} \tag{2.120}$$

where

N_c, N_q, and N_γ = bearing capacity factors for friction angle ϕ_d

EXAMPLE 2.9

Refer to Example 2.4, Part a.

1. Determine the gross allowable bearing capacity. Assume $FS = 4$.
2. Determine the net allowable bearing capacity. Assume $FS = 4$.
3. Determine the gross and net allowable bearing capacities with respect to shear failure. Assume $FS_{(\text{shear})} = 1.5$.

SOLUTION

Part 1: From Example 2.1, problem a, $q_u = 1585$ kN/m^2

$$q_{\text{all}} = \frac{q_u}{FS} = \frac{1585}{4} \approx \mathbf{396.25\ kN/m^2}$$

Part 2:

$$q_{\text{all(net)}} = \frac{q_u - q}{FS} = \frac{1585 - (0.6)(18)}{4} \approx \mathbf{393.55\ kN/m^2}$$

Part 3:

$$c_d = \frac{c}{FS_{(\text{shear})}} = \frac{48}{1.5} = 32\ \text{kN/m}^2$$

$$\phi_d = \tan^{-1}\left[\frac{\tan\phi}{FS_{(\text{shear})}}\right] \tan^{-1}\left[\frac{\tan 25}{1.5}\right] = 17.3°$$

For $\phi_d = 17.3°$, $N_c = 12.5$, $N_q = 4.8$ (Table 2.3), and $N_\gamma = 3.6$ (Table 2.4),

$$\lambda_{cs} = 1 + \left(\frac{N_q}{N_c}\right)\left(\frac{B}{L}\right) = 1 + \left(\frac{4.8}{12.5}\right)\left(\frac{0.6}{1.2}\right) = 1.192$$

$$\lambda_{qs} = 1 + \left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\tan\phi_d = 1 + \left(\frac{0.6}{1.2}\right)\tan 17.3 = 1.156$$

$$\lambda_{\gamma s} = 1 - 0.4\left(\frac{B}{L}\right) = 1 - 0.4\left(\frac{0.6}{1.2}\right) = 0.8$$

$$\lambda_{cd} = \lambda_{qd} - \frac{1 - \lambda_{qd}}{N_c \tan\phi_d} = 1.308 - \frac{1 - 1.308}{12.5 \tan 17.3} = 1.387$$

$$\lambda_{qd} = 1 + 2\tan\phi_d(1 - \sin\phi_d)^2\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right) = 1 + (2)(\tan 17.3)(1 - \sin 17.3)^2\left(\frac{0.6}{0.6}\right) = 1.308$$

$$\lambda_{\gamma d} = 1$$

From Equation 2.119

$$\begin{aligned} q_{\text{all(shear)-gross}} &= c_d N_c \lambda_{cs} \lambda_{cd} + q N_q \lambda_{qs} \lambda_{qd} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma B N_\gamma \lambda_{\gamma s} \lambda_{\gamma d} \\ &= (32)(12.5)(1.192)(1.387) + (0.6)(18)(4.8)(1.156)(1.308) \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{2}(18)(0.6)(3.6)(0.8)(1) \\ &= 661.3 + 78.4 + 15.6 = 755.3\ \text{kN/m}^2 \end{aligned}$$

From Equation 2.120:

$$q_{all(shear)-net} = 761.5 - q = 755.3 - (0.6)(18) \approx \mathbf{744.5\ kN/m^2}$$

2.13 INTERFERENCE OF CONTINUOUS FOUNDATIONS IN GRANULAR SOIL

In earlier sections of this chapter, theories relating to the ultimate bearing capacity of single rough continuous foundations supported by a homogeneous soil medium extending to a great depth were discussed. However, if foundations are placed close to each other with similar soil conditions, the ultimate bearing capacity of each foundation may change due to the interference effect of the failure surface in the soil. This was theoretically investigated by Stuart[39] for *granular soils*. The results of this study are summarized in this section. Stuart[39] assumed the geometry of the rupture surface in the soil mass to be the same as that assumed by Terzaghi (Figure 2.1). According to Stuart, the following conditions may arise (Figure 2.38):

Case 1 (Figure 2.38a): If the center-to-center spacing of the two foundations is $x \geq x_1$, the rupture surface in the soil under each foundation will not overlap. So the ultimate bearing capacity of each continuous foundation can be given by Terzaghi's equation (Equation 2.31). For $c = 0$,

$$q_u = qN_q + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_\gamma \tag{2.121}$$

where

N_q, N_γ = Terzaghi's bearing capacity factors (Table 2.1)

Case 2 (Figure 2.38b): If the center-to-center spacing of the two foundations ($x = x_2 < x_1$) are such that the Rankine passive zones just overlap, then the magnitude of q_u will still be given by Equation 2.121. However, the foundation settlement at ultimate load will change (compared to the case of an isolated foundation).

Case 3 (Figure 2.38c): This is the case where the center-to-center spacing of the two continuous foundations is $x = x_3 < x_2$. Note that the triangular wedges in the soil under the foundation make angles of $180° - 2\phi$ at points d_1 and d_2. The arcs of the logarithmic spirals $d_1\ g_1$ and $d_1\ e$ are tangent to each other at point d_1. Similarly, the arcs of the logarithmic spirals $d_2\ g_2$ and $d_2\ e$ are tangent to each other at point d_2. For this case, the ultimate bearing capacity of each foundation can be given as ($c = 0$)

$$q_u = qN_q\xi_q + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_\gamma\xi_\gamma \tag{2.122}$$

where

ξ_q, ξ_γ = efficiency ratios

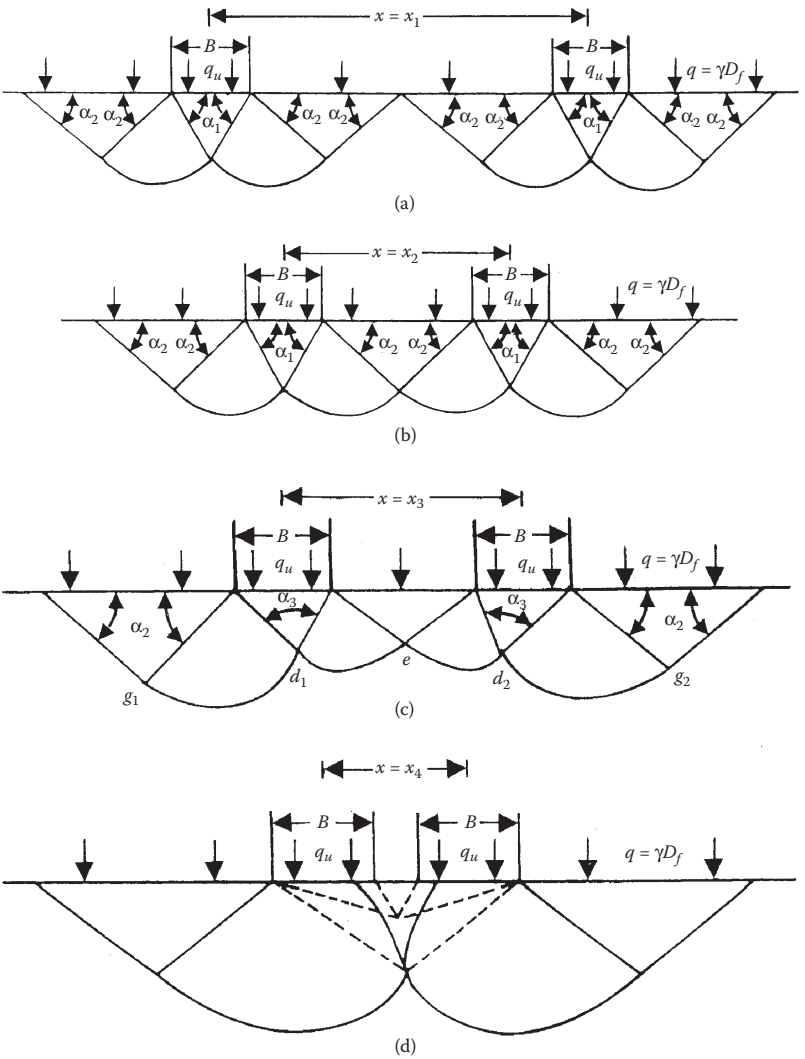


FIGURE 2.38 Assumption for the failure surface in granular soil under two closely spaced rough continuous foundations. *Note*: $\alpha_1 = \phi$, $\alpha_2 = 45 - \phi/2$, $\alpha_3 = 180 - \phi$. Failure surface in soil when (a) $x = x_1$; (b) $x = x_2$; $x = x_3$; (d) $x = x_4$.

The efficiency ratios are functions of x/B and soil friction angle ϕ. The theoretical variations of ξ_q and ξ_γ are given in Figures 2.39 and 2.40.

Case 4 (Figure 2.38d): If the spacing of the foundation is further reduced such that $x = x_4 < x_3$, blocking will occur and the pair of foundations will act as a single foundation. The soil between the individual units will form an inverted arch that travels down with the foundation as the load is applied. When the two foundations touch, the zone of arching disappears and the

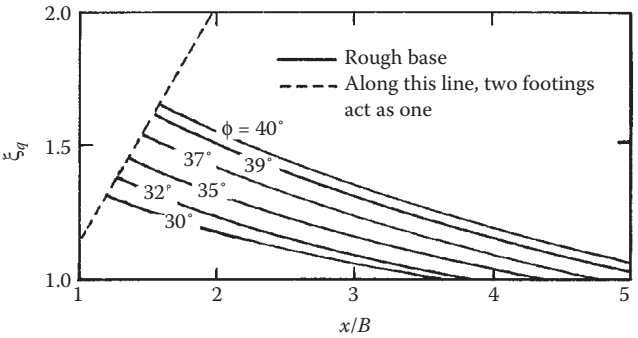


FIGURE 2.39 Stuart's interference factor ξ_q.

system behaves as a single foundation with a width equal to $2B$. The ultimate bearing capacity for this case can be given by Equation 2.121, with B being replaced by $2B$ in the third term.

Das and Larbi-Cherif[40] conducted laboratory model tests to determine the interference efficiency ratios ξ_q and ξ_γ of two rough continuous foundations

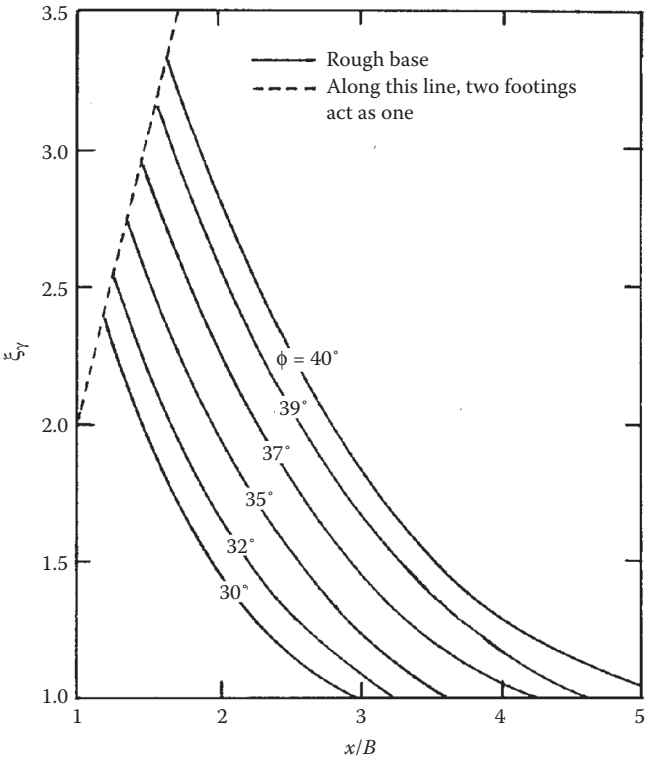


FIGURE 2.40 Stuart's interference factor ξ_r.

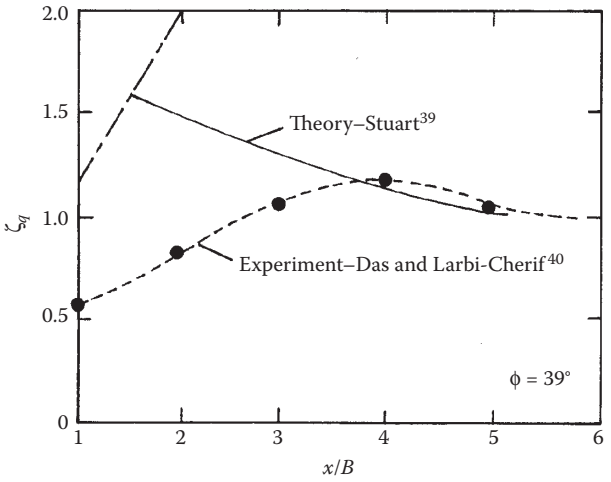


FIGURE 2.41 Comparison of experimental and theoretical ζ_q.

resting on sand extending to a great depth. The sand used in the model tests was highly angular, and the tests were conducted at a relative density of about 60%. The angle of friction ϕ at this relative density of compaction was 39°. Load-displacement curves obtained from the model tests were of the local shear type. The experimental variations of ξ_q and ξ_γ obtained from these tests are given in Figures 2.41 and 2.42. From these figures it may be seen that, although the general trend of the experimental efficiency ratio

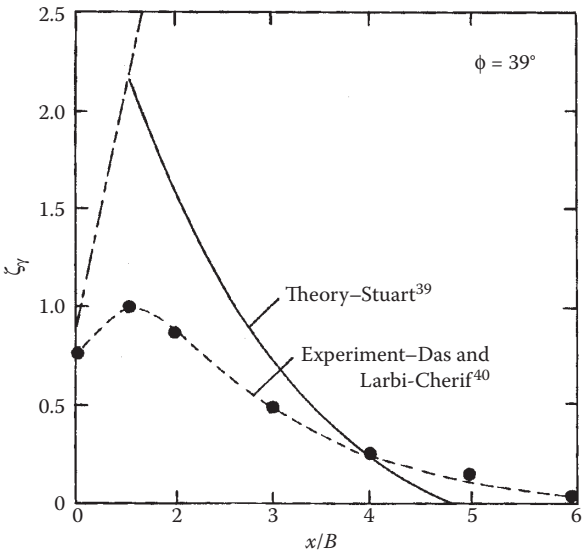


FIGURE 2.42 Comparison of experimental and theoretical ζ_γ.

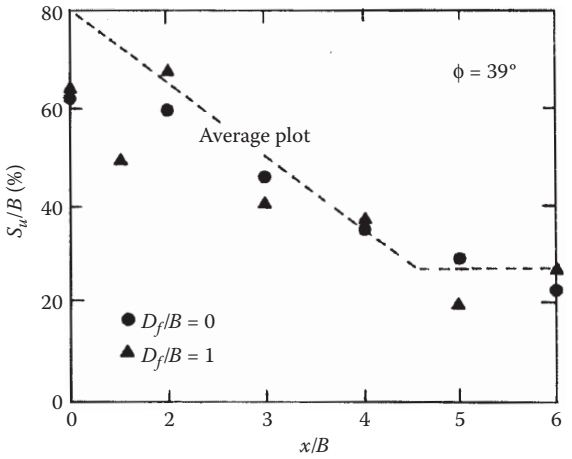


FIGURE 2.43 Variation of experimental elastic settlement (S_u/B) with center-to-center spacing of two continuous rough foundations.

variations is similar to those predicted by theory, there is a large variation in the magnitudes between the theory and experimental results. Figure 2.43 shows the experimental variations of S_u/B with x/B (S_u = settlement at ultimate load). The elastic settlement of the foundation decreases with the increase in the center-to-center spacing of the foundation and remains constant at $x >$ about $4B$.

EXAMPLE 2.10

Consider two shallow continuous foundations supported by a granular soil. Given:

For the foundation: $B = 1.2$ m
Center-to-center spacing of the foundation, $x = 2.5$ m
$D_f = 1$ m

For the soil: $\phi = 35°$
$\gamma = 16$ kN/m^3

Estimate the ultimate bearing capacity, q_u.

SOLUTION

From Equation 2.122,

$$q_u = qN_q\zeta_q + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_\gamma\zeta_\gamma$$

$$q = \gamma D_f = (16)(1) = 16 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

From Table 2.1, for $\phi = 35°$, $N_q = 41.44$ and $N_\gamma = 45.41$. $x/B = 2.5/1.2 = 2.08$. Thus, $\zeta_q = 1.29$ (Figure 2.39) and $\zeta_\gamma = 1.85$ (Figure 2.40). Hence

$$q_u = (16)(41.44)(1.29) + \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)(16)(1.2)(45.41)(1.85)$$
$$= \mathbf{1661.8\ kN/m^2}$$

REFERENCES

1. Terzaghi, K. 1943. *Theoretical Soil Mechanics*. New York: John Wiley.
2. Kumbhojkar, A. S. 1993. Numerical evaluation of Terzaghi's N_γ. *J. Geotech. Eng.*, 119(3): 598.
3. Krizek, R. J. 1965. Approximation for Terzaghi's bearing capacity. *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div.*, 91(2): 146.
4. Vesic, A. S. 1973. Analysis of ultimate loads of shallow foundations. *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div.*, 99(1): 45.
5. Meyerhof, G. G. 1951. The ultimate bearing capacity of foundations. *Geotechnique*, 2: 301.
6. Reissner, H. 1924. Zum erddruckproblem. In *Proc., First Intl. Conf. Appl. Mech.*, Delft, the Netherlands, 295.
7. Prandtl, L. 1921. Uber die eindringungs-festigkeit plastisher baustoffe und die festigkeit von schneiden. *Z. Ang. Math. Mech.* 1(1): 15.
8. Meyerhof, G. G. 1963. Some recent research on the bearing capacity of foundations. *Canadian Geotech. J.*, 1(1): 16.
9. Dewaikar, D. M., B. G. Mohapatra, V. A. Sawant, and H. S. Chore 2013. A new approach for the computation of bearing capacity factor N_c, Terzaghi and Prandtl mechanism. *Intl. J. Geotech. Eng.*, 7(3): 304.
10. Hansen, J. B. 1970. *A Revised and Extended Formula for Bearing Capacity.* Bulletin No. 28, Danish Geotechnical Institute, Copenhagen.
11. Caquot, A. and J. Kerisel. 1953. Sue le terme de surface dans le calcul des fondations en milieu pulverulent. In *Proc., III Intl. Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng.*, Zurich, Switzerland, Vol. 1, p. 336.
12. Lundgren, H. and K. Mortensen. 1953. Determination by the theory of plasticity of the bearing capacity of continuous footings on sand. In *Proc., III Intl. Conf. Mech. Found. Eng.*, Zurich, Switzerland, Vol. 1, p. 409.
13. Chen, W. F. 1975. *Limit Analysis and Soil Plasticity*. New York: Elsevier Publishing Co.
14. Drucker, D. C. and W. Prager. 1952. Soil mechanics and plastic analysis of limit design. *Q. Appl. Math.*, 10: 157.
15. Biarez, J., M. Burel, and B. Wack. 1961. Contribution à l'étude de la force portante des fondations. In *Proc., V Intl. Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng.*, Paris, France, Vol. 1, p. 603.
16. Booker, J. R. 1969. *Application of Theories of Plasticity to Cohesive Frictional Soils*. PhD thesis, Sydney University, Australia.
17. Poulos, H. G., J. P. Carter, and J. C. Small. 2001. Foundations and retaining structures—Research and practice. In *Proc. 15th Intl. Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng.*, Istanbul, Turkey, A. A. Balkema, Rotterdam, Vol. 4, 2527.
18. Kumar, J. 2003. N_γ for rough strip footing using the method of characteristics. *Canadian Geotech. J.*, 40(3): 669.
19. Michalowski, R. L. 1997. An estimate of the influence of soil weight on bearing capacity using limit analysis. *Soils Found.*, 37(4): 57.

20. Hjiaj, M., A. V. Lyamin, and S. W. Sloan. 2005. Numerical limit analysis solutions for the bearing capacity factor N_γ. *Int. J. Soils Struc.*, 43: 1681.
21. Martin, C. M. 2005. Exact bearing capacity calculations using the method of characteristics. *Proc., 11th Int. Conf. IACMAG*, Turin, 4: 441.
22. Salgado, R. 2008. *The Engineering of Foundations*. New York: McGraw-Hill.
23. Dewaikar, D. M. and B. G. Mohapatra. 2003. Computation of bearing capacity factor N_γ—Prandtl's mechanism. *Soils Found.*, 43(3): 1.
24. Mrunal, P., J. N. Mandal, and D. M. Dewaikar. 2014. Computation of bearing capacity factor N_γ. *Intl. J. Geotech. Eng.*, 8(4): 372.
25. Ko, H. Y. and L. W. Davidson. 1973. Bearing capacity of footings in plane strain. *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div.*, 99(1): 1.
26. Hu, G. G. Y. 1964. Variable-factors theory of bearing capacity. *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div.*, 90(4): 85.
27. Balla, A. 1962. Bearing capacity of foundations. *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div.*, 88(5): 13.
28. DeBeer, E. E. 1965. Bearing capacity and settlement of shallow foundations on sand. In *Bearing Capacity and Settlement of Foundations*, Proceedings of a symposium, Duke University, Ed. A. S. Vesic, Vol. 15: 15–34.
29. Muhs, E. 1963. *Ueber die zulässige Belastung nicht bindigen Böden—Mitteilungen der Degebo*.—Berlin, Heft, 16.
30. Meyerhof, G. G. 1955. Influence of roughness of base and ground water conditions on the ultimate bearing capacity of foundations. *Geotechnique*, 5: 227.
31. DeBeer, E. E. 1970. Experimental determination of the shape factors of sand. *Geotechnique*, 20(4): 307.
32. Michalowski, R. L. 1997. An estimate of the influence of soil weight on bearing capacity using limit analysis. *Soils Found.*, 37(4): 57.
33. Salgado, R., A. V. Lyamin, S. W. Sloan, and H. S. Yu. 2004. Two- and three-dimensional bearing capacity of foundations in clay. *Geotechnique*, 54(5): 297.
34. Vesić, A. 1963. *Theoretical Studies Of Cratering Mechanisms Affecting The Stability Of Cratered Slopes*. Final Report, Project No. A-655, Engineering Experiment Station, Georgia Institute of Technology, Atlanta, GA.
35. Meyerhof, G. G. 1978. Bearing capacity of anisotropic cohesionless soils. *Canadian Geotech. J.*, 15(4): 593.
36. Davis, E. and J. T. Christian. 1971. Bearing capacity of anisotropic cohesive soil. *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div.*, 97(5): 753.
37. Reddy, A. S. and R. J. Srinivasan. 1970. Bearing capacity of footings on anisotropic soils. *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div.*, 96(6): 1967.
38. Casagrande, A. and N. Carrillo. 1944. Shear failure in anisotropic materials. In *Contribution to Soil Mechanics* 1941–53, Boston Society of Civil Engineers, 122.
39. Stuart, J. G. 1962. Interference between foundations with special reference to surface footing on sand. *Geotechnique*, 12(1): 15.
40. Das, B. M. and S. Larbi-Cherif. 1983. Bearing capacity of two closely spaced shallow foundations on sand. *Soils Found.*, 23(1): 1.

3 Ultimate Bearing Capacity under Inclined and Eccentric Loads

3.1 INTRODUCTION

Owing to bending moments and horizontal thrusts transferred from the superstructure, shallow foundations are often subjected to eccentric and inclined loads. Under such circumstances the ultimate bearing capacity theories presented in Chapter 2 need some modification, and this is the subject of discussion in this chapter. The chapter is divided into two major parts. The first part discusses the ultimate bearing capacities of shallow foundations subjected to centric inclined loads, and the second part is devoted to the ultimate bearing capacity under eccentric loading.

3.2 FOUNDATIONS SUBJECTED TO INCLINED LOAD

3.2.1 Meyerhof's Theory (Continuous Foundation)

In 1953, Meyerhof[1] extended his theory for ultimate bearing capacity under vertical loading (Section 2.4) to the case with inclined load. Figure 3.1 shows the plastic zones in the soil near a rough continuous (strip) foundation with an inclined load q_u per unit area of the foundation. The shear strength of the soil s is given as

$$s = c + \sigma' \tan\phi \tag{3.1}$$

where

c = cohesion
σ' = effective vertical stress
ϕ = angle of friction

The inclined load makes an angle α with the vertical. It needs to be pointed out that Figure 3.1 is an extension of Figure 2.7. In Figure 3.1, *abc* is an elastic zone, *bcd* is a radial shear zone, and *bde* is a mixed shear zone. The normal and shear stresses on plane *be* are p_o and s_o, respectively. Also, the unit base adhesion is c'_a. The solution for the ultimate bearing capacity can be expressed as

$$q_{u(v)} = q_u \cos\alpha = cN_c + p_o N_q + \frac{1}{2}\gamma B N_\gamma \tag{3.2}$$

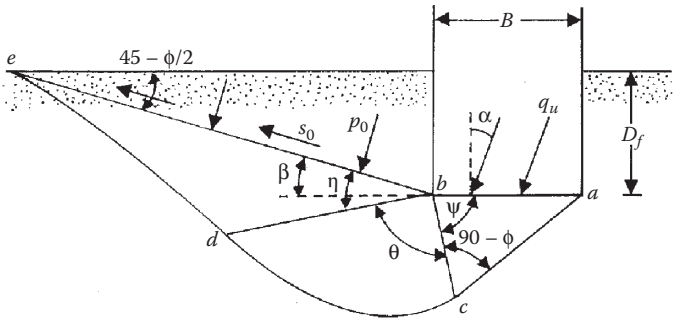


FIGURE 3.1 Plastic zones in soil near a foundation with an inclined load. (*Note:* q_u = inclined load per unit are at failure.)

where

$q_{u(v)}$ = vertical component of q_u
N_c, N_q, N_γ = bearing capacity factors for inclined loading condition
γ = unit weight of soil

Similar to Equations 2.73, 2.61, and 2.72, we can write

$$q_{u(v)} = q_u \cos\alpha = q'_{u(v)} + q''_{u(v)} \tag{3.3}$$

where

$$q'_{u(v)} = cN_c + p_o N_q \quad (\text{for } \phi \neq 0, \gamma = 0, p_o \neq 0, c \neq 0) \tag{3.4}$$

and

$$q''_{u(v)} = \frac{1}{2}\gamma B N_\gamma \quad (\text{for } \phi \neq 0, \gamma \neq 0, p_o = 0, c = 0) \tag{3.5}$$

It was shown by Meyerhof[1] in Equation 3.4 that

$$N_c = \left\{\cot\phi\left[\frac{1+\sin\phi\sin(2\psi-\phi)}{1-\sin\phi\sin(2\eta+\phi)}e^{2\theta\tan\phi} - 1\right]\right\} \tag{3.6}$$

$$N_q = \frac{1+\sin\phi\sin(2\psi-\phi)}{1-\sin\phi\sin(2\eta+\phi)}e^{2\theta\tan\phi} \tag{3.7}$$

Note that the horizontal component of the inclined load per unit area on the foundation q'_h cannot exceed the shearing resistance at the base, or

$$q'_{u(h)} \le c_a + q'_{u(v)} \tan\delta \tag{3.8}$$

where

c_a = unit base adhesion
δ = unit base friction angle

In order to determine the minimum passive force per unit length of the foundation $P_{p\gamma(\min)}$ (see Figure 2.11 for comparison) to obtain N_γ, one can take a numerical step-by-step approach as shown by Caquot and Kerisel[2] or a semi-graphical approach based on the logarithmic spiral method as shown by Meyerhof.[3] Note that the passive force $P_{p\gamma}$ acts at an angle ϕ with the normal drawn to the face bc of the elastic wedge abc (Figure 3.1). The relationship for N_γ is

$$N_\gamma = \frac{2P_{p\gamma(\min)}}{\gamma B^2}\left[\frac{\sin^2\psi}{\cos(\psi-\phi)} + \cos(\psi-\phi)\right] - \frac{\sin\psi\cos(\psi-\phi)}{\cos\phi} \quad (\text{for } \alpha \le \delta) \tag{3.9}$$

The ultimate bearing capacity expression given by Equation 3.2 can also be expressed as

$$q_{u(v)} = q_u \cos\alpha = cN_{cq} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma B N_{\gamma q} \tag{3.10}$$

where

N_{cq}, $N_{\gamma q}$ = bearing capacity factors that are functions of the soil friction angle ϕ and the depth of the foundation D_f

For a purely cohesive soil ($\phi = 0$),

$$q_{u(v)} = q_u \cos\alpha = cN_{cq} \tag{3.11}$$

Figure 3.2 shows the variation of N_{cq} for a purely cohesive soil ($\phi = 0$) for various load inclinations α.

For cohesionless soils $c = 0$; hence, Equation 3.10 gives

$$q_{u(v)} = q_u \cos\alpha = \frac{1}{2}\gamma B N_{\gamma q} \tag{3.12}$$

Figure 3.3 shows the variation of $N_{\gamma q}$ with α.

It is important to point out that, in most of the text and reference books, the ultimate bearing capacity equation provided refers to the vertical component of inclined load.

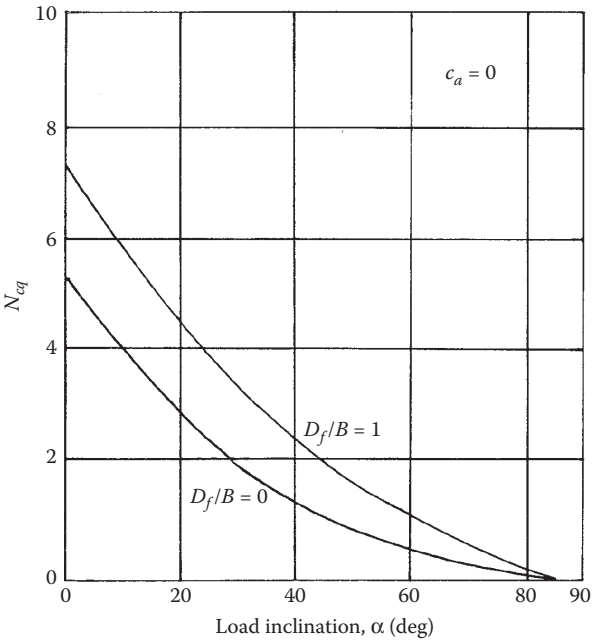


FIGURE 3.2 Meyerhof's bearing capacity factor N_{cq} for purely cohesive soil ($\phi = 0$). (From Meyerhof, G. G. 1953. *Proc., III Intl. Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng.*, Zurich, Switzerland, 1: 440.)

3.2.2 General Bearing Capacity Equation

The general ultimate bearing capacity equation for a rectangular foundation given by Equation 2.90 can be extended to account for an inclined load and can be expressed as

$$q_u = cN_c\lambda_{cs}\lambda_{cd}\lambda_{ci} + qN_q\lambda_{qs}\lambda_{qd}\lambda_{qi} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_\gamma\lambda_{\gamma s}\lambda_{\gamma d}\lambda_{\gamma i} \tag{3.13}$$

where

N_c, N_q, N_γ = bearing capacity factors (for N_c and N_q use Table 2.3; for N_γ see Table 2.4—Equations 2.74, 2.79, and 2.80)
λ_{cs}, λ_{qs}, $\lambda_{\gamma s}$ = shape factors (Table 2.8)
λ_{cd}, λ_{qd}, $\lambda_{\gamma d}$ = depth factors (Table 2.8)
λ_{ci}, λ_{qi}, $\lambda_{\gamma i}$ = inclination factors

Meyerhof[4] provided the following inclination factor relationships:

$$\lambda_{ci} = \lambda_{qi} = \left(1 - \frac{\alpha^\circ}{90^\circ}\right)^2 \tag{3.14}$$

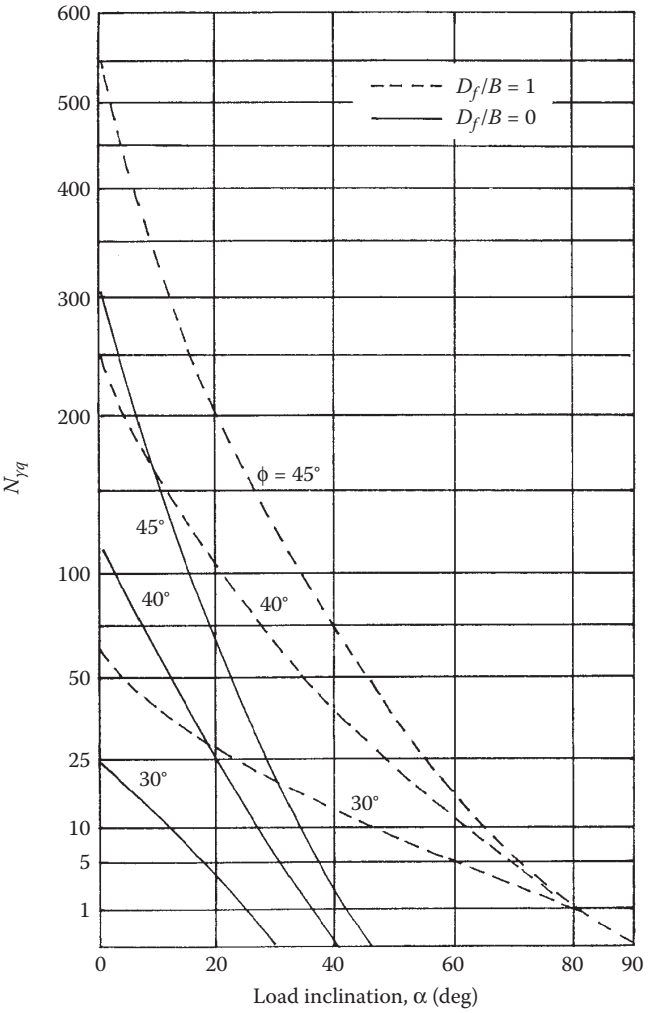


FIGURE 3.3 Meyerhof's bearing capacity factor $N_{\gamma q}$ for cohesionless soil ($\alpha = 0$, $\delta = \phi$). (From Meyerhof, G. G. 1953. *Proc., III Intl. Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng.*, Zurich, Switzerland, 1: 440.)

$$\lambda_{\gamma i} = \left(1 - \frac{\alpha^\circ}{\phi^\circ}\right)^2 \tag{3.15}$$

Hansen[5] also suggested the following relationships for inclination factors:

$$\lambda_{qi} = \left(1 - \frac{0.5Q_u \sin\alpha}{Q_u \cos\alpha + BLc \cot\phi}\right)^5 \tag{3.16}$$

$$\lambda_{ci} = \lambda_{qi} - \left(\frac{1 - \lambda_{qi}}{\underbrace{N_c}_{\text{Table 2.3}} - 1} \right) \tag{3.17}$$

$$\lambda_{\gamma i} = \left(1 - \frac{0.7 Q_u \sin\alpha}{Q_u \cos\alpha + BLc \cot\phi} \right)^5 \tag{3.18}$$

where, in Equations 3.14 through 3.18,

α = inclination of the load on the foundation with the vertical
Q_u = ultimate inclined load on the foundation = $q_u BL$
B = width of the foundation
L = length of the foundation

3.2.3 Other Results for Foundations with Centric Inclined Load

Based on the results of field tests, Muhs and Weiss[6] concluded that the ratio of the vertical component $Q_{u(v)}$ of the ultimate load with inclination α with the vertical to the ultimate load Q_u when the load is vertical (that is, $\alpha = 0$) is approximately equal to $(1–\tan\alpha)^2$:

$$\frac{Q_{u(v)}}{Q_{u(\alpha=0)}} = (1 - \tan\alpha)^2$$

or

$$\frac{Q_{u(v)}/BL}{Q_{u(\alpha=0)}/BL} = \frac{q_{u(v)}}{q_{u(\alpha=0)}} = (1 - \tan\alpha)^2 \tag{3.19}$$

Dubrova[7] developed a theoretical solution for the ultimate bearing capacity of a *continuous foundation* with a centric inclined load and expressed it in the following form:

$$q_u = c(N_q^* - 1)\cot\phi + 2qN_q^* + B\gamma N_\gamma^* \tag{3.20}$$

where

N_q^*, N_γ^* = bearing capacity factors
$q = \gamma D_f$

The variations of N_q^* and N_γ^* are given in Figures 3.4 and 3.5.

EXAMPLE 3.1

Consider a continuous foundation in a granular soil with the following: $B = 1.2$ m; $D_f = 1.2$ m; unit weight of soil $\gamma = 17$ kN/m^3; soil friction angle $\phi = 40°$; load inclination $\alpha = 20°$. Calculate the gross ultimate inclined load bearing capacity q_u.

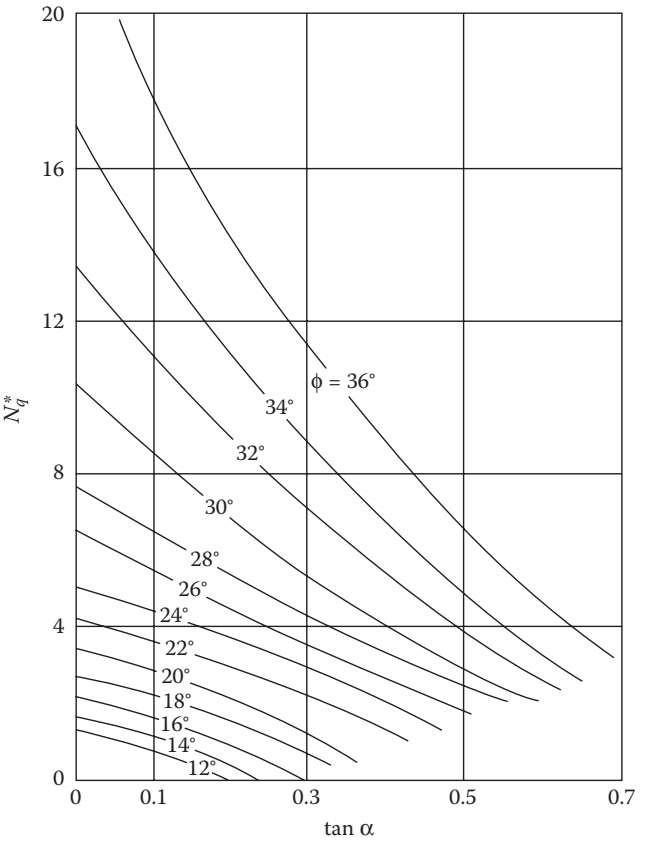


FIGURE 3.4 Variation of N_q^*.

a. Use Equation 3.12
b. Use Equation 3.13 and Meyerhof's bearing capacity factors (Table 2.3), his shape and depth factors (Table 2.8), and inclination factors (Equations 3.14 and 3.15).

Solution

Part a: From Equation 3.12,

$$q_u = \frac{\gamma B N_{\gamma q}}{2\cos\alpha}$$

where $D_f/B = 1.2/1.2 = 1$; $\phi = 40°$; and $\alpha = 20°$. From Figure 3.3, $N_{\gamma q} \approx 100$. So,

$$q_u = \frac{(17)(1.2)(100)}{2\cos 20} = \mathbf{1085.5\ kN/m^2}$$

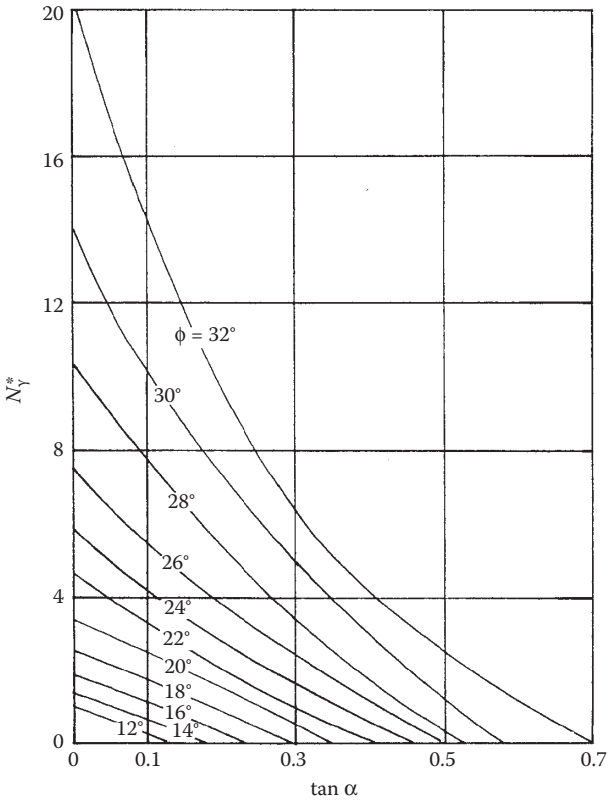


FIGURE 3.5 Variation of N_γ^*.

Part b

With $c = 0$ and $B/L = 0$, Equation 3.13 becomes

$$q_{u(v)} = qN_q\lambda_{qd}\lambda_{qi} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_\gamma\lambda_{\gamma d}\lambda_{\gamma i}$$

For $\phi = 40°$, from Table 2.3, $N_q = 64.2$ and $N_\gamma = 93.69$. From Table 2.8,

$$\lambda_{qd} = \lambda_{\gamma d} = 1 + 0.1\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)\tan\left(45 + \frac{\phi}{2}\right) = 1 + 0.1\left(\frac{1.2}{1.2}\right)\tan\left(45 + \frac{40}{2}\right) = 1.214$$

From Equations 3.14 and 3.15,

$$\lambda_{qi} = \left(1 - \frac{\alpha°}{90°}\right)^2 = \left(1 - \frac{20}{90}\right)^2 = 0.605$$

$$\lambda_{\gamma i} = \left(1 - \frac{\alpha^\circ}{\phi^\circ}\right)^2 = \left(1 - \frac{20}{40}\right)^2 = 0.25.$$

So,

$$q_{u(v)} = (1.2 \times 17)(64.2)(1.214)(0.605) + \frac{1}{2}(17)(1.2)(93.69)(1.214)(0.25)$$
$$= 1252\ \text{kN/m}^2$$

$$q_u = \frac{q_{u(v)}}{\cos 20} = \frac{1252}{\cos 20} \approx \mathbf{1332 kN/m^2}$$

EXAMPLE 3.2

Consider the continuous foundation described in Example 3.1. Other quantities remaining the same, let $\phi = 35°$.

a. Calculate q_u using Equation 3.12
b. Calculate q_u using Equation 3.20

Solution

Part a

From Equation 3.12

$$q_u = \frac{\gamma B N_{\gamma q}}{2 \cos \alpha}$$

From Figure 3.3, $N_{\gamma q} \approx 65$:

$$q_u = \frac{(17)(1.2)(65)}{2 \cos 20} \approx \mathbf{706 kN/m^2}$$

Part b

For $c = 0$, Equation 3.20 becomes

$$q_u = 2qN_q^* + B\gamma N_\gamma^*$$

Using Figures 3.4 and 3.5 for $\phi = 35°$ and $\tan \alpha = \tan 20 = 0.36$, $N_q^* \approx 8.5$ and $N_\gamma^* \approx 6.5$ (extrapolation):

$$q_u = (2)(17 \times 1.2)(8.5) + (1.2)(17)(6.5) \approx \mathbf{480 kN/m^2}$$

Note: Equation 3.20 does not provide depth factors.

EXAMPLE 3.3

Consider the continuous foundation described in Example 3.1 in which $B = 1.2$ m, $D_f = 1.2$ m, $\gamma = 17$ kN/m^3, $\phi = 40°$, $c = 0$, and load inclination $\alpha = 20°$. Using Equation 3.19, estimate q_u. For calculating $q_{u(\alpha=0)}$, use Equation 3.13 and Meyerhof's depth factors.

SOLUTION

For calculation of $q_{u(\alpha=0)}$, the shape and inclination factors in Equation 3.13 are equal to 1. Thus,

$$q_{u(\alpha=0)} = q_{u(v)} = qN_q\lambda_{qd} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_\gamma\lambda_{\gamma d}$$

From Example 3.1 for $\phi = 40°$, $N_q = 64.2, N_\gamma = 93.69, \lambda_{qd} = \lambda_{\gamma d} = 1.214$. Hence,

$$q_{u(\alpha=0)} = (1.2\times17)(64.2)(1.214) + \frac{1}{2}(17)(1.2)(93.69)(1.214) = 2750.1\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

From Equation 3.19,

$$q_{u(v)} = q_{u(\alpha=0)}(1-\tan\alpha)^2 = (2750.1)(1-\tan 20)^2 = 1112.5\ \text{kN/m}^2 \approx 1113\ \text{kN/m}^2$$

Hence

$$q_u = \frac{q_{u(v)}}{\cos\alpha} = \frac{1113}{\cos 20} = \mathbf{1184.4\ kN/m^2}$$

Note: The magnitude of q_u is approximately the same as that obtained in Example 3.1, Part b.

3.3 INCLINED FOUNDATIONS SUBJECTED TO NORMAL LOAD

Figure 3.6 shows an inclined continuous foundation of width B subjected to normal loading. The inclination of the base of the foundation with the horizontal is α. The ultimate load per unit area at failure is q_u. Meyerhof[1] proposed a theory for estimating q_u in the form,

$$q_u = cN_{cq} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_{\gamma q} \tag{3.21}$$

where

c = cohesion of soil
γ = unit weight of soil
N_{cq} and $N_{\gamma q}$ = bearing capacity factors

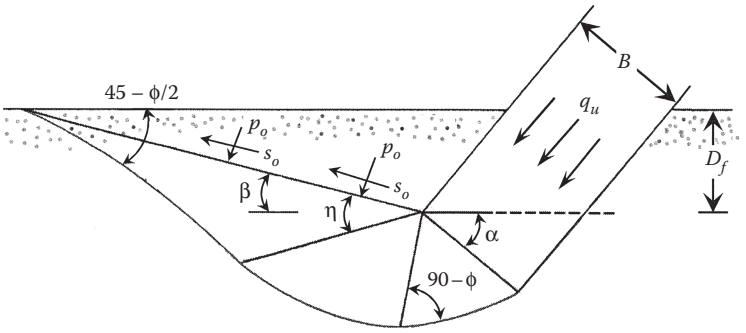


FIGURE 3.6 Inclined continuous foundation subjected to normal loading.

The variations of N_{cq} and $N_{\gamma q}$ per Meyerhof's[1] theory are shown in Figures 3.7 and 3.8, respectively. Figure 3.7 refers to the $\phi = 0$ condition of purely cohesive soil. Or

$$q_u = cN_{cq} \tag{3.22}$$

Similarly, Figure 3.8 is for purely cohesionless soil ($c = 0$); or

$$q_u = \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_{\gamma q} \tag{3.23}$$

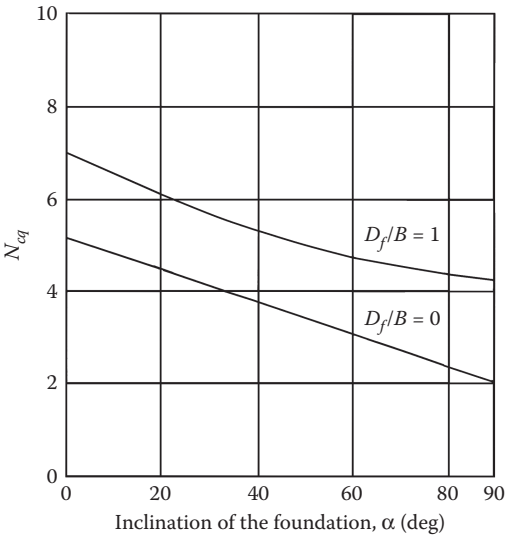


FIGURE 3.7 Meyerhof's bearing capacity factor N_{cq} for purely cohesive soil ($\phi = 0$) (Equation 3.22). (From Meyerhof, G. G. 1953. *Proc., III Intl. Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng.*, Zurich, Switzerland, 1: 440.)

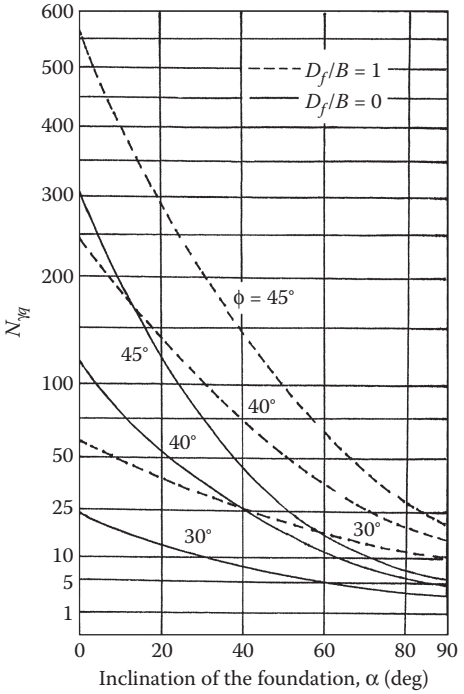


FIGURE 3.8 Meyerhof's bearing capacity factor $N_{\gamma q}$ for cohesionless soil (Equation 3.23). (From Meyerhof, G. G. 1953. *Proc., III Intl. Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng.*, Zurich, Switzerland, 1: 440.)

Vesic[8] proposed that Equation 3.13 can be modified by including a base tilt factor for estimation of q_u. Or

$$q_u = cN_c\lambda_{cs}\lambda_{cd}\lambda_{ct} + qN_q\lambda_{qs}\lambda_{qd}\lambda_{qt} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_\gamma\lambda_{\gamma s}\lambda_{\gamma d}\lambda_{\gamma t} \tag{3.24}$$

where

λ_{ct}, λ_{qt}, and $\lambda_{\gamma t}$ = base tilt factors

Vesic[8] recommended the following relationships for the base tilt factors:

$$\lambda_{ct} = 1 - \left(\frac{2\alpha}{\pi + 2}\right) \tag{3.25}$$

$$\lambda_{qt} = \lambda_{\gamma t} = (1 - \alpha\tan\phi)^2 \tag{3.26}$$

The angle α in Equations 3.25 and 3.26 is in radians. If α is expressed in degrees, then

$$\lambda_{ct} = 1 - \frac{\alpha^\circ}{147^\circ} \tag{3.27}$$

$$\lambda_{qt} = \lambda_{\gamma t} = \left(1 - \frac{\alpha^\circ \tan\phi}{57^\circ}\right)^2 \tag{3.28}$$

EXAMPLE 3.4

A continuous foundation in saturated clay is shown in Figure 3.6. Given:

For the foundation: $B = 1$ m; $D_f = 1$ m; $\alpha = 20°$
For the soil: Unit weight, $\gamma = 19.25$ kN/m^3; undrained cohesion, $c = 57.5$ kN/m^2

Determine the ultimate bearing capacity q_u. Use Equation 3.22.

Solution

From Equation 3.22,

$$q_u = cN_{cq}$$

From Figure 3.7, for $\alpha = 20°$, $D_f/B = 1.0/1.0 = 1$, the magnitude of $N_{cq} \approx 6.1$. Hence,

$$q_u = (57.5)(6.1) = \mathbf{350.75\ kN/m^2}$$

EXAMPLE 3.5

Solve Example 3.4 using Equation 3.24. Use Meyerhof's bearing capacity factors (Table 2.3) and Hansen's depth factors (Table 2.8).

Solution

Since this is a continuous foundation, λ_{cs}, λ_{qs}, and $\lambda_{\gamma s}$ are all equal to 1.
From Table 2.3, for $\phi = 0$, $N_c = 5.14$, $N_q = 1$, $N_\gamma = 0$
From Table 2.8,

$$\lambda_{cd} = 1 + 0.4\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right) = 1 + 0.4\left(\frac{1}{1}\right) = 1.4$$

$$\lambda_{qd} = 1 + 2\tan\phi(1 - \sin\phi)^2\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right) = 1$$

$$\lambda_{\gamma d} = 1$$

From Equations 3.27 and 3.28,

$$\lambda_{ct} = 1 - \frac{\alpha^\circ}{147^\circ} = 1 - \frac{20}{147} = 0.864$$

$$\lambda_{qt} = \lambda_{\gamma t} = 1$$

With $\phi = 0$, Equation 3.24 becomes

$$q_u = cN_c\lambda_{cd}\lambda_{ct} + q = (57.5)(5.14)(1.4)(0.864) + (1)(19.25) = \mathbf{376.75\ kN/m^2}$$

3.4 FOUNDATIONS SUBJECTED TO ECCENTRIC LOAD

3.4.1 Continuous Foundation with Eccentric Load

When a shallow foundation is subjected to an eccentric load, it is assumed that the contact pressure decreases linearly from the toe to the heel; however, at ultimate load, the contact pressure is not linear. This problem was analyzed by Meyerhof[1] who suggested the concept of *effective width* B'. The effective width is defined as (Figure 3.9)

$$B' = B - 2e \tag{3.29}$$

where
e = load eccentricity

According to this concept, the bearing capacity of a continuous foundation can be determined by assuming that the load acts centrally along the effective contact width as shown in Figure 3.9. Thus, for a continuous foundation (from Equation 2.90) with vertical loading,

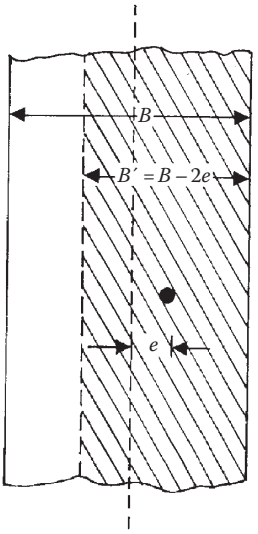


FIGURE 3.9 Effective width B'.

$$q_u = cN_c\lambda_{cd} + qN_q\lambda_{qd} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma B' N_\gamma \lambda_{\gamma d} \tag{3.30}$$

Note that the shape factors for a continuous foundation are equal to one. The ultimate load *per unit length* of the foundation Q_u can now be calculated as

$$Q_u = q_u A'$$

where

A' = effective area = $B' \times 1 = B'$

3.4.1.1 Reduction Factor Method

Purkayastha and Char[9] carried out stability analyses of eccentrically loaded *continuous foundations* supported by sand ($c = 0$) using the method of slices proposed by Janbu.[10] Based on that analysis, they proposed that

$$R_k = 1 - \frac{q_{u(\text{eccentric})}}{q_{u(\text{centric})}} \tag{3.31}$$

where

R_k = reduction factor

$q_{u(\text{eccentric})}$ = average ultimate load per unit area of eccentrically loaded continuous foundations = Q_u/B

$q_{u(\text{centric})}$ = ultimate bearing capacity of centrally loaded continuous foundations

The magnitude of R_k can be expressed as

$$R_k = a\left(\frac{e}{B}\right)^k \tag{3.32}$$

where a and k are functions of the embedment ratio D_f/B (Table 3.1).

Hence, combining Equations 3.31 and 3.32

TABLE 3.1
Variations of *a* and *k* (Equation 3.32)

D_f/B	a	k
0.00	1.862	0.73
0.25	1.811	0.785
0.50	1.754	0.80
1.00	1.820	0.888

$$q_{u(\text{eccentric})} = q_{u(\text{centric})}(1 - R_k) = q_{u(\text{centric})}\left[1 - a\left(\frac{e}{B}\right)^k\right] \tag{3.33}$$

where

$$q_{u(\text{centric})} = qN_q\lambda_{qd} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_\gamma\lambda_{\gamma d} \ (\textit{Note: } c = 0) \tag{3.34}$$

Patra, Sivakugan, Das, and Sethy[11] conducted several model tests for *eccentrically loaded rectangular foundations* on sand. Based on their test results, it was suggested that the reduction factor R_k (Equation 3.31) for rectangular foundations can be expressed as (for all values of D_f/B varying from zero to 1),

$$R_k = a\left(\frac{e}{B}\right)^k$$

where

$$a = \left(\frac{B}{L}\right)^2 - 1.6\left(\frac{B}{L}\right) + 2.13 \tag{3.35}$$

$$k = 0.3\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)^2 - 0.56\left(\frac{B}{L}\right) + 0.9 \tag{3.36}$$

For rectangular foundations,

$$q_{u(\text{eccentric})} = \frac{\text{Ultimate load } Q_u}{BL} \tag{3.37}$$

3.4.1.2 Theory of Prakash and Saran

Prakash and Saran[12] provided a comprehensive mathematical formulation to estimate the ultimate bearing capacity for rough *continuous foundations* under eccentric loading. According to this procedure, Figure 3.10a shows the assumed failure surface in a c–ϕ soil under a continuous foundation subjected to eccentric loading. Let Q_u be the ultimate load per unit length of the foundation of width B with an eccentricity e. In Figure 3.10a zone I is an elastic zone with wedge angles of ψ_1 and ψ_2. Zones II and III are similar to those assumed by Terzaghi (that is, zone II is a radial shear zone and zone III is a Rankine passive zone).

The bearing capacity expression can be developed by considering the equilibrium of the elastic wedge *abc* located below the foundation (Figure 3.10b).

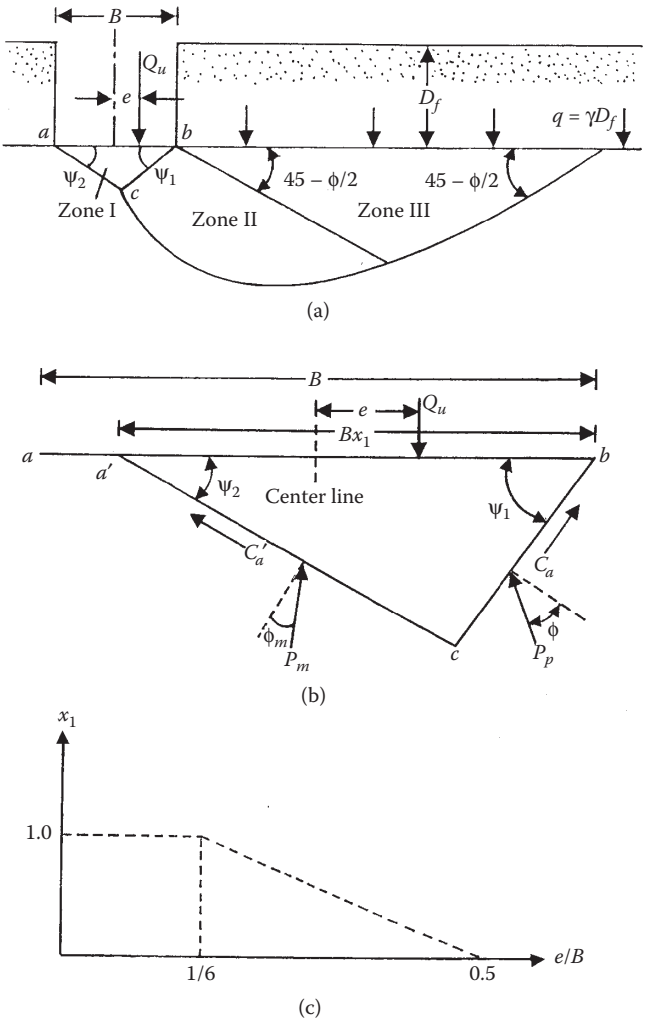


FIGURE 3.10 Derivation of the bearing capacity theory of Prakash and Saran for eccentrically loaded rough continuous foundation: (a) assumed failure surface in soil; (b) equilibrium of elastic wedge *abc*; (c) assumed variation of x_1 with *e*/*B*.

Note that in Figure 3.10b the contact width of the foundation with the soil is equal to Bx_1. Neglecting the self-weight of the wedge,

$$Q_u = P_p \cos(\psi_1 - \phi) + P_m \cos(\psi_2 - \phi_m) + C_a \sin\psi_1 + C_a' \sin\psi_2 \tag{3.38}$$

where

P_p, P_m = passive forces per unit length of the wedge along the wedge faces *bc* and *ac*, respectively

ϕ = soil friction angle

ϕ_m = mobilized soil friction angle ($\leq\phi$)

C_a = adhesion along wedge face $bc = \dfrac{cBx_1 \sin\psi_2}{\sin(\psi_1 + \psi_2)}$

C_a' = adhesion along wedge face $ac = \dfrac{mcBx_1 \sin\psi_1}{\sin(\psi_1 + \psi_2)}$

m = mobilization factor (≤ 1)

c = unit cohesion

Equation 3.38 can be expressed in the form

$$q_u = \frac{Q_u}{(B \times 1)} = \frac{1}{2}\gamma B N_{\gamma(e)} + \gamma D_f N_{q(e)} + c N_{c(e)} \tag{3.39}$$

where

$N_{\gamma(e)}$, $N_{q(e)}$, $N_{c(e)}$ = bearing capacity factors for an eccentrically loaded continuous foundation

The above-stated bearing capacity factors will be functions of e/B, ϕ, and also the foundation contact factor x_1. In obtaining the bearing capacity factors, Prakash and Saran[12] assumed the variation of x_1 as shown in Figure 3.10c. Figures 3.11 through 3.13 show the variations of $N_{\gamma(e)}$, $N_{q(e)}$, and $N_{c(e)}$ with ϕ and e/B. Note that, for $e/B = 0$, the bearing capacity factors coincide with those given by Terzaghi[13] for a centrically loaded foundation.

Prakash[14] also gave the relationships for the settlement of a given foundation under centric and eccentric loading conditions for an equal factor of safety FS. They are as follows (Figure 3.14):

$$\frac{S_e}{S_o} = 1.0 - 1.63\left(\frac{e}{B}\right) - 2.63\left(\frac{e}{B}\right)^2 + 5.83\left(\frac{e}{B}\right)^3 \tag{3.40}$$

$$\frac{S_m}{S_o} = 1.0 - 2.31\left(\frac{e}{B}\right) - 22.61\left(\frac{e}{B}\right)^2 + 31.54\left(\frac{e}{B}\right)^3 \tag{3.41}$$

where

S_o = settlement of a foundation under centric loading at $q_{\text{all(centric)}} = \dfrac{q_{u(\text{centric})}}{FS}$

S_e, S_m = settlements of the same foundation under eccentric loading at $q_{\text{all(eccentric)}} = \dfrac{q_{u(\text{eccentric})}}{FS}$

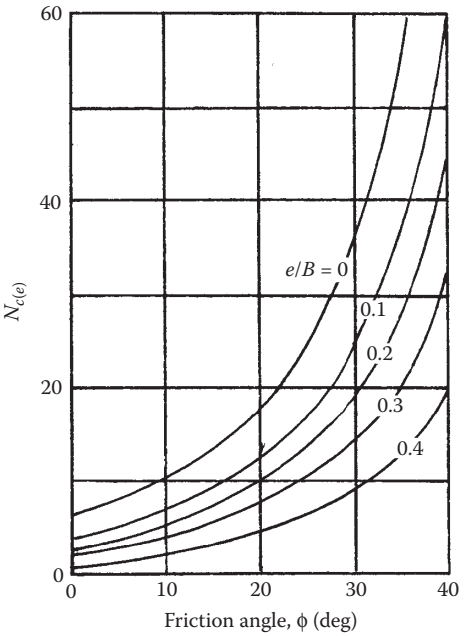


FIGURE 3.11 Prakash and Saran's bearing capacity factor $N_{c(e)}$.

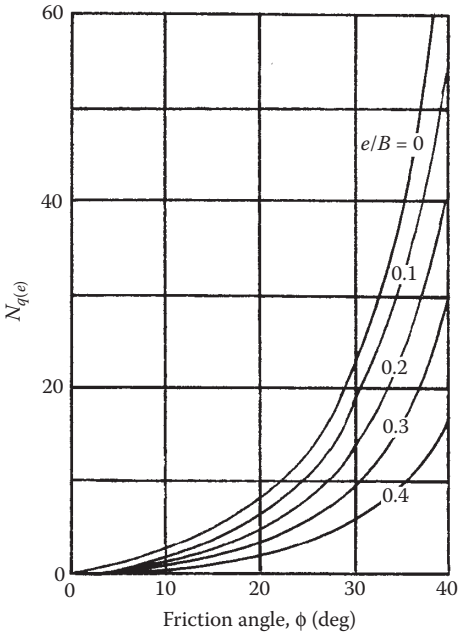


FIGURE 3.12 Prakash and Saran's bearing capacity factor $N_{q(e)}$.

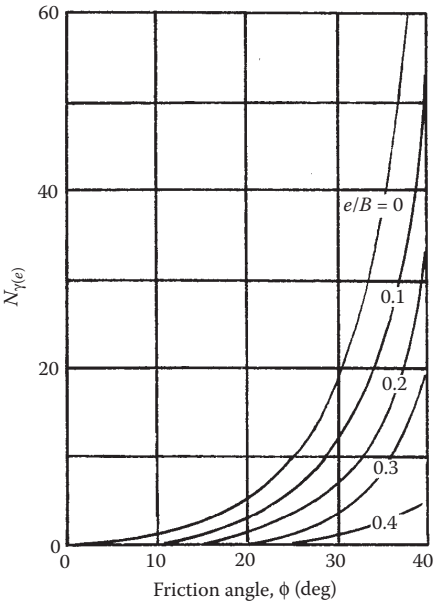


FIGURE 3.13 Prakash and Saran's bearing capacity factor $N_{\gamma(e)}$.

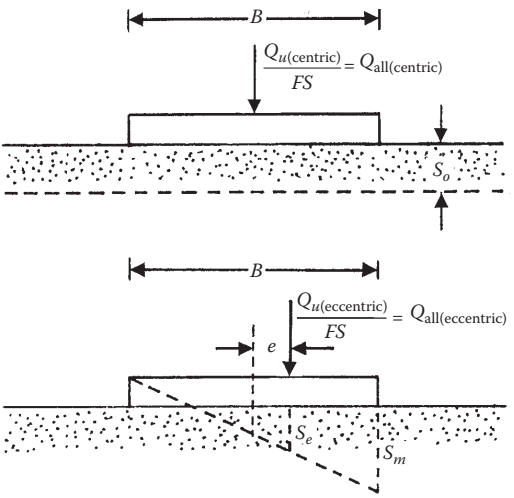


FIGURE 3.14 Notations for Equations 3.28 and 3.29.

EXAMPLE 3.6

Consider a continuous foundation with a width of 2 m. If $e = 0.2$ m and the depth of the foundation $D_f = 1$ m, determine the ultimate load per unit meter length of the foundation using the reduction factor method. For the soil, use $\phi = 40°$; $\gamma = 17.5$ kN/m^3; $c = 0$. Use Meyerhof's bearing capacity and depth factors, Equations 3.32, and Table 3.1.

Solution

Since $c = 0$, $B/L = 0$. From Equation 3.34,

$$q_{u(\text{centric})} = qN_q\lambda_{qd} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_\gamma\lambda_{\gamma d}$$

From Table 2.3 for $\phi = 40°$, $N_q = 64.2$ and $N_\gamma = 93.69$. Again, from Table 2.8, Meyerhof's depth factors are as follows:

$$\lambda_{qd} = \lambda_{\gamma d} = 1 + 0.1\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)\tan\left(45 + \frac{\phi}{2}\right) = 1 + 0.1\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)\tan\left(45 + \frac{40}{2}\right) = 1.107$$

So,

$$q_{u(\text{centric})} = (1)(17.5)(64.2)(1.107) + \frac{1}{2}(17.5)(2)(93.69)(1.107)$$
$$= 1243.7 + 1815.0 = 3058.7 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

According to Equation 3.33

$$q_{u(\text{eccentric})} = q_{u(\text{centric})}(1 - R_k) = q_{u(\text{centric})}\left[1 - a\left(\frac{e}{B}\right)^k\right]$$

For $D_f/B = 1/2 = 0.5$, from Table 3.1 $a = 1.754$ and $k = 0.80$. So,

$$q_{u(\text{eccentric})} = 3058.7\left[1 - 1.754\left(\frac{0.2}{2}\right)^{0.8}\right] \approx 2209 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

The ultimate load per unit length:

$$Q_u = (2209)(B)(1) = (2209)(2)(1) = \mathbf{4418\ kN/m}$$

EXAMPLE 3.7

Solve the Example 3.6 problem using the method of Prakash and Saran.

Solution

From Equation 3.39

$$Q_u = (B \times 1)\left[\frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_{\gamma(e)} + \gamma D_f N_{q(e)} + cN_{c(e)}\right]$$

Given: $c = 0$. For $\phi = 40°$, $e/B = 0.2/2 = 0.1$. From Figures 3.12 and 3.13, $N_{q(e)} = 56.09$ and $N_{\gamma(e)} \approx 55$. So,

$$Q_u = (2 \times 1)[\frac{1}{2}(17.5)(2)(55) + (17.5)(1)(56.09)] = (2)(962.5 + 981.5) = \mathbf{3888\ kN/m}$$

EXAMPLE 3.8

Solve the Example 3.6 problem using Equation 3.30.

Solution

For $c = 0$, from Equation 3.30

$$q_u = qN_q\lambda_{qd} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma B' N_\gamma \lambda_{\gamma d}$$

$$B' = B - 2e = 2 - (2)(0.2) = 1.6\ \text{m}$$

From Table 2.3 $N_q = 64.2$ and $N_\gamma = 93.69$. From Table 2.8, Meyerhof's depth factors are as follows:

$$\lambda_{qd} = \lambda_{\gamma d} = 1 + 0.1\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)\tan\left(45 + \frac{\phi}{2}\right) = 1 + 0.1\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)\tan\left(45 + \frac{40}{2}\right) = 1.107$$

$$q_u = (1 \times 17.5)(64.2)(1.107) + \frac{1}{2}(17.5)(1.6)(93.69)(1.107) = 2695.9\ \text{kN/m}^2$$

$$Q_u = (B' \times 1)q_u = (1.6)(2695.5) \approx \mathbf{4313\ kN/m}$$

EXAMPLE 3.9

A rectangular foundation is 1.0 m × 1.5 m in plan and is subjected to an eccentric load in the width direction with $e = 0.1$ m. The foundation is supported by a sand with $\gamma = 18$ kN/m^3 and $\phi = 30°$. Determine the gross ultimate load the foundation could carry by using Equations 3.31, 3.35, and 3.36. Use Vesic's bearing capacity factors (Tables 2.3 and 2.4), DeBeer's shape factor (Table 2.8), and Hansen's depth factor (Table 2.8).

Solution

$$Q_{u(\text{eccentric})} = Q_{u(\text{centric})}\left[1 - a\left(\frac{e}{B}\right)^k\right]$$

$$Q_{u(\text{centric})} = (B \times L)(q_u) = (B \times L)\left(q\lambda_{qs}\lambda_{qd}N_q + \frac{1}{2}\lambda_{\gamma s}\lambda_{\gamma d}\gamma B N_\gamma\right)$$

$$\lambda_{qs} = 1 + \frac{B}{L}\tan\phi' = 1 + \left(\frac{1}{1.5}\right)\tan 30 = 1.385$$

$$\lambda_{\gamma s} = 1 - 0.4\left(\frac{B}{L}\right) = 1 - 0.4\left(\frac{1}{1.5}\right) = 0.733$$

$$\lambda_{qd} = 1 + 2\tan\phi'(1-\sin\phi')^2\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right) = 1 + 2\tan 30(1-\sin 30)^2\left(\frac{1}{1}\right) = 1.289$$

$$\lambda_{\gamma d} = 1.0$$

From Tables 2.3 and 2.4, $N_q = 18.4$ and $N_\gamma = 22.4$

$$q_u = (1\times 18)(1.385)(1.289)(18.4) + (1/2)(0.733)(1.0)(18)(1)(22.4) = 739.05 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

$$Q_{u(\text{centric})} = (1\times 1.5)(739.05) = 1108.58 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

From Equation 3.35,

$$a = \left(\frac{B}{L}\right)^2 - 1.6\left(\frac{B}{L}\right) + 2.13 = \left(\frac{1}{1.5}\right)^2 - 1.6\left(\frac{1}{1.5}\right) + 2.13 \approx 1.51$$

From Equation 3.36,

$$k = 0.3\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)^2 - 0.56\left(\frac{B}{L}\right) + 0.9 = 0.3\left(\frac{1}{1.5}\right)^2 - 0.56\left(\frac{1}{1.5}\right) + 0.9 \approx 0.66$$

$$R_k = a\left(\frac{e}{B}\right)^k = 1.51\left(\frac{0.1}{1.5}\right)^{0.66} = 0.253$$

Hence,

$$Q_{u(\text{eccentic})} = Q_{u(\text{centic})}(1 - R_k) = 1108.58(1 - 0.253) = \mathbf{822.57\ kN}$$

3.4.2 Ultimate Load on Rectangular Foundation

Meyerhof's effective area method[1] described in the preceding section can be extended to determine the ultimate load on rectangular foundations. Eccentric loading of shallow foundations occurs when a vertical load Q is applied at a location other than the centroid of the foundation (Figure 3.15a), or when a foundation is subjected to a centric load of magnitude Q and momentum M (Figure 3.15b). In such cases, the load eccentricities may be given as

$$e_L = \frac{M_B}{Q} \tag{3.42}$$

and

$$e_B = \frac{M_L}{Q} \tag{3.43}$$

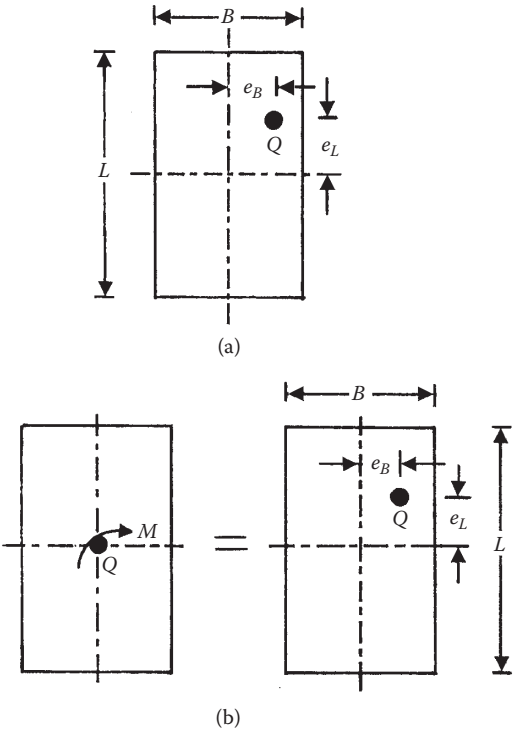


FIGURE 3.15 Eccentric load on rectangular foundation: (a) eccentrically applied vertical load; (b) application of vertical load and moment at the center of the foundation.

where

e_L, e_B = load eccentricities, respectively, in the directions of the *long* and *short* axes of the foundation

M_B, M_L = moment components about the *short* and *long* axes of the foundation, respectively

According to Meyerhof,[1] the ultimate bearing capacity q_u and the ultimate load Q_u of an eccentrically loaded foundation (vertical load) can be given as

$$q_u = cN_c\lambda_{cs}\lambda_{cd} + qN_q\lambda_{qs}\lambda_{qd} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma B' N_\gamma \lambda_{\gamma s}\lambda_{\gamma d} \tag{3.44}$$

and

$$Q_u = (q_u)A' \tag{3.45}$$

where

A' = effective area = $B'L'$

B' = effective width

L' = effective length

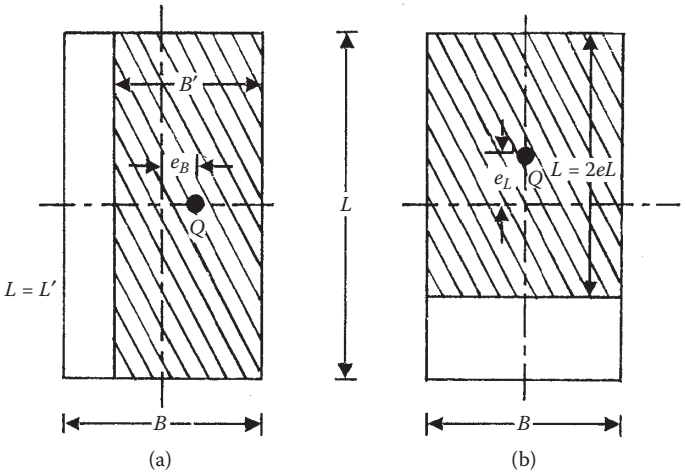


FIGURE 3.16 One-way eccentricity of load on foundation: (a) eccentricity in the width direction; (b) eccentricity in the length direction.

The *effective area* A' is a minimum contact area of the foundation such that its *centroid coincides with that of the load*. For *one-way eccentricity* (i.e., if $e_L = 0$ [Figure 3.16a]),

$$B' = B - 2e_B; \quad L' = L; \quad A' = B'L \tag{3.46}$$

However, if $e_B = 0$ (Figure 3.16b), calculate $L–2e_L$. The effective area is

$$A' = B(L - 2e_L) \tag{3.47}$$

The effective width B' is the *smaller* of the two values, that is, B or $L–2e_L$.

Based on their model test results Prakash and Saran[12] suggested that, for rectangular foundations with *one-way eccentricity* in the width direction (Figure 3.17), the ultimate load may be expressed as

$$Q_u = q_u(BL) = (BL)\left[\frac{1}{2}\gamma B N_{\gamma(e)}\lambda_{\gamma s(e)} + \gamma D_f N_{q(e)}\lambda_{qs(e)} + cN_{c(e)}\lambda_{cs(e)}\right] \tag{3.48}$$

where

$\lambda_{\gamma s(e)}$, $\lambda_{qs(e)}$, $\lambda_{cs(e)}$ = shape factors

The shape factors may be expressed by the following relationships:

$$\lambda_{\gamma s(e)} = 1.0 + \left(\frac{2e_B}{B} - 0.68\right)\frac{B}{L} + \left(0.43 - \frac{3e_B}{2B}\right)\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)^2 \tag{3.49}$$

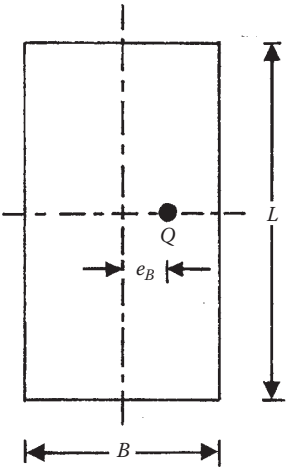


FIGURE 3.17 Rectangular foundation with one-way eccentricity.

where

L = length of the foundation

$$\lambda_{qs(e)} = 1 \tag{3.50}$$

$$\lambda_{cs(e)} = 1.0 + \left(\frac{B}{L}\right) \tag{3.51}$$

Note that Equation 3.48 does not contain the depth factors.

For *two-way eccentricities* (that is, $e_L \neq 0$ and $e_B \neq 0$), five possible cases may arise as discussed by Highter and Anders.[15] They are as follows:

Case I: ($e_L/L \geq 1/6$ and $e_B/B \geq 1/6$). For this case (shown in Figure 3.18), calculate

$$B_1 = B\left(1.5 - \frac{3e_B}{B}\right) \tag{3.52}$$

$$L_1 = L\left(1.5 - \frac{3e_L}{L}\right) \tag{3.53}$$

So, the effective area

$$A' = \frac{1}{2} B_1 L_1 \tag{3.54}$$

The effective width B' is equal to the smaller of B_1 or L_1.

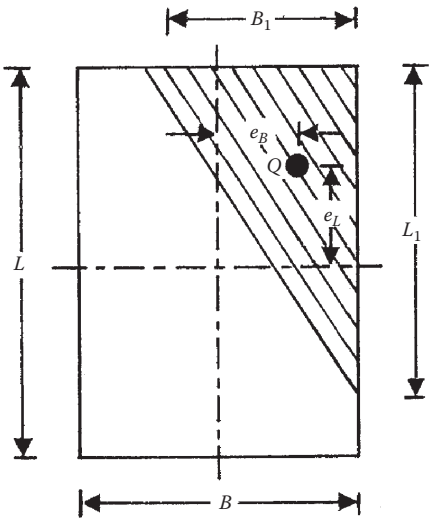


FIGURE 3.18 Effective area for the case of $e_L/L \geq 1/6$ and $e_B/B \geq 1/6$.

Case II: ($e_L/L < 0.5$ and $0 < e_B/B < 1/6$). This case is shown in Figure 3.19. Knowing the magnitudes e_L/L and e_B/B, the values of L_1/L and L_2/L (and thus L_1 and L_2) can be obtained from Figures 3.20 and 3.21. The effective area is given as

$$A' = \frac{1}{2}(L_1 + L_2)B \tag{3.55}$$

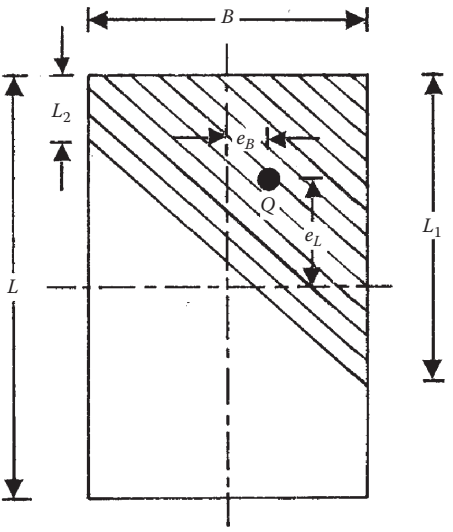


FIGURE 3.19 Effective area for the case of $e_L/L < 0.5$ and $e_B/B < 1/6$.

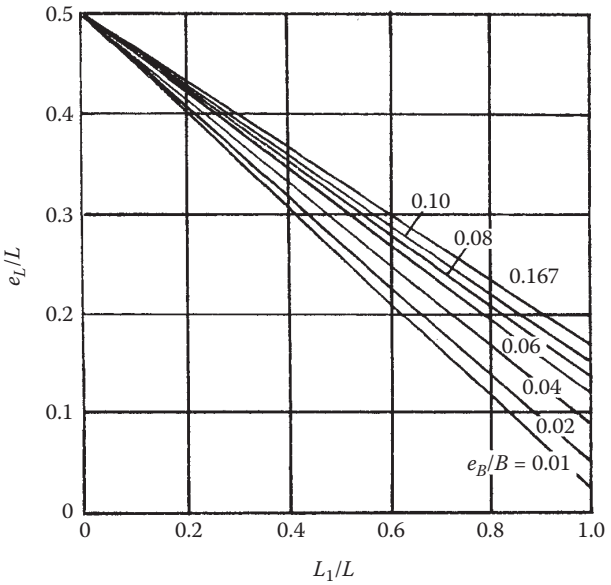


FIGURE 3.20 Plot of e_L/L versus L_1/L for $e_L/L < 0.5$ and $0 < e_B/B < 1/6$. (Redrawn from Highter, W. H. and J. C. Anders. 1985. *J. Geotech. Eng.*, 111(5): 659.)

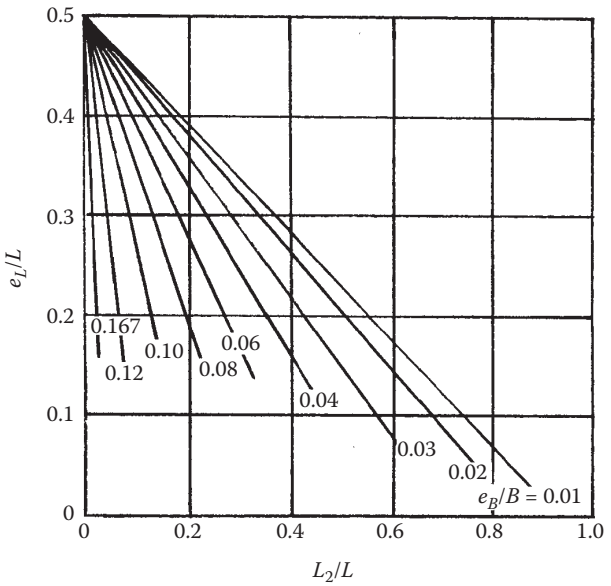


FIGURE 3.21 Plot of e_L/L versus L_2/L for $e_L/L < 0.5$ and $0 < e_B/B < 1/6$. (Redrawn from Highter, W. H. and J. C. Anders. 1985. *J. Geotech. Eng.*, 111(5): 659.)

The effective length L' is the larger of the two values L_1 or L_2. The effective width is equal to

$$B' = \frac{A'}{L'} \tag{3.56}$$

Case III: ($e_L/L < 1/6$ and $0 < e_B/B < 0.5$). Figure 3.22 shows the case under consideration. Knowing the magnitudes of e_L/L and e_B/B, the magnitudes of B_1 and B_2 can be obtained from Figures 3.23 and 3.24, respectively. So, the effective area can be obtained as

$$A' = \frac{1}{2}(B_1 + B_2)L \tag{3.57}$$

In this case, the effective length is equal to

$$L' = L \tag{3.58}$$

The effective width can be given as

$$B' = \frac{A'}{L} \tag{3.59}$$

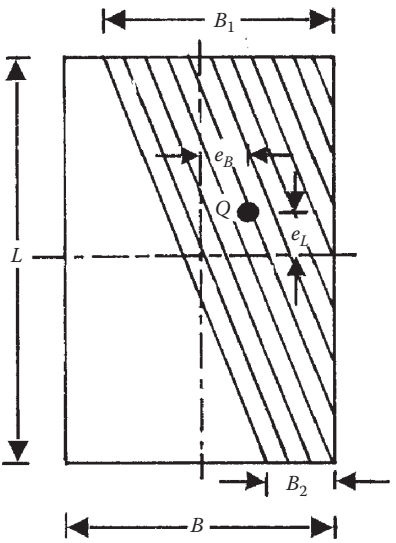


FIGURE 3.22 Effective area for the case of $e_L/L < 1/6$ and $0 < e_B/B < 0.5$.

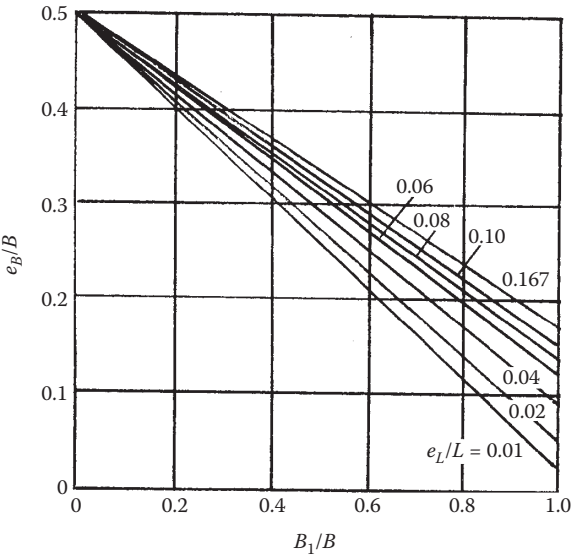


FIGURE 3.23 Plot of e_B/B versus B_1/B for $e_L/L < 1/6$ and $0 < e_B/B < 0.5$. (Redrawn from Highter, W. H. and J. C. Anders. 1985. *J. Geotech. Eng.*, 111(5): 659.)

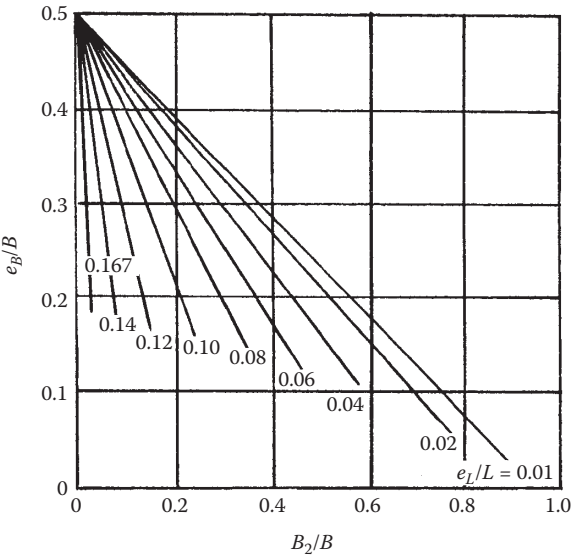


FIGURE 3.24 Plot of e_B/B versus B_2/B for $e_L/L < 1/6$ and $0 < e_B/B < 0.5$. (Redrawn from Highter, W. H. and J. C. Anders. 1985. *J. Geotech. Eng.*, 111(5): 659.)

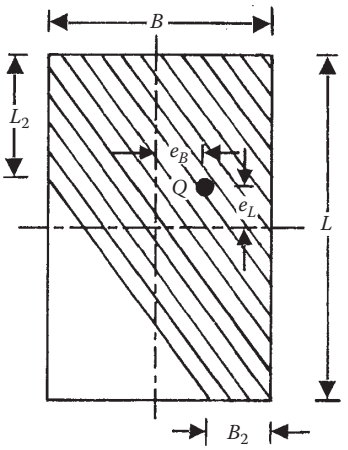


FIGURE 3.25 Effective area for the case of $e_L/L < 1/6$ and $e_B/B < 1/6$.

Case IV: ($e_L/L < 1/6$ and $e_B/B < 1/6$). The eccentrically loaded plan of the foundation for this condition is shown in Figure 3.25. For this case, the e_L/L curves sloping upward in Figure 3.26 which is a plot of e_B/B versus B_2/B. Similarly, in Figure 3.27 the families of e_L/L curves that slope downward. This is a plot of e_B/B versus L_2/L. Knowing B_2 and L_2, the effective area A' can be calculated. For this case, $L' = L$ and $B' = A'/L'$.

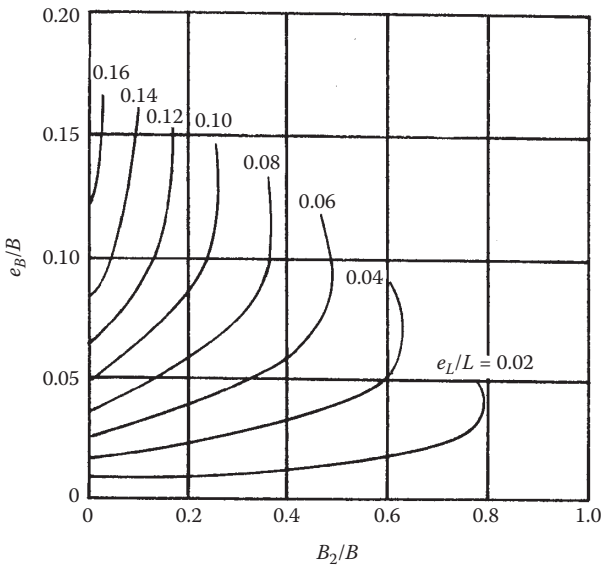


FIGURE 3.26 Plot of e_B/B versus B_2/B for $e_L/L < 1/6$ and $e_B/B < 1/6$. (Redrawn from Highter, W. H. and J. C. Anders. 1985. *J. Geotech. Eng.*, 111(5): 659.)

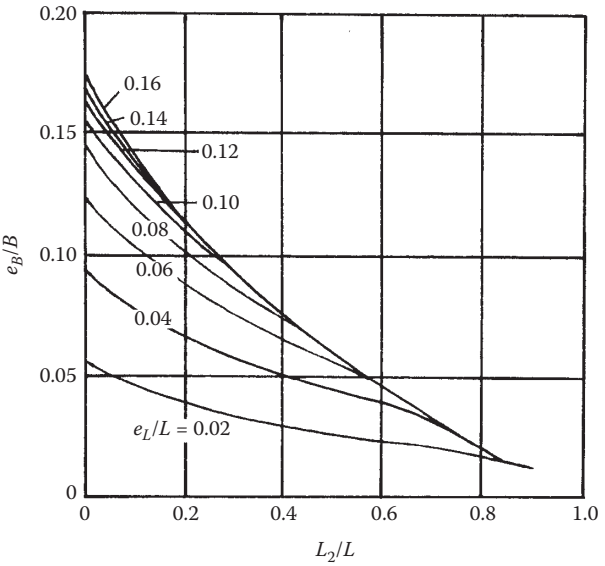


FIGURE 3.27 Plot of e_B/B versus L_2/L for $e_L/L < 1/6$ and $e_B/B < 1/6$. (Redrawn from Highter, W. H. and J. C. Anders. 1985. *J. Geotech. Eng.*, 111(5): 659.)

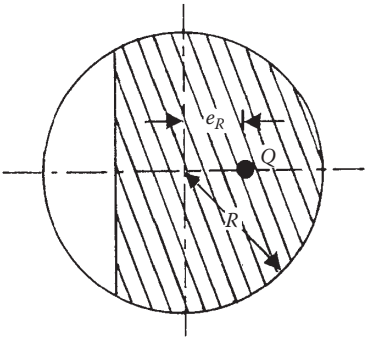
Case V: (Circular Foundation). In the case of circular foundations under eccentric loading (Figure 3.28a), the eccentricity is always one way. The effective area A' and the effective width B' for a circular foundation are given in a nondimensional form in Figure 3.28b.

Depending on the nature of the load eccentricity and the shape of the foundation, once the magnitudes of the effective area and the effective width are determined, they can be used in Equations 3.44 and 3.45 to determine the ultimate load for the foundation. In using Equation 3.44, one needs to remember that

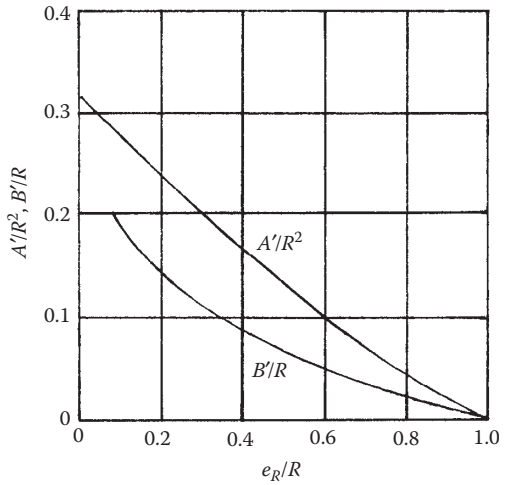
1. The bearing capacity factors for a given friction angle are to be determined from those presented in Tables 2.3 and 2.4.
2. The shape factor is determined by using the relationships given in Table 2.8 by replacing B' for B and L' for L whenever they appear.
3. The depth factors are determined from the relationships given in Table 2.8. However, for calculating the depth factor, the term B is *not* replaced by B'.

EXAMPLE 3.10

A shallow foundation measuring 2 m × 3 m in a plan is subjected to a centric load and a moment. If $e_B = 0.2$ m, $e_L = 0.6$ m, and the depth of the foundation is 1.5 m, determine the allowable load the foundation can carry. Use a factor of safety of 4. For the soil, given: unit weight $\gamma = 18$ kN/m^3; friction angle $\phi = 35°$; cohesion $c = 0$.



(a)



(b)

FIGURE 3.28 Normalized effective dimensions of circular foundations. (From Highter, W. H. and J. C. Anders. 1985. *J. Geotech. Eng.*, 111(5): 659.); (a) eccentrically loaded circular foundation; (b) plot of A'/R^2 with B'/R against e_R/R.

Use Vesic's N_γ (Table 2.4), DeBeer's shape factors (Table 2.8), and Hansen's depth factors (Table 2.8).

Solution

For this case,

$$\frac{e_B}{B} = \frac{0.2}{2} = 0.1; \quad \frac{e_L}{L} = \frac{0.6}{3} = 0.2.$$

For this type of condition, Case II as shown in Figure 3.19 applies. Referring to Figures 3.20 and 3.21

$$\frac{L_1}{L} = 0.865, \quad \text{or } L_1 = (0.865)(3) = 2.595\text{m}$$

$$\frac{L_2}{L} = 0.22, \quad \text{or } L_2 = (0.22)(3) = 0.66\text{ m}$$

From Equation 3.55

$$A' = \frac{1}{2}(L_1 + L_2)B = \frac{1}{2}(2.595 + 0.66)(2) = 3.255\text{ m}^2$$

So,

$$B' = \frac{A'}{L'} = \frac{A'}{L_1} = \frac{3.255}{2.595} = 1.254\text{ m}$$

Since $c = 0$,

$$q_u = qN_q\lambda_{qs}\lambda_{qd} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma B' N_\gamma \lambda_{\gamma s}\lambda_{\gamma d}$$

From Table 2.3 for $\phi = 35°$, $N_q = 33.30$. Also from Table 2.4 for $\phi = 35°$, Vesic's $N_\gamma = 48.03$.

The shape factors given by DeBeer are as follows (Table 2.8):

$$\lambda_{qs} = 1 + \left(\frac{B'}{L'}\right)\tan\phi = 1 + \left(\frac{1.254}{2.595}\right)\tan 35 = 1.339$$

$$\lambda_{\gamma s} = 1 - 0.4\left(\frac{B'}{L'}\right) = 1 - 0.4\left(\frac{1.254}{2.595}\right) = 0.806$$

The depth factors given by Hansen are as follows:

$$\lambda_{qd} = 1 + 2\tan\phi(1 - \sin\phi)^2\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right) = 1 + (2)(\tan 35)(1 - \sin 35)^2\left(\frac{1.5}{2}\right) = 1.191$$

$$\lambda_{\gamma d} = 1$$

So,

$$q_u = (18)(1.5)(33.3)(1.339)(1.191) + \frac{1}{2}(18)(1.254)(48.03)(0.806)(1) = 1434 + 437$$

$$= 1871\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

So the allowable load on the foundation is

$$Q = \frac{qA'}{FS} = \frac{(1871)(3.255)}{4} \approx \mathbf{1523\ kN}$$

3.4.3 Average Settlement of Continuous Foundation on Granular Soil under Allowable Eccentric Loading

Patra, Behera, Sivakugan, and Das[16], based on laboratory model test results, have proposed an empirical method to approximately estimate the average settlement (i.e., settlement along the center line of the foundation) for an eccentrically loaded continuous foundation. Following is a step-by-step procedure to do that.

1. From Equations 3.31, 3.35, and 3.36, with $B/L = 0$, calculate

$$q_{u(\text{eccentric})} = q_{u(\text{centric})}\left[1 - 2.13\left(\frac{e}{B}\right)^{0.9}\right] \tag{3.60}$$

2. The *average settlement* S_u *at ultimate load* for an eccentrically loaded continuous foundation with embedment ratio D_f/B and eccentricity ratio e/B can be expressed as

$$\left(\frac{S_u}{B}\right)_{(D_f/B,e/B)} = \left(\frac{S_u}{B}\right)_{(D_f/B=0,e/B=0)}\left[1 + 0.6\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)\right]\left[1 - 2.15\left(\frac{e}{B}\right)\right] \tag{3.61}$$

   The approximate magnitude of $(S_u/B)_{(D_f/B=0,e/B=0)}$ can be obtained from Equations 1.6 and 1.7.

3. Let the allowable average load per unit area, $q_{(D_f/B,e/B)}$, be

$$\frac{q_{u(D_f/B,e/B)}}{FS} \tag{3.62}$$

   So

$$\frac{q_{(D_f/B,e/B)}}{q_{u(D_f/B,e/B)}} = \alpha \tag{3.63}$$

4. Now, let

$$\beta = \frac{(S/B)_{(D_f/B,e/B)}}{(S_u/B)_{(D_f/B,e/B)}} \tag{3.64}$$

where $(S/B)_{(D_f/B,e/B)}$ = settlement of the foundation under $q_{(D_f/B,e/B)}$

5. The nondimensional factors α and β can be approximately related as

$$\beta = \frac{\alpha}{1.43 - 0.43\alpha} \tag{3.65}$$

6. With known values of α, the magnitude of β can be estimated and hence $(S/B)_{(D_f/B,e/B)}$.

EXAMPLE 3.11

For an eccentrically loaded shallow continuous foundation, given $B = 0.6$ m, $D_f = 0.6$ m, $e/B = 0.1$. The known soil characteristics are as follows: $\phi = 35°$; $\gamma = 18$ kN/m^3; relative density, $D_r = 70\%$; modulus of elasticity, $E_s = 8500$ kN/m^2; Poisson's ratio, $\nu_s = 0.3$. Determine

a. The average allowable load per unit area using $FS = 3$, and
b. The corresponding settlement along the centerline of the foundation.

Use Equation 2.91, Vesic's bearing capacity factors, DeBeer's shape factors, and Hansen's depth factor to calculate $q_{u(D_f/B,e/B=0)}$.

Solution

Part a: From Equation 2.91,

$$q_{u(D_f/B,e/B=0)} = qN_q d_q \lambda_{qc} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma B N_\gamma d_\gamma \lambda_{\gamma c}$$

$$q = \gamma D_f = (18)(0.6) = 10.8 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

Bearing capacity factors for $\phi = 35°$ are $N_q = 33.3$ and $N_\gamma = 48.03$ (Tables 2.3 and 2.4)

Depth factors:

$$\lambda_{qd} = 1 + 2\tan\phi(1 - \sin\phi)^2\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right) = 1 + 2\tan 35(1 - \sin 35)^2\left(\frac{0.6}{0.6}\right) = 1.255$$

$$\lambda_{\gamma d} = 1$$

Compressibility factors (λ_{qc} and $\lambda_{\gamma c}$):

Rigidity index,

$$I_r = \frac{E_s}{2(1 + \nu_s)q\tan\phi}$$

where q = effective overburden pressure at a depth of $(D_f + B/2)$

$$q = 18\left[0.6 + \left(\frac{0.6}{2}\right)\right] = 16.2\ \text{kN/m}^2$$

$$I_r = \frac{8500}{2(1+0.3)(16.2)(\tan 35)} = 288.2$$

Critical rigidity index,

$$I_{r(\text{cr})} = \frac{1}{2}\left\{\exp\left[3.3\cot\left(45 - \frac{\phi}{2}\right)\right]\right\} = 283.2$$

Since $I_r > I_{r(\text{cr})}$,

$$\lambda_{qc} = \lambda_{\gamma c} = 1$$

Note: For $I_r < I_{r(\text{cr})}$

$$\lambda_{qc} = \lambda_{\gamma c} = \exp\left\{(-4.4\tan\phi) + \left[\frac{(3.07\sin\phi)(\log 2I_r)}{1+\sin\phi}\right]\right\}$$

Thus

$$q_{u(D_f/B,e/B=0)} = (10.8)(33.3)(1.255)(1) + \frac{1}{2}(18)(0.6)(48.03)(1)(1)$$
$$\approx 710.7\ \text{kN/m}^2$$

From Equation 3.60

$$q_{u(\text{eccentric})} = 710.7[1 - 2.13(0.1)^{0.9}] = 520.13\ \text{kN/m}^2$$

Hence the allowable load per unit area,

$$q_{(D_f/B,e/B)} = \frac{520.13}{FS} = \frac{520.13}{3} = \mathbf{173.38\ kN/m^2}$$

Part b:

$$\frac{\gamma B}{p_a} = \frac{(18)(0.6)}{100} = 0.108 > 0.025$$

From Equation 1.7,

$$\left(\frac{S_u}{B}\right)_{(D_f/B=0,e/B=0)}(\%) = 30e^{(-0.9D_r)} - 7.16 = 30e^{-0.9(0.7)} - 7.16 = 8.82\%$$

From Equation 3.65,

$$\beta = \frac{\alpha}{1.43 - 0.43\alpha}$$

$$\alpha = \frac{173.38}{520.13} = 0.333$$

$$\beta = \frac{0.333}{1.43 - (0.43)(0.333)} = 0.259$$

From Equation 3.61,

$$\left(\frac{S}{B}\right)_{(D_f/B,e/B)}(\%) = \beta\left(\frac{S_u}{B}\right)_{(D_f/B=0,e/B=0)}(\%)\left[1 + 0.6\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)\right]\left[1 - 2.15\left(\frac{e}{B}\right)\right]$$
$$= (0.259)(8.82)[1 + (0.6)(1)][1 - 2.15(0.1)]$$
$$= 2.87\%$$

Hence,

$$S = \left(\frac{2.87}{100}\right)(B) = (0.0287)(600) = \mathbf{17.22\ mm}$$

3.4.4 Ultimate Bearing Capacity of Eccentrically Obliquely Loaded Foundations

The problem of ultimate bearing capacity of a *continuous foundation* subjected to an eccentric inclined load (Figure 3.29) was studied by Saran and Agarwal.[17] If a continuous foundation is located at a depth D_f below the ground surface and is subjected

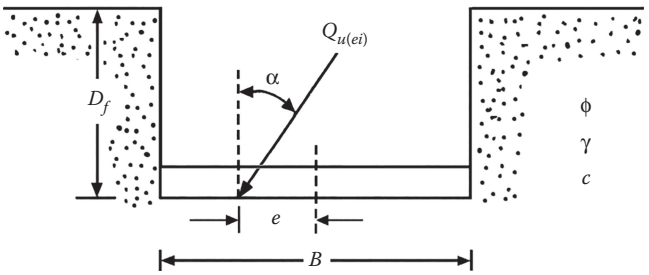


FIGURE 3.29 Continuous foundation subjected to eccentrically inclined load.

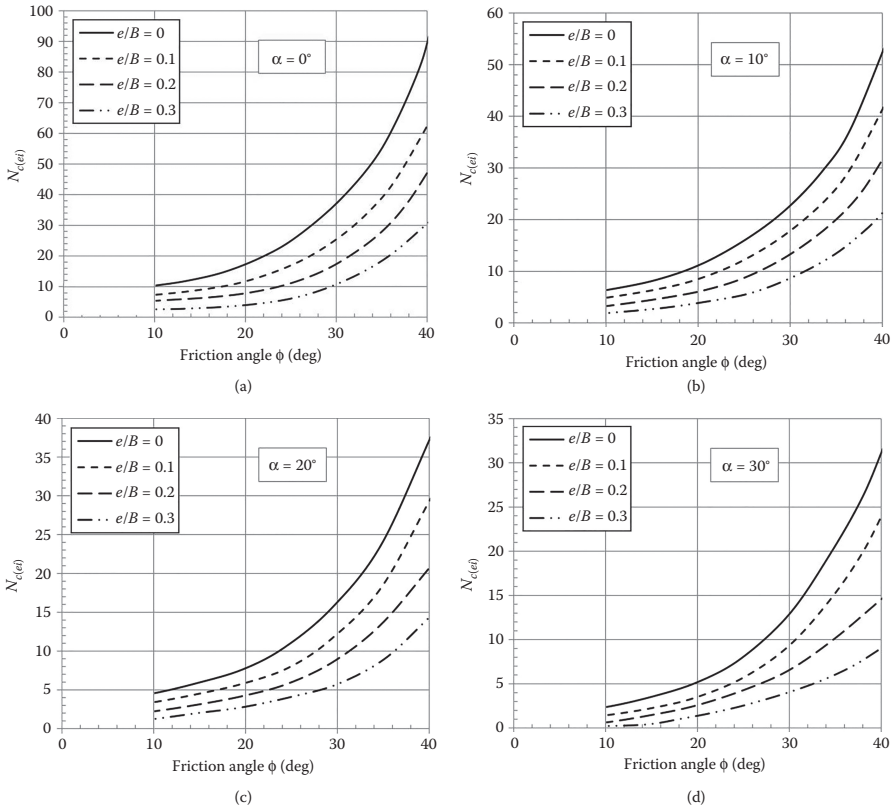


FIGURE 3.30 (a–d) Variation of $N_{c(ie)}$ with soil friction angle ϕ and e/B.

to an eccentric load (load eccentricity = e) inclined at an angle α to the vertical, the ultimate capacity can be expressed as

$$Q_{u(ei)} = B\left[cN_{c(ei)} + qN_{q(ei)} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_{\gamma(ei)}\right] \tag{3.66}$$

where

$N_{c(ei)}$, $N_{q(ei)}$, $N_{\gamma(ei)}$ = bearing capacity factors

$q = \gamma D_f$

The variations of the bearing capacity factors with e/B, ϕ, and α are given in Figures 3.30 through 3.32.

Based on about 120 model test results on dense and medium dense sand, Patra et al.[18] have provided the following empirical relationship to obtain $Q_{u(ei)}$, or

$$Q_{u(ei)} = Bq_u\left[1 - 2\left(\frac{e}{B}\right)\right]\left(1 - \frac{\alpha}{\phi'}\right)^{2-(D_f/B)} \tag{3.67}$$

where q_u = ultimate bearing capacity with vertical centric load for a given D_f/B.

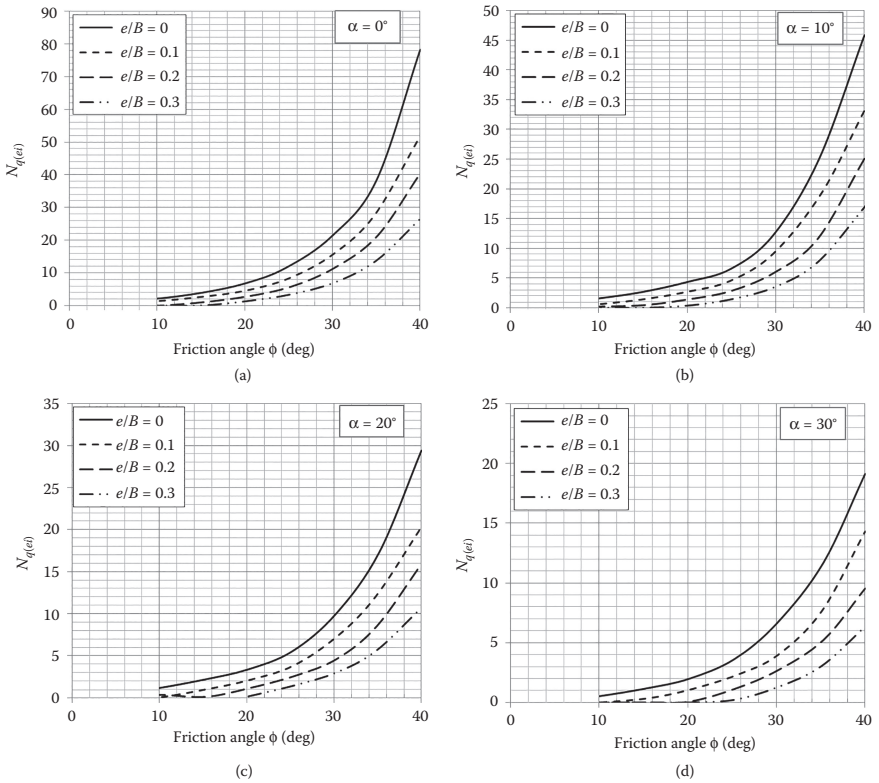


FIGURE 3.31 (a–d) Variation of $N_{q(ie)}$ with soil friction angle ϕ and e/B.

EXAMPLE 3.12

Refer to Figure 3.29. A continuous foundation is supported by a granular soil. The foundation is subjected to an eccentrically inclined load. Given: for the foundation, $B = 2$ m, $e = 0.2$ m, $D_f = 1.5$ m, $\alpha = 10°$ and, for the soil, $\phi' = 40°$, $c' = 0$, $\gamma = 16.5$ kN/m^2. Determine $Q_{u(ei)}$

a. Using Equation 3.66
b. Using Equation 3.67

Use DeBeer's depth factors (2.8) and Vesic's bearing capacity factors (Tables 2.3 and 2.4).

Solution

Part a: With $c = 0$, Equation 3.66 becomes

$$Q_{u(ei)} = B\left[qN_{q(ei)} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_{\gamma(ei)}\right]$$

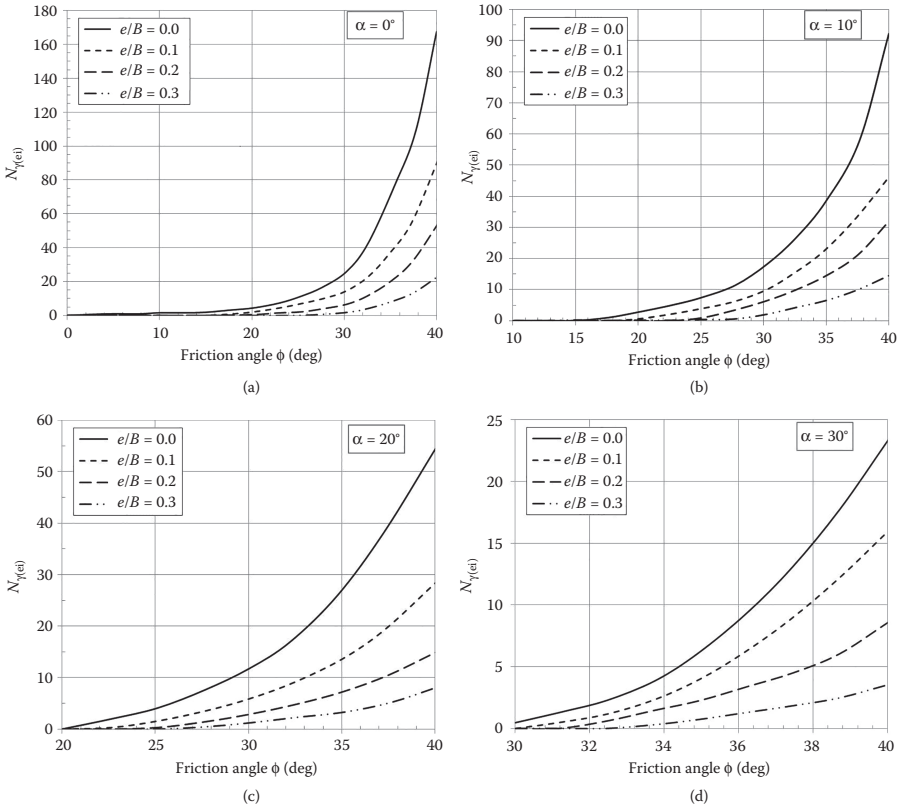


FIGURE 3.32 (a–d) Variation of $N_{\gamma\,(ei)}$ with soil friction angle ϕ and *e*/*B*.

$q = 1.5 \times 16.5 = 24.75$ kN/m^2, $B = 2$ m, $\gamma = 16.5$ kN/m^3
For this problem, $\phi' = 40°$, $e/B = 0.2/2 = 0.1$, $\alpha = 10°$
From Figures 3.31b and 3.32b, $N_{q(ei)} = 33.16$ and $N_{\gamma(ei)} = 47.48$. So

$$Q_{u(ei)} = (2)\left[(24.75)(33.16) + \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)(16.5)(2)(47.48)\right] = \mathbf{3208.26\ kN/m}$$

Part b: From Equation 3.67,

$$Q_{u(ei)} = Bq_u\left[1 - 2\left(\frac{e}{B}\right)\right]\left[1 - \left(\frac{\alpha}{\phi}\right)\right]^{2-(D_f/B)}$$

$$q_u = qN_qF_{qd} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_\gamma F_{\gamma d}$$

$q = 16.5 \times 1.5 = 24.75$ kN/m^2, $\lambda_{qd} = 1 + 0.214(D_f/B) = 1 + 0.214(1.5/2) = 1.161$ (Table 2.8), $\lambda_{\gamma d} = 1$ (see Table 2.8), $N_q = 64.2$ (Table 2.3), $N_\gamma = 109.41$ (Vesic, Table 2.4), $e/B = 0.1$, and $D_f/B = 0.75$. Hence

$$q_u = (24.75)(64.2)(1.161) + \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)(16.5)(2)(109.41)(1) = 3650 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

$$Q_{u(ei)} = (2)(3650)[1 - 2(0.1)]\left[1 - \left(\frac{10}{40}\right)\right]^{2-0.75} = \mathbf{4076\ kN/m}$$

REFERENCES

1. Meyerhof, G. G. 1953. The bearing capacity of foundations under eccentric and inclined loads. In *Proc., III Intl. Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng.*, Zurich, Switzerland, 1: 440.
2. Caquot, A. and J. Kerisel. 1949. *Tables for the Calculation of Passive Pressure, Active Pressure, and the Bearing Capacity of Foundations*. Paris: Gauthier–Villars.
3. Meyerhof, G. G. 1951. The ultimate bearing capacity of foundations. *Geotechnique*, 2: 301.
4. Meyerhof, G. G. 1963. Some recent research on the bearing capacity of foundations. *Canadian Geotech. J.*, 1(1): 16.
5. Hansen, J. B. 1970. *A Revised and Extended Formula for Bearing Capacity*. Bulletin No. 28. Copenhagen: Danish Geotechnical Institute.
6. Muhs, H. and K. Weiss. 1973. Inclined load tests on shallow strip footing. In *Proc., VIII Intl. Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng.*, Moscow, 1: 3.
7. Dubrova, G. A. 1973. *Interaction of Soils and Structures*. Moscow: Rechnoy Transport.
8. Vesic, A. S. 1975. Bearing capacity of shallow foundations. In *Foundation Engineering Handbook*, eds. Winterkorn, H. F. and H.-Y. Fang. New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold.
9. Purkayastha, R. D. and R. A. N. Char. 1977. Stability analysis for eccentrically loaded footings. *J. Geotech. Eng. Div.*, 103(6): 647.
10. Janbu, N. 1957. Earth pressures and bearing capacity calculations by generalized procedure of slices. In *Proc., IV Intl. Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng.*, London, 2: 207.
11. Patra, C. R., N. Sivakugan, B. M. Das, and B. Sethy. 2015. Ultimate bearing capacity of rectangular foundation on sand under eccentric loading. In *Proc. XVI Eur. Conf. Soil Mech. Found Eng.*, Edinburgh, UK, 3151.
12. Prakash, S. and S. Saran. 1971. Bearing capacity of eccentrically loaded footings. *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div.*, 97(1): 95.
13. Terzaghi, K. 1943. *Theoretical Soil Mechanics*. New York: John Wiley.
14. Prakash, S. 1981. *Soil Dynamics*. New York: McGraw-Hill.
15. Highter, W. H. and J. C. Anders. 1985. Dimensioning footings subjected to eccentric loads. *J. Geotech. Eng.*, 111(5): 659.
16. Patra, C. R., R. N. Behera, N. Sivakugan, and B. M. Das. 2013. Estimation of average settlement of shallow foundation on granular soil under eccentric loading. *Intl. J. Geotech. Eng.*, Maney, UK, 7(2): 218.
17. Saran, S. and R. K. Agarwal. 1991. Bearing capacity of eccentrically obliquely loaded foundation. *J. Geotech. Eng.*, 117(11): 1669.
18. Patra, C. R., R. N. Behera, N. Sivakugan, and B. M. Das. 2012. Ultimate bearing capacity of shallow strip foundation under eccentrically inclined load: Part I. *Intl. J. Geotech. Eng.*, 6(2): 342.

4 Special Cases of Shallow Foundations

4.1 INTRODUCTION

The bearing capacity problems described in Chapters 2 and 3 assume that the soil supporting the foundation is homogeneous and extends to a great depth below the bottom of the foundation. They also assume that the ground surface is horizontal; however, this is not true in all cases. It is possible to encounter a rigid layer at a shallow depth, or the soil may be layered and have different shear strength parameters. It may be necessary to construct foundations on or near a slope. Bearing capacity problems related to these special cases are described in this chapter.

4.2 FOUNDATION SUPPORTED BY SOIL WITH A RIGID ROUGH BASE AT A LIMITED DEPTH

Figure 4.1a shows a shallow rigid rough continuous foundation supported by soil that extends to a great depth. The ultimate bearing capacity of this foundation can be expressed (neglecting the depth factors) as (Chapter 2)

$$q_u = cN_c + qN_q + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_\gamma \tag{4.1}$$

The procedure for determining the bearing capacity factors N_c, N_q, and N_γ in homogeneous and isotropic soils was outlined in Chapter 2. The extent of the failure zone in soil at ultimate load q_u is equal to D. The magnitude of D obtained during the evaluation of the bearing capacity factor N_c by Prandtl[1] and N_q by Reissner[2] is given in a nondimensional form in Figure 4.2. Similarly, the magnitude of D obtained by Lundgren and Mortensen[3] during the evaluation of N_γ is given in Figure 4.3.

If a rigid rough base is located at a depth of $H < D$ below the bottom of the foundation, full development of the failure surface in soil will be restricted. In such a case, the soil failure zone and the development of slip lines at ultimate load will be as shown in Figure 4.1b. Mandel and Salencon[4] determined the bearing capacity factors for such a case by numerical integration using the theory of plasticity. According to Mandel and Salencon's theory, the ultimate bearing capacity of a rough continuous foundation with a rigid rough base located at a shallow depth can be given by the relation

$$q_u = cN_c^* + qN_q^* + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_\gamma^* \tag{4.2}$$

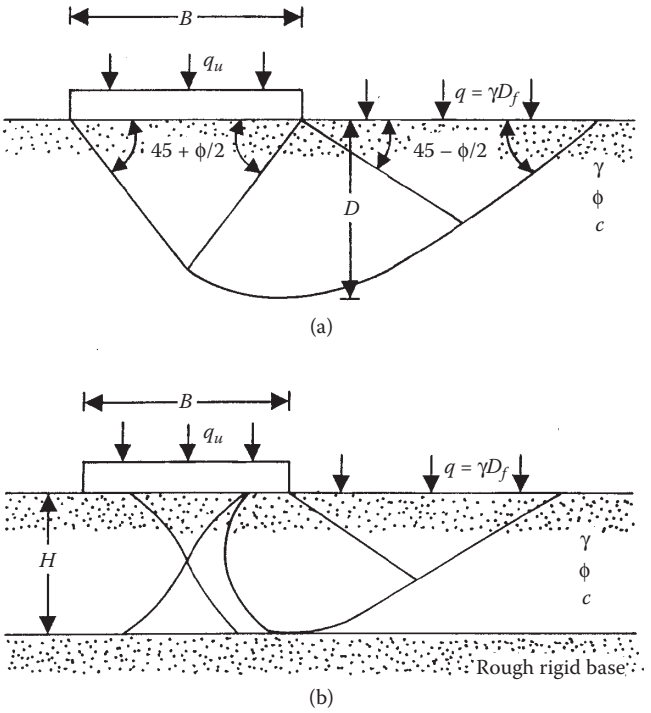


FIGURE 4.1 Failure surface under a rigid rough continuous foundation: (a) homogeneous soil extending to a great depth; (b) with a rough rigid base located at a shallow depth.

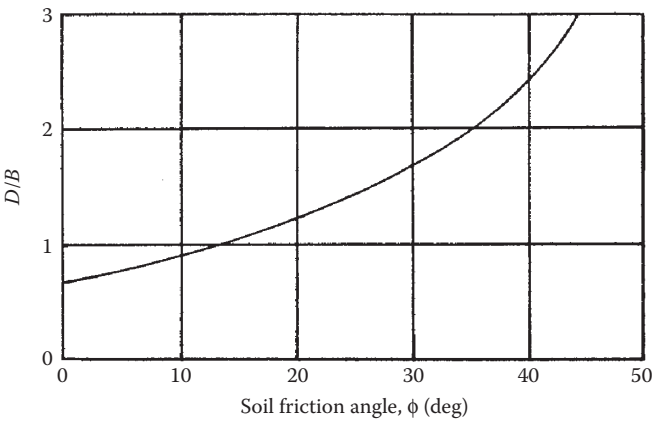


FIGURE 4.2 Variation of D/B with soil friction angle (for N_c and N_q).

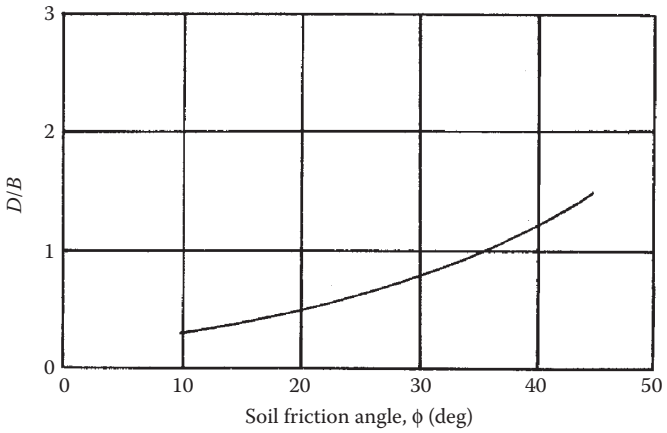


FIGURE 4.3 Variation of D/B with soil friction angle (for N_γ).

where

N_c^*, N_q^*, N_γ^* = modified bearing capacity factors

B = width of foundation

γ = unit weight of soil

Note that for $H \geq D$, $N_c^* = N_c$, $N_q^* = N_q$, and $N_\gamma^* = N_\gamma$ (Lundgren and Mortensen). The variations of N_c^* N_q^*, andN_γ^* with H/B and soil friction angle ϕ are given in Figures 4.4 through 4.6, respectively.

Neglecting the depth factors, the ultimate bearing capacity of rough circular and rectangular foundations on a sand layer ($c = 0$) with a rough rigid base located at a shallow depth can be given as

$$q_u = qN_q^*\lambda_{qs}^* + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_\gamma^*\lambda_{\gamma s}^* \tag{4.3}$$

where

$\lambda_{qs}^*, \lambda_{\gamma s}^*$ = modified shape factors

The above-mentioned shape factors are functions of H/B and ϕ. Based on the work of Meyerhof and Chaplin[5] and simplifying the assumption that the stresses and shear zones in radial planes are identical to those in transverse planes, Meyerhof[6] evaluated the approximate values of λ_{qs}^* and $\lambda_{\gamma s}^*$ as

$$\lambda_{qs}^* = 1 - m_1\left(\frac{B}{L}\right) \tag{4.4}$$

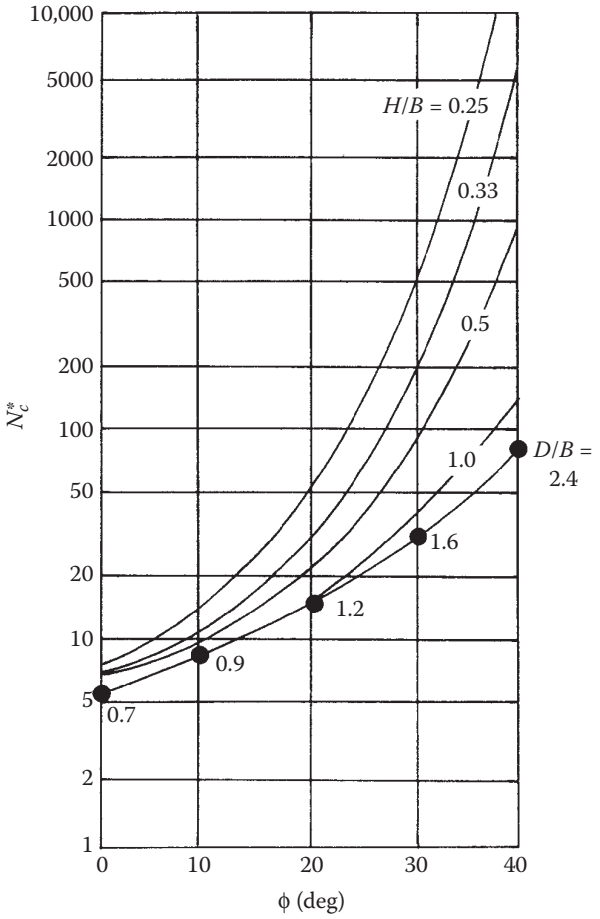


FIGURE 4.4 Mandel and Salencon's bearing capacity factor N_c^* (Equation 4.2).

and

$$\lambda_{\gamma s}^* = 1 - m_2\left(\frac{B}{L}\right) \tag{4.5}$$

where

L = length of the foundation

The variations of m_1 and m_2 with H/B and ϕ are given in Figures 4.7 and 4.8.

Milovic and Tournier[7] and Pfeifle and Das[8] conducted laboratory tests to verify the theory of Mandel and Salencon[4]. Figure 4.9 shows the comparison of the experimental evaluation of N_γ^* for a rough surface foundation ($D_f = 0$) on a sand layer with theory. The angle of friction of the sand used for these tests was 43°. From Figure 4.9 the following conclusions can be drawn:

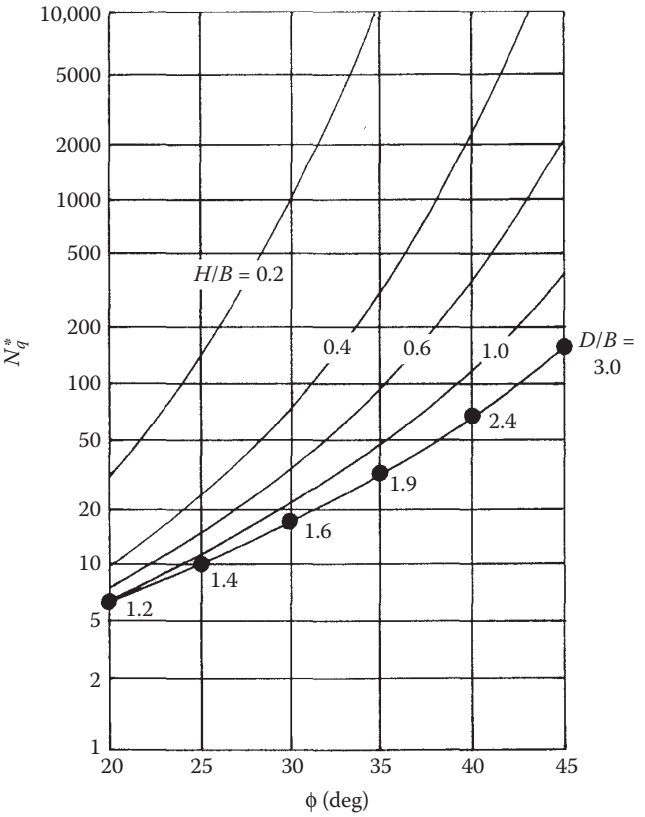


FIGURE 4.5 Mandel and Salencon's bearing capacity factor N_q^* (Equation 4.2).

1. The value of N_γ^* for a given foundation increases with the decrease in H/B.
2. The magnitude of $H/B = D/B$ beyond which the presence of a rigid rough base has no influence on the N_γ^* value of a foundation is about 50%–75% more than that predicted by the theory.
3. For H/B between 0.5 to about 1.9, the experimental values of N_γ^* are higher than those predicted theoretically.
4. For $H/B <$ about 0.6, the experimental values of N_γ^* are lower than those predicted by theory. This may be due to two factors: (a) the crushing of sand grains at such high values of ultimate load, and (b) the curvilinear nature of the actual failure envelope of soil at high normal stress levels.

Cerato and Lutenegger[9] reported laboratory model test results on large square and circular surface foundations. Based on these test results they observed that, at about $H/B \geq 3$

$$N_\gamma^* \approx N_\gamma$$

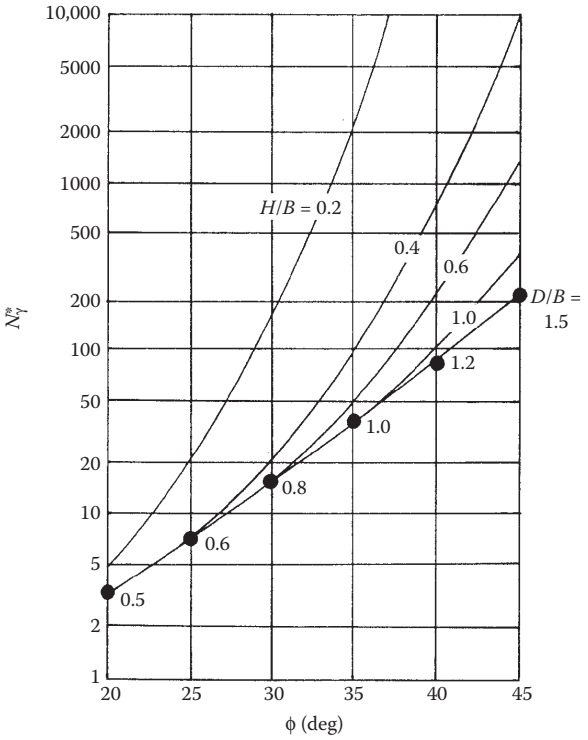


FIGURE 4.6 Mandel and Salencon's bearing capacity factor N_γ^* (Equation 4.2).

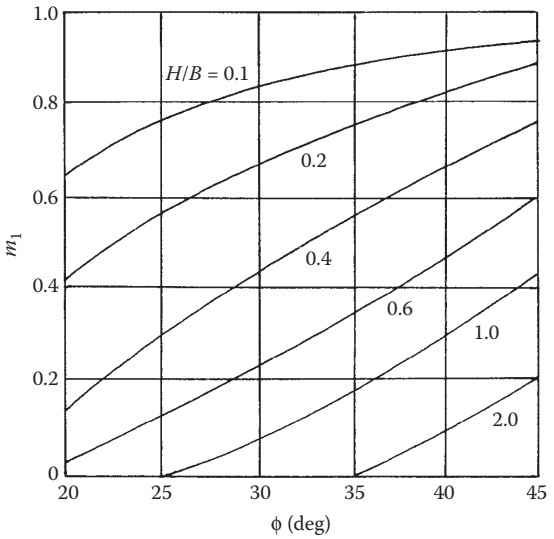


FIGURE 4.7 Variation of m_1 (Meyerhof's values) for use in the modified shape factor (Equation 4.4).

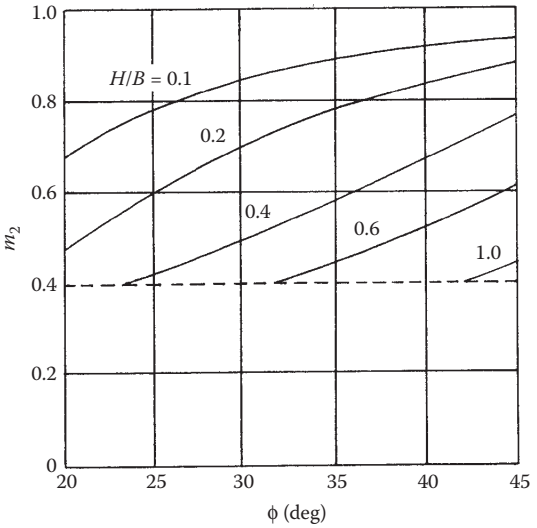


FIGURE 4.8 Variation of m_2 (Meyerhof's values) for use in Equation 4.5.

Also, it was suggested that for surface foundations with $H/B < 3$

$$q_u = 0.4\gamma B N_\gamma^* \quad \text{(square foundation)} \tag{4.6}$$

and

$$q_u = 0.3\gamma B N_\gamma^* \quad \text{(circular foundation)} \tag{4.7}$$

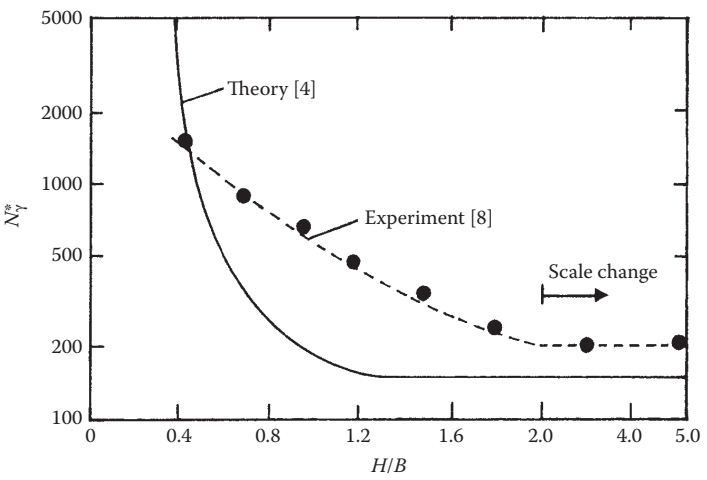


FIGURE 4.9 Comparison of theory with the experimental results of N_γ^* (*Note:* $\phi = 43°$, $c = 0$).

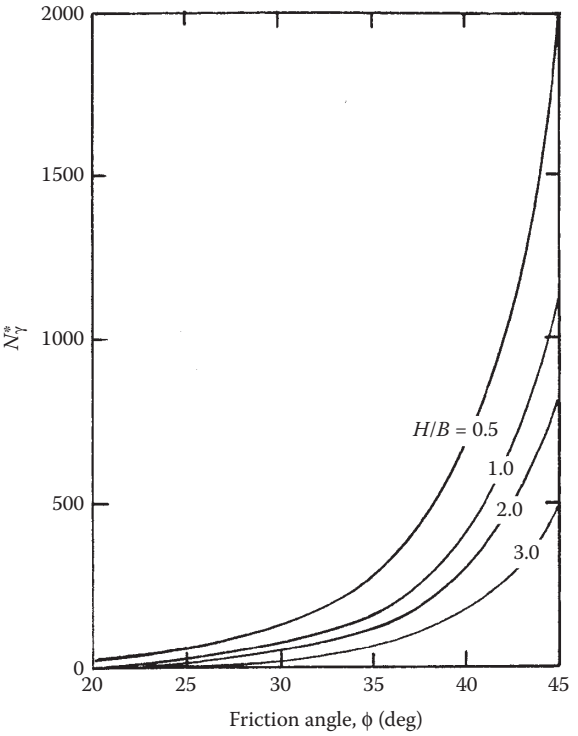


FIGURE 4.10 Cerato and Lutenegger's bearing capacity factor N_γ^* for use in Equations 4.6 and 4.7. (Cerato, A. B. and A. J. Lutenegger. 2006. *J. Geotech. Geoenv. Eng.*, 132(11): 1496.)

The variation of N_γ^* recommended by Cerato and Lutenegger[9] for use in Equations 4.6 and 4.7 is given in Figure 4.10.

For saturated clay (that is, $\phi = 0$), Equation 4.2 will simplify to the form

$$q_u = c_u N_c^* + q \tag{4.8}$$

Mandel and Salencon[10] performed calculations to evaluate N_c^* for *continuous foundations*. Similarly, Buisman[11] gave the following relationship for obtaining the ultimate bearing capacity of square foundations:

$$q_{u(\text{square})} = \left(\pi + 2 + \frac{B}{2H} - \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right) c_u + q \quad \left(\text{for } \frac{B}{2H} - \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \geq 0\right) \tag{4.9}$$

where

c_u = undrained shear strength

TABLE 4.1
Values of N_c^* for Continuous and Square Foundations ($\phi = 0$ Condition)

$\frac{B}{H}$	N_c^*	
	Square[a]	Continuous[b]
2	5.43	5.24
3	5.93	5.71
4	6.44	6.22
5	6.94	6.68
6	7.43	7.20
8	8.43	8.17
10	9.43	9.05

Source: Mandel, J. and J. Salencon. 1969. *Proc. Seventh Int. Conf. Soil Mech. Found Eng.*, Mexico City, Vol. 2, p. 157.

[a] Buisman's analysis. (From Buisman, A. S. K. 1940. Grond-Mechanica. Delft: Waltman.)

[b] Mandel and Salencon's analysis.

Equation 4.9 can be rewritten as

$$q_{u(\text{square})} = 5.14\left(1+\frac{0.5(B/H)-0.707}{5.14}\right)c_u + q = N^*_{c(\text{square})}c_u + q \tag{4.10}$$

Table 4.1 gives the values of N_c^* for continuous and square foundations.

Equations 4.8 and 4.9 assume the existence of a rough rigid layer at a limited depth. However, if a soft saturated clay layer of limited thickness (undrained shear strength = $c_{u(1)}$) is located over another saturated clay with a somewhat larger shear strength $c_{u(2)}$ (*Note:* $c_{u(1)} < c_{u(2)}$; Figure 4.11), the following relationship suggested by Vesic[12] and DeBeer[13] may then be used to estimate the ultimate bearing capacity:

$$q_u = \left(1+0.2\frac{B}{L}\right)\left\{5.14+\left[1-\frac{c_{u(1)}}{c_{u(2)}}\right]\frac{(B/H)-\sqrt{2}}{2\left((B/L)+1\right)}\right\}c_{u(1)} + q \tag{4.11}$$

where

L = length of the foundation

EXAMPLE 4.1

A square foundation measuring 1 × 1 m is constructed on a layer of sand. We are given that $D_f = 1$ m, $\gamma = 15$ kN/m^3, $\phi' = 35°$, and $c' = 0$. A rock layer is located at a depth 0.4 m below the bottom of the foundation. Using a factor of safety of 3, determine the gross allowable load the foundation can carry.

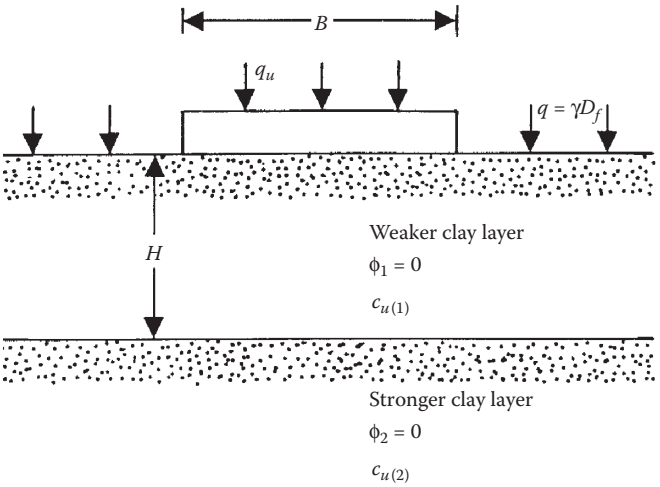


FIGURE 4.11 Foundation on a weaker clay underlain by a stronger clay layer (*Note*: $c_{u(1)} < c_{u(2)}$).

Solution

From Equation 4.3,

$$q_u = qN_q^*\lambda_{qs}^* + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_\gamma^*\lambda_{\gamma s}^*$$

Also,

$$q = 15 \times 1 = 15 \text{ kN/m}^3$$

For $\phi' = 35°$, $H/B = 0.4/1.0 = 0.4$, $N_q^* \approx 300$ (Figure 4.5) and $N_\gamma^* \approx 100$ (Figure 4.6), and we have

$$\lambda_{qs}^* = 1 - m_1\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)$$

From Figure 4.7, for $\phi' = 35°$, $H/B = 0.4$. The value of $m_1 \approx 0.55$, so

$$\lambda_{qs}^* = 1 - 0.55\left(\frac{1.0}{1.0}\right) = 0.45$$

Similarly,

$$\lambda_{\gamma s}^* = 1 - m_2\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)$$

From Figure 4.8, $m_2 \approx 0.58$, so

$$\lambda^*_{\gamma s} = 1 - 0.58\left(\frac{1.0}{1.0}\right) = 0.42$$

Hence,

$$q_u = (15)(300)(0.45) + \frac{1}{2}(15)(1.0)(100)(0.42) = 2340 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

and

$$Q_{\text{all}} = \frac{q_u B^2}{FS} = \frac{(2340)(1.0 \times 1.0)}{3} = \mathbf{780\ kN}$$

EXAMPLE 4.2

Consider a square foundation 1×1 m in plan located on a saturated clay layer underlain by a layer of rock. Given:

Clay: $c_u = 72$ kN/m^2
Unit weight: $\gamma = 18$ kN/m^3
Distance between the bottom of foundation and the rock layer = 0.25 m
$D_f = 1$ m

Estimate the gross allowable bearing capacity of the foundation. Use $FS = 3$.

SOLUTION

From Equation 4.10,

$$q_u = 5.14\left(1 + \frac{0.5(B/H) - 0.707}{5.14}\right)c_u + q$$

For $B/H = 1/0.25 = 4$, $c_u = 72$ kN/m^2 and $q = \gamma D_f = (18)(1) = 18$ kN/m^2.

$$q_u = 5.14\left[1 + \frac{(0.5)(4) - 0.707}{5.14}\right]72 + 18 = 481.2 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

$$q_{\text{all}} = \frac{q_u}{FS} = \frac{481.2}{3} = \mathbf{160.4\ kN/m^2}$$

4.3 FOUNDATION ON LAYERED SATURATED ANISOTROPIC CLAY ($\phi = 0$)

Figure 4.12 shows a shallow continuous foundation supported by layered saturated anisotropic clay. The width of the foundation is B, and the interface between the clay layers is located at a depth H measured from the bottom of the foundation.

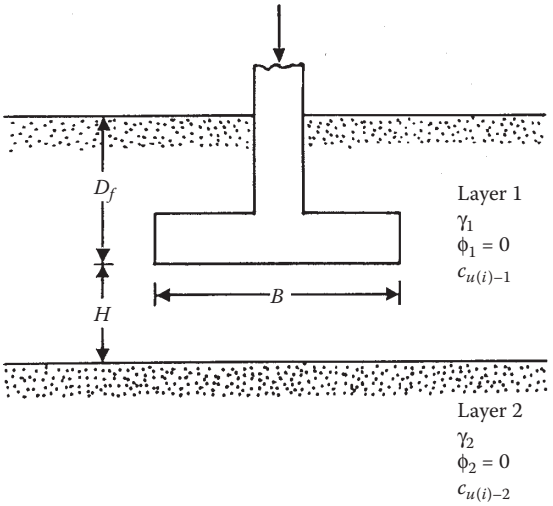


FIGURE 4.12 Shallow continuous foundation on layered anisotropic clay.

It is assumed that the clays are anisotropic with respect to strength following the Casagrande–Carillo relationship[14], or

$$c_{u(i)} = c_{u(h)} + [c_{u(v)} - c_{u(h)}]\sin^2 i \tag{4.12}$$

where

$c_{u(i)}$ = undrained shear strength at a given depth where the major principal stress is inclined at an angle i with the horizontal

$c_{u(v)}$, $c_{u(h)}$ = undrained shear strength for $i = 90°$ and 0°, respectively

The ultimate bearing capacity of the continuous foundation can be given as

$$q_u = c_{u(v)-1} N_{c(L)} + q \tag{4.13}$$

where

$c_{u(v)-1}$ = undrained shear strength of the top soil layer when the major principal stress is vertical

$q = \gamma_1 D_f$

D_f = depth of foundation

γ_1 = unit weight of the top soil layer

$N_{c(L)}$ = bearing capacity factor

However, the bearing capacity factor $N_{c(L)}$ will be a function of H/B and $c_{u(v)-2}/c_{u(v)-1}$, or

$$N_{c(L)} = f\left[\frac{H}{B}, \frac{c_{u(v)-2}}{c_{u(v)-1}}\right] \tag{4.14}$$

where

$c_{u(v)-2}$ = undrained shear strength of the bottom clay layer when the major principal stress is vertical

Reddy and Srinivasan[15] developed a procedure to determine the variation of $N_{c(L)}$. In developing their theory, they assumed that the failure surface was cylindrical when the center of the trial failure surface was at O, as shown in Figure 4.13. They also assumed that the magnitudes of $c_{u(v)}$ for the top clay layer [$c_{u(v)-1}$] and the bottom clay layer [$c_{u(v)-2}$] remained constant with depth z as shown in Figure 4.13b.

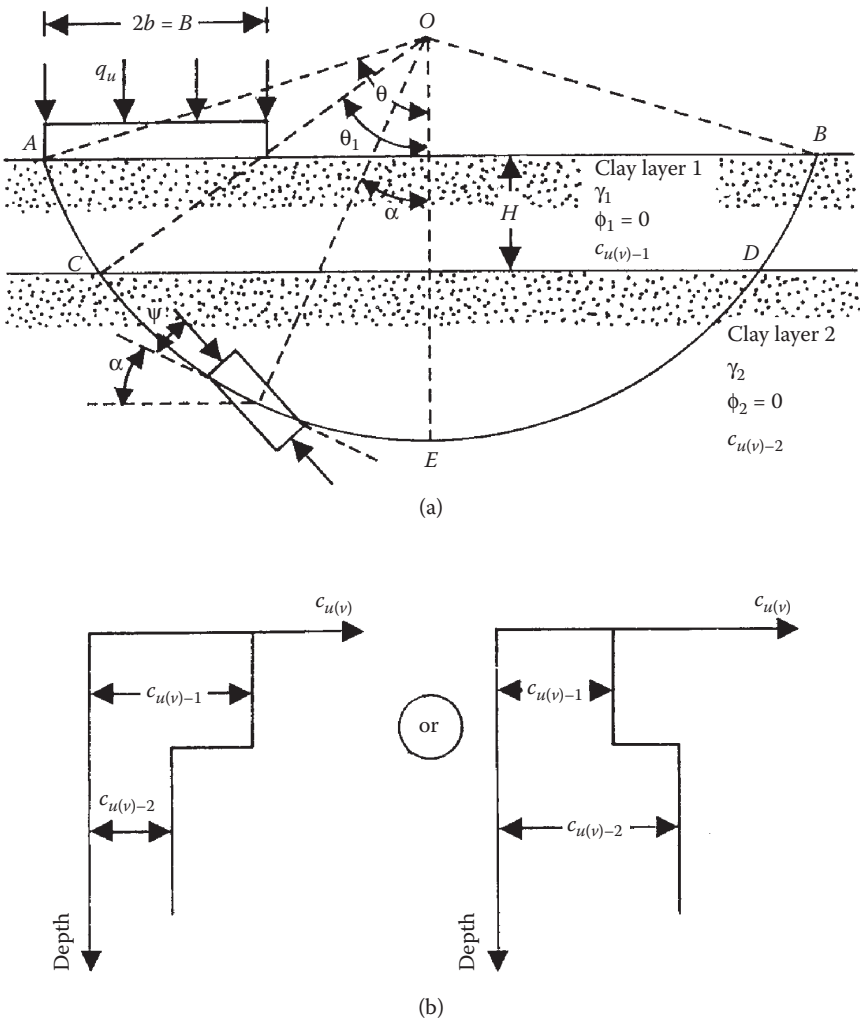


FIGURE 4.13 Assumptions in deriving $N_{c(L)}$ for a continuous foundation on anisotropic layered clay: (a) nature of failure surface in soil; (b) variation of $c_{u(v)-1}$ and $c_{u(v)-1}$ with depth.

For equilibrium of the foundation, considering forces per unit length and taking the moment about point O in Figure 4.13a,

$$2bq_u(r\sin\theta - b) = 2\int_{\theta_1}^{\theta} r^2[c_{u(i)-1}]d\alpha + 2\int_{0}^{\theta_1} r^2[c_{u(i)-2}]d\alpha \tag{4.15}$$

where

b = half-width of the foundation = $B/2$

r = radius of the trial failure circle

$c_{u(i)-1}$, $c_{u(i)-2}$ = directional undrained shear strengths for layers 1 and 2, respectively

As shown in Figure 4.13, let ψ be the angle between the failure plane and the direction of the major principal stress. Referring to Equation 4.12

Along arc AC

$$c_{u(i)-1} = c_{u(h)-1} + [c_{u(v)-1} - c_{u(h)-1}]\sin^2(\alpha + \psi) \tag{4.16}$$

Along arc CE

$$c_{u(i)-2} = c_{u(h)-2} + [c_{u(v)-2} - c_{u(h)-2}]\sin^2(\alpha + \psi) \tag{4.17}$$

Similarly, along arc DB

$$c_{u(i)-1} = c_{u(h)-1} + [c_{u(v)-1} - c_{u(h)-1}]\sin^2(\alpha - \psi) \tag{4.18}$$

and along arc ED

$$c_{u(i)-2} = c_{u(h)-2} + [c_{u(v)-2} - c_{u(h)-2}]\sin^2(\alpha - \psi) \tag{4.19}$$

Note that $i = \alpha + \psi$ for the portion of the arc AE, and $i = \alpha - \psi$ for the portion BE. Let the anisotropy coefficient be defined as

$$K = \left[\frac{c_{u(v)-1}}{c_{u(h)-1}}\right] = \left[\frac{c_{u(v)-2}}{c_{u(h)-2}}\right] \tag{4.20}$$

The magnitude of the anisotropy coefficient K is less than one for overconsolidated clays and $K > 1$ for normally consolidated clays. Also, let

$$n = \left[\frac{c_{u(v)-2}}{c_{u(v)-1}}\right] - 1 = \left[\frac{c_{u(h)-2}}{c_{u(h)-1}}\right] - 1 \tag{4.21}$$

where

n = a factor representing the relative strength of two clay layers

Combining Equations 4.15 through 4.20

$$
\begin{aligned}
2bq_u(r\sin\theta - b) = &\int_{\theta_1}^{\theta} r^2 \left\{ c_{u(h)-1} + [c_{u(v)-1} - c_{u(h)-1}]\sin^2(\alpha + \psi) \right\} d\alpha \\
&+ \int_{\theta_1}^{\theta} r^2 \{ c_{u(h)-1} + [c_{u(v)-1} - c_{u(h)-1}]\sin^2(\alpha - \psi) \} d\alpha \\
&+ \int_{0}^{\theta_1} r^2 (n+1) \{ c_{u(h)-1} + [c_{u(v)-1} - c_{u(h)-1}]\sin^2(\alpha + \psi) \} d\alpha \\
&+ \int_{0}^{\theta_1} r^2 (n+1) \{ c_{u(h)-1} + [c_{u(v)-1} - c_{u(h)-1}]\sin^2(\alpha - \psi) \} d\alpha
\end{aligned}
\tag{4.22}
$$

Or, combining Equations 4.20 and 4.22

$$
\frac{q_u}{c_{u(v)-1}} = \frac{r^2/b^2}{2K\left[\left(\frac{r}{b}\right)\sin\theta - 1\right]} \left\{ \begin{array}{c} 2\theta + 2n\theta_1 + (K-1)\theta + n(K-1)\theta_1 \\ -\dfrac{K-1}{2}\left[\dfrac{\sin 2(\theta+\psi)}{2} + \dfrac{\sin 2(\theta-\psi)}{2}\right] \\ -\dfrac{n(K-1)}{2}\left[\dfrac{\sin 2(\theta_1+\psi)}{2} + \dfrac{\sin 2(\theta_1-\psi)}{2}\right] \end{array} \right\} \tag{4.23}
$$

where

$$
\theta_1 = \cos^{-1}\left(\cos\theta + \frac{H}{r}\right)
$$

From Equation 4.13 note that, with $q = 0$ (surface foundation),

$$
N_{c(L)} = \frac{q_u}{c_{u(v)-1}} \tag{4.24}
$$

In order to obtain the minimum value of $N_{c(L)} = q_u/c_{u(v)-1}$, the theorem of maxima and minima needs to be used, or

$$
\frac{\partial N_{c(L)}}{\partial \theta} = 0 \tag{4.25}
$$

and

$$
\frac{\partial N_{c(L)}}{\partial r} = 0 \tag{4.26}
$$

Equations 4.23, 4.25, and 4.26 will yield two relationships in terms of the variables θ and *r*/*b*. So, for given values of *H*/*B*, *K*, *n*, and ψ, the above relationships may be solved to obtain values of θ and *r*/*b*. These can then be used in Equation 4.23 to obtain the desired value of $N_{c(L)}$ (for given values of *H*/*B*, *K*, *n*, and ψ). Lo[16] showed that the angle ψ between the failure plane and the major principal stress for anisotropic soils can be taken to be approximately equal to 35°. The variations of the bearing capacity factor $N_{c(L)}$ obtained in this manner for $K = 0.8$, 1 (isotropic case), 1.2, 1.4, 1.6, and 1.8, are shown in Figure 4.14.

If a shallow rectangular foundation $B \times L$ in plan is located at a depth D_f, the general ultimate bearing capacity equation (see Equation 2.90) will be of the form ($\phi = 0$ condition)

$$q_u = c_{u(v)-1} N_{c(L)} \lambda_{cs} \lambda_{cd} + q \lambda_{qs} \lambda_{qd} \tag{4.27}$$

where

λ_{cs}, λ_{qs} = shape factors
λ_{cd}, λ_{qd} = depth factors

The proper shape and depth factors can be selected from Table 2.8.

EXAMPLE 4.3

Refer to Figure 4.12. For the foundation, given: $D_f = 0.8$ m; $B = 1$ m; $L = 1.6$ m; $H = 0.5$ m; $\gamma_1 = 17.8$ kN/m^3; $\gamma_2 = 17.0$ kN/m^3; $c_{u(v)-1} = 45$ kN/m^2; $c_{u(v)-2} = 30$ kN/m^2; anisotropy coefficient $K = 1.4$. Estimate the allowable load-bearing capacity of the foundation with a factor of safety $FS = 4$. Use Meyerhof's shape and depth factors (Table 2.8).

Solution

From Equation 4.27

$$q_u = c_{u(v)-1} N_{c(L)} \lambda_{cs} \lambda_{cd} + q \lambda_{qs} \lambda_{qd}$$

$$\frac{H}{b} = \frac{H}{(B/2)} = \frac{0.5}{0.5} = 1; \quad K = 1.4$$

$$\frac{c_{u(v)-2}}{c_{u(v)-1}} = \frac{30}{45} = 0.67$$

$$n = 1 - 0.67 = 0.33$$

So, from Figure 4.14d, the value of $N_{c(L)} = 4.75$.
Using Meyerhof's shape and depth factors given in Table 2.8,

$$\lambda_{cs} = 1 + 0.2\left(\frac{B}{L}\right) = 1 + (0.2)\left(\frac{1}{1.6}\right) = 1.125$$

$$\lambda_{qs} = 1$$

$$\lambda_{cd} = 1 + 0.2\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right) = 1 + (0.2)\left(\frac{0.8}{1.0}\right) = 1.16$$

$$\lambda_{qd} = 1$$

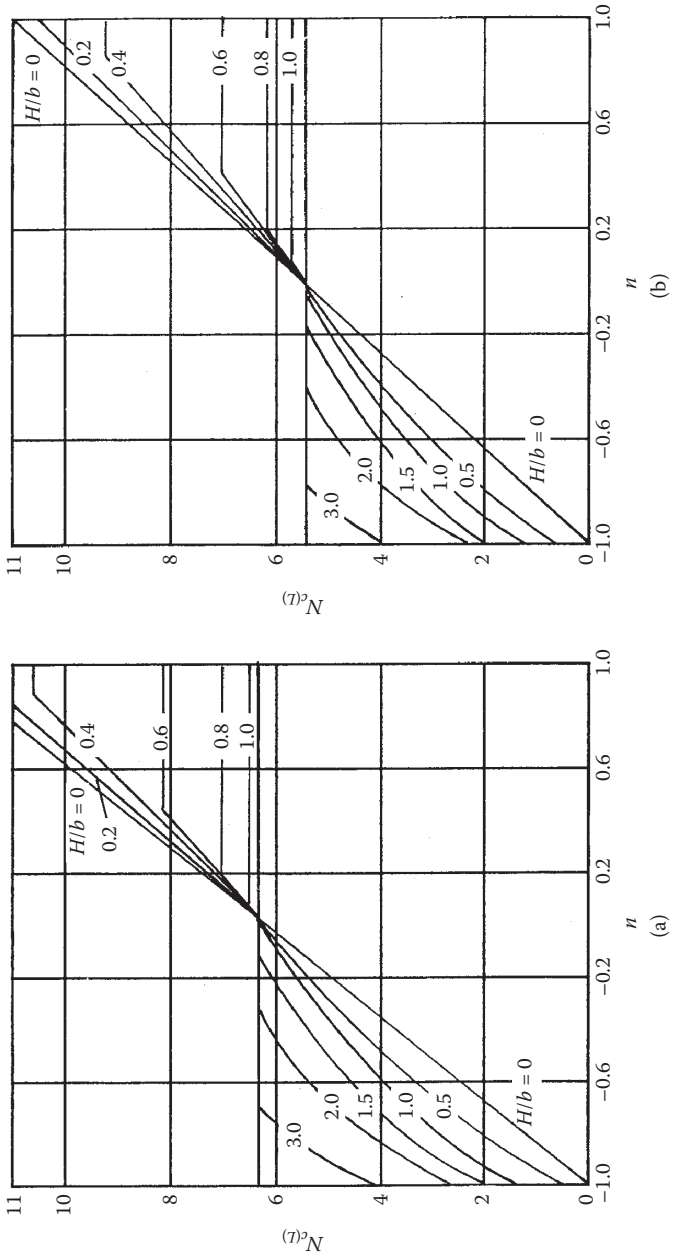


FIGURE 4.14 Bearing capacity factor $N_{c(L)}$. (a) $K = 0.8$. (b) $K = 1.0$. (c) $K = 1.2$. (d) $K = 1.4$. (e) $K = 1.6$. (f) $K = 1.8$. (From Reddy, A. S. and R. J. Srinivasan. 1967. *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div.*, 93(SM2): 83.) *(Continued)*

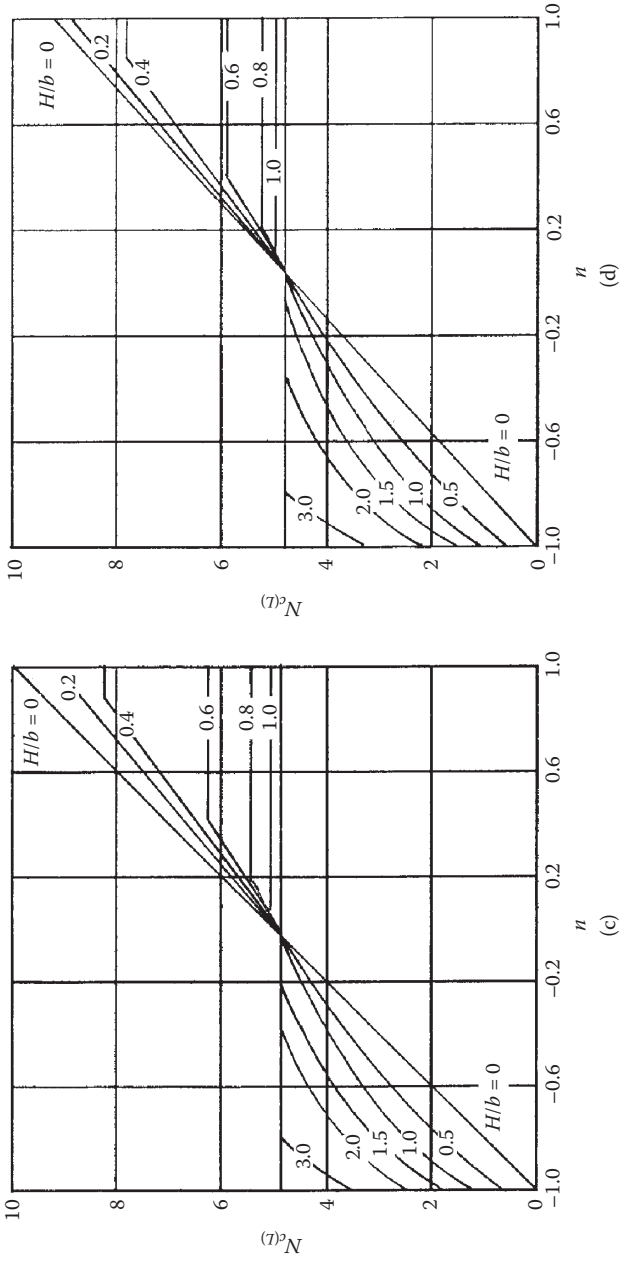


FIGURE 4.14 (Continued) Bearing capacity factor $N_{c(L)}$, (a) $K = 0.8$. (b) $K = 1.0$. (c) $K = 1.2$. (d) $K = 1.4$. (e) $K = 1.6$. (f) $K = 1.8$. (From Reddy, A. S. and R. J. Srinivasan. 1967. *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div.*, 93(SM2): 83.) (*Continued*)

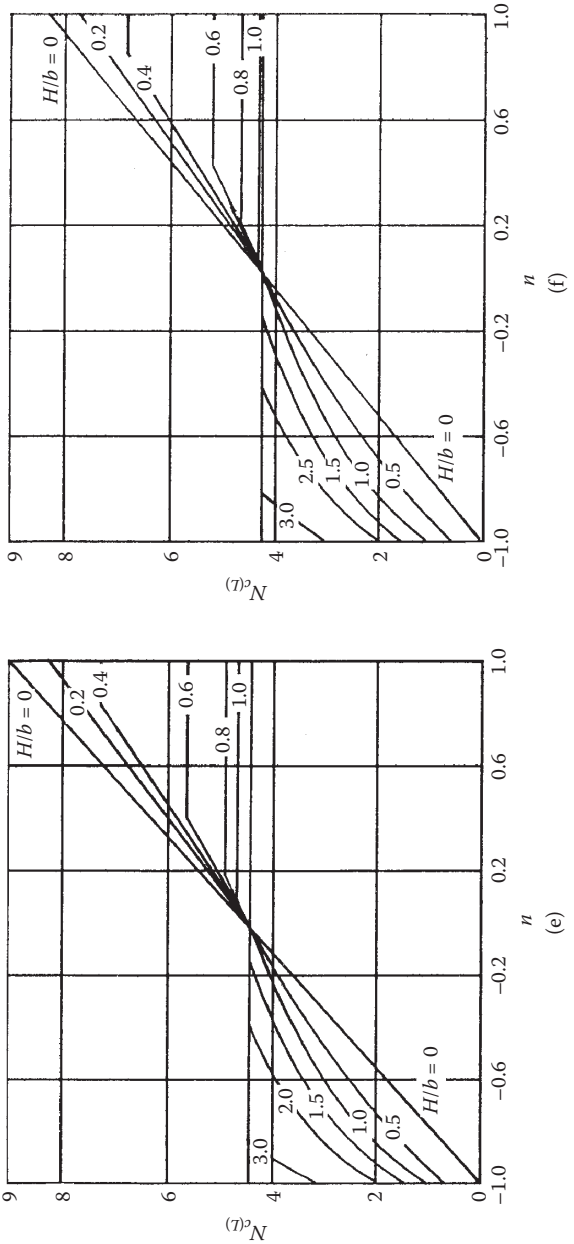


FIGURE 4.14 (Continued) Bearing capacity factor $N_{c(L)}$, (a) $K = 0.8$. (b) $K = 1.0$. (c) $K = 1.2$. (d) $K = 1.4$. (e) $K = 1.6$. (f) $K = 1.8$. (From Reddy, A. S. and R. J. Srinivasan. 1967. *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div.*, 93(SM2): 83.)

So,

$$q_u = (45)(4.75)(1.125)(1.16) + (17.8)(0.8)(1.0)(1.0) = 278.9 + 14.24 = 293.14 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

$$q_{all} = \frac{q_u}{FS} = \frac{293.14}{4} = \mathbf{73.29 \text{ kN/m}^2}$$

4.4 FOUNDATION ON LAYERED c–ϕ SOIL: STRONGER SOIL UNDERLAIN BY WEAKER SOIL

Meyerhof and Hanna[17] developed a theory to estimate the ultimate bearing capacity of a shallow rough continuous foundation supported by a strong soil layer underlain by a weaker soil layer as shown in Figure 4.15. According to their theory, at ultimate load per unit area q_u, the failure surface in soil will be as shown in Figure 4.15. If the ratio H/B is relatively small, a punching shear failure will occur in the top (stronger) soil layer followed by a general shear failure in the bottom (weaker) layer. Considering the unit length of the continuous foundation, the ultimate bearing capacity can be given as

$$q_u = q_b + \frac{2(C_a + P_p \sin\delta)}{B} - \gamma_1 H \tag{4.28}$$

where

B = width of the foundation

γ_1 = unit weight of the stronger soil layer

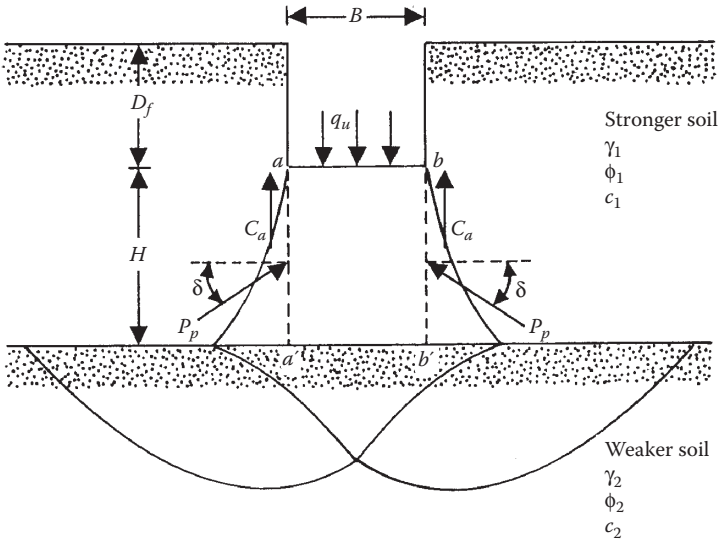


FIGURE 4.15 Rough continuous foundation on layered soil—stronger over weaker.

C_a = adhesive force along aa' and bb'
P_p = passive force on faces aa' and bb'
q_b = bearing capacity of the bottom soil layer
δ = inclination of the passive force P_p with the horizontal

Note that, in Equation 4.28

$$C_a = c_a H \tag{4.29}$$

where
c_a = unit adhesion

$$P_p = \frac{1}{2}\gamma_1 H^2\left(\frac{K_{pH}}{\cos\delta}\right) + (\gamma_1 D_f)(H)\left(\frac{K_{pH}}{\cos\delta}\right) = \frac{1}{2}\gamma_1 H^2\left(1+\frac{2D_f}{H}\right)\left(\frac{K_{pH}}{\cos\delta}\right) \tag{4.30}$$

where
K_{pH} = horizontal component of the passive earth pressure coefficient

Also,

$$q_b = c_2 N_{c(2)} + \gamma_1(D_f + H)N_{q(2)} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma_2 B N_{\gamma(2)} \tag{4.31}$$

where
c_2 = cohesion of the bottom (weaker) layer of soil
γ_2 = unit weight of bottom soil layer
$N_{c(2)}$, $N_{q(2)}$, $N_{\gamma(2)}$ = bearing capacity factors for the bottom soil layer (that is, with respect to the soil friction angle of the bottom soil layer ϕ_2)

Combining Equations 4.28 through 4.30

$$\begin{aligned} q_u &= q_b + \frac{2c_a H}{B} + 2\left[\frac{1}{2}\gamma_1 H^2\left(1+\frac{2D_f}{H}\right)\right]\left(\frac{K_{pH}}{\cos\delta}\right)\left(\frac{\sin\delta}{B}\right) - \gamma_1 H \\ &= q_b + \frac{2c_a H}{B} + \gamma_1 H^2\left(1+\frac{2D_f}{H}\right)\frac{K_{pH}\tan\delta}{B} - \gamma_1 H \end{aligned} \tag{4.32}$$

Let

$$K_{pH}\tan\delta = K_s \tan\phi_1 \tag{4.33}$$

where
K_s = punching shear coefficient

So,

$$q_u = q_b + \frac{2c_a H}{B} + \gamma_1 H^2\left(1+\frac{2D_f}{H}\right)\frac{K_s \tan\phi_1}{B} - \gamma_1 H \tag{4.34}$$

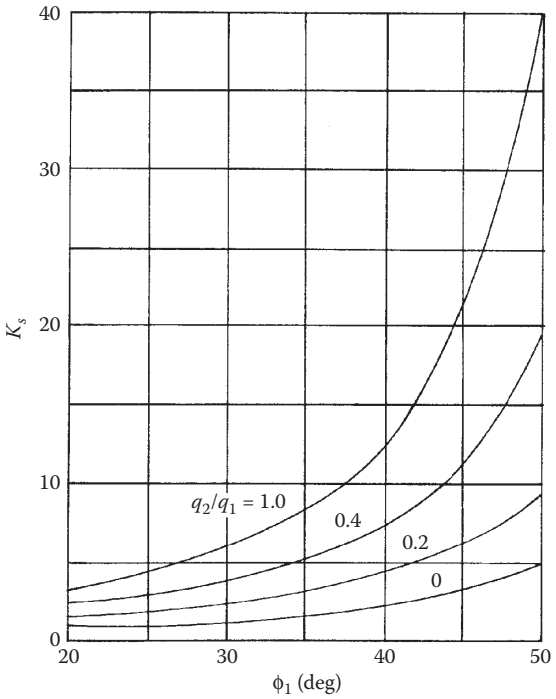


FIGURE 4.16 Meyerhof and Hanna's theory—variation of K_s with ϕ_1 and q_2/q_1.

The punching shear coefficient can be determined using the passive earth pressure coefficient charts proposed by Caquot and Kerisel[18]. Figure 4.16 gives the variation of K_s with q_2/q_1 and ϕ_1. Note that q_1 and q_2 are the ultimate bearing capacities of a continuous surface foundation of width B under vertical load on homogeneous beds of upper and lower soils, respectively, or

$$q_1 = c_1 N_{c(1)} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma_1 B N_{\gamma(1)} \tag{4.35}$$

where

$N_{c(1)}$, $N_{\gamma(1)}$ = bearing capacity factors corresponding to soil friction angle ϕ_1

$$q_2 = c_2 N_{c(2)} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma_2 B N_{\gamma(2)} \tag{4.36}$$

If the height H is large compared to the width B (Figure 4.15), then the failure surface will be completely located in the upper stronger soil layer, as shown in Figure 4.17. In such a case, the upper limit for q_u will be of the following form:

$$q_u = q_t = c_1 N_{c(1)} + qN_{q(1)} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma_1 B N_{\gamma(1)} \tag{4.37}$$

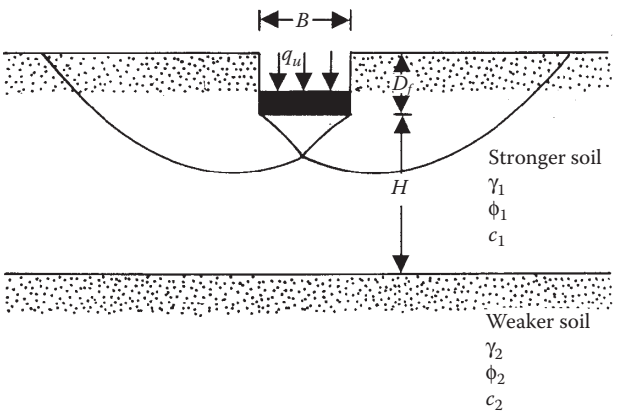


FIGURE 4.17 Continuous rough foundation on layered soil—*H*/*B* is relatively small.

Hence, combining Equations 4.34 and 4.37

$$q_u = q_b + \frac{2c_a H}{B} + \gamma_1 H^2 \left(1 + \frac{2D_f}{H}\right)\frac{K_s \tan\phi_1}{B} - \gamma_1 H \le q_t \tag{4.38}$$

For rectangular foundations, the preceding equation can be modified as

$$q_u = q_b + \left(1 + \frac{B}{L}\right)\left(\frac{2c_a H}{B}\right)\lambda_a + \left(1 + \frac{B}{L}\right)\gamma_1 H^2 \left(1 + \frac{2D_f}{H}\right)\left(\frac{K_s \tan\phi_1}{B}\right)\lambda_s - \gamma_1 H \le q_t \tag{4.39}$$

where

λ_a, λ_s = shape factors

$$q_b = c_2 N_{c(2)} \lambda_{cs(2)} + \gamma_1 (D_f + H) N_{q(2)} \lambda_{qs(2)} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma_2 B N_{\gamma(2)} \lambda_{\gamma s(2)} \tag{4.40}$$

$$q_t = c_1 N_{c(1)} \lambda_{cs(1)} + \gamma_1 D_f N_{q(1)} \lambda_{qs(1)} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma_1 B N_{\gamma(1)} \lambda_{\gamma s(1)} \tag{4.41}$$

$\lambda_{cs(1)}$, $\lambda_{qs(1)}$, $\lambda_{\gamma s(1)}$ = shape factors for the top soil layer (friction angle = ϕ_1; see Table 2.8)

$\lambda_{cs(2)}$, $\lambda_{qs(2)}$, $\lambda_{\gamma s(2)}$ = shape factors for the bottom soil layer (friction angle = ϕ_2; see Table 2.8)

Based on the general equations (Equations 4.39 through 4.41), some special cases may be developed. They are as follows.

4.4.1 Case I: Stronger Sand Layer over Weaker Saturated Clay ($\phi_2 = 0$)

For this case, $c_1 = 0$; hence, $c_a = 0$. Also for $\phi_2 = 0$, $N_{c(2)} = 5.14$, $N_{\gamma(2)} = 0$, $N_{q(2)} = 1$, $\lambda_{cs} = 1 + 0.2(B/L)$, $\lambda_{qs} = 1$ (shape factors are Meyerhof's values as given in Table 2.6). So,

$$q_u = 5.14c_2\left[1+0.2\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\right]+\left(1+\frac{B}{L}\right)\gamma_1 H^2\left(1+\frac{2D_f}{H}\right)\left(\frac{K_s \tan\phi_1}{B}\right)\lambda_s + \gamma_1 D_f \le q_t \quad (4.42)$$

where

$$q_t = \gamma_1 D_f N_{q(1)}\left[1+0.1\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\tan^2\left(45+\frac{\phi_1}{2}\right)\right]+\frac{1}{2}\gamma_1 B N_{\gamma(1)}\left[1+0.1\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\tan^2\left(45+\frac{\phi_1}{2}\right)\right] \quad (4.43)$$

In Equation 4.43 the relationships for the shape factors λ_{qs} and $\lambda_{\gamma s}$ are those given by Meyerhof[19] as shown in Table 2.8. Note that K_s is a function of q_2/q_1 (Equations 4.35 and 4.36). For this case,

$$\frac{q_2}{q_1} = \frac{c_2 N_{c(2)}}{\frac{1}{2}\gamma_1 B N_{\gamma(1)}} = \frac{5.14c_2}{0.5\gamma_1 B N_{\gamma(1)}} \quad (4.44)$$

Once q_2/q_1 is known, the magnitude of K_s can be obtained from Figure 4.16, which, in turn, can be used in Equation 4.42 to determine the ultimate bearing capacity of the foundation q_u. The value of the shape factor λ_s for a strip foundation can be taken as one. As per the experimental work of Hanna and Meyerhof[20], the magnitude of λ_s appears to vary between 1.1 and 1.27 for square or circular foundations. For conservative designs, it may be taken as one.

Based on this concept, Hanna and Meyerhof[20] developed some alternative design charts to determine the punching shear coefficient K_s, and these charts are shown in Figures 4.18 and 4.19. In order to use these charts, the ensuing steps need to be followed.

1. Determine q_2/q_1
2. With known values of ϕ_1 and q_2/q_1, determine the magnitude of δ/ϕ_1 from Figure 4.18
3. With known values of ϕ_1, δ/ϕ_1, and c_2, determine K_s from Figure 4.19

4.4.2 Case II: Stronger Sand Layer over Weaker Sand Layer

For this case, $c_1 = 0$ and $c_a = 0$. Hence, referring to Equation 4.39

$$q_u = q_b + \left(1+\frac{B}{L}\right)\gamma_1 H^2\left(1+\frac{2D_f}{H}\right)\left(\frac{K_s \tan\phi_1}{B}\right)\lambda_s - \gamma_1 H \le q_t \quad (4.45)$$

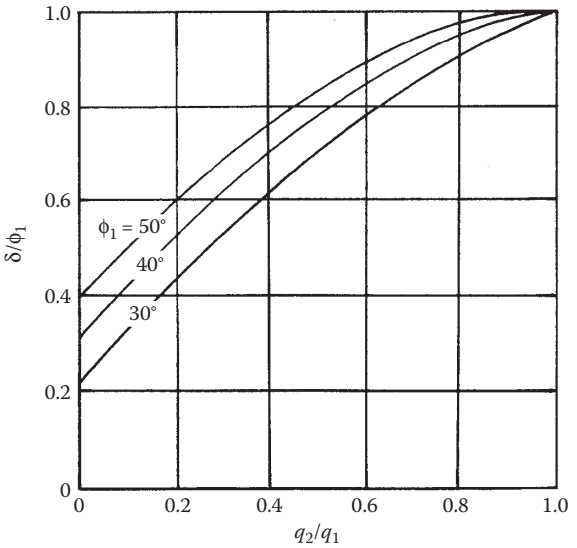


FIGURE 4.18 Hanna and Meyerhof's analysis—variation of δ/ϕ_1 with ϕ_1 and q_2/q_1—stronger sand over weaker clay.

where

$$q_b = \gamma_1(D_f + H)N_{q(2)}\lambda_{qs(2)} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma_2 BN_{\gamma(2)}\lambda_{\gamma s(2)} \tag{4.46}$$

$$q_t = \gamma_1 D_f N_{q(1)}\lambda_{qs(1)} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma_1 BN_{\gamma(1)}\lambda_{\gamma s(1)} \tag{4.47}$$

Using Meyerhof's shape factors given in Table 2.8,

$$\lambda_{qs(1)} = \lambda_{\gamma s(1)} = 1 + 0.1\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\tan^2\left(45 + \frac{\phi_1}{2}\right) \tag{4.48}$$

and

$$\lambda_{qs(2)} = \lambda_{\gamma s(2)} = 1 + 0.1\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\tan^2\left(45 + \frac{\phi_2}{2}\right) \tag{4.49}$$

For conservative designs, for all B/L ratios, the magnitude of λ_s can be taken as one. For this case

$$\frac{q_2}{q_1} = \frac{0.5\gamma_2 BN_{\gamma(2)}}{0.5\gamma_1 BN_{\gamma(1)}} = \frac{\gamma_2 N_{\gamma(2)}}{\gamma_1 N_{\gamma(1)}} \tag{4.50}$$

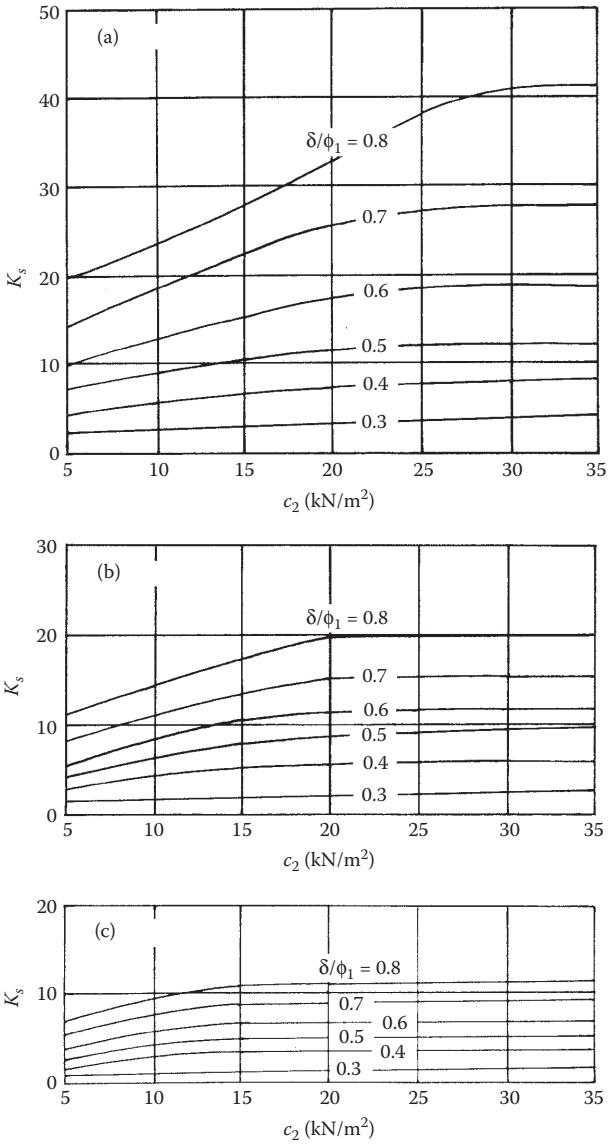


FIGURE 4.19 Hanna and Meyerhof's analysis for coefficient of punching shear—stronger sand over weaker clay: (a) variation of K_s with c_2 for $\phi_1 = 50°$; (b) variation of K_s with c_2 for $\phi_1 = 45°$; (c) variation of K_s with c_2 for $\phi_1 = 40°$.

Once the magnitude of q_2/q_1 is determined, the value of the punching shear coefficient K_s can be obtained from Figure 4.16. Hanna[21] suggested that the friction angles obtained from direct shear tests should be used.

Hanna[21] also provided an improved design chart for estimating the punching shear coefficient K_s in Equation 4.45. In this development he assumed that the variation of

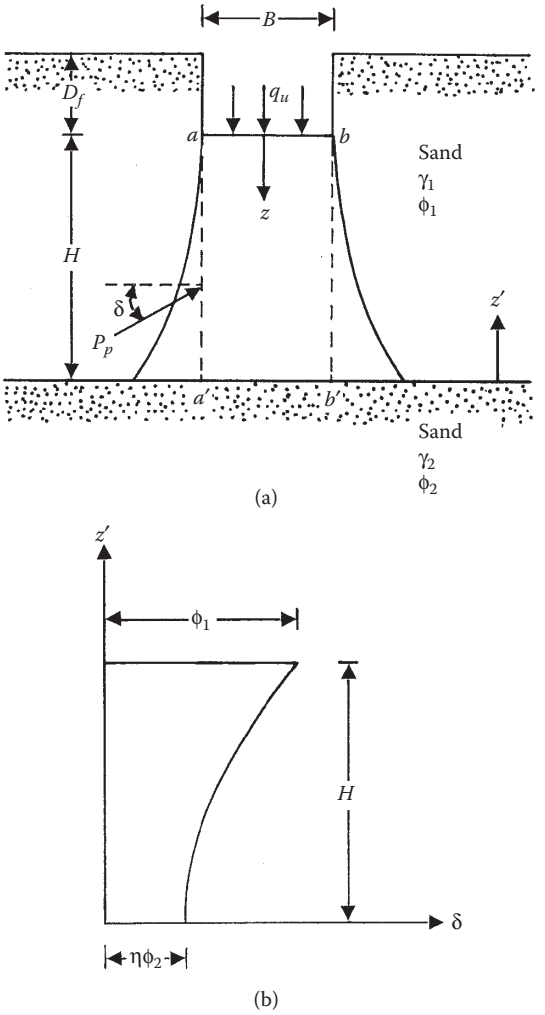


FIGURE 4.20 Hanna's assumption for variation of δ with depth for determination of K_s: (a) failure surface in the soil; (b) variation of δ with z' in the top stronger layer.

δ for the assumed failure surface in the top stronger sand layer will be of the nature shown in Figure 4.20, or

$$\delta_{z'} = \eta\phi_2 + az'^2 \tag{4.51}$$

where

$$\eta = \frac{q_2}{q_1} \tag{4.52}$$

$$a = \frac{\phi_1 - (q_2/q_1)\phi_2}{H^2} \tag{4.53}$$

So

$$\delta_{z'} = \left(\frac{q_2}{q_1}\right)\phi_2 + \left[\frac{\phi_1 - (q_2/q_1)\phi_2}{H^2}\right] z'^2 \tag{4.54}$$

The preceding relationship means that at $z' = 0$ (that is, at the interface of the two soil layers)

$$\delta = \left(\frac{q_2}{q_1}\right)\phi_2 \tag{4.55}$$

and at the level of the foundation, that is $z' = H$

$$\delta = \phi_1 \tag{4.56}$$

Equation 4.51 can also be rewritten as

$$\delta_z = \left(\frac{q_2}{q_1}\right)\phi_2 + \left[\frac{\phi_1 - (q_2/q_1)\phi_2}{H^2}\right] (H - z)^2 \tag{4.57}$$

where δ_z is the angle of inclination of the passive pressure with respect to the horizontal at a depth z measured from the bottom of the foundation. So, the passive force per unit length of the vertical surface aa' (or bb') is

$$P_p = \int_0^H \left[\frac{\gamma_1 K_{pH(z)}}{\cos\delta_z}\right](z + D_f)dz \tag{4.58}$$

where

$K_{pH(z)}$ = horizontal component of the passive earth pressure coefficient at a depth z measured from the bottom of the foundation

The magnitude of P_p expressed by Equation 4.58, in combination with the expression δ_z given in Equation 4.57, can be determined. In order to determine the magnitude of the punching shear coefficient K_s given in Equation 4.33, we need to know an *average* value of δ. In order to achieve that, the following steps are taken:

1. Assume an average value of δ and obtain K_{pH} as given in the tables by Caquot and Kerisel[18].

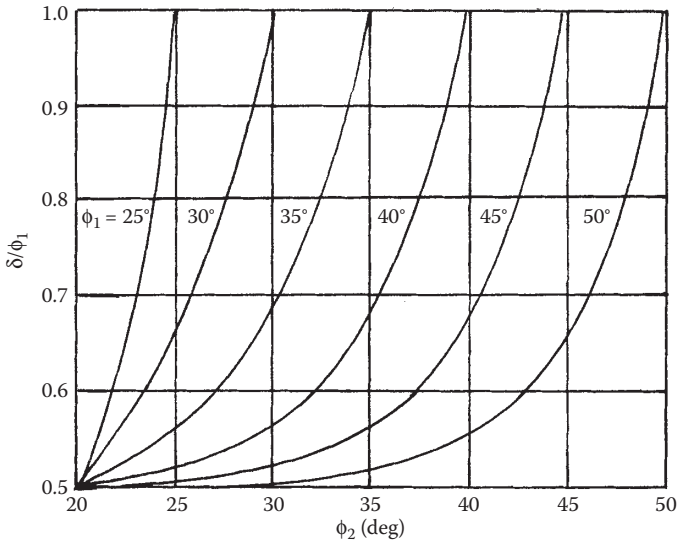


FIGURE 4.21 Hanna's analysis—variation of δ/ϕ_1.

2. Using the average values of δ and K_{pH} obtained from step 1, calculate P_p from Equation 4.30.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 until the magnitude of P_p obtained from Equation 4.30 is the same as that calculated from Equation 4.58.
4. The average value of δ (for which P_p calculated from Equations 4.30 and 4.58 is the same) is the value that needs to be used in Equation 4.33 to calculate K_s.

Figure 4.21 gives the relationship for δ/ϕ_1 versus ϕ_2 for various values of ϕ_1 obtained by the above procedure. Using Figure 4.21, Hanna[21] gave a design chart for K_s, and this design chart is shown in Figure 4.22.

4.4.3 Case III: Stronger Clay Layer ($\phi_1 = 0$) over Weaker Clay ($\phi_2 = 0$)

For this case, $N_{q(1)}$ and $N_{q(2)}$ are both equal to one and $N_{\gamma(1)} = N_{\gamma(2)} = 0$. Also, $N_{c(1)} = N_{c(2)} = 5.14$. So, from Equation 4.39

$$q_u = \left[1 + 0.2\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\right] c_2 N_{c(2)} + \left(1 + \frac{B}{L}\right)\left(\frac{2c_a H}{B}\right) + \gamma_1 D_f \le q_t \tag{4.59}$$

where

$$q_t = \left[1 + 0.2\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\right] c_1 N_{c(1)} + \gamma_1 D_f \tag{4.60}$$

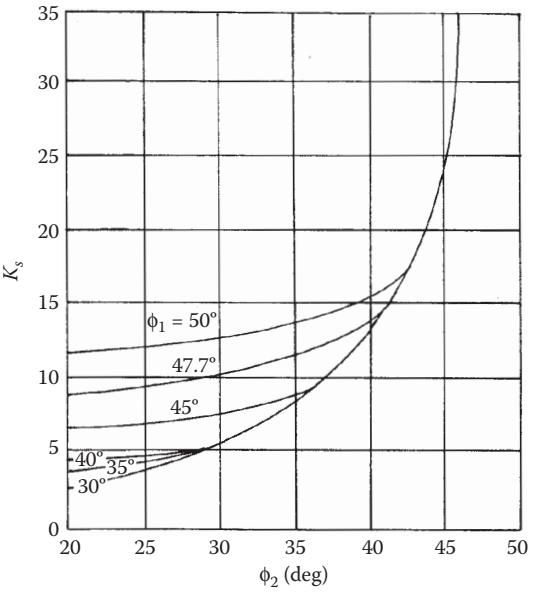


FIGURE 4.22 Hanna's analysis—variation of K_s for stronger sand over weaker sand.

For conservative design the magnitude of the shape factor λ_a may be taken as one. The magnitude of the adhesion c_a is a function of q_2/q_1. For this condition

$$\frac{q_2}{q_1} = \frac{c_2 N_{c(2)}}{c_1 N_{c(1)}} = \frac{5.14 c_2}{5.14 c_1} = \frac{c_2}{c_1} \tag{4.61}$$

Figure 4.23 shows the theoretical variation of c_a with q_2/q_1[17].

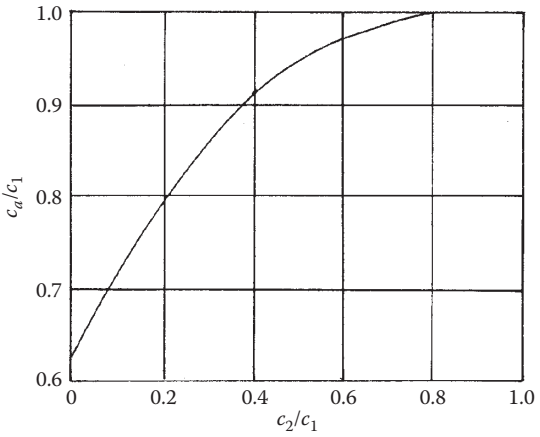


FIGURE 4.23 Analysis of Meyerhof and Hanna for the variation of c_a/c_1 with c_2/c_1.

EXAMPLE 4.4

Refer to Figure 4.15. Let the top layer be sand and the bottom layer saturated clay. Given: $H = 1.5$ m. For the top layer (sand): $\gamma_1 = 17.5$ kN/m^3; $\phi_1 = 40°$; $c_1 = 0$; for the bottom layer (saturated clay): $\gamma_2 = 16.5$ kN/m^3; $\phi_2 = 0$; $c_2 = 30$ kN/m^2; and for the foundation (continuous): $B = 2$ m; $D_f = 1.2$ m. Determine the ultimate bearing capacity q_u. Use the results shown in Figures 4.18 and 4.19.

Solution

For the continuous foundation $B/L = 0$ and $\gamma_s = 1$, in Equation 4.42 we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} q_u &= 5.14c_2 + \gamma_1 H^2\left(1+\frac{2D_f}{H}\right)\left(\frac{K_s \tan\phi_1}{B}\right) + \gamma_1 D_f \\ &= (5.14)(30) + (17.5)(H^2)\left[1+\frac{(2)(1.2)}{H}\right]\frac{K_s \tan 40}{2} + (17.5)(1.2) \\ &= 175.2 + 7.342H^2K_s\left(1+\frac{2.4}{H}\right) \end{aligned} \tag{4.62}$$

To determine K_s, we need to obtain q_2/q_1. From Equation 4.44

$$\frac{q_2}{q_1} = \frac{5.14c_2}{0.5\gamma B N_{\gamma(1)}}$$

From Table 2.3 for $\phi_1 = 40°$, Meyerhof's value of $N_{\gamma(1)}$ is equal to 93.7. So,

$$\frac{q_2}{q_1} = \frac{(5.14)(30)}{(0.5)(17.5)(2)(93.7)} = 0.094$$

Referring to Figure 4.18 for $q_2/q_1 = 0.094$ and $\phi_1 = 40°$, the value of $\delta/\phi_1 = 0.42$. With $\delta/\phi_1 = 0.42$ and $c_2 = 30$ kN/m^2, Figure 4.19c gives the value of $K_s = 3.89$. Substituting this value into Equation 4.62 gives

$$q_u = 175.2 + 28.56H^2\left(1+\frac{2.4}{H}\right) \le q_t \tag{4.63}$$

From Equation 4.43

$$\begin{aligned} q_t &= \gamma_1 D_f N_{q(1)}\left[1+0.1\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\tan^2\left(45+\frac{\phi_1}{2}\right)\right] \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{2}\gamma_1 B N_{\gamma(1)}\left[1+0.1\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\tan^2\left(45+\frac{\phi_1}{2}\right)\right] \end{aligned} \tag{4.64}$$

For the continuous foundation $B/L = 0$. So

$$q_t = \gamma_1 D_f N_{q(1)} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma_1 B N_{\gamma(1)}$$

For $\phi_1 = 40°$, use Meyerhof's values of $N_{\gamma(1)} = 93.7$ and $N_{q(1)} = 62.4$ (Table 2.3). Hence,

$$q_t = (17.5)(1.2)(62.4) + \frac{1}{2}(17.5)(2)(93.7) = 1348.2 + 1639.75 = 2987.95 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

If $H = 1.5$ m is substituted into Equation 4.63

$$q_u = 175.2 + (28.56)(1.5)^2\left(1 + \frac{2.4}{1.5}\right) = 342.3 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

Since $q_u = 342.3 < q_t$, the ultimate bearing capacity is **342.3 kN/m²**.

EXAMPLE 4.5

Refer to Figure 4.15, which shows a square foundation on layered sand. Given: $H = 1.0$ m. Also given for the top sand layer: $\gamma_1 = 18$ kN/m³; $\phi_1 = 40°$; for the bottom sand layer: $\gamma_2 = 16.5$ kN/m³; $\phi_2 = 32°$; and for the foundation: $B \times B = 1.5 \times 1.5$ m; $D_f = 1.5$ m. Estimate the ultimate bearing capacity of the foundation. Use Figure 4.22.

Solution

From Equation 4.45

$$q_u = q_b + \left(1 + \frac{B}{L}\right)\gamma_1 H^2\left(1 + \frac{2D_f}{H}\right)\left(\frac{K_s \tan\phi_1}{B}\right)\lambda_s - \gamma_1 H \le q_t$$

$$\lambda_s \approx 1$$

Given: $\phi_1 = 40°$; $\phi_2 = 32°$. From Figure 4.22, $K_s \approx 5.75$.
From Equation 4.46

$$q_b = \gamma_1(D_f + H)N_{q(2)}\lambda_{qs(2)} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma_2 B N_{\gamma(2)}\lambda_{\gamma s(2)}$$

For $\phi_2 = 32°$, Meyerhof's bearing capacity factors are $N_{\gamma(2)} = 22.02$ and $N_{q(2)} = 23.18$ (Table 2.3). Also from Table 2.8, Meyerhof's shape factors

$$\lambda_{qs(2)} = \lambda_{\gamma s(2)} = 1 + 0.1\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\tan^2\left(45 + \frac{\phi_2}{2}\right)$$

$$= 1 + (0.1)\left(\frac{1.5}{1.5}\right)\tan^2\left(45 + \frac{32}{2}\right) = 1.325$$

$$q_b = (18)(1.5 + 1)(23.18)(1.325) + \frac{1}{2}(16.7)(1.5)(22.02)(1.325)$$

$$= 1382.1 + 365.4 = 1747.5 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

Hence, from Equation 4.45

$$q_u = 1747.5 + \left(1 + \frac{1.5}{1.5}\right)(18)(1)^2\left(1 + \frac{2 \times 1.5}{1}\right)\left(\frac{5.75 \tan 40}{1.5}\right) - (18)(1) = 1747.5 + 463.2 - 18 = 2192.7 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

Check

From Equation 4.47

$$q_t = \gamma_1(D_f + H)N_{q(1)}\lambda_{qs(1)} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma_1 B N_{\gamma(1)}\lambda_{\gamma s(2)}$$

For $\phi_1 = 40°$, Meyerhof's bearing capacity factors are $N_{q(1)} = 62.4$ and $N_{\gamma(1)} = 93.69$ (Table 2.3).

$$\lambda_{qs(1)} = \lambda_{\gamma s(1)} = 1 + 0.1\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\tan^2\left(45 + \frac{\phi_1}{2}\right) = 1 + (0.1)\left(\frac{1.5}{1.5}\right)\tan^2\left(45 + \frac{40}{2}\right) \approx 1.46$$

$$q_t = (18)(1.5 + 1)(64.2)(1.46) + \frac{1}{2}(18)(1.5)(93.69)(1.46) = 4217.9 + 1846.6 = 6064.5 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

So, $q_u =$ **2192.7 kN/m²**.

EXAMPLE 4.6

Figure 4.24 shows a shallow foundation. Given: $H = 1$ m; undrained shear strength c_1 (for $\phi_1 = 0$ condition) = 80 kN/m²; undrained shear strength c_2 (for $\phi_2 = 0$ condition) = 32 kN/m²; $\gamma_1 = 18$ kN/m³; $D_f = 1$ m; $B = 1.5$ m; $L = 3$ m. Estimate the ultimate bearing capacity of the foundation.

Solution

From Equation 4.61

$$\frac{q_2}{q_1} = \frac{c_2}{c_1} = \frac{32}{80} = 0.4$$

From Figure 4.23 for $q_2/q_1 = 0.4$, $c_a/c_1 = 0.9$. So $c_a = (0.9)(80) = 72$ kN/m². From Equation 4.60

$$q_t = \left[1 + 0.2\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\right]c_1 N_{c(1)} + \gamma_1 D_f = \left[1 + 0.2\left(\frac{1.5}{3}\right)\right](80)(5.14) + (18)(1) = 470.32 \text{ kN/m}^2.$$

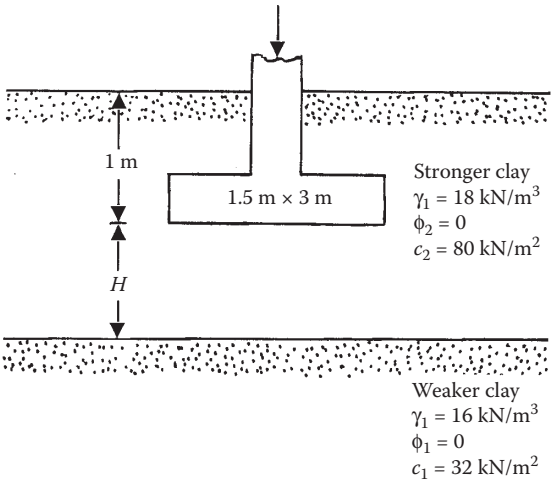


FIGURE 4.24 Shallow foundation on layered clay.

With $\lambda_s = 1$, Equation 4.59 yields

$$q_u = \left[1+0.2\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\right]c_2 N_{c(2)} + \left(1+\frac{B}{L}\right)\left(\frac{2c_a H}{B}\right)\lambda_a + \gamma_1 D_f \le q_t$$

$$= (1+0.1)(32)(5.14) + (1.5)\left[(2)(72)\left(\frac{H}{B}\right)\right](1) + (18)(1)$$

$$= 198.93 + 216\left(\frac{H}{B}\right) = 198.93 + 216\left(\frac{1}{1.5}\right) = \mathbf{343\ kN/m^2}$$

4.5 FOUNDATION ON LAYERED SOIL: WEAKER SOIL UNDERLAIN BY STRONGER SOIL

In general, when a foundation is supported by a weaker soil layer underlain by stronger soil at a shallow depth as shown in the left-hand side of Figure 4.25, the failure surface at ultimate load will pass through both soil layers. However, when the magnitude of H is relatively large compared to the width of the foundation B, the failure surface at ultimate load will be fully located in the weaker soil layer (see the right-hand side of Figure 4.25). The procedure to estimate the ultimate bearing capacity of such foundations on layered sand and layered saturated clay follows.

4.5.1 Foundations on Weaker Sand Layer Underlain by Stronger Sand ($c_1 = 0$, $c_2 = 0$)

Based on several laboratory model tests, Hanna[22] proposed the following relationship for estimating the ultimate bearing capacity q_u for a foundation resting on a weak sand layer underlain by a strong sand layer:

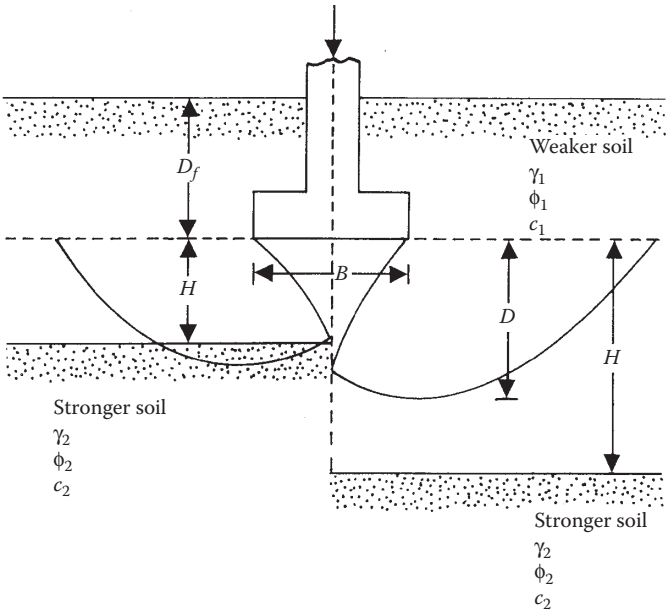


FIGURE 4.25 Foundation on weaker soil layer underlain by stronger sand layer.

$$q_u = \tfrac{1}{2}\gamma_1 B\lambda^*_{\gamma s} N_{\gamma(m)} + \gamma_1 D_f \lambda^*_{qs} N_{q(m)} \le \tfrac{1}{2}\gamma_2 \lambda_{\gamma s(2)} N_{\gamma(2)} + \gamma_2 D_f \lambda_{qs(2)} N_{q(2)} \quad (4.65)$$

where

$N_{\gamma(2)}$, $N_{q(2)}$ = Meyerhof's bearing capacity factors with reference to soil friction angle ϕ_2 (Table 2.3)

$\lambda_{\gamma s(2)}$, $\lambda_{qs(2)}$ = Meyerhof's shape factors (Table 2.8) with reference to soil friction angle $\phi_2 = 1 + 0.1(B/L)\tan^2(45 + (\phi_2/2))$

$N_{\gamma(m)}$, $N_{q(m)}$ = modified bearing capacity factors

$\lambda^*_{\gamma s}$,$\lambda^*_{\gamma s}$ = modified shape factors

The modified bearing capacity factors can be obtained as follows:

$$N_{\gamma(m)} = N_{\gamma(2)} - \left[\frac{H}{D_{(\gamma)}}\right][N_{\gamma(2)} - N_{\gamma(1)}] \quad (4.66)$$

$$N_{q(m)} = N_{q(2)} - \left[\frac{H}{D_{(q)}}\right][N_{q(2)} - N_{q(1)}] \quad (4.67)$$

where

$N_{\gamma(1)}$, $N_{q(1)}$ = Meyerhof's bearing capacity factors with reference to soil friction angle ϕ_1 (Table 2.3)

The variations of $D_{(\gamma)}$ and $D_{(q)}$ with ϕ_1 are shown in Figures 4.2 and 4.3. The relationships for the modified shape factors are the same as those given in Equations 4.4 and 4.5. The term m_1 (Equation 4.4) can be determined from Figure 4.7 by substituting $D_{(q)}$ for H and ϕ_1 for ϕ. Similarly, the term m_2 (Equation 4.5) can be determined from Figure 4.8 by substituting $D_{(\gamma)}$ for H and ϕ_1 for ϕ.

4.5.2 Foundations on Weaker Clay Layer Underlain by Strong Clay Layer ($\phi_1 = 0$, $\phi_2 = 0$)

Vesic[12] proposed that the ultimate bearing capacity of a foundation supported by a weaker clay layer ($\phi_1 = 0$) underlain by a stronger clay layer ($\phi_2 = 0$) can be expressed as

$$q_u = c_1 m N_c + \gamma_1 D_f \tag{4.68}$$

where

$$N_c = \begin{cases} 5.14 \text{ (for strip foundation)} \\ 6.17 \text{ (for square or circular foundation)} \end{cases}$$

$$m = f\left(\frac{c_1}{c_2}, \frac{H}{B}, \text{ and } \frac{B}{L}\right)$$

Tables 4.2 and 4.3 give the variation of m for strip and square and circular foundations.

EXAMPLE 4.7

A shallow square foundation 2 × 2 m in plan is located over a weaker sand layer underlain by a stronger sand layer. Referring to Figure 4.25, given: $D_f = 0.8$ m; $H = 0.5$ m; $\gamma_1 = 16.5$ kN/m^3; $\phi_1 = 35$; $c_1 = 0$; $\gamma_2 = 18.5$ kN/m^3; $\phi_2 = 45°$; $c_2 = 0$. Use Equation 4.65 and determine the ultimate bearing capacity q_u.

TABLE 4.2
Variation of m (Equation 4.68) for Strip Foundation ($B/L \leq 0.2$)

	H/B				
c_1/c_2	≥0.5	0.25	0.167	0.125	0.1
1	1	1	1	1	1
0.667	1	1.033	1.064	1.088	1.109
0.5	1	1.056	1.107	1.152	1.193
0.333	1	1.088	1.167	1.241	1.311
0.25	1	1.107	1.208	1.302	1.389
0.2	1	1.121	1.235	1.342	1.444
0.1	1	1.154	1.302	1.446	1.584

TABLE 4.3
Variation of *m* (Equation 4.68) for Square and Circular Foundation (*B*/*L* = 1)

	H/*B*				
c_1/c_2	≥0.25	0.125	0.083	0.063	0.05
1	1	1	1	1	1
0.667	1	1.028	1.052	1.075	1.096
0.5	1	1.047	1.091	1.131	1.167
0.333	1	1.075	1.143	1.207	1.267
0.25	1	1.091	1.177	1.256	1.334
0.2	1	1.102	1.199	1.292	1.379
0.1	1	1.128	1.254	1.376	1.494

Solution

$H = 0.5$ m; $\phi_1 = 35°$; $\phi_2 = 45°$. From Figures 4.2 and 4.3 for $\phi_1 = 35°$,

$$\frac{D_{(\gamma)}}{B} = 1.0; \quad \frac{D_{(q)}}{B} = 1.9$$

So, $D_{(\gamma)} = 2.0$ m and $D_{(q)} = 3.8$ m. From Table 2.3 for $\phi_1 = 35°$ and $\phi_2 = 45°$, $N_{q(1)} = 33.30$, $N_{q(2)} = 134.88$, and $N_{\gamma(1)} = 37.1$, $N_{\gamma(2)} = 262.7$. Using Equations 4.66 and 4.67

$$N_{\gamma(m)} = 262.7 - \left[\frac{0.5}{2}\right][262.7 - 37.1] = 206.3$$

$$N_{q(m)} = 134.88 - \left[\frac{0.5}{3.8}\right][134.88 - 33.3] = 121.5$$

From Equation 4.65

$$q_u = \frac{1}{2}\gamma_1 B \lambda^*_{\gamma s} N_{\gamma(m)} + \gamma_1 D_f \lambda^*_{qs} N_{q(m)}$$

From Equation 4.4 (*Note:* $D_{(q)}/B = 3.8/2 = 1.9$, and $\phi_1 = 35°$)

$$\lambda^*_{qs} = 1 - m_1\left(\frac{B}{L}\right) \approx 1 - 0.02\left(\frac{2}{2}\right) = 0.98$$

and

From Equation 4.5 (*Note:* $D_{(\gamma)}/B = 2/2 = 1$, and $\phi_1 = 35°$)

$$\lambda^*_{\gamma s} = 1 - m_2\left(\frac{B}{L}\right) = 1 - 0.4\left(\frac{2}{2}\right) = 0.6$$

So

$$q_u = (0.5)(16.5)(2)(0.6)(206.3) + (16.5)(0.8)(0.98)(121.5)$$
$$= 2042.4 + 1571.7 \approx 3614 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

Check

$$q_u = q_b = \frac{1}{2}\gamma_2 \lambda_{\gamma s(2)} N_{\gamma(2)} + \gamma_2 D_f \lambda_{qs(2)} N_{q(2)}$$

$$\lambda_{qs(2)} = \lambda_{\gamma s(2)} = 1 + 0.1\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\tan^2\left(45 + \frac{\phi_2}{2}\right)$$
$$= 1 + (0.1)\left(\frac{2}{2}\right)\tan^2\left(45 + \frac{45}{2}\right) = 1.583$$

$$q_u = (0.5)(18.5)(2)(1.583)(262.7) + (18.5)(0.8)(1.583)(134.88)$$
$$= 7693.3 + 3160 \approx \mathbf{10,853 \text{ kN/m}^2}$$

So, $q_u = \mathbf{3614 \text{ kN/m}^2}$.

EXAMPLE 4.8

Refer to Figure 4.25. For a foundation in layered saturated clay profile, given: $L = 1.22$ m, $B = 1.22$ m, $D_f = 0.91$ m, $H = 0.61$ m, $\gamma_1 = 17.29$ kN/m^3, $\phi_1 = 0$, $c_1 = 57.5$ kN/m^2, $\gamma_2 = 19.65$ kN/m^3, $\phi_2 = 0$, and $c_2 = 119.79$ kN/m^2. Determine the ultimate bearing capacity of the foundation. Use Equation 4.68.

Solution

From Equation 4.68,

$$q_u = c_1 m N_c + \gamma_1 D_f$$

$c_1/c_2 = 57.5/119.79 = 0.48$; $H/B = 0.61/1.22 = 0.5$. From Table 4.3, for $c_1/c_2 = 0.48$ and $H/B = 0.5$, the value of $m \approx 1$. Hence,

$$q_u = (57.5)(1)(5.14) + (17.29)(0.91) = \mathbf{311.28 \text{ kN/m}^2}$$

4.6 CONTINUOUS FOUNDATION ON WEAK CLAY WITH A GRANULAR TRENCH

In practice, there are several techniques to improve the load-bearing capacity and settlement of shallow foundations on weak compressible soil layers. One of those techniques is the use of a granular trench under a foundation. Figure 4.26 shows a continuous rough foundation on a granular trench made in weak soil extending to a great depth. The width of the trench is W, the width of the foundation is B, and the depth of the trench is H. The width W of the trench can be smaller or larger than B.

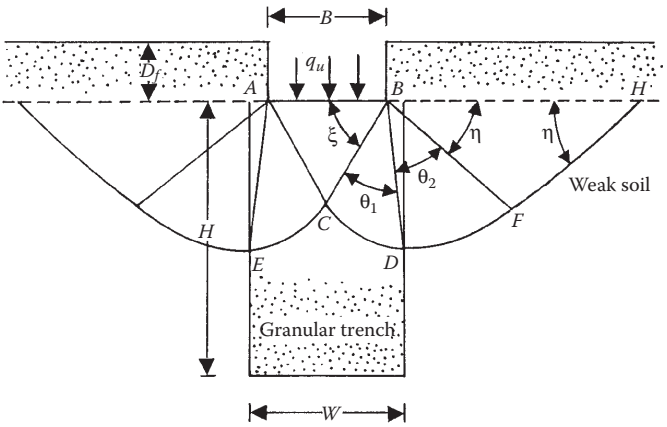


FIGURE 4.26 Continuous rough foundation on weak soil with a granular trench.

The parameters of the stronger trench material and the weak soil for bearing capacity calculation are as follows:

	Trench Material	Weak Soil
Angle of friction	ϕ_1	ϕ_2
Cohesion	c_1	c_2
Unit weight	γ_1	γ_2

Madhav and Vitkar[23] assumed a general shear failure mechanism in the soil under the foundation to analyze the ultimate bearing capacity of the foundation using the upper bound limit analysis suggested by Drucker and Prager[24], and this is shown in Figure 4.26. The failure zone in the soil can be divided into subzones, and they are as follows:

1. An active Rankine zone *ABC* with a wedge angle of ξ
2. A mixed transition zone such as *BCD* bounded by angle θ_1. *CD* is an arc of a log spiral defined by the equation

$$r = r_0 e^{\theta \tan \phi_1}$$

where
ϕ_1 = angle of friction of the trench material

3. A transition zone such as *BDF* with a central angle θ_2. *DF* is an arc of a log spiral defined by the equation

$$r = r_0 e^{\theta \tan \phi_2}$$

4. A Rankine passive zone like *BFH*
Note that θ_1 and θ_2 are functions of ξ, η, *W*/*B*, and ϕ_1

By using the upper bound limit analysis theorem, Madhav and Vitkar[23] expressed the ultimate bearing capacity of the foundation as

$$q_u = c_2 N_{c(T)} + D_f \gamma_2 N_{q(T)} + \left(\frac{\gamma_2 B}{2}\right) N_{\gamma(T)} \tag{4.69}$$

where

$N_{c(T)}$, $N_{q(T)}$, $N_{\gamma(T)}$ = bearing capacity factors with the presence of the trench

The variations of the bearing capacity factors (i.e., $N_{c(T)}$, $N_{q(T)}$, and $N_{\gamma(T)}$) for purely granular trench soil ($c_1 = 0$) and soft saturated clay (with $\phi_2 = 0$ and $c_2 = c_u$) determined by Madhav and Vitkar[23] are given in Figures 4.27 through 4.29. The values of $N_{\gamma(T)}$ given in Figure 4.29 are for $\gamma_1/\gamma_2 = 1$. In an actual case, the ratio γ_1/γ_2 may be different than one; however, the error for this assumption is less than 10%.

Sufficient experimental results are not available in the literature to verify the above theory. Hamed, Das, and Echelberger[25] conducted several laboratory model tests to determine the variation of the ultimate bearing capacity of a strip foundation resting on a granular trench (sand; $c_1 = 0$) made in a saturated soft clay medium ($\phi_2 = 0$; $c_2 = c_u$). For these tests the width of the foundation B was kept equal to the width of the trench W, and the ratio of H/B was varied. The details of the tests are as follows:

Series I

$\phi_1 = 40°$, $c_1 = 0$

$\phi_2 = 0$, $c_2 = c_u = 1656$ kN/m^2

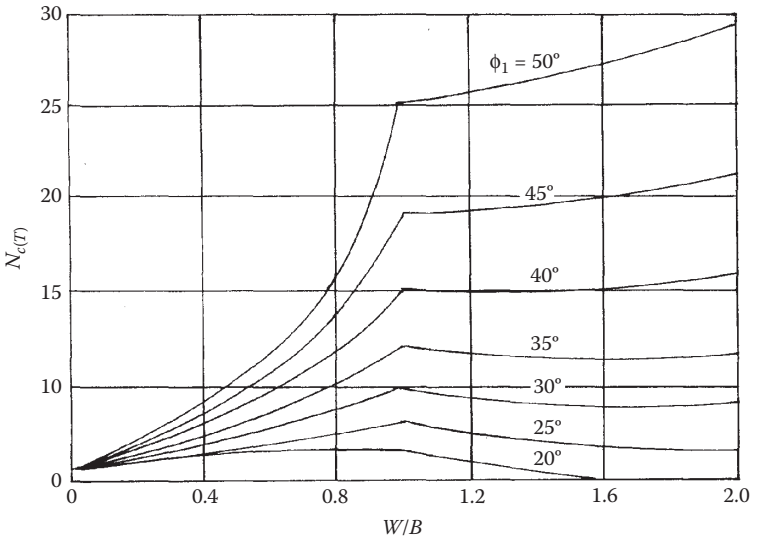


FIGURE 4.27 Madhav and Vitkar's bearing capacity factor $N_{c(T)}$.

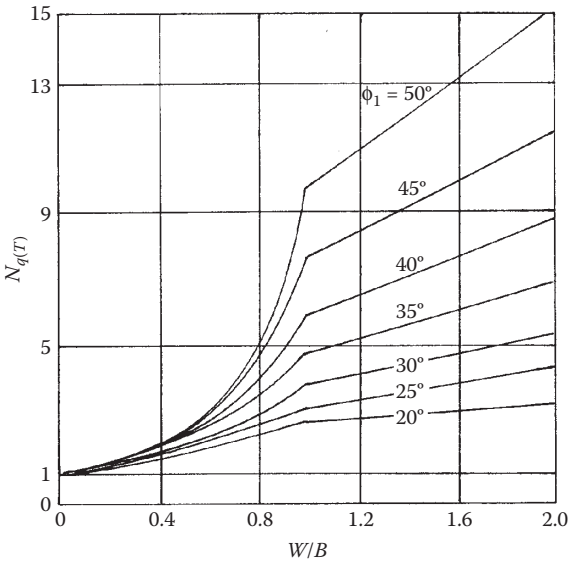


FIGURE 4.28 Madhav and Vitkar's bearing capacity factor $N_{q(T)}$.

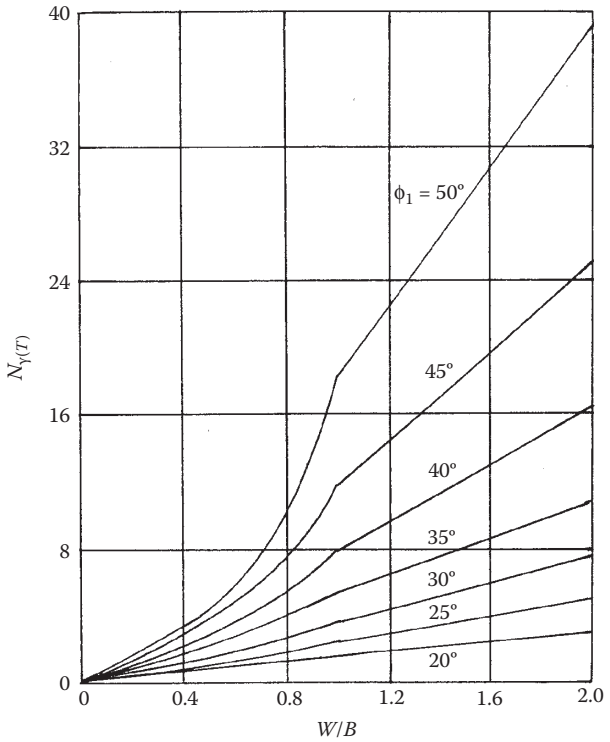


FIGURE 4.29 Madhav and Vitkar's bearing capacity factor $N_{\gamma(T)}$.

Series II

$\phi_1 = 43°$, $c_1 = 0$

$\phi_2 = 0$, $c_2 = c_u = 1656$ kN/m^2

For both test series D_f was kept equal to zero (i.e., surface foundation). For each test series the ultimate bearing capacity q_u increased with H/B almost linearly, reaching a maximum at $H/B \approx 2.5$–3. The maximum values of q_u obtained experimentally were compared with those presented by Madhav and Vitkar[23]. The theoretical values were about 40%–70% higher than those obtained experimentally. Further refinement to the theory is necessary to provide more realistic results.

EXAMPLE 4.9

Refer to Figure 4.26. For a continuous foundation constructed over a granular trench, the following are given:

- $B = 1$ m, $W = 1.5$ m, $D_f = 1$ m
- $\phi_1 = 40°$, $c_1 = 0$, $\gamma_1 = 18$ kN/m^3
- $\phi_2 = 0$, $c_2 = 40$ kN/m^2, $\gamma_2 = 17$ kN/m^3

Estimate the gross ultimate bearing capacity.

SOLUTION

From Equation 4.69,

$$q_u = c_2 N_{c(T)} + D_f \gamma_2 N_{q(T)} + \left(\frac{\gamma_2 B}{2}\right) N_{\gamma(T)}$$

$W = 1.5$ m; $B = 1$ m. $W/B = 1.5/1 = 1.5$. From Figures 4.27 through 4.29, $N_{c(T)} \approx 15$, $N_{q(T)} \approx 7.2$, $N_{\gamma(T)} \approx 12$

$$q_u = (40)(15) + (1)(17)(7.2) + \left(\frac{17 \times 1}{2}\right)(12) = \mathbf{824.4\ kN/m^2}$$

4.7 SHALLOW FOUNDATION ABOVE A VOID

Mining operations may leave underground voids at relatively shallow depths. Additionally, in some instances, void spaces occur when soluble bedrock dissolves at the interface of the soil and bedrock. Estimating the ultimate bearing capacity of shallow foundations constructed over these voids, as well as the stability of the foundations, is gradually becoming an important issue. Only a few studies have been published so far. Baus and Wang[26] reported some experimental results for the ultimate bearing capacity of a shallow rough continuous foundation located above voids as shown in Figure 4.30. It is assumed that the top of the rectangular void is located at a depth H below the bottom of the foundation. The void is continuous and has

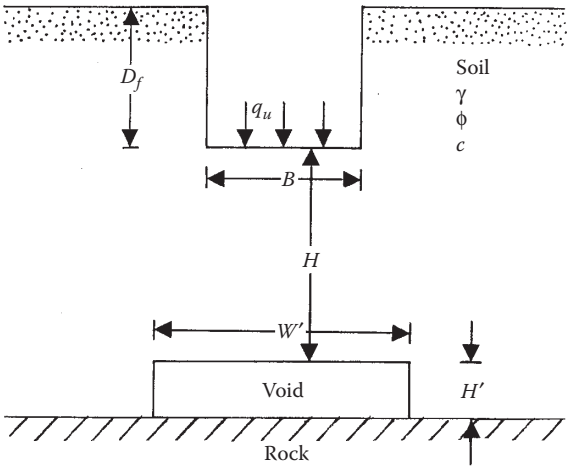


FIGURE 4.30 Shallow continuous rough foundation over a void.

cross-sectional dimensions of $W' \times H'$. The laboratory tests of Baus and Wang[26] were conducted with soil having the following properties:

Friction angle of soil $\phi = 13.5°$
Cohesion = 65.6 kN/m^2
Modulus in compression = 4670 kN/m^2
Modulus in tension = 10,380 kN/m^2
Poisson's ratio = 0.28
Unit weight of compacted soil $\gamma = 18.42$ kN/m^3

The results of Baus and Wang[26] are shown in a nondimensional form in Figure 4.31. Note that the results of the tests that constitute Figure 4.31 are for the case of $D_f = 0$. From this figure the following conclusions can be drawn:

1. For a given H/B, the ultimate bearing capacity decreases with the increase in the void width, W'.
2. For any given W'/B, there is a critical H/B ratio beyond which the void has no effect on the ultimate bearing capacity. For $W'/B = 10$, the value of the critical H/B is about 12.

Baus and Wang[26] conducted finite analysis to compare the validity of their experimental findings. In the finite element analysis, the soil was treated as an *elastic—perfectly plastic material*. They also assumed that Hooke's law is valid in the elastic range and that the soil follows the von Mises yield criterion in the perfectly plastic range, or

$$f = \alpha J_1 + \sqrt{J_2} = k' \tag{4.70}$$

$$f = 0 \tag{4.71}$$

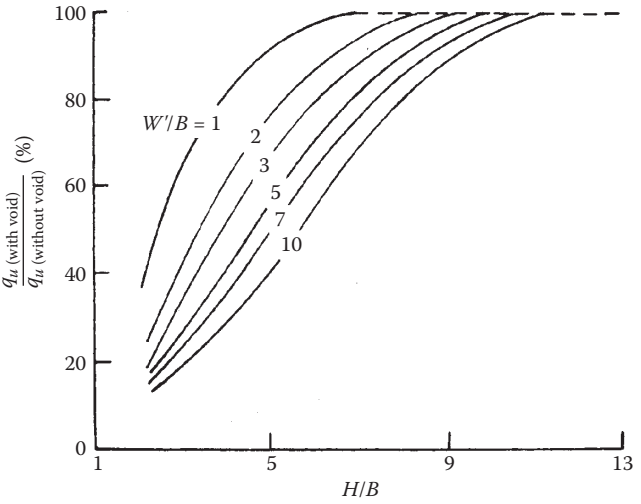


FIGURE 4.31 Experimental bearing capacity of a continuous foundation as a function of void size and location. (From Baus, R. L. and M. C. Wang. 1983. *J. Geotech. Eng.*, 109(GT1): 1.)

where

f = yield function

$$\alpha = \frac{\tan\phi}{(9+12\tan\phi)^{0.5}} \tag{4.72}$$

$$k' = \frac{3c}{(9+12\tan\phi)^{0.5}} \tag{4.73}$$

J_1 = first stress invariant

J_2 = second stress invariant

The relationships shown in Equations 4.72 and 4.73 are based on the study of Drucker and Prager[24]. The results of the finite element analysis have shown good agreement with experiments.

4.8 FOUNDATION ON A SLOPE

In 1957 Meyerhof[27] proposed a theoretical solution to determine the ultimate bearing capacity of a shallow foundation located on the face of a slope. Figure 4.32 shows the nature of the plastic zone developed in the soil under a rough continuous foundation (width = B) located on the face of a slope. In Figure 4.32, *abc* is the elastic zone, *acd* is a radial shear zone, and *ade* is a mixed shear zone. The normal and shear stresses on plane *ae* are p_o and s_o, respectively. Note that the slope makes an angle β with the

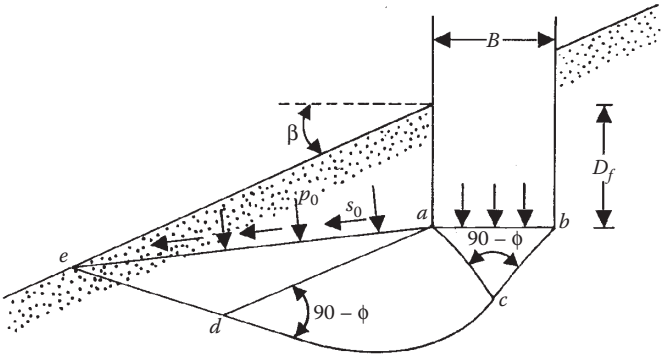


FIGURE 4.32 Nature of plastic zone under a rough continuous foundation on the face of a slope.

horizontal. The shear strength parameters of the soil are c and ϕ, and its unit weight is equal to γ. As in Equation 2.73, the ultimate bearing capacity can be expressed as

$$q_u = cN_c + p_o N_q + \frac{1}{2}\gamma B N_\gamma \tag{4.74}$$

The preceding relationship can also be expressed as

$$q_u = cN_{cq} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma B N_{\gamma q} \tag{4.75}$$

where

N_{cq}, $N_{\gamma q}$ = bearing capacity factors

For purely cohesive soil (that is, $\phi = 0$)

$$q_u = cN_{cq} \tag{4.76}$$

Figure 4.33 shows the variation of N_{cq} with slope angle β and the *slope stability number* N_s. Note that

$$N_s = \frac{\gamma H}{c} \tag{4.77}$$

where

H = height of the slope

In a similar manner, for a granular soil ($c = 0$)

$$q_u = \frac{1}{2}\gamma B N_{\gamma q} \tag{4.78}$$

The variation of $N_{\gamma q}$ (for $c = 0$) applicable to Equation 4.78 is shown in Figure 4.34.

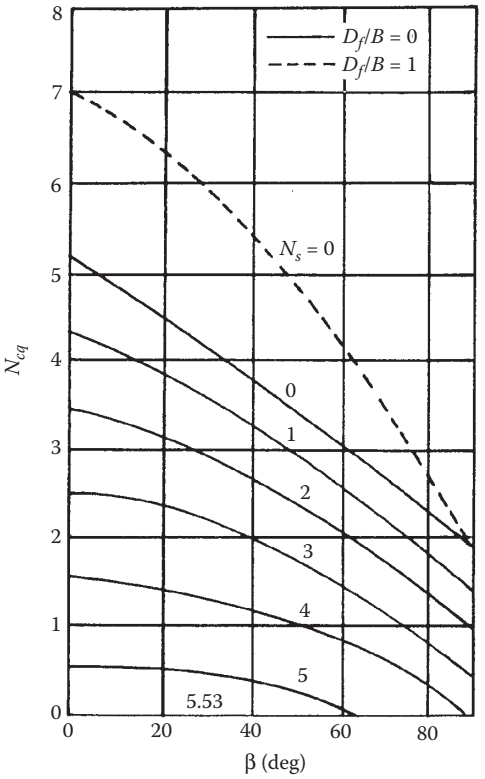


FIGURE 4.33 Variation of Meyerhof's bearing capacity factor N_{cq} for a purely cohesive soil (foundation on a slope).

4.9 FOUNDATION ON TOP OF A SLOPE

4.9.1 Meyerhof's Solution

Figure 4.35 shows a rough continuous foundation of width B located on top of a slope of height H. It is located at a distance b from the edge of the slope. The ultimate bearing capacity of the foundation can be expressed by Equation 4.75, or

$$q_u = cN_{cq} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_{\gamma q} \tag{4.79}$$

Meyehof[27] developed the theoretical variations of N_{cq} for a purely cohesive soil ($\phi = 0$) and $N_{\gamma q}$ for a granular soil ($c = 0$), and these variations are shown in Figures 4.36 and 4.37. Note that, for purely cohesive soil (Figure 4.36)

$$q_u = cN_{cq}$$

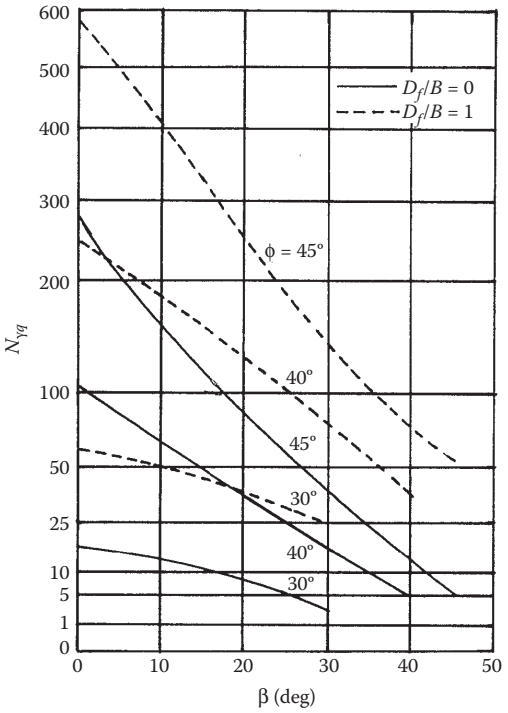


FIGURE 4.34 Variation of Meyerhof's bearing capacity factor $N_{\gamma q}$ for a purely granular soil (foundation on a slope).

and for granular soil (Figure 4.37)

$$q_u = \frac{1}{2}\gamma B N_{\gamma q}$$

It is important to note that, when using Figure 4.36, the stability number N_s should be taken as zero when $B < H$. If $B \geq H$, the curve for the actual stability number should be used.

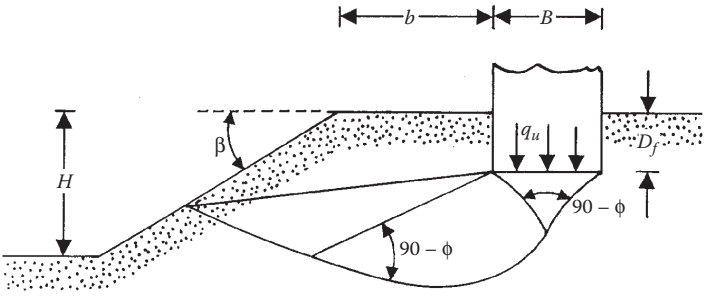


FIGURE 4.35 Continuous foundation on a slope.

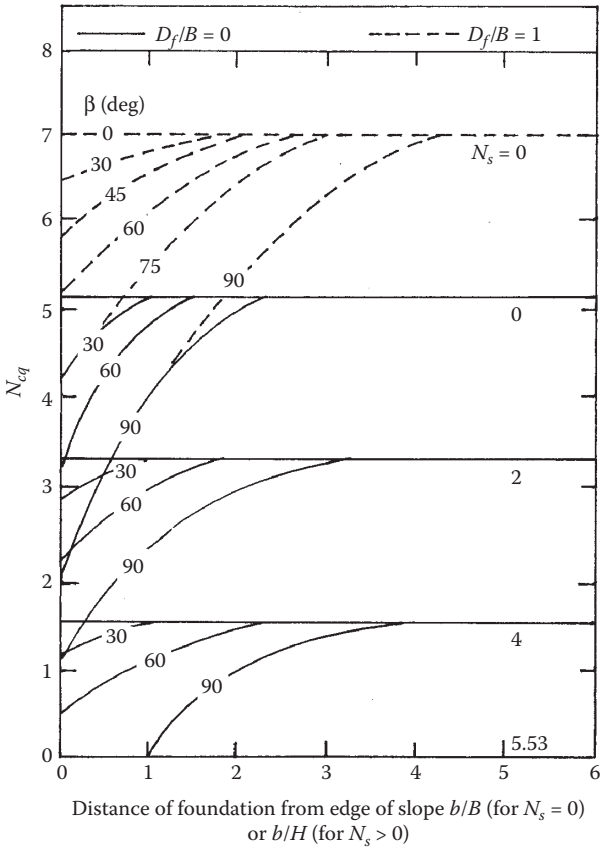


FIGURE 4.36 Meyerhof's bearing capacity factor N_{cq} for a purely cohesive soil (foundation on top of a slope).

4.9.2 Solutions of Hansen and Vesic

Referring to the condition of $b = 0$ in Figure 4.35 (that is, the foundation is located at the edge of the slope), Hansen[28] proposed the following relationship for the ultimate bearing capacity of a continuous foundation:

$$q_u = cN_c\lambda_{c\beta} + qN_q\lambda_{q\beta} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_\gamma\lambda_{\gamma\beta} \tag{4.80}$$

where

N_c, N_q, N_γ = bearing capacity factors (see Table 2.3 for N_c and N_q and Table 2.4 for N_γ)
$\lambda_{c\beta}$, $\lambda_{q\beta}$, $\lambda_{\gamma\beta}$ = slope factors
$q = \gamma D_f$

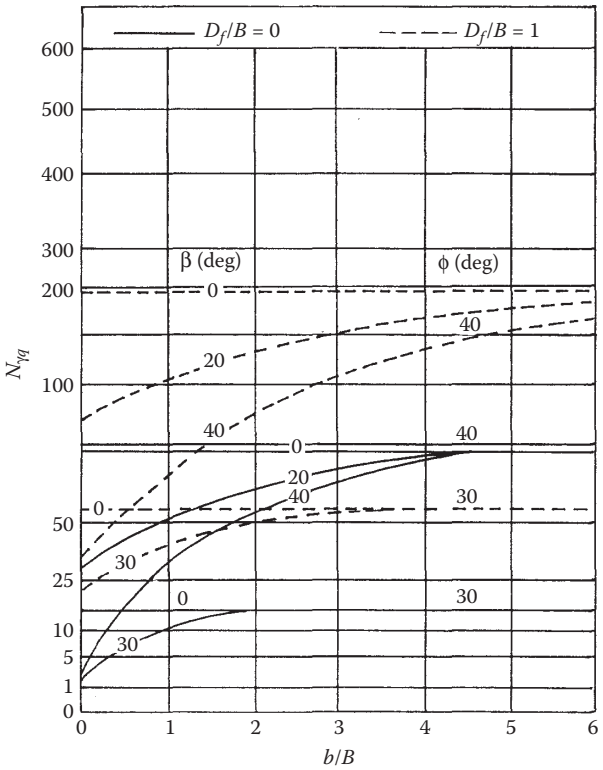


FIGURE 4.37 Meyerhof's bearing capacity factor $N_{\gamma q}$ for a granular soil (foundation on top of a slope).

According to Hansen[28],

$$\lambda_{q\beta} = \lambda_{\gamma\beta} = (1 - \tan\beta)^2 \tag{4.81}$$

$$\lambda_{c\beta} = \frac{N_q \lambda_{q\beta} - 1}{N_q - 1} \quad (\text{for } \phi > 0) \tag{4.82}$$

$$\lambda_{c\beta} = 1 - \frac{2\beta}{\pi + 2} \quad (\text{for } \phi = 0) \tag{4.83}$$

For the $\phi = 0$ condition Vesic[12] pointed out that, with the absence of weight due to the slope, the bearing capacity factor N_γ has a negative value and can be given as

$$N_\gamma = -2\sin\beta \tag{4.84}$$

Thus, for the $\phi = 0$ condition with $N_c = 5.14$ and $N_q = 1$, Equation 4.80 takes the form

$$q_u = c(5.14)\left(1 - \frac{2\beta}{5.14}\right) + \gamma D_f (1 - \tan\beta)^2 - \gamma B \sin\beta (1 - \tan\beta)^2$$

or

$$q_u = (5.14 - 2\beta)c + \gamma D_f (1 - \tan\beta)^2 - \gamma B \sin\beta (1 - \tan\beta)^2 \tag{4.85}$$

4.9.3 Solution by Limit Equilibrium and Limit Analysis

Saran, Sud, and Handa[29] provided a solution to determine the ultimate bearing capacity of shallow continuous foundations *on the top of a slope* (Figure 4.35) using the limit equilibrium and limit analysis approach. According to this theory, for a strip foundation

$$q_u = cN_c + qN_q + \frac{1}{2}\gamma B N_\gamma \tag{4.86}$$

where

N_c, N_q, N_γ = bearing capacity factors
$q = \gamma D_f$

Referring to the notations used in Figure 4.35, the numerical values of N_c, N_q, and N_γ are given in Table 4.4.

4.9.4 Stress Characteristics Solution

As shown in Equation 4.79, for granular soils (i.e., $c = 0$)

$$q_u = \frac{1}{2}\gamma B N_{\gamma q} \tag{4.87}$$

Graham, Andrews, and Shields[30] provided a solution for the bearing capacity factor $N_{\gamma q}$ for a shallow continuous foundation on the top of a slope in *granular soil* based on the method of stress characteristics. Figure 4.38 shows the schematics of the failure zone in the soil for embedment (D_f/B) and setback (b/B) assumed for this analysis. The variations of $N_{\gamma q}$ obtained by this method are shown in Figures 4.39 through 4.41.

EXAMPLE 4.10

Refer to Figure 4.35 and consider a continuous foundation on a saturated clay slope. Given, for the slope: $H = 7$ m; $\beta = 30°$; $\gamma = 18.5$ kN/m^3; $\phi = 0$, $c = 49$ kN/m^2;

TABLE 4.4
Bearing Capacity Factors Based on Saran, Sud, and Handa's Analysis

Factor	β (deg)	$\frac{D_f}{B}$	$\frac{b}{B}$	Soil Friction Angle ϕ (deg)						
				40	35	30	25	20	15	10
N_γ	30	0	0	25.37	12.41	6.14	3.20	1.26	0.70	0.10
	20			53.48	24.54	11.62	5.61	4.27	1.79	0.45
	10			101.74	43.35	19.65	9.19	4.35	1.96	0.77
	0			165.39	66.59	28.98	13.12	6.05	2.74	1.14
	30	0	1	60.06	34.03	18.95	10.33	5.45	0.00	—
	20			85.98	42.49	21.93	11.42	5.89	1.35	—
	10			125.32	55.15	25.86	12.26	6.05	2.74	—
	0			165.39	66.59	28.89	13.12	6.05	2.74	—
	30	1	0	91.87	49.43	26.39	—	—	—	—
	25			115.65	59.12	28.80	—	—	—	—
	20			143.77	66.00	28.89	—	—	—	—
	≤15			165.39	66.59	28.89	—	—	—	—
	30	1	1	131.34	64.37	28.89	—	—	—	—
	25			151.37	66.59	28.89	—	—	—	—
	≤20			166.39	66.59	28.89	—	—	—	—
N_q	30	1	0	12.13	16.42	8.98	7.04	5.00	3.60	—
	20			12.67	19.48	16.80	12.70	7.40	4.40	—
	≤10			81.30	41.40	22.50	12.70	7.40	4.40	—
	30	1	1	28.31	24.14	22.5	—	—	—	—
	20			42.25	41.4	22.5	—	—	—	—
	≤10			81.30	41.4	22.5	—	—	—	—
N_c	50	0	0	21.68	16.52	12.60	10.00	8.60	7.10	5.50
	40			31.80	22.44	16.64	12.80	10.04	8.00	6.25
	30			44.80	28.72	22.00	16.20	12.20	8.60	6.70
	20			63.20	41.20	28.32	20.60	15.00	11.30	8.76
	≤10			88.96	55.36	36.50	24.72	17.36	12.61	9.44
	50	0	1	38.80	30.40	24.20	19.70	16.42	—	—
	40			48.00	35.40	27.42	21.52	17.28	—	—
	30			59.64	41.07	30.92	23.60	17.36	—	—
	20			75.12	50.00	35.16	27.72	17.36	—	—
	≤10			95.20	57.25	36.69	24.72	17.36	—	—
	50	1	0	35.97	28.11	22.38	18.38	15.66	10.00	—
	40			51.16	37.95	29.42	22.75	17.32	12.16	—
	30			70.59	50.37	36.20	24.72	17.36	12.16	—
	20			93.79	57.20	36.20	24.72	17.36	12.16	—
	≤10			95.20	57.20	36.20	24.72	17.36	12.16	—
	50	1	1	53.65	42.47	35.00	24.72	—	—	—
	40			67.98	51.61	36.69	24.72	—	—	—
	30			85.38	57.25	36.69	24.72	—	—	—
	≤20			95.20	57.25	36.69	24.72	—	—	—

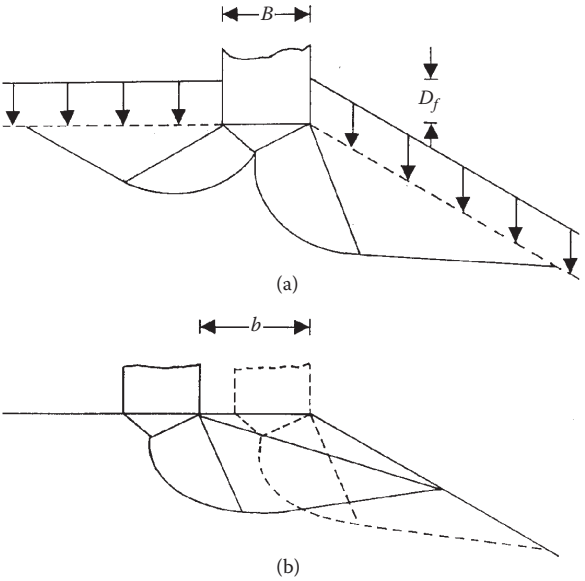


FIGURE 4.38 Schematic diagram of failure zones for embedment and setback: (a) $D_f/B > 0$; (b) $b/B > 0$.

and given, for the foundation: $D_f = 1.5$ m; $B = 1.5$ m; $b = 0$. Estimate the ultimate bearing capacity by

1. Meyerhof's method (Equation 4.79)
2. Hansen and Vesic's method (Equation 4.85)

Solution

Part a:

$$q_{qu} = cN_{cq}$$

Given $D_f/B = 1.5/1.5 = 1$; $b/B = 0/1.5 = 0$. Since $H/B > 1$, use $N_s = 0$.

From Figure 4.36, for $D_f/B = 1$; $b/B = 0$, $\beta = 30°$, and $N_s = 0$, the value of N_{cq} is about 5.85. So,

$$q_u = (49)(5.85) = \mathbf{286.7\ kN/m^2}$$

Part b: From Equation 4.85

$$q_u = (5.14 - 2\beta)c + \gamma D_f(1-\tan\beta)^2 - \gamma B\sin\beta(1-\tan\beta)^2$$

$$= \left[5.14 - (2)\left(\frac{\pi}{180}\times 30\right)\right](49) + (18.5)(1.5)(1-\tan 30)^2 - (18.5)(1.5)(\sin 30)(1-\tan 30)^2$$

$$= \mathbf{203\ kN/m^2}$$

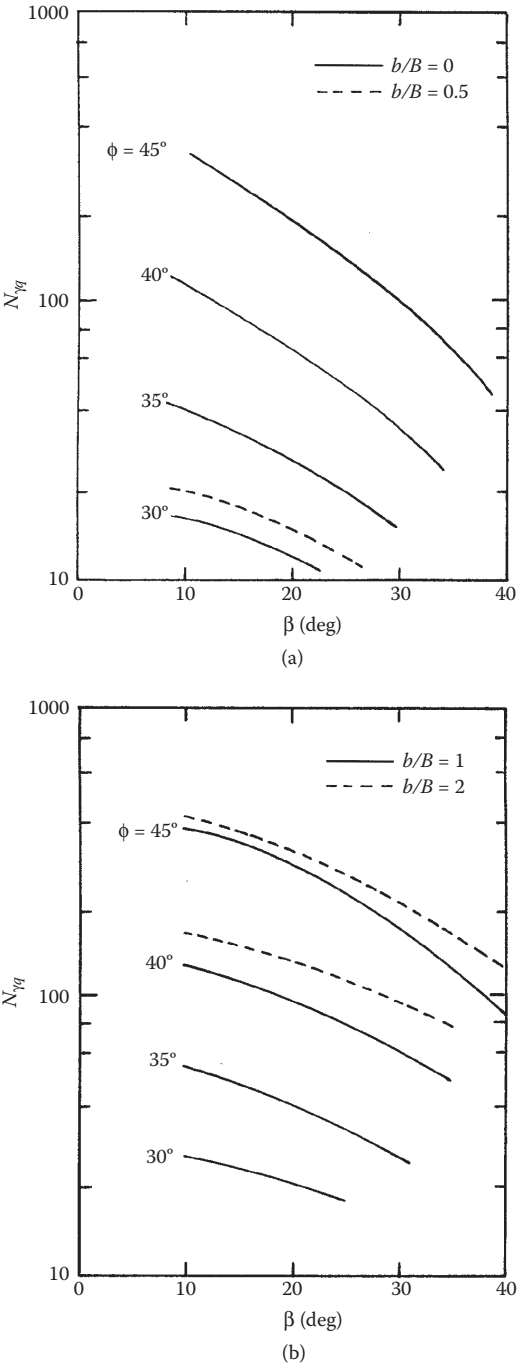


FIGURE 4.39 Graham, Andrews, and Shields' theoretical values of $N_{\gamma q}$ ($D_f/B = 0$): (a) $b/B = 0$ and 0.5; (b) $b/B = 1$ and 2.

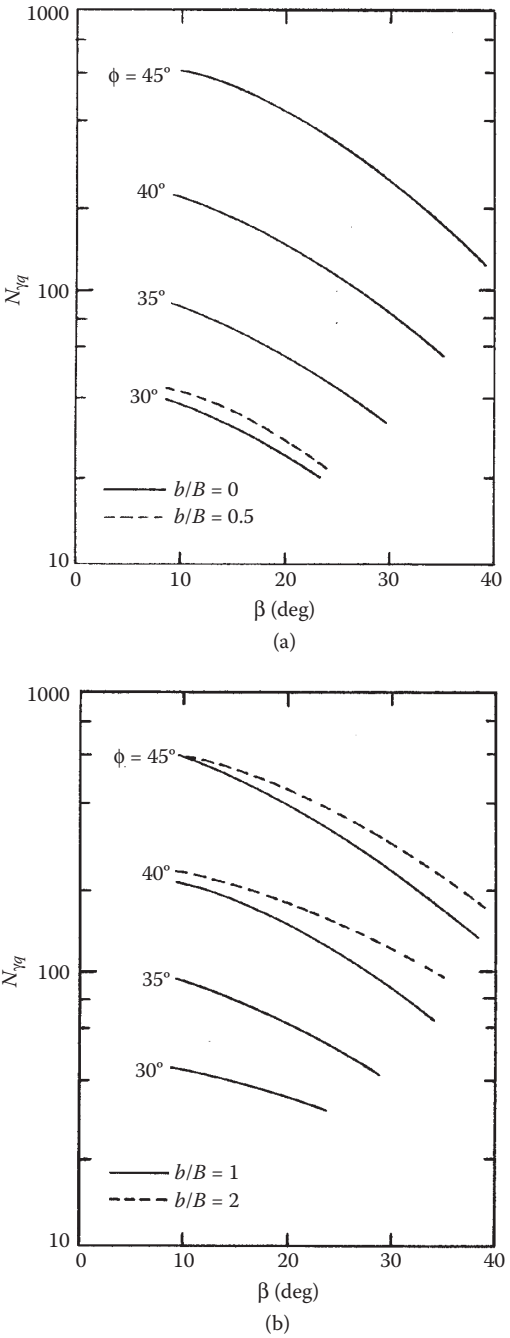


FIGURE 4.40 Graham, Andrews, and Shields' theoretical values of $N_{\gamma q}$ ($D_f/B = 0.5$): (a) $b/B = 0$ and 0.5; (b) $b/B = 1$ and 2.

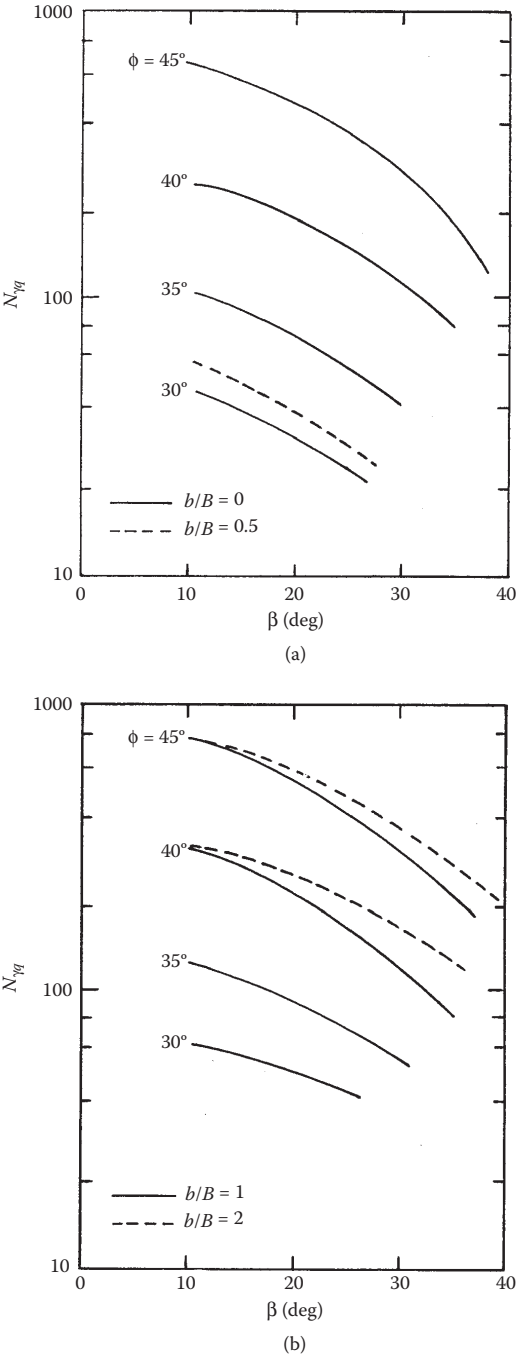


FIGURE 4.41 Graham, Andrews, and Shields' theoretical values of $N_{\gamma q}$ ($D_f/B = 1$): (a) $b/B = 0$ and 0.5; (b) $b/B = 1$ and 2.

EXAMPLE 4.11

Refer to Figure 4.35 and consider a continuous foundation on a slope of granular soil. Given, for the slope: $H = 6$ m; $\beta = 30°$; $\gamma = 16.8$ kN/m^3; $\phi = 40°$; $c = 0$; and given, for the foundation: $D_f = 1.5$ m; $B = 1.5$ m; $b = 1.5$ m. Estimate the ultimate bearing capacity by

1. Meyerhof's method (Equation 4.79)
2. Saran, Sud, and Handa's method (Equation 4.86)
3. The stress characteristic solution (Equation 4.87)

Solution

Part a: For granular soil ($c = 0$), from Equation 4.79

$$q_u = \tfrac{1}{2}\gamma B N_{\gamma q}$$

Given: $b/B = 1.5/1.5 = 1$; $D_f/B = 1.5/1.5 = 1$; $\phi = 40°$; and $\beta = 30°$. From Figure 4.37, $N_{\gamma q} \approx 120$. So

$$q_u = \tfrac{1}{2}(16.8)(1.5)(120) = \mathbf{1512\ kN/m^2}$$

Part b: For $c = 0$, from Equation 4.86

$$q_u = qN_q + \tfrac{1}{2}\gamma B N_\gamma$$

For $b/B = 1$: $D_f/B = 1$; $\phi = 40°$; and $\beta = 30°$. The value of $N_\gamma = 131.34$ and the value of $N_q = 28.31$ (Table 4.4).

$$q_u = (16.8)(1.5)(28.31) + \tfrac{1}{2}(16.8)(1.5)(131.34) = \mathbf{2368\ kN/m^2}$$

Part c: From Equation 4.87

$$q_u = \tfrac{1}{2}\gamma B N_{\gamma q}$$

From Figure 4.41b, $N_{\gamma q} \approx 110$

$$q_u = \tfrac{1}{2}(16.8)(1.5)(110) = \mathbf{1386\ kN/m^2}$$

4.10 STONE COLUMNS

4.10.1 General Parameters

A method now being used to increase the load-bearing capacity of shallow foundations on soft clay layers is the construction of stone columns. This generally consists of water-jetting a vibroflot into the soft clay layer to make a circular hole that extends through the clay to firmer soil. The hole is then filled with imported gravel. The gravel in the hole is gradually compacted as the vibrator is withdrawn. The gravel used for the stone column has a size range of 6–40 mm. Stone columns usually have diameters of 0.5–0.75 m and are spaced at about 1.5–3 m center to center.

After stone columns are constructed, a fill material should always be placed over the ground surface and compacted before the foundation is constructed. The stone columns tend to reduce the settlement of foundations at allowable loads.

Stone columns work more effectively when they are used to stabilize a large area where the undrained shear strength of the subsoil is in the range of 10–50 kN/m^2 rather than improve the bearing capacity of structural foundations. Subsoils weaker than that may not improve sufficient lateral support for the columns. For large-site improvement, stone columns are most effective to a depth of 6–10 m; however, they have been constructed to a depth of about 30 m. Bachus and Barksdale[31] provided the following general guidelines for the design of stone columns to stabilize large areas.

Figure 4.42a shows the plan view of several stone columns. The area replacement ratio for the stone columns may be expressed as,

$$a_s = \frac{A_s}{A} \tag{4.88}$$

where

A_s = area of the stone column having a diameter of D

A = total area within the unit cell having a diameter D_e

For an *equilateral triangular pattern* of stone columns,

$$a_s = 0.907\left(\frac{D}{s}\right)^2 \tag{4.89}$$

where

s = center-to-center spacing between the columns

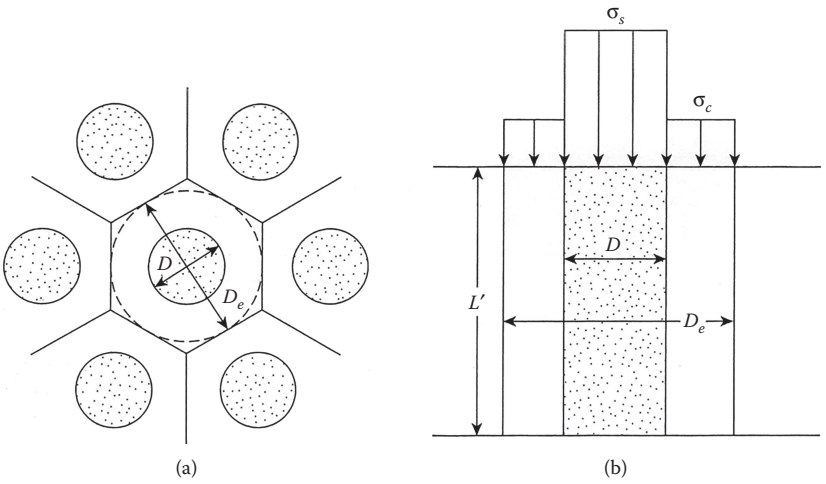


FIGURE 4.42 (a) Stone columns in a triangular pattern; (b) stress concentration due to change in stiffness.

Combining Equations 4.88 and 4.89,

$$\frac{A_s}{A} = \frac{(\pi/4)D^2}{(\pi/4)D_e^2} = a_s = 0.907\left(\frac{D}{s}\right)^2$$

or

$$D_e = 1.05s \tag{4.90}$$

Similarly, it can be shown that, for stone columns in a square pattern,

$$D_e = 1.13s \tag{4.91}$$

When a uniform stress by means of a fill operation is applied to an area with stone columns to induce consolidation, a stress concentration occurs due to the change in the stiffness between the stone columns and the surrounding soil. (See Figure 4.42b.) The stress concentration factor is defined as

$$n = \frac{\sigma_s}{\sigma_c} \tag{4.92}$$

where

σ_c = effective stress in the stone column
σ_s = effective stress in the subgrade soil

The relationships for σ_s and σ_c are

$$\sigma_s = \sigma\left[\frac{n}{1+(n-1)a_s}\right] = \mu_s\sigma \tag{4.93}$$

and

$$\sigma_c = \sigma\left[\frac{1}{1+(n-1)a_s}\right] = \mu_c\sigma \tag{4.94}$$

where

σ = average effective vertical stress
μ_s, μ_c = stress concentration coefficients

The improvement in the soil owing to the stone columns may be expressed as,

$$\frac{S_{e\cdot(t)}}{S_e} = \mu_c \tag{4.95}$$

where

$S_{e(t)}$ = settlement of the treated soil

S_e = total settlement of the untreated soil

4.10.2 Load-Bearing Capacity of Stone Columns

When the length L' of the stone column is less than about $3D$ and a foundation is constructed over it, failure occurs by plunging similar to short piles in soft to medium-stiff clays. For longer columns sufficient to prevent plunging, the load carrying capacity is governed by the ultimate radial confining pressure and the shear strength of the surrounding matrix soil. In those cases, failure at ultimate load occurs by bulging, as shown in Figure 4.43. Mitchell[32] proposed that the ultimate bearing capacity (q_u) of a stone column can be given as

$$q_u = cN_p \tag{4.96}$$

where

$c = c_u$ = undrained shear strength of clay

N_p = bearing capacity factor

Mitchell[32] recommended that

$$N_p \approx 25 \tag{4.97}$$

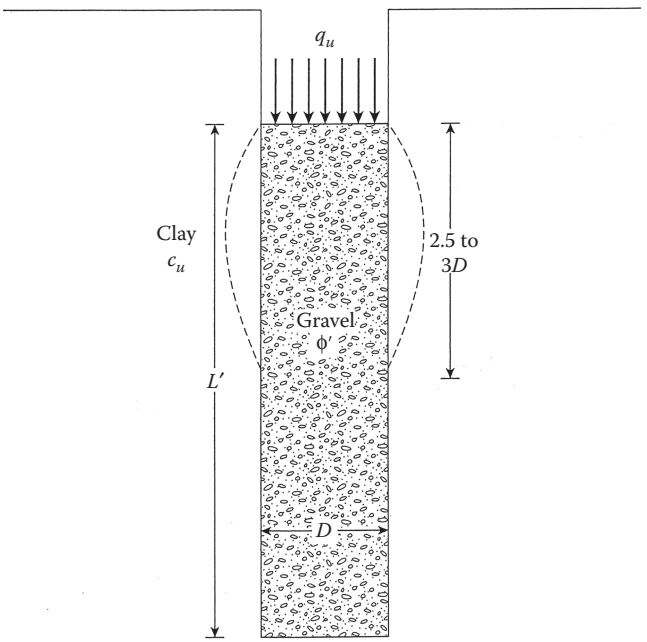


FIGURE 4.43 Bearing capacity of stone column.

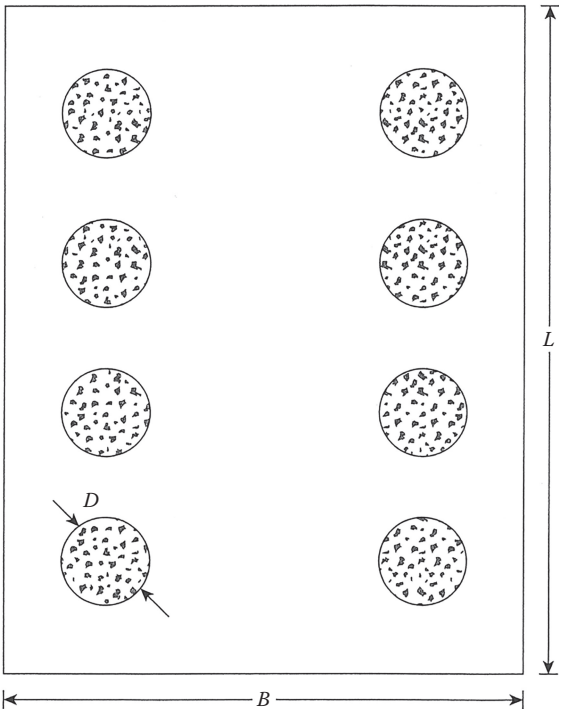


FIGURE 4.44 Shallow foundation over a group of stone columns.

Based on several field studies, Steudlein and Holtz[33] recommended that

$$N_p = \exp(-0.0096c_u + 3.5) \tag{4.98}$$

where c_u is in kN/m^2.

If a foundation is constructed measuring $B \times L$ in plan over a group of stone columns, as shown in Figure 4.44, the ultimate bearing capacity q_u can be expressed as (Steudlein and Holtz[33])

$$q_u = N_p c_u a_s + N_c c_u (1 - a_s)\lambda_{cs}\lambda_{cd} \tag{4.99}$$

where

N_p is expressed by Equation 4.98
$N_c = 5.14$
λ_{cs} and λ_{cd} = shape and depth factors (see Table 2.8)

Then

$$\lambda_{cs} = 1 + 0.2\frac{B}{L} \tag{4.100}$$

and

$$\lambda_{cd} = 1 + 0.2\frac{D_f}{B} \tag{4.101}$$

where

D_f = depth of the foundation.

EXAMPLE 4.12

Consider a foundation 4 × 2 m in plan constructed over a group of stone columns in a square pattern in soft clay. Given:

Stone columns:	$D = 0.4$ m
	Area ratio, $a_s = 0.3$
	$L' = 4.8$ m
Clay:	$c_u = 36$ kN/m^2
Foundation:	$D_f = 0.75$ m

Estimate the ultimate load Q_u for the foundation.

Solution

From Equation 4.99,

$$q_u = N_p c_u a_s + N_c c_u (1 - a_s)\lambda_{cs}\lambda_{cd}$$

From Equation 4.98,

$$N_p = \exp(-0.0096c_u + 3.5) = \exp[(-0.0096)(36) + 3.5] = 23.44$$

$$\lambda_{cs} = 1 + 0.2\left(\frac{B}{L}\right) = 1 + 0.2\left(\frac{2}{4}\right) = 1.1$$

$$\lambda_{cd} = 1 + 0.2\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right) = 1 + 0.2\left(\frac{0.75}{2}\right) = 1.075$$

and

$$q_u = (23.44)(36)(0.3) + (5.14)(36)(1 - 0.3)(1.1)(1.075) = 406.31\,\text{kN/m}^2$$

Thus, the ultimate load is

$$Q_u = q_u BL = (406.31)(2)(4) = \mathbf{3250.48\ kN}$$

4.11 ULTIMATE BEARING CAPACITY OF WEDGE-SHAPED FOUNDATION

Meyerhof[34] has proposed a theory to estimate the ultimate bearing capacity of a wedge-shaped, or conical, foundation by extending his theory given in Section 2.4. Figure 4.45 is somewhat similar to Figure 2.7 and shows the nature of the failure

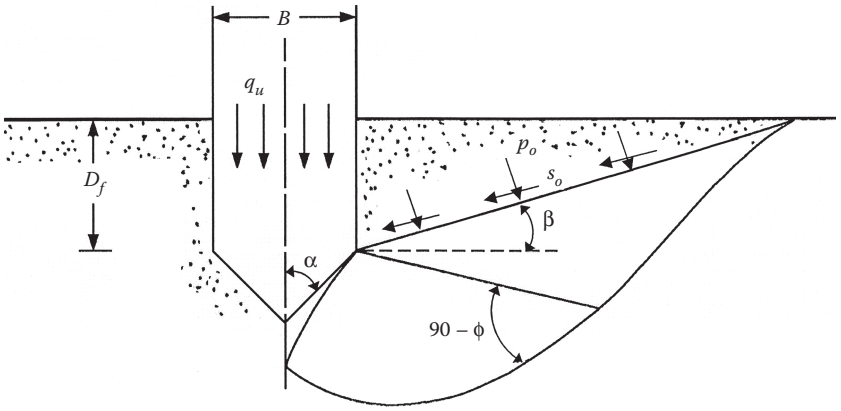


FIGURE 4.45 Failure surface in soil for blunt rough wedge (or cone) at ultimate load.

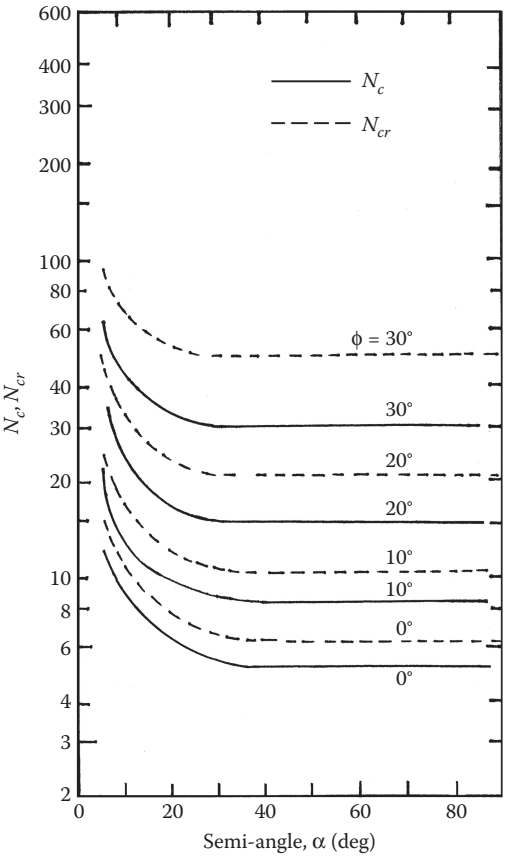


FIGURE 4.46 Variation of N_c and N_{cr} (Equations 4.102 and 4.103).

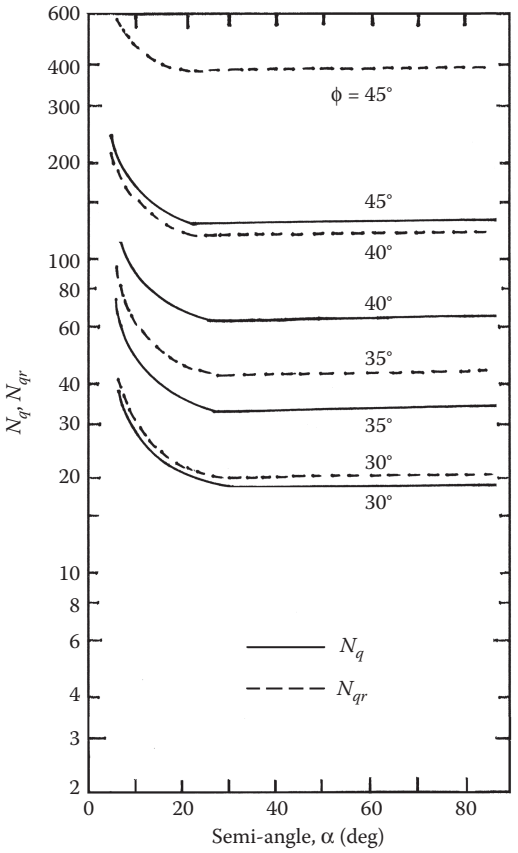


FIGURE 4.47 Variation of N_q and N_{qr} (Equations 4.102 and 4.103).

surface in soil below a blunt rough wedge at ultimate load. In Figure 4.45, D_f is the depth of embedment, and B is the width of the foundation. Note that α is the semi-angle of the wedge.

Meyerhof[34] expressed the ultimate bearing capacity, q_u, for a wedge-shaped foundation and a foundation with conical base as follows (for $D_f/B \leq 1$)

$$q_u = cN_c + \gamma D_f N_q + \tfrac{1}{2}\gamma B N_\gamma \quad \text{(for wedge-shaped foundation)} \tag{4.102}$$

and

$$q_u = cN_{cr} + \gamma D_f N_{qr} + \tfrac{1}{2}\gamma B N_{\gamma r} \quad \text{(for conical base foundation)} \tag{4.103}$$

where N_c, N_{cr}, N_q, N_{qr}, N_γ, and $N_{\gamma r}$ are bearing capacity factors

Figures 4.46 through 4.48 provide the variation of the bearing capacity factors with soil friction angle (ϕ) and wedge semi-angle (α).

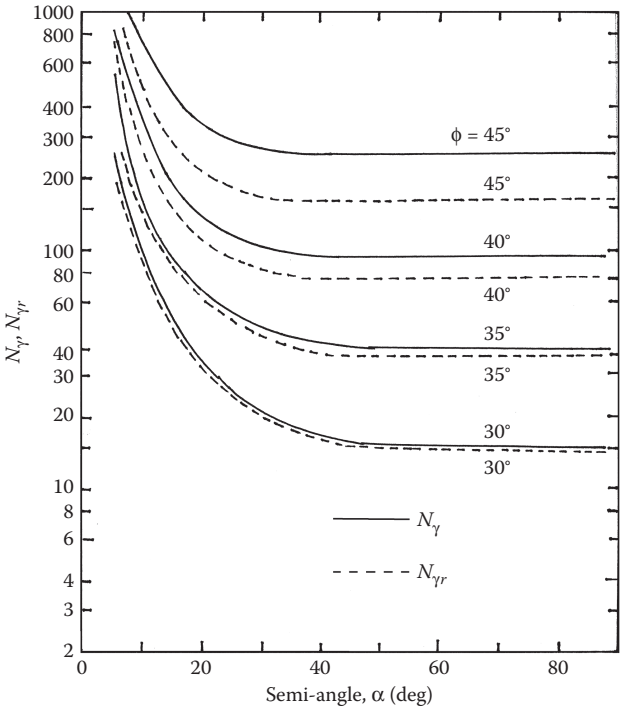


FIGURE 4.48 Variation of N_γ and $N_{\gamma r}$ (Equations 4.102 and 4.103).

REFERENCES

1. Prandtl, L. 1921. Uber die eindringungsfestigkeit plastisher baustoffe und die festigkeit von schneiden. *Z. Ang. Math. Mech.*, 1(1): 15.
2. Reissner, H. 1924. Zum erddruckproblem. In *Proc. First Int. Conf. Appl. Mech.*, Delft, The Netherlands, p. 295.
3. Lundgren, H. and K. Mortensen. 1953. Determination by the theory of plasticity of the bearing capacity of continuous footings on sand. In *Proc. Third Int. Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng.*, Zurich, Switzerland, Vol. 1, p. 409.
4. Mandel, J. and J. Salencon. 1972. Force portante d'un sol sur une assise rigide (étude theorizue). *Geotechnique*, 22(1): 79.
5. Meyerhof, G. G. and T. K. Chaplin. 1953. The compression and bearing capacity of cohesive soils. *Br. J. Appl. Phys.*, 4: 20.
6. Meyerhof, G. G. 1974. Ultimate bearing capacity of footings on sand layer overlying clay. *Canadian Geotech. J.*, 11(2): 224.
7. Milovic, D. M. and J. P. Tournier. 1971. Comportement de foundations reposant sur une coche compressible d´épaisseur limitée. In *Proc. Conf. Comportement des Sols Avant la Rupture*, Paris, France, p. 303.
8. Pfeifle, T. W. and B. M. Das. 1979. Bearing capacity of surface footings on sand layer resting on rigid rough base. *Soils Found.*, 19(1): 1.
9. Cerato, A. B. and A. J. Lutenegger. 2006. Bearing capacity of square and circular footings on a finite layer of granular soil underlain by a rigid base. *J. Geotech. Geoenv. Eng.*, 132(11): 1496.

10. Mandel, J. and J. Salencon. 1969. Force portante d'un sol sur une assise rigide. In *Proc. Seventh Int. Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng.*, Mexico City, Vol. 2, p. 157.
11. Buisman, A. S. K. 1940. *Grondmechanica*. Delft, Waltman.
12. Vesic, A. S. 1975. Bearing capacity of shallow foundations. In *Foundation Engineering Handbook*, ed. H. F. Winterkorn and H. Y. Fang. New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold Co., 121pp.
13. DeBeer, E. E. 1975. Analysis of shallow foundations. In *Geotechnical Modeling and Applications*, ed. S. M. Sayed. Houston, TX: Gulf Publishing Co. 212pp.
14. Casagrande, A. and N. Carrillo. 1954. Shear failure in anisotropic materials. In *Contribution to Soil Mechanics 1941–1953*, Boston Society of Civil Engineers, 122pp.
15. Reddy, A. S. and R. J. Srinivasan. 1967. Bearing capacity of footings on layered clays. *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div.*, 93(SM2): 83.
16. Lo, K. Y. 1965. Stability of slopes in anisotropic soil. *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div.*, 91(SM4): 85.
17. Meyerhof, G. G. and A. M. Hanna. 1978. Ultimate bearing capacity of foundations on layered soils under inclined load. *Canadian Geotech. J.*, 15(4): 565.
18. Caquot, A. and J. Kerisel. 1949. *Tables for the Calculation of Passive Pressure, Active Pressure, and Bearing Capacity of Foundations*. Paris: Gauthier-Villars.
19. Meyerhof, G. G. 1963. Some recent research on the bearing capacity of foundations. *Canadian Geotech. J.*, 1(1): 16.
20. Hanna, A. M. and G. G. Meyerhof. 1980. Design charts for ultimate bearing capacity for sands overlying clays. *Canadian Geotech. J.*, 17(2): 300.
21. Hanna, A. M. 1981. Foundations on strong sand overlying weak sand. *J. Geotech. Eng*, 107(GT7): 915.
22. Hanna, A. M. 1982. Bearing capacity of foundations on a weak sand layer overlying a strong deposit. *Canadian Geotech. J.*, 19(3): 392.
23. Madhav, M. R. and P. P. Vitkar. 1978. Strip footing on weak clay stabilized with a granular trench or pile. *Canadian Geotech. J.*, 15(4): 605.
24. Drucker, D. C. and W. Prager. 1952. Soil mechanics and plastic analysis of limit design. *Q. Appl. Math.*, 10: 157.
25. Hamed, J. T., B. M. Das, and W. F. Echelberger. 1986. Bearing capacity of a strip foundation on granular trench in soft clay. *Civil Eng. Pract. Des. Eng.*, 5(5): 359.
26. Baus, R. L. and M. C. Wang. 1983. Bearing capacity of strip footing above void. *J. Geotech. Eng.*, 109(GT1): 1.
27. Meyerhof, G. G. 1957. The ultimate bearing capacity of foundations on slopes. In *Proc., IV Int. Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng.*, London, England, Vol. 1, p. 384.
28. Hansen, J. B. 1970. *A revised and Extended Formula for Bearing Capacity, Bulletin 28*. Copenhagen: Danish Geotechnical Institute.
29. Saran, S., V. K. Sud, and S. C. Handa. 1989. Bearing capacity of footings adjacent to slopes. *J. Geotech. Eng.*, 115(4): 553.
30. Graham, J., M. Andrews, and D. H. Shields. 1988. Stress characteristics for shallow footings in cohesionless slopes. *Canadian Geotech. J.*, 25(2): 238.
31. Bachus, R. C. and R. D. Barksdale. 1989. Design methodology for foundation on stone columns. *Proc., Foundation Engineering: Current Principles and Practices*. 1: 244.
32. Mitchell, J. K. 1970. In-place treatment of foundation soils. *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div.*, 96(1): 73.
33. Steudlein, A. W. and R. D. Holtz. 2013. Bearing capacity of spread footings on aggregate pier reinforced clay. *J. Geotech. Geoenv. Eng.*, 139(1): 49.
34. Meyerhof, G. G. 1961. The ultimate bearing capacity of wedge-shaped foundations. *Proc., V Int. Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng.*, 2: 109.

5 Settlement and Allowable Bearing Capacity

5.1 INTRODUCTION

Various theories relating to the ultimate bearing capacity of shallow foundations were presented in Chapters 2 through 4. In Section 2.12, a number of definitions for the allowable bearing capacity were discussed. In the design of any foundation, one must consider the safety against *bearing capacity failure* as well as against *excessive settlement* of the foundation. In the design of most foundations, there are specifications for allowable levels of settlement. Refer to Figure 5.1, which is a plot of load per unit area q versus settlement S for a foundation. The ultimate bearing capacity is realized at a settlement level of S_u. Let S_{all} be the allowable level of settlement for the foundation and $q_{\text{all}(S)}$ be the corresponding allowable bearing capacity. If FS is the factor of safety against bearing capacity failure, then the allowable bearing capacity is $q_{\text{all}(B)} = q_u/FS$. The settlement corresponding to $q_{\text{all}(B)}$ is S'. For foundations with smaller widths of B, S' may be less than S_{all}; however, $S_{\text{all}} < S'$ for larger values of B. Hence, for smaller foundation widths, the bearing capacity controls; for larger foundation widths, the allowable settlement controls. This chapter describes the procedures for estimating the settlements of foundations under load and thus the allowable bearing capacity.

The settlement of a foundation can have three components: (a) elastic settlement S_e, (b) primary consolidation settlement S_c, and (c) secondary consolidation settlement S_s.

The total settlement S_t can be expressed as

$$S_t = S_e + S_c + S_s$$

For any given foundation, one or more of the components may be zero or negligible.

Elastic settlement is caused by deformation of dry soil, as well as moist and saturated soils, without any change in moisture content. Primary consolidation settlement is a time-dependent process that occurs in clayey soils located below the groundwater table as a result of the volume change in soil because of the expulsion of water that occupies the void spaces. Secondary consolidation settlement follows the primary consolidation process in saturated clayey soils and is a result of the plastic adjustment of soil fabrics. The procedures for estimating the above three types of settlements are discussed in this chapter.

Any type of settlement is a function of the additional stress imposed on the soil by the foundation. Hence, it is desirable to know the relationships for calculating the stress increase in the soil caused by application of load to the foundation. These

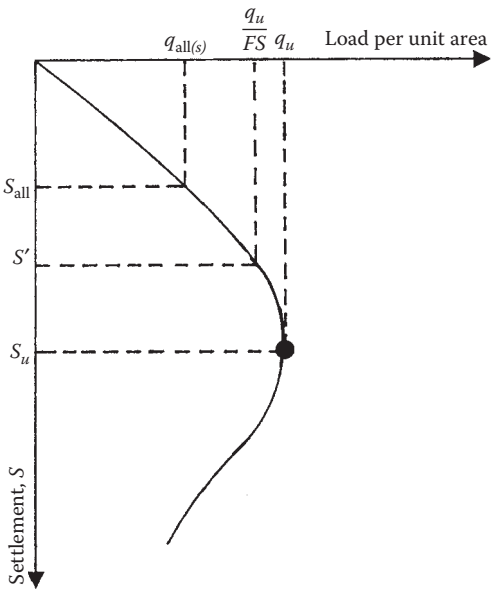


FIGURE 5.1 Load–settlement curve for shallow foundation.

relationships are given in Section 5.2 and are derived assuming that the soil is a semi-infinite, elastic, and homogeneous medium.

5.2 STRESS INCREASE IN SOIL DUE TO APPLIED LOAD: BOUSSINESQ'S SOLUTION

5.2.1 Point Load

Boussinesq[1] developed a mathematic relationship for the stress increase due to a point load Q acting on the surface of a semi-infinite mass. In Figure 5.2, the stress increase at a point A is shown in the Cartesian coordinate system, and the stress increase in the cylindrical coordinate system is shown in Figure 5.3. The components of the stress increase can be given by the following relationships.

Cartesian Coordinate System (Figure 5.2):

$$\sigma_z = \frac{3Qz^3}{2\pi R^5} \tag{5.1}$$

$$\sigma_x = \frac{3Q}{2\pi}\left\{\frac{x^2 z}{R^5} + \frac{1-2\nu}{3}\left[\frac{1}{R(R+z)} - \frac{(2R+z)x^2}{R^3(R+z)^2} - \frac{z}{R^3}\right]\right\} \tag{5.2}$$

$$\sigma_y = \frac{3Q}{2\pi}\left\{\frac{y^2 z}{R^5} + \frac{1-2\nu}{3}\left[\frac{1}{R(R+z)} - \frac{(2R+z)y^2}{R^3(R+z)^2} - \frac{z}{R^3}\right]\right\} \tag{5.3}$$

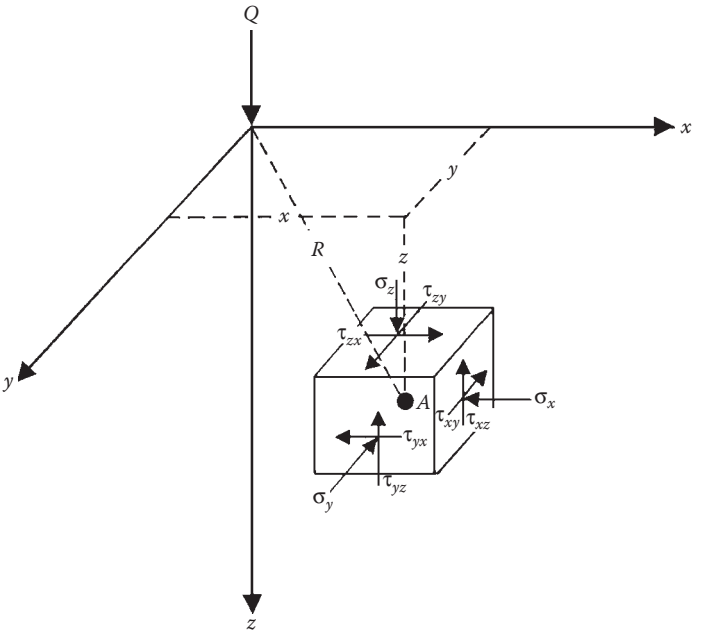


FIGURE 5.2 Boussinesq's problem—stress increase at a point in the Cartesian coordinate system due to a point load on the surface.

$$\tau_{xy} = \frac{3Q}{2\pi}\left[\frac{xyz}{R^5} - \frac{1-2\nu}{3}\frac{(2R+z)xy}{R^3(R+z)^2}\right] \tag{5.4}$$

$$\tau_{xz} = \frac{3Q}{2\pi}\frac{xz^2}{R^5} \tag{5.5}$$

$$\tau_{yz} = \frac{3Q}{2\pi}\frac{yz^2}{R^5} \tag{5.6}$$

where

σ = normal stress
τ = shear stress
$R = \sqrt{z^2 + r^2}$
$r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$
ν = Poisson's ratio

Cylindrical Coordinate System (Figure 5.3):

$$\sigma_z = \frac{3Qz^3}{2\pi R^5} \tag{5.7}$$

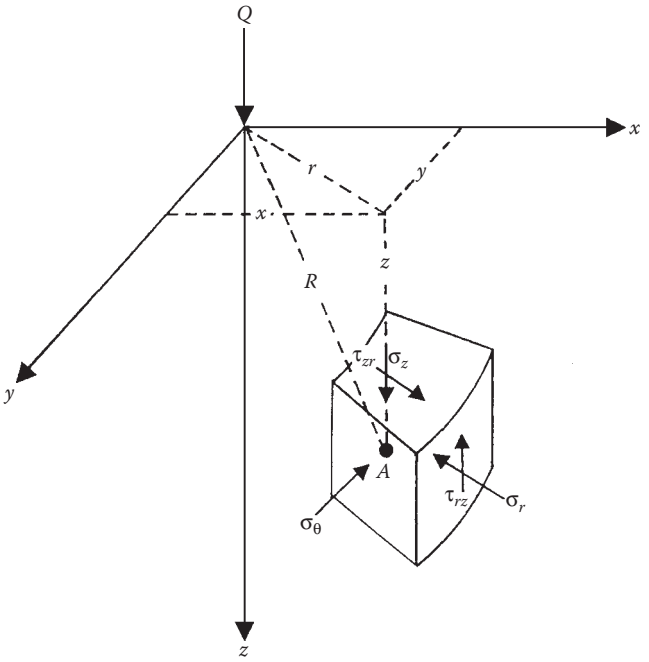


FIGURE 5.3 Boussinesq's problem—stress increase at a point in the cylindrical coordinate system due to a point load on the surface.

$$\sigma_r = \frac{Q}{2\pi}\left[\frac{3zr^2}{R^5} - \frac{1-2\nu}{R(R+z)}\right] \tag{5.8}$$

$$\sigma_\theta = \frac{Q}{2\pi}(1-2\nu)\left[\frac{1}{R(R+z)} - \frac{z}{R^3}\right] \tag{5.9}$$

$$\tau_{rz} = \frac{3Qrz^2}{2\pi R^5} \tag{5.10}$$

5.2.2 Uniformly Loaded Flexible Circular Area

Boussinesq's solution for a point load can be extended to determine the stress increase due to a uniformly loaded *flexible* circular area on the surface of a semi-infinite mass (Figure 5.4). In Figure 5.4, the circular area has a radius R, and the uniformly distributed load per unit area is q. If the components of stress increase at a point A *below the center* are to be determined, then we consider an elemental area $dA = rd\theta dr$. The load on the elemental area is $dQ = qrd\theta dr$. This can be treated as a point load. Now the vertical stress increase $d\sigma_z$ at A due to dQ can be obtained by substituting dQ for Q and $\sqrt{r^2+z^2}$ for R in Equation 5.7. Thus,

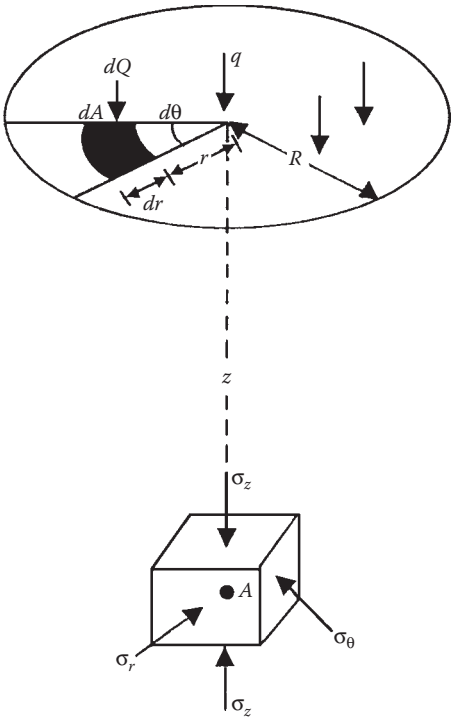


FIGURE 5.4 Stress increase below the center of a uniformly loaded flexible circular area.

$$d\sigma_z = \frac{3z^3 q r\, d\theta\, dr}{2\pi(r^2 + z^2)^{5/2}}$$

The vertical stress increase due to the entire loaded area σ_z is then

$$\sigma_z = \int d\sigma_z = \int_{r=0}^{R}\int_{\theta=0}^{2\pi} \frac{3z^3 q r\, d\theta\, dr}{2\pi(r^2 + z^2)^{5/2}} = q\left[1 - \frac{z^3}{(R^2 + z^2)^{3/2}}\right] \tag{5.11}$$

Similarly, the magnitudes of σ_θ and σ_r *below the center* can be obtained as

$$\sigma_r = \sigma_\theta = \frac{q}{2}\left[1 + 2\nu - \frac{2(1+\nu)z}{(R^2 + z^2)^{1/2}} + \frac{z^3}{(R^2 + z^2)^{3/2}}\right] \tag{5.12}$$

Table 5.1 gives the variation of σ_z/q at any point A below a circularly loaded flexible area for $r/R = 0$ to 1 (Figure 5.5). A more detailed tabulation of the stress increase (i.e., σ_z, σ_θ, σ_r, and τ_{rz}) below a uniformly loaded flexible area is given by Ahlvin and Ulery.[2]

TABLE 5.1
Variation of σ_z/q at a Point *A* (Figure 5.5)

	σ_z/q					
z/R	***r/R* = 0**	***r/R* = 0.2**	***r/R* = 0.4**	***r/R* = 0.6**	***r/R* = 0.8**	***r/R* = 1.0**
0.0	1.000	1.000	1.000	1.000	1.000	0.500
0.2	0.992	0.991	0.987	0.970	0.890	0.468
0.4	0.979	0.943	0.920	0.860	0.713	0.435
0.6	0.864	0.852	0.814	0.732	0.591	0.400
0.8	0.756	0.742	0.699	0.619	0.504	0.366
1.0	0.646	0.633	0.591	0.525	0.434	0.332
1.5	0.424	0.416	0.392	0.355	0.308	0.288
2.0	0.284	0.281	0.268	0.248	0.224	0.196
2.5	0.200	0.197	0.196	0.188	0.167	0.151
3.0	0.146	0.145	0.141	0.135	0.127	0.118
4.0	0.087	0.086	0.085	0.082	0.080	0.075
5.0	0.057	0.057	0.056	0.054	0.053	0.052

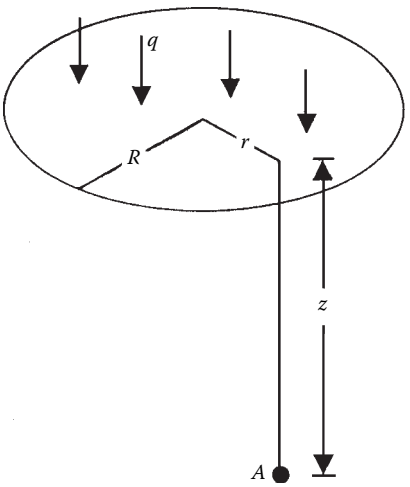


FIGURE 5.5 Stress increase below any point under a uniformly loaded flexible circular area.

5.2.3 Uniformly Loaded Flexible Rectangular Area

Figure 5.6 shows a *flexible* rectangular area of length L and width B subjected to a uniform vertical load of q per unit area. The load on the elemental area dA is equal to $dQ = q\,dx\,dy$. This can be treated as an elemental point load. The vertical stress increase $d\sigma_z$ due to this at A, which is located at a depth z below the corner of the rectangular area, can be obtained by using Equation 5.7, or

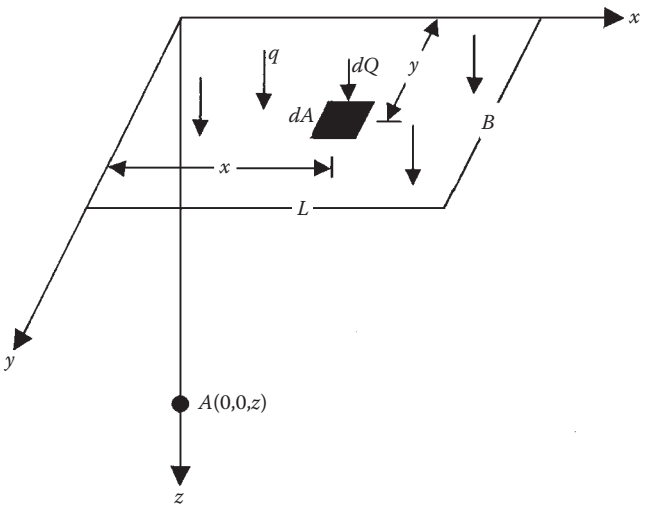


FIGURE 5.6 Stress increase below the corner of a uniformly loaded flexible rectangular area.

$$d\sigma_z = \frac{3qz^3\,dx\,dy}{2\pi(x^2+y^2+z^2)^{5/2}} \tag{5.13}$$

Hence, the vertical stress increase at A due to the entire loaded area is

$$\sigma_z = \int d\sigma_z = \int_{y=0}^{B}\int_{x=0}^{L} \frac{3qz^3\,dx\,dy}{2\pi(r^2+z^2)^{5/2}} = qI \tag{5.14}$$

where

$$I = \frac{1}{4\pi}\left[\frac{2mn(m^2+n^2+1)^{0.5}}{m^2+n^2+m^2n^2+1}\times\frac{m^2+n^2+2}{m^2+n^2+1} + \tan^{-1}\frac{2mn(m^2+n^2+1)^{0.5}}{m^2+n^2-m^2n^2+1}\right] \tag{5.15}$$

$$m = \frac{B}{z}$$

$$n = \frac{L}{z}$$

Table 5.2 shows the variation of I with m and n. The stress below any other point C below the rectangular area (Figure 5.7) can be obtained by dividing it into four

TABLE 5.2
Variation of *I* with *m* and *n*

	m																			
n	**0.1**	**0.2**	**0.3**	**0.4**	**0.5**	**0.6**	**0.7**	**0.8**	**0.9**	**1.0**	**1.2**	**1.4**	**1.6**	**1.8**	**2.0**	**2.5**	**3.0**	**4.0**	**5.0**	**6.0**
0.1	0.0047	0.0092	0.0132	0.0168	0.0198	0.0222	0.0242	0.0258	0.0270	0.0279	0.0293	0.0301	0.0306	0.0309	0.0311	0.0314	0.0315	0.0316	0.0316	0.0316
0.2	0.0092	0.0179	0.0259	0.0328	0.0387	0.0435	0.0474	0.0504	0.0528	0.0547	0.0573	0.0589	0.0599	0.0606	0.0610	0.0616	0.0618	0.0619	0.0620	0.0620
0.3	0.0132	0.0259	0.0374	0.0474	0.0559	0.0629	0.0686	0.0731	0.0766	0.0794	0.0832	0.0856	0.0871	0.0880	0.0887	0.0895	0.0898	0.0901	0.0901	0.0902
0.4	0.0168	0.0328	0.0474	0.0602	0.0711	0.0801	0.0873	0.0931	0.0977	0.1013	0.1063	0.1094	0.1114	0.1126	0.1134	0.1145	0.1150	0.1153	0.1154	0.1154
0.5	0.0198	0.0387	0.0559	0.0711	0.0840	0.0947	0.1034	0.1104	0.1158	0.1202	0.1263	0.1300	0.1324	0.1340	0.1350	0.1363	0.1368	0.1372	0.1374	0.1374
0.6	0.0222	0.0435	0.0629	0.0801	0.0947	0.1069	0.1168	0.1247	0.1311	0.1361	0.1431	0.1475	0.1503	0.1521	0.1533	0.1548	0.1555	0.1560	0.1561	0.1562
0.7	0.0242	0.0474	0.0686	0.0873	0.1034	0.1169	0.1277	0.1365	0.1436	0.1491	0.1570	0.1620	0.1652	0.1672	0.1686	0.1704	0.1711	0.1717	0.1719	0.1719
0.8	0.0258	0.0504	0.0731	0.0931	0.1104	0.1247	0.1365	0.1461	0.1537	0.1598	0.1684	0.1739	0.1774	0.1797	0.1812	0.1832	0.1841	0.1847	0.1849	0.1850
0.9	0.0270	0.0528	0.0766	0.0977	0.1158	0.1311	0.1436	0.1537	0.1619	0.1684	0.1777	0.1836	0.1874	0.1899	0.1915	0.1938	0.1947	0.1954	0.1956	0.1957
1.0	0.0279	0.0547	0.0794	0.1013	0.1202	0.1361	0.1491	0.1598	0.1684	0.1752	0.1851	0.1914	0.1955	0.1981	0.1999	0.2024	0.2034	0.2042	0.2044	0.2045
1.2	0.0293	0.0573	0.0832	0.1063	0.1263	0.1431	0.1570	0.1684	0.1777	0.1851	0.1958	0.2028	0.2073	0.2103	0.2124	0.2151	0.2163	0.2172	0.2175	0.2176
1.4	0.0301	0.0589	0.0856	0.1094	0.1300	0.1475	0.1620	0.1739	0.1836	0.1914	0.2028	0.2102	0.2151	0.2184	0.2206	0.2236	0.2250	0.2260	0.2263	0.2264
1.6	0.0306	0.0599	0.0871	0.1114	0.1324	0.1503	0.1652	0.1774	0.1874	0.1955	0.2073	0.2151	0.2203	0.2237	0.2261	0.2294	0.2309	0.2320	0.2323	0.2325
1.8	0.0309	0.0606	0.0880	0.1126	0.1340	0.1521	0.1672	0.1797	0.1899	0.1981	0.2103	0.2183	0.2237	0.2274	0.2299	0.2333	0.2350	0.2362	0.2366	0.2367
2.0	0.0311	0.0610	0.0887	0.1134	0.1350	0.1533	0.1686	0.1812	0.1915	0.1999	0.2124	0.2206	0.2261	0.2299	0.2325	0.2361	0.2378	0.2391	0.2395	0.2397
2.5	0.0314	0.0616	0.0895	0.1145	0.1363	0.1548	0.1704	0.1832	0.1938	0.2024	0.2151	0.2236	0.2294	0.2333	0.2361	0.2401	0.2420	0.2434	0.2439	0.2441
3.0	0.0315	0.0618	0.0898	0.1150	0.1368	0.1555	0.1711	0.1841	0.1947	0.2034	0.2163	0.2250	0.2309	0.2350	0.2378	0.2420	0.2439	0.2455	0.2461	0.2463
4.0	0.0316	0.0619	0.0901	0.1153	0.1372	0.1560	0.1717	0.1847	0.1954	0.2042	0.2172	0.2260	0.2320	0.2362	0.2391	0.2434	0.2455	0.2472	0.2479	0.2481
5.0	0.0316	0.0620	0.0901	0.1154	0.1374	0.1561	0.1719	0.1849	0.1956	0.2044	0.2175	0.2263	0.2324	0.2366	0.2395	0.2439	0.2460	0.2479	0.2486	0.2489
6.0	0.0316	0.0620	0.0902	0.1154	0.1374	0.1562	0.1719	0.1850	0.1957	0.2045	0.2176	0.2264	0.2325	0.2367	0.2397	0.2441	0.2463	0.2482	0.2489	0.2492

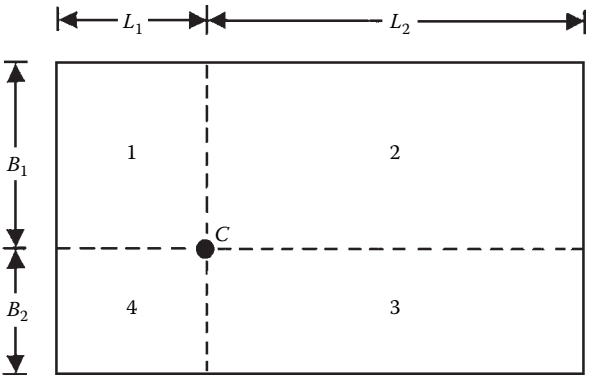


FIGURE 5.7 Stress increase below any point of a uniformly loaded flexible rectangular area.

rectangles as shown. For rectangular area 1, $m_1 = B_1/z$; $n_1 = L_1/z$. Similarly, for rectangles 2, 3, and 4, $m_2 = B_1/z$; $n_2 = L_2/z$, $m_3 = B_2/z$; $n_3 = L_2/z$, and $m_4 = B_2/z$; $n_4 = L_1/z$. Now, using Table 5.2, the magnitudes of I (=I_1, I_2, I_3, I_4) for the four rectangles can be determined. The total stress increase below point C at depth z can thus be determined as

$$\sigma_z = q(I_1 + I_2 + I_3 + I_4) \tag{5.16}$$

In most practical problems, the stress increase below the center of a loaded rectangular area is of primary importance. The vertical stress increase below the *center* of a uniformly loaded *flexible* rectangular area can be calculated as

$$\sigma_{z(c)} = \frac{2q}{\pi}\left[\frac{m_1 n_1}{\sqrt{1+m_1^2+n_1^2}}\frac{1+m_1^2+n_1^2}{(1+n_1^2)(m_1^2+n_1^2)} + \sin^{-1}\frac{m_1}{\sqrt{m_1^2+n_1^2}\sqrt{1+n_1^2}}\right] \tag{5.17}$$

where

$$m_1 = \frac{L}{B} \tag{5.18}$$

$$n_1 = \frac{z}{B/2} \tag{5.19}$$

Table 5.3 gives the variation of $\sigma_{z(c)}/q$ with L/B and z/B based on Equation 5.17.

EXAMPLE 5.1

Figure 5.8 shows the plan of a flexible loaded area located at the ground surface. The uniformly distributed load q on the area is 150 kN/m^2. Determine the stress increase σ_z below points A and C at a depth of 10 m below the ground surface. Note that C is at the center of the area.

TABLE 5.3
Variation of $\sigma_{z(c)}/q$ (Equation 5.17)

	L/B									
z/B	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**	**8**	**9**	**10**
0.1	0.994	0.997	0.997	0.997	0.997	0.997	0.997	0.997	0.997	0.997
0.2	0.960	0.976	0.977	0.977	0.977	0.977	0.977	0.977	0.977	0.977
0.3	0.892	0.932	0.936	0.936	0.937	0.937	0.937	0.937	0.937	0.937
0.4	0.800	0.870	0.878	0.880	0.881	0.881	0.881	0.881	0.881	0.881
0.5	0.701	0.800	0.814	0.817	0.818	0.818	0.818	0.818	0.818	0.818
0.6	0.606	0.727	0.748	0.753	0.754	0.755	0.755	0.755	0.755	0.755
0.7	0.522	0.658	0.685	0.692	0.694	0.695	0.695	0.696	0.696	0.696
0.8	0.449	0.593	0.627	0.636	0.639	0.640	0.641	0.641	0.641	0.642
0.9	0.388	0.534	0.573	0.585	0.590	0.591	0.592	0.592	0.593	0.593
1.0	0.336	0.481	0.525	0.540	0.545	0.547	0.548	0.549	0.549	0.549
1.5	0.179	0.293	0.348	0.373	0.384	0.389	0.392	0.393	0.394	0.395
2.0	0.108	0.190	0.241	0.269	0.285	0.293	0.298	0.301	0.302	0.303
2.5	0.072	0.131	0.174	0.202	0.219	0.229	0.236	0.240	0.242	0.244
3.0	0.051	0.095	0.130	0.155	0.172	0.184	0.192	0.197	0.200	0.202
3.5	0.038	0.072	0.100	0.122	0.139	0.150	0.158	0.164	0.168	0.171
4.0	0.029	0.056	0.079	0.098	0.113	0.125	0.133	0.139	0.144	0.147
4.5	0.023	0.045	0.064	0.081	0.094	0.105	0.113	0.119	0.124	0.128
5.0	0.019	0.037	0.053	0.067	0.079	0.089	0.097	0.103	0.108	0.112

Solution

Stress increase below point *A*.

The following table can now be prepared:

Area No.	*B*(m)	*L*(m)	*z*(m)	$m = B/z$	$n = L/z$	*I* (Table 5.2)
1	2	2	10	0.2	0.2	0.0179
2	2	4	10	0.2	0.4	0.0328
3	2	4	10	0.2	0.4	0.0328
4	2	2	10	0.2	0.2	0.0179
						$\sum I = 1014$

From Equation 5.14,

$$\sigma_z = qI = (150)(0.1014) = \mathbf{15.21\,kN/m^2}$$

Stress increase below point *C*

$$\frac{L}{B} = \frac{6}{4} = 1.5; \frac{z}{B} = \frac{10}{4} = 2.5$$

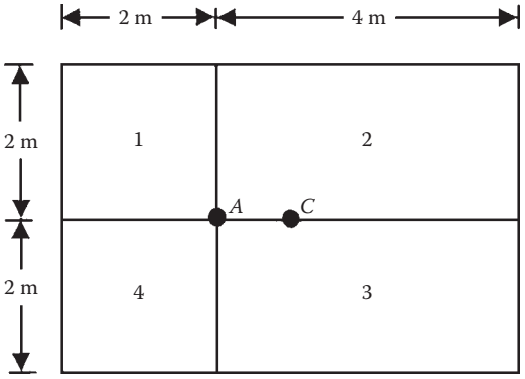


FIGURE 5.8 Uniformly loaded flexible rectangular area.

From Table 5.3,

$$\frac{\sigma_z}{q} \approx 0.104$$

$$\sigma_z = (0.104)(150) = \mathbf{15.6\ kN/m^2}$$

5.3 STRESS INCREASE DUE TO APPLIED LOAD: WESTERGAARD'S SOLUTION

5.3.1 Point Load

Westergaard[3] proposed a solution for determining the vertical stress caused by a point load Q in an elastic solid medium in which layers alternate with thin rigid reinforcements. This type of assumption may be an idealization of a clay layer with thin seams of sand. For such an assumption, the vertical stress increase at a point A (Figure 5.2) can be given by

$$\sigma_z = \frac{Q\eta}{2\pi z^2}\left[\frac{1}{\eta^2 + (r/z)^2}\right]^{-3/2} \tag{5.20}$$

where

$$\eta = \sqrt{\frac{1-2\nu}{2-2\nu}} \tag{5.21}$$

η = Poisson's ratio of the solid between the rigid reinforcements

$$r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$$

TABLE 5.4
Variation of I' with r/z and ν (Equation 5.23)

	I'		
r/z	$\nu = 0$	$\nu = 0.2$	$\nu = 0.4$
0	0.3183	0.4244	0.9550
0.25	0.2668	0.3368	0.5923
0.50	0.1733	0.1973	0.2416
0.75	0.1028	0.1074	0.1044
1.00	0.0613	0.0605	0.0516
1.25	0.0380	0.0361	0.0286
1.50	0.0247	0.0229	0.0173
1.75	0.0167	0.0153	0.0112
2.00	0.0118	0.0107	0.0076
2.25	0.0086	0.0077	0.0054
2.50	0.0064	0.0057	0.0040
2.75	0.0049	0.0044	0.0030
3.00	0.0038	0.0034	0.0023
3.25	0.0031	0.0027	0.0019
3.50	0.0025	0.0022	0.0015
3.75	0.0021	0.0018	0.0012
4.00	0.0017	0.0015	0.0010
4.25	0.0014	0.0012	0.0008
4.50	0.0012	0.0010	0.0007
4.75	0.0010	0.0009	0.0006
5.00	0.0009	0.0008	0.0005

Equation 5.20 can be rewritten as

$$\sigma_z = \frac{Q}{z^2} I' \tag{5.22}$$

where

$$I' = \frac{1}{2\pi\eta^2}\left[\left(\frac{r}{\eta z}\right)^2 + 1\right]^{-3/2} \tag{5.23}$$

The variations of I' with r/z and ν are given in Table 5.4.

5.3.2 Uniformly Loaded Flexible Circular Area

Refer to Figure 5.4, which shows a uniformly loaded flexible circular area of radius R. If the circular area is located on a Westergaard-type material, the increase in

TABLE 5.5
Variation of σ_z/q with R/z and $\nu = 0$ (Equation 5.24)

R/z	σ_z/q
0	0
0.25	0.0572
0.50	0.1835
0.75	0.3140
1.00	0.4227
1.25	0.5076
1.50	0.5736
1.75	0.6254
2.00	0.6667
2.25	0.7002
2.50	0.7278
2.75	0.7510
3.00	0.7706
4.00	0.8259
5.00	0.8600

vertical stress σ_z at a point located at a depth z immediately below the center of the area can be given as

$$\sigma_z = q\left\{1 - \frac{\eta}{[\eta^2 + (R/z)^2]^{1/2}}\right\} \tag{5.24}$$

The variations of σ_z/q with R/z and $\nu = 0$ are given in Table 5.5.

5.3.3 Uniformly Loaded Flexible Rectangular Area

Refer to Figure 5.6. If the flexible rectangular area is located on a Westergaard-type material, the stress increase at a point A can be given as

$$\sigma_z = \frac{q}{2\pi}\left[\cot^{-1}\sqrt{\eta^2\left(\frac{1}{m^2} + \frac{1}{n^2}\right) + \eta^4\left(\frac{1}{m^2 n^2}\right)}\right] \tag{5.25}$$

where

$$m = \frac{B}{z}$$

$$n = \frac{L}{z}$$

TABLE 5.6
Variation of σ_z/q (Equation 5.26) with m and n ($\nu = 0$)

	n								
m	**0.1**	**0.2**	**0.4**	**0.5**	**0.6**	**1.0**	**2.0**	**5.0**	**10.0**
0.1	0.0031	0.0061	0.0110	0.0129	0.0144	0.0182	0.0211	0.0211	0.0223
0.2	0.0061	0.0118	0.0214	0.0251	0.0282	0.0357	0.0413	0.0434	0.0438
0.4	0.0110	0.0214	0.0390	0.0459	0.0516	0.0658	0.1768	0.0811	0.0847
0.5	0.0129	0.0251	0.0459	0.0541	0.0610	0.0781	0.0916	0.0969	0.0977
0.6	0.0144	0.0282	0.0516	0.0610	0.0687	0.0886	0.1044	0.1107	0.1117
1.0	0.0183	0.0357	0.0658	0.0781	0.0886	0.1161	0.1398	0.1491	0.1515
2.0	0.0211	0.0413	0.0768	0.0916	0.1044	0.1398	0.1743	0.1916	0.1948
5.0	0.0221	0.0435	0.0811	0.0969	0.1107	0.1499	0.1916	0.2184	0.2250
10.0	0.0223	0.0438	0.0817	0.0977	0.1117	0.1515	0.1948	0.2250	0.2341

$$\frac{\sigma_z}{q} = \frac{1}{2\pi}\left[\cot^{-1}\sqrt{\eta^2\left(\frac{1}{m^2}+\frac{1}{n^2}\right)+\eta^4\left(\frac{1}{m^2n^2}\right)}\right] \tag{5.26}$$

Table 5.6 gives the variation of σ_z/q with m and n for $\nu = 0$.

EXAMPLE 5.2

Consider a flexible circular loaded area with $R = 4$ m. Let $q = 300$ kN/m^2. Calculate and compare the variation of σ_z below the center of the circular area using Boussinesq's theory and Westergaard's theory (with $\upsilon = 0$) for $z = 0$ to 12 m.

Solution

Boussinesq's solution (see Equation 5.11 and Table 5.1) with $R = 4$ m, $q = 300$ kN/m^2

z (m)	z/R	σ_z/q	$\Delta\sigma_z$ (kN/m^2)
0	0	1	**300**
0.4	0.1	0.9990	**299.7**
2.0	0.5	0.9106	**273.18**
4.0	1.0	0.6465	**193.95**
6.0	1.5	0.4240	**127.2**
8.0	2.0	0.2845	**85.35**
10.0	2.5	0.1996	**59.88**
12.0	3.0	0.146	**43.8**

Westergaard's solution (see Table 5.5 and Equation 5.24)

z (m)	z/R	R/z	σ_z/q	σ_z (kN/m^2)
0	0	∞	1	**300**
0.4	0.1	10	0.9295	**278.85**
2.0	0.5	2	0.6667	**200.01**
4.0	1.0	1	0.4227	**126.81**
6.0	1.5	0.667	0.275	**82.5**
8.0	2.0	0.5	0.1835	**55.05**
10.0	2.5	0.4	0.130	**39.0**
12.0	3.0	0.333	0.0938	**28.14**

EXAMPLE 5.3

Refer to Example 5.1. Estimate the stress increase below point *A* using Westergaard's theory. Use $\upsilon = 0$.

SOLUTION

The following table can be prepared.

Area No.	B (m)	L (m)	z (m)	$m = B/z$	$n = L/z$	I (Table 5.6)
1	2	2	10	0.2	0.2	0.0118
2	2	4	10	0.2	0.4	0.0214
3	2	4	10	0.2	0.4	0.0214
4	2	2	10	0.2	0.2	0.0118
						Σ0.0664

Hence,

$$\sigma_z = (q)(\sum I) = (0.0664)(150) = \mathbf{9.96\ kN/m^2}$$

5.4 ELASTIC SETTLEMENT

5.4.1 FLEXIBLE AND RIGID FOUNDATIONS

Before discussing the relationships for elastic settlement of shallow foundations, it is important to understand the fundamental concepts and the differences between a flexible foundation and a rigid foundation. When a flexible foundation on an *elastic medium* is subjected to a uniformly distributed load, the contact pressure will be uniform, as shown in Figure 5.9a. Figure 5.9a also shows the settlement profile of the foundation. If a similar foundation is placed on granular soil, it will undergo larger elastic settlement at the edges rather than at the center (Figure 5.9b); however, the contact pressure will be uniform. The larger settlement at the edges is due to the lack of confinement in the soil.

If a fully rigid foundation is placed on the surface of an elastic medium, the settlement will remain the same at all points; however, the contact distribution will be as

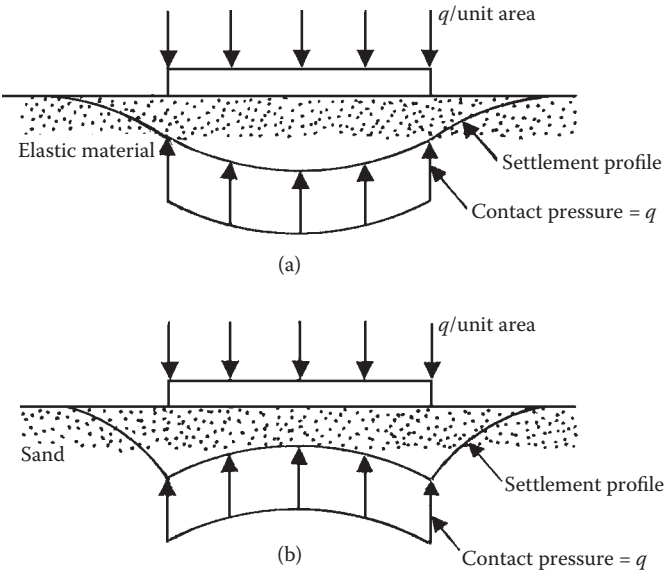


FIGURE 5.9 Contact pressures and settlements for a flexible foundation: (a) elastic material and (b) granular soil.

shown in Figure 5.10a. If this rigid foundation is placed on granular soil, the contact pressure distribution will be as shown in Figure 5.10b, although the settlement at all points below the foundation will be the same.

Theoretically, for an *infinitely rigid* foundation supported by a *perfectly elastic material*, the contact pressure can be expressed as (Figure 5.11)

$$\sigma_{z=0} = \frac{2q}{\pi\sqrt{1-(2x/B)^2}} \quad \text{(continuous foundation)} \tag{5.27}$$

$$\sigma_{z=0} = \frac{q}{2\sqrt{1-(2x/B)^2}} \quad \text{(circular foundation)} \tag{5.28}$$

where

q = applied load per unit area of the foundation
B = foundation width (or diameter)

Borowicka[4] developed solutions for the distribution of contact pressure beneath a continuous foundation supported by a perfectly elastic material. According to his theory,

$$\sigma_{z=0} = f(K) \tag{5.29}$$

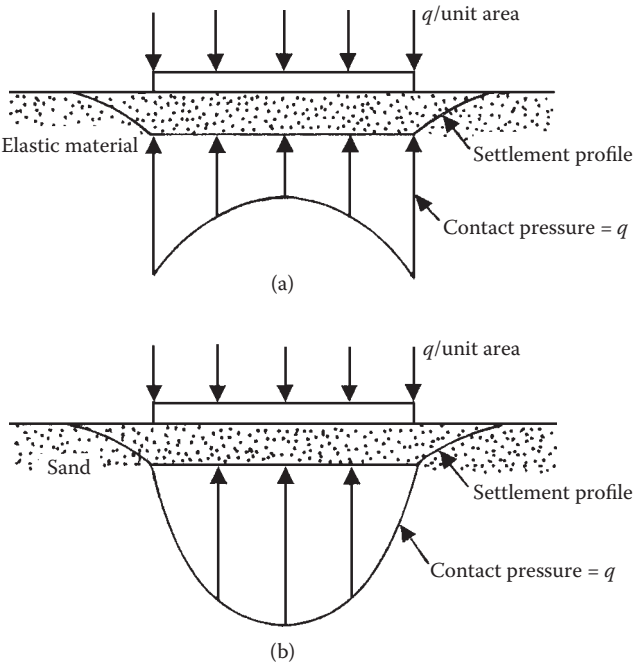


FIGURE 5.10 Contact pressures and settlements for a rigid foundation: (a) elastic material and (b) granular soil.

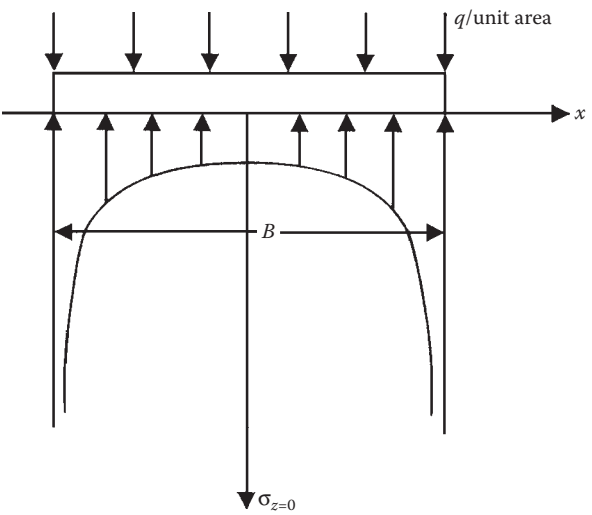


FIGURE 5.11 Contact pressure distributions under an infinitely rigid foundation supported by a perfectly elastic material.

where

$$K = \text{relative stiffness factor} = \frac{1}{6}\left(\frac{1-\nu_s^2}{1-\nu_f^2}\right)\left(\frac{E_f}{E_s}\right)\left(\frac{t}{B/2}\right)^3 \tag{5.30}$$

ν_s = Poisson's ratio of the elastic material
ν_f = Poisson's ratio of the foundation material
t = thickness of the foundation
E_s, E_f = modulus of elasticity of the elastic material and foundation material, respectively

Although soil is not perfectly elastic and homogeneous, the theory of elasticity may be used to estimate the settlements of shallow foundations at allowable loads. Judicious uses of these results have done well in the design, construction, and maintenance of structures.

5.4.2 Elastic Parameters

Parameters such as the modulus of elasticity E_s and Poisson's ratio ν for a given soil must be known in order to calculate the elastic settlement of a foundation. In most cases, if laboratory test results are not available, they are estimated from empirical correlations. Table 5.7 provides some suggested values for Poisson's ratio.

Trautmann and Kulhawy[5] used the following relationship for Poisson's ratio (drained state):

$$\nu = 0.1 + 0.3\phi_{rel} \tag{5.31}$$

$$\phi_{rel} = \text{relative friction angle} = \frac{\phi_{tc} - 25^\circ}{45^\circ - 25^\circ} \quad (0 \le \phi_{rel} \le 1) \tag{5.32}$$

where

φ_{tc} = friction angle from drained triaxial compression test

TABLE 5.7
Suggested Values for Poisson's Ratio

Soil Type	Poisson's Ratio ν
Coarse sand	0.15–0.20
Medium loose sand	0.20–0.25
Fine sand	0.25–0.30
Sandy silt and silt	0.30–0.35
Saturated clay (undrained)	0.50
Saturated clay—lightly overconsolidated (drained)	0.2–0.4

TABLE 5.8
General Range of Modulus of Elasticity of Sand

Type	E_s (kN/m²)
Coarse and Medium Coarse Sand	
Loose	25,000–35,000
Medium dense	30,000–40,000
Dense	40,000–45,000
Fine Sand	
Loose	20,000–25,000
Medium dense	25,000–35,000
Dense	35,000–40,000
Sandy Silt	
Loose	8,000–12,000
Medium dense	10,000–12,000
Dense	12,000–15,000

A general range of the modulus of elasticity of sand E_s is given in Table 5.8.

A number of correlations for the modulus of elasticity of sand with the field standard penetration resistance N_{60} and cone penetration resistance q_c have been made in the past. Schmertmann[6] proposed that

$$E_s\ (\text{kN/m}^2) = 766N_{60} \tag{5.33}$$

Schmertmann et al.[7] made the following recommendations for estimating the E_s of sand from cone penetration resistance, or

$$E_s = 2.5q_c \quad \text{(for square and circular foundations)} \tag{5.34}$$

$$E_s = 3.5q_c \quad \text{(for strip foundations } L/B \geq 10) \tag{5.35}$$

Terzaghi, Peck, and Mesri[8] gave the following recommendations for the estimation of E_s for settlement calculation of square ($B \times B$) and rectangular foundations ($L \times B$; L = length of the foundation) on sand as

$$E_{s(L/B=1)} = 3.5q_c \tag{5.36}$$

and

$$E_{s(L/B)} = 1 + 0.4\log\left(\frac{L}{B}\right) \leq 1.4 \tag{5.37}$$

Chen and Kulhawy[9] suggested that

$$E_s = m\,p_a \tag{5.38}$$

where

$$p_a = \text{atmosphereic pressure } (\approx 100 \text{ kN/m}^2)$$
$$m = \begin{cases} 100 - 200 \text{ (loose sand)} \\ 200 - 500 \text{ (medium sand)} \\ 500 - 1000 \text{ (dense sand)} \end{cases} \tag{5.39}$$

In many cases, the modulus of elasticity of *saturated clay* soils (undrained) has been correlated with the undrained shear strength c_u. D'Appolonia et al.[10] compiled several field test results and concluded that

$$\frac{E_s}{c_u} = 1000 \text{ to } 1500 \qquad \begin{matrix} \text{(for lean inorganic clays from} \\ \text{moderate to high plasticity)} \end{matrix} \tag{5.40}$$

Duncan and Buchignani[11] correlated E_s/c_u with the overconsolidation ratio OCR and plasticity index *PI* of several clay soils. This broadly generalized correlation is shown in Figure 5.12.

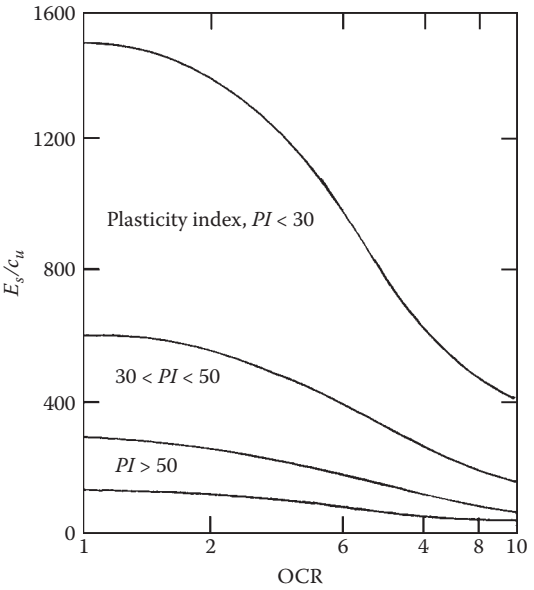


FIGURE 5.12 Correlation of Duncan and Buchignani for the modulus of elasticity of clay in an undrained state.

5.4.3 Settlement of Foundations on Saturated Clays

Janbu et al.[12] proposed a generalized equation for estimating the average elastic settlement of a uniformly loaded flexible foundation located on saturated clay ($\nu = 0.5$). This relationship incorporates (a) the effect of embedment D_f and (b) the possible existence of a rigid layer at a shallow depth under the foundation as shown in Figure 5.13, or

$$S_e = \mu_1 \mu_2 \frac{qB}{E_s} \tag{5.41}$$

where

$\mu_1 = f(D_f/B)$
$\mu_2 = (H/B, L/B)$
L = foundation length
B = foundation width

Christian and Carrier[13] made a critical evaluation of the factors μ_1 and μ_2, and the results were presented in graphical form. The interpolated values of μ_1 and μ_2 from these graphs are given in Tables 5.9 and 5.10.

EXAMPLE 5.4

Consider a shallow foundation 1.5 m × 0.75 m in plan in a saturated clay layer. A rigid rock layer is located 6 m below the bottom of the foundation. Given:

- $D_f = 0.75$ m; $q = 150$ kN/m^2
- $c_u = 200$ kN/m^2; OCR = 2; plasticity index, $PI = 30$

Estimate the elastic settlement of the foundation.

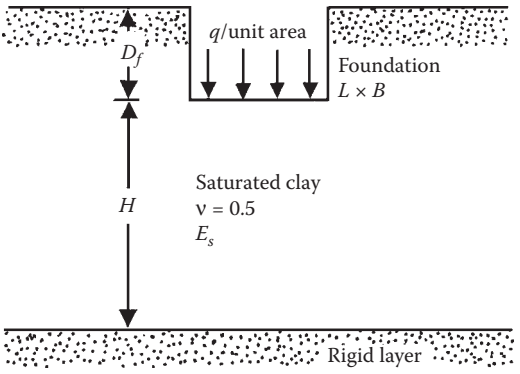


FIGURE 5.13 Settlement of foundation on saturated clay.

TABLE 5.9
Variation of μ_1 with D_f/B (Equation 5.41)

D_f/B	μ_1
0	1.0
2	0.9
4	0.88
6	0.875
8	0.87
10	0.865
12	0.863
14	0.860
16	0.856
18	0.854
20	0.850

TABLE 5.10
Variation of μ_2 with H/B and L/B (Equation 5.41)

		L/B				
H/B	Circle	1	2	5	10	∞
1	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.36
2	0.47	0.53	0.63	0.64	0.64	0.64
4	0.58	0.63	0.82	0.94	0.94	0.94
6	0.61	0.67	0.88	1.08	1.14	1.16
8	0.62	0.68	0.90	1.13	1.22	1.26
10	0.63	0.70	0.92	1.18	1.30	1.42
20	0.64	0.71	0.93	1.26	1.47	1.74
30	0.66	0.73	0.95	1.29	1.54	1.84

Solution

From Equation 5.41,

$$S_e = \mu_1 \mu_2 \frac{qB}{E_s}$$

Given

$$\frac{L}{B} = \frac{1.5}{0.75} = 2$$
$$\frac{D_f}{B} = \frac{0.75}{0.75} = 1$$
$$\frac{H}{B} = \frac{6}{0.75} = 8$$

Let $E_s = \beta c_u$
For OCR = 2 and $PI = 30$, the value of $\beta \approx 400$ (Figure 5.12). Hence,

$$E_s = (400)(200) = 80{,}000 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

From Tables 5.8 and 5.9, $\mu_1 \approx 0.95$, $\mu_2 \approx 0.9$

$$S_e = \mu_1\mu_2 \frac{qB}{E_s} = (0.95)(0.9)\frac{(150)(0.75)}{80{,}000} = 0.0012 \text{ m} = \mathbf{1.2 \text{ mm}}$$

5.4.4 Foundations on Sand: Correlation with Standard Penetration Resistance

There are several empirical relationships to estimate the elastic settlements of foundations on granular soil that are based on the correlations with the width of the foundation and the standard penetration resistance obtained from the field, N_{60} (i.e., penetration resistance with an average energy ratio of 60%). Some of these correlations are outlined in this section.

5.4.4.1 Terzaghi and Peck's Correlation

Terzaghi and Peck[14] proposed the following empirical relationship between the settlement S_e of a prototype foundation measuring $B \times B$ in plan and the settlement of a test plate $S_{e(1)}$ measuring $B_1 \times B_1$ loaded to the same intensity:

$$\frac{S_e}{S_{e(1)}} = \frac{4}{[1 + (B_1/B)^2]} \tag{5.42}$$

Although a full-sized footing can be used for a load test, the normal practice is to employ a plate of the order of $B_1 = 0.3$–1 m. Terzaghi and Peck[14] also proposed a correlation for the allowable bearing capacity, standard penetration number N_{60}, and the width of the foundation B corresponding to a 25-mm settlement based on the observations given by Equation 5.42. The curves that give the preceding correlation can be approximated by the relation

$$S_e \text{ (mm)} = \frac{3q}{N_{60}}\left(\frac{B}{B + 0.3}\right)^2 \tag{5.43}$$

where
q = bearing pressure in kN/m^2
B = width of foundation in m

If corrections for groundwater table location and depth of embedment are included, then Equation 5.43 takes the form

$$S_e = C_W C_D \frac{3q}{N_{60}} \left(\frac{B}{B+0.3} \right)^2 \tag{5.44}$$

where

C_W = groundwater table correction
C_D = correction for depth of embedment = $1 - (D_f/4B)$
D_f = depth of embedment

The magnitude of C_W is equal to 1.0 if the depth of the water table is greater than or equal to $2B$ below the foundation, and it is equal to 2.0 if the depth of the water table is less than or equal to B below the foundation. The N_{60} values used in Equations 5.43 and 5.44 should be the average value of N_{60} up to a depth of about $3B$ to $4B$ measured from the bottom of the foundation.

5.4.4.2 Meyerhof's Correlation

In 1956, Meyerhof[15] proposed the following relationships for S_e:

$$S_e = \frac{2q}{N_{60}} \quad (\text{for } B \le 1.22 \text{ m}) \tag{5.45}$$

and

$$S_e = \frac{3q}{N_{60}} \left(\frac{B}{B+0.3} \right)^2 \quad (\text{for } B > 1.22 \text{ m}) \tag{5.46}$$

where S_e is in mm, B is in m, and q is in kN/m^2.

Note that Equations 5.43 and 5.46 are similar. In 1965, Meyerhof[16] compared the predicted and observed settlements of eight structures and proposed revisions to Equations 5.45 and 5.46. According to these revisions,

$$S_e \approx \frac{1.25q}{N_{60}} \quad (\text{for } B \le 1.22 \text{ m}) \tag{5.47}$$

and

$$S_e = \frac{2q}{N_{60}} \left(\frac{B}{B+0.3} \right)^2 \quad (\text{for } B > 1.22 \text{ m}) \tag{5.48}$$

Comparing Equations 5.45 and 5.46 with Equations 5.47 and 5.48, it can be seen that, for similar settlement levels, the allowable pressure q is 50% higher for Equations 5.47 and 5.48. If corrections for the location of the groundwater table and depth of embedment are incorporated into Equations 5.47 and 5.48, we obtain

$$S_e\,(\text{mm}) = C_W C_D \frac{1.25q}{N_{60}} \quad (\text{for } B \le 1.22 \text{ m}) \tag{5.49}$$

and

$$S_e\,(\text{mm}) = C_W C_D \frac{2q}{N_{60}}\left(\frac{B}{B+0.3}\right)^2 \quad (\text{for } B > 1.22 \text{ m}) \tag{5.50}$$

$$C_W = 1.0 \tag{5.51}$$

and

$$C_D = 1.0 - \frac{D_f}{4B} \tag{5.52}$$

5.4.4.3 Peck and Bazaraa's Method

The original work of Terzaghi and Peck[14] as given in Equation 5.43 was subsequently compared to several field observations. It was found that the relationship provided by Equation 5.43 is overly conservative (i.e., observed field settlements were substantially lower than those predicted by the equation). Recognizing this fact, Peck and Bazaraa[17] suggested the following revision to Equation 5.44:

$$S_e = C_W C_D \frac{2q}{(N_1)_{60}}\left(\frac{B}{B+0.3}\right)^2 \tag{5.53}$$

where

S_e is in mm, q is in kN/m^2, and B is in m
$(N_1)_{60}$ = corrected standard penetration number

$$C_W = \frac{\sigma_o \text{ at } 0.5B \text{ below the bottom of the foundation}}{\sigma'_o \text{ at } 0.5B \text{ below the bottom of the foundation}} \tag{5.54}$$

σ_o = total overburden pressure
σ'_o = effective overburden pressure

$$C_D = 1.0 - 0.4\left(\frac{\gamma D_f}{q}\right)^{0.5} \tag{5.55}$$

γ = unit weight of soil

The relationships for $(N_1)_{60}$ are as follows:

$$(N_1)_{60} = \frac{4N_{60}}{1 + 0.04\sigma'_o} \quad (\text{for } \sigma'_o \le 75 \text{ kN/m}^2) \tag{5.56}$$

and

$$(N_1)_{60} = \frac{4N_{60}}{3.25 + 0.01\sigma'_o} \quad (\text{for } \sigma'_o > 75 \text{ kN/m}^2) \tag{5.57}$$

where

σ'_o = the effective overburden pressure

5.4.4.4 Burland and Burbidge's Method

Burland and Burbidge[18] proposed a method for calculating the elastic settlement of sandy soil using the field standard penetration number N_{60}. According to this procedure, the following are the steps to estimate the elastic settlement of a foundation:

1. Determination of variation of standard penetration number with depth
   Obtain the field penetration numbers N_{60} with depth at the location of the foundation. Depending on the field conditions, the following adjustments of N_{60} may be necessary:
   For gravel or sandy gravel,

$$N_{60(a)} \approx 1.25N_{60} \tag{5.58}$$

   For fine sand or silty sand below the groundwater table and $N_{60} > 15$,

$$N_{60(a)} \approx 15 + 0.5(N_{60} - 15) \tag{5.59}$$

   where

   $N_{60(a)}$ = adjusted N_{60} value

2. Determination of depth of stress influence z'
   In determining the depth of stress influence, the following three cases may arise:

   Case I. If N_{60} [or $N_{60(a)}$] is approximately constant with depth, calculate z' from

$$\frac{z'}{B_R} = 1.4\left(\frac{B}{B_R}\right)^{0.75} \tag{5.60}$$

   where

   B_R = reference width = 0.3 m

   B = width of the actual foundation (m)

   Case II. If N_{60} [or $N_{60(a)}$] is increasing with depth, use Equation 5.60 to calculate z'.

   Case III. If N_{60} [or $N_{60(a)}$] is decreasing with depth, calculate $z' = 2B$ and z' = distance from the bottom of the foundation to the bottom of the soft soil layer (=z''). Use $z' = 2B$ or $z' = z''$ (whichever is smaller).

3. Determination of depth of influence correction factor α

The correction factor α is given as (*Note:* H = depth of comparable soil layer)

$$\alpha = \frac{H}{z'}\left(2 - \frac{H}{z'}\right) \leq 1 \tag{5.61}$$

4. Calculation of elastic settlement

The elastic settlement of the foundation S_e can be calculated as

$$\frac{S_e}{B_R} = 0.14\alpha \left\{\frac{1.71}{[\bar{N}_{60} \text{ or } \bar{N}_{60(a)}]^{1.4}}\right\}\left[\frac{1.25(L/B)}{0.25 + L/B}\right]^2 \left(\frac{B}{B_R}\right)^{0.7} \left(\frac{q}{p_a}\right) \tag{5.62}$$

(for normally consolidated soil)

where

L = length of the foundation

p_a = atmospheric pressure (≈100 kN/m^2)

$\bar{N}_{60}$ or $\bar{N}_{60(a)}$ = average value of N_{60} or $N_{60(a)}$ in the depth of stress influence

$$\frac{S_e}{B_R} = 0.047\alpha \left\{\frac{0.57}{[\bar{N}_{60} \text{ or } \bar{N}_{60(a)}]^{1.4}}\right\}\left[\frac{1.25(L/B)}{0.25 + L/B}\right]^2 \left(\frac{B}{B_R}\right)^{0.7} \left(\frac{q}{p_a}\right)$$

For overconsolidated soil ($q \leq \sigma'_c$, where σ'_c = overconsolidation pressure)

(5.63)

$$\frac{S_e}{B_R} = 0.14\alpha \left\{\frac{0.57}{[\bar{N}_{60} \text{ or } \bar{N}_{60(a)}]^{1.4}}\right\}\left[\frac{1.25(L/B)}{0.25 + L/B}\right]^2 \left(\frac{B}{B_R}\right)^{0.7} \left(\frac{q - 0.67\sigma'_c}{p_a}\right) \tag{5.64}$$

For overconsolidated soil ($q > \sigma'_c$)

EXAMPLE 5.5

A shallow foundation measuring 1.75 m × 1.75 m is to be constructed over a layer of sand. Given: D_f = 1 m; N_{60} is generally increasing with depth; $\bar{N}_{60}$ in the depth of stress influence = 10; q = 120 kN/m^2. The sand is normally consolidated. Estimate the elastic settlement of the foundation. Use the Burland and Burbidge method.

Solution

From Equation 5.60,

$$\frac{z'}{B_R} = 1.4\left(\frac{B}{B_R}\right)^{0.75}$$

the depth of stress influence is

$$z' = 1.4\left(\frac{B}{B_R}\right); \quad z' = (1.4)\left(\frac{1.75}{0.3}\right)^{0.75}(0.3) \approx 1.58 \text{ m}$$

From Equation 5.61, $\alpha = 1$. From Equation 5.62 (note $L/B = 1$; $p_a \approx 100$ kN/m^2),

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{S_e}{B_R} &= 0.14\alpha\left\{\frac{1.71}{(\bar{N}_{60})^{1.4}}\right\}\left[\frac{1.25(L/B)}{0.25 + L/B}\right]^2\left(\frac{B}{B_R}\right)^{0.7}\left(\frac{q}{p_a}\right)\\ &= (0.14)(1)\left\{\frac{1.71}{(10)^{1.4}}\right\}\left[\frac{1.25(1)}{0.25+1}\right]^2\left(\frac{1.75}{0.3}\right)^{0.7}\left(\frac{120}{100}\right)\\ &= 0.0118 \text{ m} = \mathbf{11.8\ mm}\end{aligned}$$

EXAMPLE 5.6

Solve the problem in Example 5.5 using Meyerhof's method.

Solution

From Equation 5.50,

$$S_e = C_W C_D \frac{2q}{N_{60}}\left(\frac{B}{B+0.3}\right)^2$$

$$C_W = 1$$

$$C_D = 1 - \left(\frac{D_f}{4B}\right) = 1 - \frac{1}{(4)(1.75)} \approx 0.86$$

$$S_e = (0.86)(1)\frac{(2)(120)}{10}\left(\frac{1.75}{1.75+0.3}\right)^2 = \mathbf{15.04\ mm}$$

5.4.5 Foundations on Granular Soil: Use of Strain Influence Factor

Referring to Figure 5.4, the equation for vertical strain ε_z below the center of a flexible circular load of radius R can be given as

$$\varepsilon_z = \frac{1}{E_S}[\sigma_z - \nu(\sigma_r + \sigma_\theta)] \tag{5.65}$$

After proper substitution for σ_z, σ_r, and σ_θ in the preceding equation, one obtains

$$\varepsilon_z = \frac{q(1+\nu)}{E_S}[(1-2\nu)A' + B'] \tag{5.66}$$

where

A', B' = nondimensional factors and functions of z/R

TABLE 5.11
Variations of A' and B' (Below the Center of a Flexible Loaded Area)

z/R	A'	B'
0	1.0	0
0.2	0.804	0.189
0.4	0.629	0.320
0.6	0.486	0.378
0.8	0.375	0.381
1.0	0.293	0.354
1.5	0.168	0.256
2.0	0.106	0.179
2.5	0.072	0.128
3.0	0.051	0.095
4.0	0.030	0.057
5.0	0.019	0.038
6.0	0.014	0.027
7.0	0.010	0.020
8.0	0.008	0.015
9.0	0.006	0.012

The variations of A' and B' below the center of a loaded area as estimated by Ahlvin and Ulery[2] are given in Table 5.11. From Equation 5.66, we can write

$$I_z = \frac{\varepsilon_z E_s}{q}(1+\nu)[(1-2\nu)A' + B'] \tag{5.67}$$

Figure 5.14 shows plots of I_z versus z/R obtained from the experimental results of Eggestad[19] along with the theoretical values calculated from Equation 5.67. Based on Figure 5.14, Schmertmann[6] proposed a practical variation of I_z and z/B (B = foundation width) for calculating the elastic settlement of foundation. This model was later modified by Schmertmann et al.,[7] and the nature of which is shown in Figure 5.15.

From this figure, note that,

- For square or circular foundation:
  $I_z = 0.1$ at $z = 0$
  $I_{z(\text{peak})}$ at $z = z_p = 0.5B$
  $I_z = 0$ at $z = z_o = 2B$
- For foundation with $L/B \geq 10$:
  $I_z = 0.2$ at $z = 0$
  $I_{z(\text{peak})}$ at $z = z_p = B$
  $I_z = 0$ at $z = z_o = 4B$

where L = length of foundation.

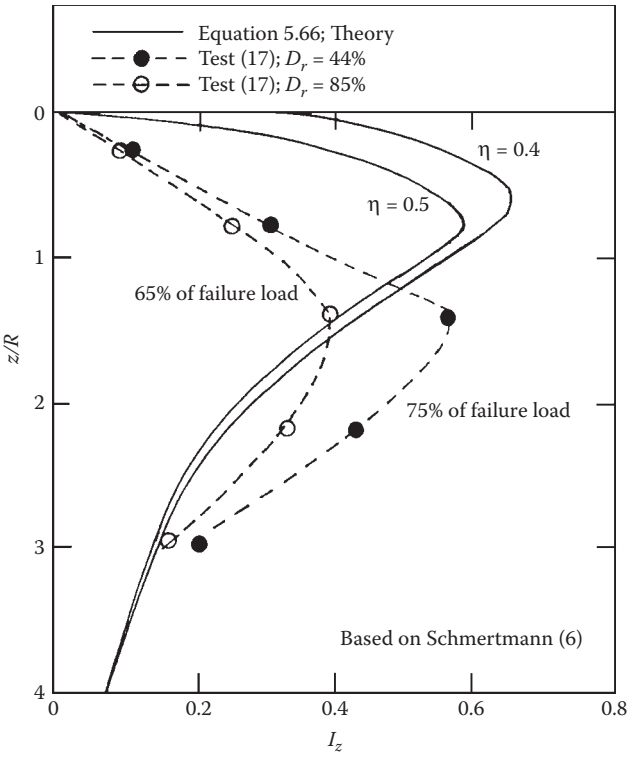


FIGURE 5.14 Comparison of experiment and theoretical variations of I_z below the center of a flexible circularly loaded area. *Note:* R = radius of circular area; D_r = relative density.

For L/B between 1 and 10, interpolation can be done. Also,

$$I_{z(\text{peak})} = 0.5 + 0.1\left[\frac{q - q'}{q_{z(\text{peak})}}\right]^{0.5} \tag{5.68}$$

where

q = stress at the level of the foundation
$q' = \gamma D_f$
$q_{z(\text{peak})}$ = effective stress at a depth $z = z_p$ before the construction of the foundation

Salgado[20] gave the following interpolation for I_z at $z = 0$, z_p, and z_o (for $L/B = 1$ to $L/B \geq 10$)

$$I_{z(\text{at } z=0)} = 0.1 + 0.0111\left(\frac{L}{B}\right) \leq 0.2 \tag{5.69}$$

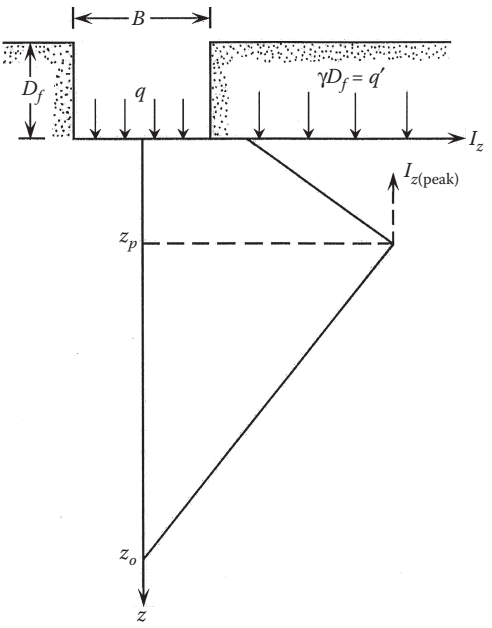


FIGURE 5.15 Variation of I_z versus z.

$$\frac{z_p}{B} = 0.5 + 0.0555\left(\frac{L}{B} - 1\right) \leq 1 \tag{5.70}$$

$$\frac{z_o}{B} = 2 + 0.222\left(\frac{L}{B} - 1\right) \leq 4 \tag{5.71}$$

Noting that stiffness is about 40% larger for plane strain compared to axisymmetric loading, Schmertmann et al.[7] recommended that,

$$E_s = 2.5q_c \quad \text{(for square and circular foundations)} \tag{5.72}$$

and

$$E_s = 3.5q_c \quad \text{(for strip foundation)} \tag{5.73}$$

Using the simplified strain influence factor, the elastic settlement can be calculated as

$$S_e = c_1 c_2 (q - q') \sum \left(\frac{I_z}{E_s}\right) \Delta z \tag{5.74}$$

where

c_1 = a correction factor for depth of foundation $= 1 - 0.5\left(\dfrac{q'}{q - q'}\right)$

c_2 = a correction factor for creep in soil $= 1 + 0.2 \log\left(\dfrac{\text{time in years}}{0.1}\right)$

q = stress at the level of the foundation

The use of Equation 5.74 can be explained by the following example.

EXAMPLE 5.7

Figure 5.16a shows a continuous foundation on sand. Given

$B = 2$ m $\quad q = 175$ kN/m^2
$D_f = 1$ m $\quad \gamma = 17$ kN/m^3

Based on the results of cone penetration resistance tests, the variation of E_s with depth is shown in Figure 5.16b (dashed line) via Equation 5.73. The actual E_s variation has been approximated by several linear plots and shown as a solid line.

Estimate the elastic settlement. Assume the time for creep is 10 years.

Solution

At $z = 0$, $I_z = 0.2$
$I_{z(\text{peak})}$ is at $z = z_p = B = 2$ m
$I_z = 0$ at $z = z_o = 4B = 8$ m

$$I_{z(\text{peak})} = 0.5 + 0.1\left(\frac{q - q'}{q_{z(\text{peak})}}\right)^{0.5}$$

$q = 175$ kN/m^2
$q' = \gamma D_f = (17)(1) = 17$ kN/m^2
$q_{z(\text{peak})} = 17 \times 2 = 34$ kN/m^2

$$I_{z(\text{peak})} = 0.5 + 0.1\left(\frac{175 - 17}{34}\right)^{0.5} = 0.716$$

Now Table 5.12 can be prepared.

$$c_1 = 1 - 0.5\left(\frac{q'}{q - q'}\right) = 1 - 0.5\left(\frac{17}{158}\right) = 0.946$$

$$c_2 = 1 + 0.2 \log\left(\frac{10}{0.1}\right) = 1.4$$

$$S_e = c_1 c_2 (q - q') \sum \left(\frac{I_z}{E_s}\right) \Delta z = (0.946)(1.4)(158)(36.44 \times 10^{-5})$$

$$= 7625.3 \times 10^{-5} \text{ m} \approx \mathbf{76.25\ mm}$$

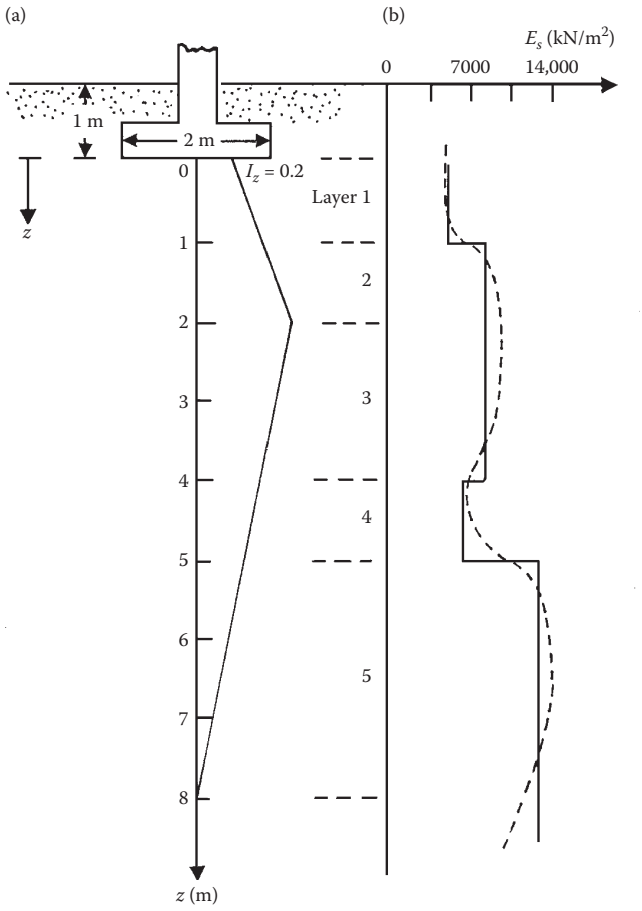


FIGURE 5.16 Determination of elastic settlement of a continuous foundation by strain influence factor method.

5.4.6 Foundations on Granular Soil: Use of L_1–L_2 Method

Akbas and Kulhawy[21] evaluated 167 load-displacement relationships obtained from field tests. Based on those tests, the general nature of the load (Q) versus settlement (S_e) is shown in Figure 5.17. Tangents are drawn to the initial and final portions of the Q versus S_e plot. In the figure, note that the load Q_{L1} occurs at a settlement level of $S_{e(L1)} = 0.23B$ (%), and the load Q_{L2} occurs at $S_{e(L2)} = 5.39B$ (%). It is also important to note that Q_{L2} is the *ultimate load* (Q_u) on the foundation. Also, the mean plot of Q versus S_e can be expressed as

$$\frac{Q}{Q_{L2}} = \frac{S_e/B\,(\%)}{0.69(S_e/B\,\%)+1.68} \tag{5.75}$$

TABLE 5.12
Elastic Settlement Calculations (Figure 5.16)

Layer No.	Δz(m)	E_s(kN/m²)	z to the Middle of the Layer (m)	I_z at the Middle of the Layer	$\left(I_z/E_s\right)\Delta z$ (m³/kN)
1	1	5,250	0.5	0.329	6.27×10^{-5}
2	1	8,750	1.5	0.587	6.71×10^{-5}
3	2	8,750	3.0	0.597	13.65×10^{-5}
4	1	7,000	4.5	0.418	5.97×10^{-5}
5	3	14,000	6.5	0.179	3.84×10^{-5}
					$\Sigma 36.44 \times 10^{-5}$ m³/kN

Note: $\sum 8\text{ m} = 4B$.

In order to find Q for a given settlement level, one needs to know Q_u. This can be done using Equation 2.91 given in Section 2.10. It was recommended by Akbas and Kulhawy[21] that,

- For $B > 1$ m (from Equation 2.91 with $c = 0$),

$$Q_{L2} = Q_u = \left[\frac{1}{2}\gamma B N_\gamma \lambda_{\gamma s}\lambda_{\gamma d}\lambda_{\gamma c} + qN_q\lambda_{qs}\lambda_{qd}\lambda_{qc}\right]A \tag{5.76}$$

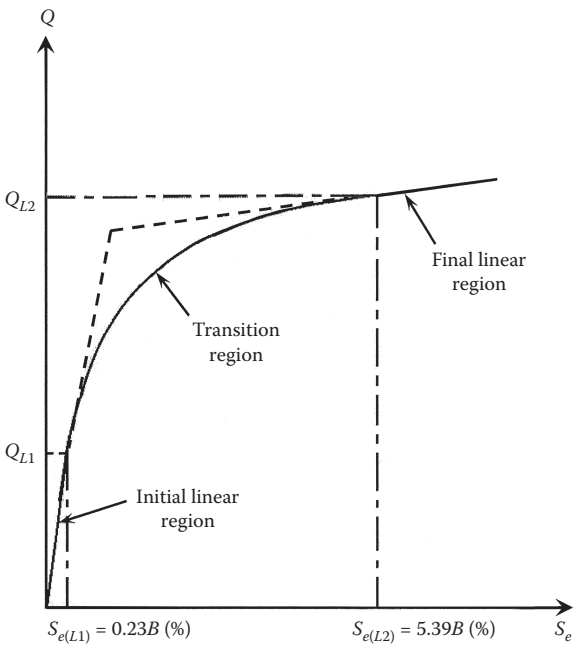


FIGURE 5.17 General nature of Q versus S_e plot.

where
A = area of the foundation

- For $B \le 1$ m,

$$Q_{L2} = \left[\frac{1}{2}\gamma N_\gamma \lambda_{\gamma s}\lambda_{\gamma d}\lambda_{\gamma c} + qN_q\lambda_{qs}\lambda_{qd}\lambda_{qc}\right]A \tag{5.77}$$

EXAMPLE 5.8

For a square foundation supported by a sand layer, the following are given:

Foundation: $B = 1.5$ m; $D_f = 1$ m
Sand: $\gamma = 16.5$ kN/m^3; $\phi = 35°$; Shear modulus $G = 280$ kN/m^2
Load on foundation: $Q = 800$ kN

Estimate:

a. $S_{e(L1)}$
b. $S_{e(L2)}$
c. Settlement S_e with application of load $Q = 800$ kN

Solution

Part a

$$S_{e(L1)} = 0.23B\,(\%) = \frac{(0.23)(1.5\times 1000)}{100} = 3.45 \text{ mm}$$

Part b

$$S_{e(L2)} = 5.39B\,(\%) = \frac{(5.39)(1.5\times 1000)}{100} = 80.85 \text{ mm}$$

Part c
From Equation 5.76,

$$Q_{L(2)} = \left[\frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_\gamma \lambda_{\gamma s}\lambda_{\gamma d}\lambda_{\gamma c} + qN_q\lambda_{qs}\lambda_{qd}\lambda_{qc}\right]$$

$\gamma = 16.5$ kN/m^3; $B = 1.5$ m; $q = \gamma D_f = (16.5)(1) = 16.5$ kN/m^2.

From Table 2.4 for $\phi = 35°$(Vesic's value), $N_\gamma = 48.03$. Also from Table 2.3 for $\phi = 35°$, the value of $N_q = 33.3$. From Table 2.8,

$$\lambda_{qs} = 1 + \left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\tan\varphi = 1 + \left(\frac{1.5}{1.5}\right)\tan 35 = 1.7$$

$$\lambda_{\gamma s} = 1 - 0.4\left(\frac{B}{L}\right) = 1 - (0.4)\left(\frac{1.5}{1.5}\right) = 0.6$$

$$\lambda_{qd} = 1 + 2\tan\varphi(1-\sin\varphi)^2\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right) = 1 + 2\tan 35(1-\sin 35)^2\left(\frac{1}{1.5}\right) \approx 1.17$$

$$\lambda_{\gamma d} = 1$$

In order to calculate λ_{qc} and $\lambda_{\gamma c}$, refer to Equation 2.92 (with $c = 0$),

$$I_r = \frac{G}{q\tan\varphi} = \frac{280}{(16.5)(\tan 35)} = 24.23$$

From Equation 2.93,

$$I_{r(\text{cr})} = \frac{1}{2}\left\{\exp\left[\left(3.3 - 0.45\frac{B}{L}\right)\cot\left(45 - \frac{\varphi}{2}\right)\right]\right\}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}\left\{\exp\left[\left(3.3 - 0.45\frac{1.5}{1.5}\right)\cot\left(45 - \frac{3}{2}\right)\right]\right\} = 119.3$$

So, $I_r < I_{r(\text{cr})}$. From Equation 2.94,

$$\lambda_{\gamma c} = \lambda_{qc} = \exp\left\{\left[-4.4 + 0.6\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\right]\tan\varphi + \frac{(3.07\sin\varphi)(\log 2I_r)}{1+\sin\varphi}\right\}$$

$$= \exp\left\{\left[-4.4 + 0.6\left(\frac{1.5}{1.5}\right)\right]\tan 35 + \frac{(3.07\sin 35)(\log 2\times 24.23)}{1+\sin 35}\right\}$$

$$= 0.461$$

Thus,

$$Q_{L2} = \left[\begin{array}{c}\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)(16.5)(1.5)(48.03)(0.6)(1)(0.416) \\ +(16.5)(33.3)(1.7)(1.17)(0.461)\end{array}\right](1.5\times 1.5) = 1467.4\ \text{kN}$$

Substituting the values of Q and Q_{L2} in Equation 5.75,

$$\frac{800}{1467.4} = \frac{S_e/B(\%)}{0.69\left(S_e/B\,\%\right) + 1.68}; \quad \frac{S_e}{B} = 1.467\%$$

$$S_e = (1.467)\frac{(1.5\times 1000)}{100} \approx \mathbf{22\ m}$$

5.4.7 Foundations on Granular Soil: Settlement Calculation Based on Theory of Elasticity

Figure 5.18 shows a schematic diagram of the elastic settlement profile for a flexible and rigid foundation. The shallow foundation measures $B \times L$ in plan and is located at a depth D_f below the ground surface. A rock (or a rigid layer) is located at a depth H below the bottom of the foundation. Theoretically, if the foundation is perfectly flexible (Bowles[22]), the settlement may be expressed as

$$S_e = q(\alpha' B') \frac{1-\nu^2}{E_s} I_s I_f \tag{5.78}$$

where

q = net applied pressure on the foundation
ν = Poisson's ratio of soil
E_s = average modulus of elasticity of the soil under the foundation measured from $z = 0$ to about $z = 4B$
$B' = B/2$ for center of foundation (=B for corner of foundation)
I_s = shape factor (Steinbrenner[23])

$$I_s = F_1 + \frac{1-2\nu}{1-\nu} F_2 \tag{5.79}$$

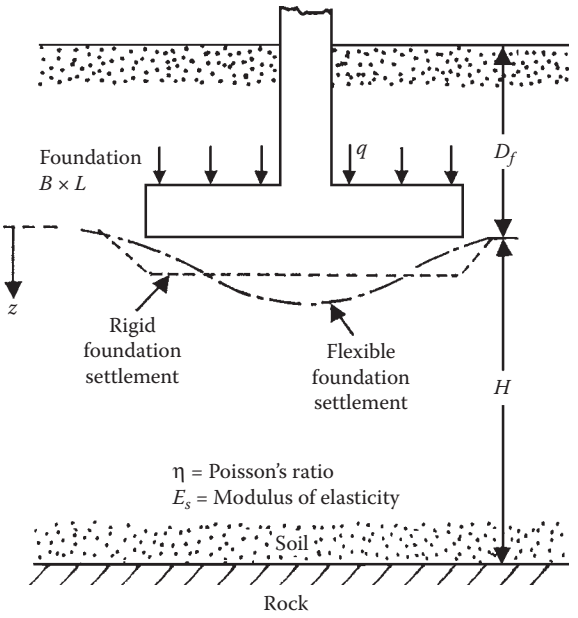


FIGURE 5.18 Settlement profile for shallow flexible and rigid foundations.

$$F_1 = \frac{1}{\pi}(A_0 + A_1) \tag{5.80}$$

$$F_2 = \frac{n'}{2\pi}\tan^{-1} A_2 \tag{5.81}$$

$$A_0 = m' \ln \frac{(1+\sqrt{m'^2+1})\sqrt{m'^2+n'^2}}{m'(1+\sqrt{m'^2+n'^2+1})} \tag{5.82}$$

$$A_1 = \ln \frac{(m'+\sqrt{m'^2+1})\sqrt{1+n'^2}}{m'+\sqrt{m'^2+n'^2+1}} \tag{5.83}$$

$$A_2 = \frac{m'}{n'+\sqrt{m'^2+n'^2+1}} \tag{5.84}$$

$$I_f = \text{depth factor(Fox}^{24}) = f\left(\frac{D_f}{B}, \nu, \text{and } \frac{L}{B}\right) \tag{5.85}$$

α' = a factor that depends on the location on the foundation where settlement is being calculated

To calculate settlement at the center of the foundation, we use

$$\alpha' = 4 \tag{5.86}$$

$$m' = \frac{L}{B} \tag{5.87}$$

and

$$n' = \frac{H}{B/2} \tag{5.88}$$

To calculate settlement at a corner of the foundation,

$$\alpha' = 1 \tag{5.89}$$

$$m' = \frac{L}{B} \tag{5.90}$$

and

$$n' = \frac{H}{B} \tag{5.91}$$

The variations of F_1 and F_2 with m' and n' are given in Tables 5.13 and 5.14. Based on the work of Fox,[24] the variations of depth factor I_f for $\nu = 0.3$, 0.4, and 0.5 and L/B are given in Figure 5.19. Note that I_f is not a function of H/B.

Due to the nonhomogeneous nature of a soil deposit, the magnitude of E_s may vary with depth. For that reason, Bowles[22] recommended

$$E_s = \frac{\sum E_{s(i)}\Delta z}{\bar{z}} \tag{5.92}$$

where

$E_{s(I)}$ = soil modulus within the depth Δz
$\bar{z} = H$ or $5B$, whichever is smaller

Bowles[22] also recommended that

$$E_s = 500(N_{60} + 15)\ \text{kN/m}^2 \tag{5.93}$$

The elastic settlement of a rigid foundation can be estimated as

$$S_{e(\text{rigid})} \approx 0.93 S_{e(\text{flexible, center})} \tag{5.94}$$

EXAMPLE 5.9

A rigid shallow foundation 1 m × 2 m is shown in Figure 5.20. Calculate the elastic settlement of the foundation.

Solution

We are given that $B = 1$ m and $L = 2$ m. Note that $\bar{z} = 5$ m $= 5B$. From Equation 5.92,

$$E_s = \frac{\sum E_{s(i)}\Delta z}{\bar{z}} = \frac{(10{,}000)(2) + (8{,}000)(1) + (12{,}000)(2)}{5} = 10{,}400\ \text{kN/m}^2$$

For the center of the foundation,

$$\alpha' = 4$$

$$m' = \frac{L}{B} = \frac{2}{1} = 2$$

and

$$n' = \frac{H}{B/2} = \frac{5}{1/2} = 10$$

TABLE 5.13
Variation of F_1 with m' and n'

	m'																			
n'	**1.0**	**1.2**	**1.4**	**1.6**	**1.8**	**2.0**	**2.5**	**3.0**	**3.5**	**4.0**	**4.5**	**5.0**	**6.0**	**7.0**	**8.0**	**9.0**	**10.0**	**25.0**	**50.0**	**100.0**
0.25	0.014	0.013	0.012	0.011	0.011	0.011	0.010	0.010	0.010	0.010	0.010	0.010	0.010	0.010	0.010	0.010	0.010	0.010	0.010	0.010
0.50	0.049	0.046	0.044	0.042	0.041	0.040	0.038	0.038	0.037	0.037	0.036	0.036	0.036	0.036	0.036	0.036	0.036	0.036	0.036	0.036
0.75	0.095	0.090	0.087	0.084	0.082	0.080	0.077	0.076	0.074	0.074	0.073	0.073	0.072	0.072	0.072	0.072	0.071	0.071	0.071	0.071
1.00	0.142	0.138	0.134	0.130	0.127	0.125	0.121	0.118	0.116	0.115	0.114	0.113	0.112	0.112	0.112	0.111	0.111	0.110	0.110	0.110
1.25	0.186	0.183	0.179	0.176	0.173	0.170	0.165	0.161	0.158	0.157	0.155	0.154	0.153	0.152	0.152	0.151	0.151	0.150	0.150	0.150
1.50	0.224	0.224	0.222	0.219	0.216	0.213	0.207	0.203	0.199	0.197	0.195	0.194	0.192	0.191	0.190	0.190	0.189	0.188	0.188	0.188
1.75	0.257	0.259	0.259	0.258	0.255	0.253	0.247	0.242	0.238	0.235	0.233	0.232	0.229	0.228	0.227	0.226	0.225	0.223	0.223	0.223
2.00	0.285	0.290	0.292	0.292	0.291	0.289	0.284	0.279	0.275	0.271	0.269	0.267	0.264	0.262	0.261	0.260	0.259	0.257	0.256	0.256
2.25	0.309	0.317	0.321	0.323	0.323	0.322	0.317	0.313	0.308	0.305	0.302	0.300	0.296	0.294	0.293	0.291	0.291	0.287	0.287	0.287
2.50	0.330	0.341	0.347	0.350	0.351	0.351	0.348	0.344	0.340	0.336	0.333	0.331	0.327	0.324	0.322	0.321	0.320	0.316	0.315	0.315
2.75	0.348	0.361	0.369	0.374	0.377	0.378	0.377	0.373	0.369	0.365	0.362	0.359	0.355	0.352	0.350	0.348	0.347	0.343	0.342	0.342
3.00	0.363	0.379	0.389	0.396	0.400	0.402	0.402	0.400	0.396	0.392	0.389	0.386	0.382	0.378	0.376	0.374	0.373	0.368	0.367	0.367
3.25	0.376	0.394	0.406	0.415	0.420	0.423	0.426	0.424	0.421	0.418	0.415	0.412	0.407	0.403	0.401	0.399	0.397	0.391	0.390	0.390
3.50	0.388	0.408	0.422	0.431	0.438	0.442	0.447	0.447	0.444	0.441	0.438	0.435	0.430	0.427	0.424	0.421	0.420	0.413	0.412	0.411
3.75	0.399	0.420	0.436	0.447	0.454	0.460	0.467	0.458	0.466	0.464	0.461	0.458	0.453	0.449	0.446	0.443	0.441	0.433	0.432	0.432
4.00	0.408	0.431	0.448	0.460	0.469	0.476	0.484	0.487	0.486	0.484	0.482	0.479	0.474	0.470	0.466	0.464	0.462	0.453	0.451	0.451
4.25	0.417	0.440	0.458	0.472	0.481	0.484	0.495	0.514	0.515	0.515	0.516	0.496	0.484	0.473	0.471	0.471	0.470	0.468	0.462	0.460
4.50	0.424	0.450	0.469	0.484	0.495	0.503	0.516	0.521	0.522	0.522	0.520	0.517	0.513	0.508	0.505	0.502	0.499	0.489	0.487	0.487
4.75	0.431	0.458	0.478	0.494	0.506	0.515	0.530	0.536	0.539	0.539	0.537	0.535	0.530	0.526	0.523	0.519	0.517	0.506	0.504	0.503
5.00	0.437	0.465	0.487	0.503	0.516	0.526	0.543	0.551	0.554	0.554	0.554	0.552	0.548	0.543	0.540	0.536	0.534	0.522	0.519	0.519
5.25	0.443	0.472	0.494	0.512	0.526	0.537	0.555	0.564	0.568	0.569	0.569	0.568	0.564	0.560	0.556	0.553	0.550	0.537	0.534	0.534
5.50	0.448	0.478	0.501	0.520	0.534	0.546	0.566	0.576	0.581	0.584	0.584	0.583	0.579	0.575	0.571	0.568	0.585	0.551	0.549	0.548

(*Continued*)

TABLE 5.13 (*Continued*)
Variation of F_1 with m' and n'

	m'																			
n'	**1.0**	**1.2**	**1.4**	**1.6**	**1.8**	**2.0**	**2.5**	**3.0**	**3.5**	**4.0**	**4.5**	**5.0**	**6.0**	**7.0**	**8.0**	**9.0**	**10.0**	**25.0**	**50.0**	**100.0**
5.75	0.453	0.483	0.508	0.527	0.542	0.555	0.576	0.588	0.594	0.597	0.597	0.597	0.594	0.590	0.586	0.583	0.580	0.565	0.583	0.562
6.00	0.457	0.489	0.514	0.534	0.550	0.563	0.585	0.598	0.606	0.609	0.611	0.610	0.608	0.604	0.601	0.598	0.595	0.579	0.576	0.575
6.25	0.461	0.493	0.519	0.540	0.557	0.570	0.594	0.609	0.617	0.621	0.623	0.623	0.621	0.618	0.615	0.611	0.608	0.592	0.589	0.588
6.50	0.465	0.498	0.524	0.546	0.563	0.577	0.603	0.618	0.627	0.632	0.635	0.635	0.634	0.631	0.628	0.625	0.622	0.605	0.601	0.600
6.75	0.468	0.502	0.529	0.551	0.569	0.584	0.610	0.627	0.637	0.643	0.646	0.647	0.646	0.644	0.641	0.637	0.634	0.617	0.613	0.612
7.00	0.471	0.506	0.533	0.556	0.575	0.590	0.618	0.635	0.646	0.653	0.656	0.658	0.658	0.656	0.653	0.650	0.647	0.628	0.624	0.623
7.25	0.474	0.509	0.538	0.561	0.580	0.596	0.625	0.643	0.655	0.662	0.666	0.669	0.669	0.668	0.665	0.662	0.659	0.640	0.635	0.634
7.50	0.477	0.513	0.541	0.565	0.585	0.601	0.631	0.650	0.663	0.671	0.676	0.679	0.680	0.679	0.676	0.673	0.670	0.651	0.646	0.645
7.75	0.480	0.516	0.545	0.569	0.589	0.606	0.637	0.658	0.671	0.680	0.685	0.688	0.690	0.689	0.687	0.684	0.681	0.661	0.656	0.655
8.00	0.482	0.519	0.549	0.573	0.594	0.611	0.643	0.664	0.678	0.688	0.694	0.697	0.700	0.700	0.698	0.695	0.692	0.672	0.666	0.665
8.25	0.485	0.522	0.552	0.577	0.598	0.615	0.648	0.670	0.685	0.695	0.702	0.706	0.710	0.710	0.708	0.705	0.703	0.682	0.676	0.675
8.50	0.487	0.524	0.555	0.580	0.601	0.619	0.653	0.676	0.692	0.703	0.710	0.714	0.719	0.719	0.718	0.715	0.713	0.692	0.686	0.684
8.75	0.489	0.527	0.558	0.583	0.605	0.623	0.658	0.682	0.698	0.710	0.717	0.722	0.727	0.728	0.727	0.725	0.723	0.701	0.695	0.693
9.00	0.491	0.529	0.560	0.587	0.609	0.627	0.663	0.687	0.705	0.716	0.725	0.730	0.736	0.737	0.736	0.735	0.732	0.710	0.704	0.702
9.25	0.493	0.531	0.563	0.589	0.612	0.631	0.667	0.693	0.710	0.723	0.731	0.737	0.744	0.746	0.745	0.744	0.742	0.719	0.713	0.711
9.50	0.495	0.533	0.565	0.592	0.615	0.634	0.671	0.697	0.716	0.719	0.738	0.744	0.752	0.754	0.754	0.753	0.751	0.728	0.721	0.719
9.75	0.496	0.536	0.568	0.595	0.618	0.638	0.675	0.702	0.721	0.735	0.744	0.751	0.759	0.762	0.762	0.761	0.759	0.737	0.729	0.727
10.00	0.498	0.537	0.570	0.597	0.621	0.641	0.679	0.707	0.726	0.740	0.750	0.758	0.766	0.770	0.770	0.770	0.768	0.745	0.738	0.735
20.00	0.529	0.575	0.614	0.647	0.677	0.702	0.756	0.797	0.830	0.858	0.878	0.896	0.925	0.945	0.959	0.969	0.977	0.982	0.965	0.957
50.00	0.548	0.598	0.640	0.678	0.711	0.740	0.803	0.853	0.895	0.931	0.962	0.989	1.034	1.070	1.100	1.125	1.146	1.265	1.279	1.261
100	0.555	0.605	0.649	0.688	0.722	0.753	0.819	0.872	0.918	0.956	0.990	1.020	1.072	1.114	1.150	1.182	1.209	1.408	1.489	1.499

TABLE 5.14
Variation of F_2 with m' and n'

	m'																			
n'	1	1.2	1.4	1.6	1.8	2	2.5	3	3.5	4	4.5	5	6	7	8	9	10	25	50	100
0.25	0.049	0.050	0.051	0.051	0.051	0.052	0.052	0.052	0.052	0.052	0.053	0.053	0.053	0.053	0.053	0.053	0.053	0.053	0.053	0.053
0.50	0.074	0.077	0.080	0.081	0.083	0.084	0.086	0.086	0.087	0.087	0.087	0.087	0.088	0.088	0.088	0.088	0.088	0.088	0.088	0.088
0.75	0.083	0.089	0.093	0.097	0.099	0.101	0.104	0.106	0.107	0.108	0.109	0.109	0.109	0.110	0.110	0.110	0.110	0.111	0.111	0.111
1.00	0.083	0.091	0.098	0.102	0.106	0.109	0.114	0.117	0.119	0.120	0.121	0.122	0.123	0.123	0.124	0.124	0.124	0.125	0.125	0.125
1.25	0.080	0.089	0.096	0.102	0.107	0.111	0.118	0.122	0.125	0.127	0.128	0.130	0.131	0.132	0.132	0.133	0.133	0.134	0.134	0.134
1.50	0.075	0.084	0.093	0.099	0.105	0.110	0.118	0.124	0.128	0.130	0.132	0.134	0.136	0.137	0.138	0.138	0.139	0.140	0.140	0.140
1.75	0.069	0.079	0.088	0.095	0.101	0.107	0.117	0.123	0.128	0.131	0.134	0.136	0.138	0.140	0.141	0.142	0.142	0.144	0.144	0.145
2.00	0.064	0.074	0.083	0.090	0.097	0.102	0.114	0.121	0.127	0.131	0.134	0.136	0.139	0.141	0.143	0.144	0.145	0.147	0.147	0.148
2.25	0.059	0.069	0.077	0.085	0.092	0.098	0.110	0.119	0.125	0.130	0.133	0.136	0.140	0.142	0.144	0.145	0.146	0.149	0.150	0.150
2.50	0.055	0.064	0.073	0.080	0.087	0.093	0.106	0.115	0.122	0.127	0.132	0.135	0.139	0.142	0.144	0.146	0.147	0.151	0.151	0.151
2.75	0.051	0.060	0.068	0.076	0.082	0.089	0.102	0.111	0.119	0.125	0.130	0.133	0.138	0.142	0.144	0.146	0.147	0.152	0.152	0.153
3.00	0.048	0.056	0.064	0.071	0.078	0.084	0.097	0.108	0.116	0.122	0.127	0.131	0.137	0.141	0.144	0.145	0.147	0.152	0.153	0.154
3.25	0.045	0.053	0.060	0.067	0.074	0.080	0.093	0.104	0.112	0.119	0.125	0.129	0.135	0.140	0.143	0.145	0.147	0.153	0.154	0.154
3.50	0.042	0.050	0.057	0.068	0.070	0.076	0.089	0.100	0.109	0.116	0.122	0.126	0.133	0.138	0.142	0.144	0.146	0.153	0.155	0.155
3.75	0.040	0.047	0.054	0.060	0.067	0.073	0.086	0.096	0.105	0.113	0.119	0.124	0.131	0.137	0.141	0.143	0.145	0.154	0.155	0.155
4.00	0.037	0.044	0.051	0.057	0.063	0.069	0.082	0.093	0.102	0.110	0.116	0.121	0.129	0.135	0.139	0.142	0.145	0.154	0.155	0.156
4.25	0.036	0.042	0.049	0.055	0.061	0.066	0.079	0.090	0.099	0.107	0.113	0.119	0.127	0.133	0.138	0.141	0.144	0.154	0.156	0.156
4.50	0.034	0.040	0.046	0.052	0.058	0.063	0.076	0.086	0.096	0.104	0.110	0.116	0.125	0.131	0.136	0.140	0.143	0.154	0.156	0.156
4.75	0.032	0.038	0.044	0.050	0.055	0.061	0.073	0.083	0.093	0.101	0.107	0.113	0.123	0.130	0.135	0.139	0.142	0.154	0.156	0.157
5.00	0.031	0.036	0.042	0.048	0.053	0.058	0.070	0.080	0.090	0.098	0.105	0.111	0.120	0.128	0.133	0.137	0.140	0.154	0.156	0.157
5.25	0.029	0.035	0.040	0.046	0.051	0.056	0.067	0.078	0.087	0.095	0.102	0.108	0.118	0.126	0.131	0.136	0.139	0.154	0.156	0.157

(*Continued*)

TABLE 5.14 (*Continued*)
Variation of F_2 with m' and n'

	m'																			
n'	1	1.2	1.4	1.6	1.8	2	2.5	3	3.5	4	4.5	5	6	7	8	9	10	25	50	100
5.50	0.028	0.033	0.039	0.044	0.049	0.054	0.065	0.075	0.084	0.092	0.099	0.106	0.116	0.124	0.130	0.134	0.138	0.154	0.156	0.157
5.75	0.027	0.032	0.037	0.042	0.047	0.052	0.063	0.073	0.082	0.090	0.097	0.103	0.113	0.122	0.128	0.133	0.136	0.154	0.157	0.157
6.00	0.026	0.031	0.036	0.040	0.045	0.05	0.060	0.070	0.079	0.087	0.094	0.101	0.111	0.120	0.126	0.131	0.135	0.153	0.157	0.157
6.25	0.025	0.030	0.034	0.039	0.044	0.048	0.058	0.068	0.077	0.085	0.092	0.098	0.109	0.118	0.124	0.129	0.134	0.153	0.157	0.158
6.50	0.024	0.029	0.033	0.038	0.042	0.046	0.056	0.066	0.075	0.083	0.090	0.096	0.107	0.116	0.122	0.128	0.132	0.153	0.157	0.158
6.75	0.023	0.028	0.032	0.036	0.041	0.045	0.055	0.064	0.073	0.080	0.087	0.094	0.105	0.114	0.121	0.126	0.131	0.153	0.157	0.158
7.00	0.022	0.027	0.031	0.035	0.039	0.043	0.053	0.062	0.071	0.078	0.085	0.092	0.103	0.112	0.119	0.125	0.129	0.152	0.157	0.158
7.25	0.022	0.026	0.030	0.034	0.038	0.042	0.051	0.060	0.069	0.076	0.083	0.090	0.101	0.110	0.117	0.123	0.128	0.152	0.157	0.158
7.50	0.021	0.025	0.029	0.033	0.037	0.041	0.050	0.059	0.067	0.074	0.081	0.088	0.099	0.108	0.115	0.121	0.126	0.152	0.156	0.158
7.75	0.020	0.024	0.028	0.032	0.036	0.039	0.048	0.057	0.065	0.072	0.079	0.086	0.097	0.106	0.114	0.120	0.125	0.151	0.156	0.158
8.00	0.020	0.023	0.027	0.031	0.035	0.038	0.047	0.055	0.063	0.071	0.077	0.084	0.095	0.104	0.112	0.118	0.124	0.151	0.156	0.158
8.25	0.019	0.023	0.026	0.030	0.034	0.037	0.046	0.054	0.062	0.069	0.076	0.082	0.093	0.102	0.110	0.117	0.122	0.150	0.156	0.158
8.50	0.018	0.022	0.026	0.029	0.033	0.036	0.045	0.053	0.060	0.067	0.074	0.080	0.091	0.101	0.108	0.115	0.121	0.150	0.156	0.158
8.75	0.018	0.021	0.025	0.028	0.032	0.035	0.043	0.051	0.059	0.066	0.072	0.078	0.089	0.099	0.107	0.114	0.119	0.150	0.156	0.158
9.00	0.017	0.021	0.024	0.028	0.031	0.034	0.042	0.050	0.057	0.064	0.071	0.077	0.880	0.097	0.105	0.112	0.118	0.149	0.156	0.158
9.25	0.017	0.020	0.024	0.027	0.030	0.033	0.041	0.049	0.056	0.063	0.069	0.075	0.086	0.096	0.104	0.110	0.116	0.149	0.156	0.158
9.50	0.017	0.020	0.023	0.026	0.029	0.033	0.040	0.048	0.055	0.061	0.068	0.074	0.085	0.094	0.102	0.109	0.115	0.148	0.156	0.158
9.75	0.016	0.019	0.023	0.026	0.029	0.032	0.039	0.047	0.054	0.060	0.066	0.072	0.083	0.092	0.100	0.107	0.113	0.148	0.156	0.158
10.00	0.016	0.019	0.022	0.025	0.028	0.031	0.038	0.046	0.052	0.059	0.065	0.071	0.082	0.091	0.099	0.106	0.112	0.147	0.156	0.158
20.00	0.008	0.010	0.011	0.013	0.014	0.016	0.020	0.024	0.027	0.031	0.035	0.039	0.046	0.053	0.059	0.065	0.071	0.124	0.148	0.156
50.00	0.003	0.004	0.004	0.005	0.006	0.006	0.008	0.010	0.011	0.013	0.014	0.016	0.019	0.022	0.025	0.028	0.031	0.071	0.113	0.142
100.00	0.002	0.002	0.002	0.003	0.003	0.003	0.004	0.005	0.006	0.006	0.007	0.008	0.010	0.011	0.013	0.014	0.016	0.039	0.071	0.113

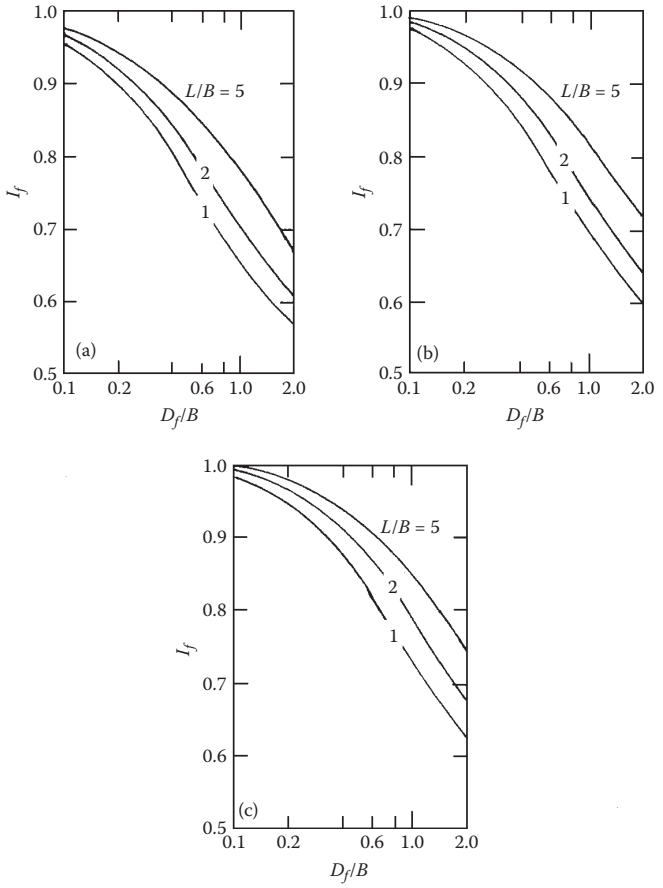


FIGURE 5.19 Variation of I_f with D_f/B. (a) ν = 0.3. (b) ν = 0.4. (c) ν = 0.5. (Based on Fox, E. N. 1948. The mean elastic settlement of a uniformly loaded area at a depth below the ground surface. In *Proceedings of the Second International Conference on Soil Mechanics and Foundation Engineering*, Vol. 1, p. 129; Bowles, J. E. 1987. *J. Geotech. Eng., ASCE*, 113(8): 846.)

From Tables 5.13 and 5.14, $F_1 = 0.641$ and $F_2 = 0.031$. From Equation 5.79,

$$I_s = F_1 + \frac{2-\nu}{1-\nu}F_2 = 0.641 + \frac{2-0.3}{1-.03}(0.031) = 0.716$$

Again, $D_f/B = 1/1 = 1$; $L/B = 2$; and ν = 0.3. From Figure 5.19a, $I_f = 0.7$. Hence,

$$S_{e(\text{flexible})} = q(\alpha B')\frac{1-\nu^2}{E_s}I_s I_f = (200)\left(4 \times \frac{1}{2}\right)\left(\frac{1-0.3^2}{10,400}\right)(0.716)(0.7)$$
$$= 0.0175\,\text{m} = 17.5\,\text{mm}$$

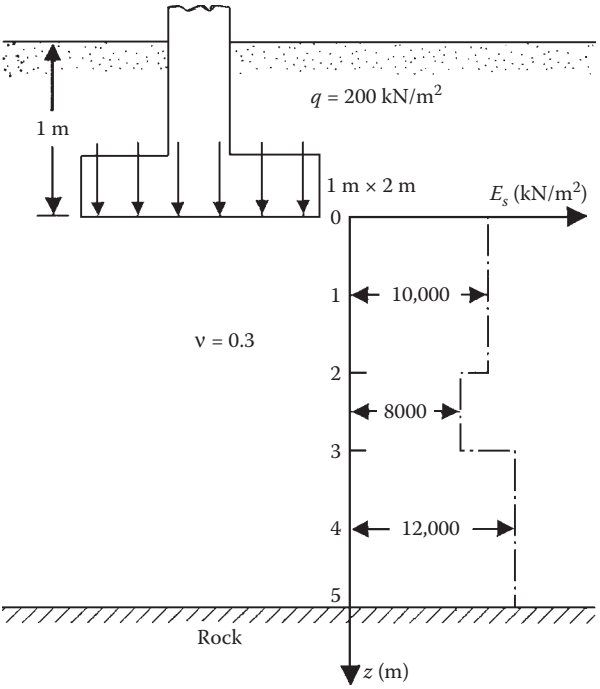


FIGURE 5.20 Elastic settlement below the center of a foundation.

Since the foundation is rigid, from Equation 5.94, we obtain

$$S_{e(\text{rigid})} = (0.93)(17.5) = \mathbf{16.3\ mm}$$

5.4.8 Analysis of Mayne and Poulos Based on the Theory of Elasticity Foundations on Granular Soil

Mayne and Poulos[25] presented an improved formula for calculating the elastic settlement of foundations. The formula takes into account the rigidity of the foundation, the depth of embedment of the foundation, the increase in the modulus of elasticity of the soil with depth, and the location of rigid layers at a limited depth. To use Mayne and Poulos' equation, one needs to determine the equivalent diameter B_e of a rectangular foundation, or

$$B_e = \sqrt{\frac{4BL}{\pi}} \tag{5.95}$$

where

B = width of foundation
L = length of foundation

For circular foundations,

$$B_e = B \tag{5.96}$$

where
B = diameter of foundation

Figure 5.21 shows a foundation with an equivalent diameter B_e located at a depth of D_f below the ground surface. Let the thickness of the foundation be t and the modulus of elasticity of the foundation material E_f. A rigid layer is located at a depth H below the bottom of the foundation. The modulus of elasticity of the compressible soil layer can be given as

$$E_s = E_o + kz \tag{5.97}$$

With the preceding parameters defined, the elastic settlement below the center of the foundation is

$$S_e = \frac{qB_e I_G I_R I_E}{E_o}(1 - \nu^2) \tag{5.98}$$

where

I_G = influence factor for the variation of E_s with depth $= f\left(\beta = \dfrac{E_o}{kB_e}, \dfrac{H}{B_e}\right)$

I_R = foundation rigidity correction factor
I_E = foundation embedment correction factor

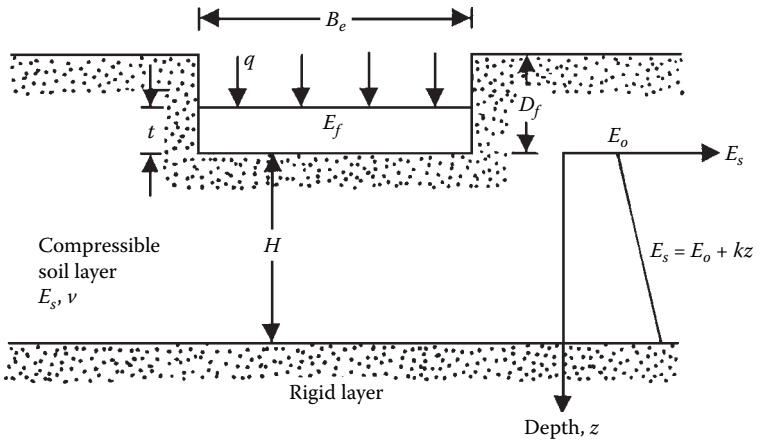


FIGURE 5.21 Mayne and Poulos' procedure for settlement calculation. (Adapted from Mayne, P. W. and H. G. Poulos. 1999. *J. Geotech. Geoenviron. Eng., ASCE*, 125(6): 453.)

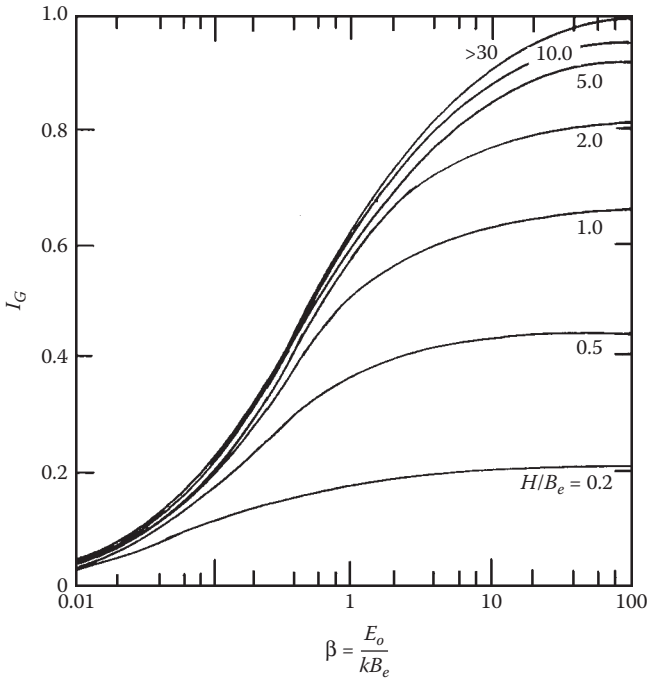


FIGURE 5.22 Variation of I_G with β.

Figure 5.22 shows the variation of I_G with $\beta = E_o/kB_e$ and H/B_e. The foundation rigidity correction factor can be expressed as

$$I_R = \frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{1}{4.6 + 10\left[E_f \big/ (E_o + 0.5B_e k)\right](2t/B_e)^3} \tag{5.99}$$

Similarly, the embedment correction factor is

$$I_E = 1 - \frac{1}{3.5\exp(1.22\nu - 0.4)\left[\left(B_e \big/ D_f\right) + 1.6\right]} \tag{5.100}$$

Figures 5.23 and 5.24 show the variation of I_R with I_E with the terms expressed in Equations 5.99 and 5.100.

It is the opinion of the author that, if an average value of N_{60} within a zone of $3B$ to $4B$ below the foundation is determined, it can be used to estimate an average value of E_s and the magnitude of k can be assumed to be zero.

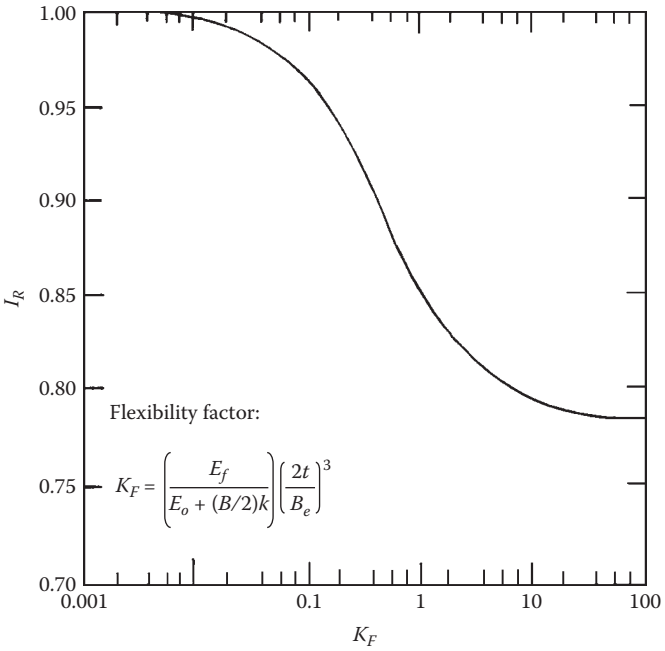


FIGURE 5.23 Variation of I_R.

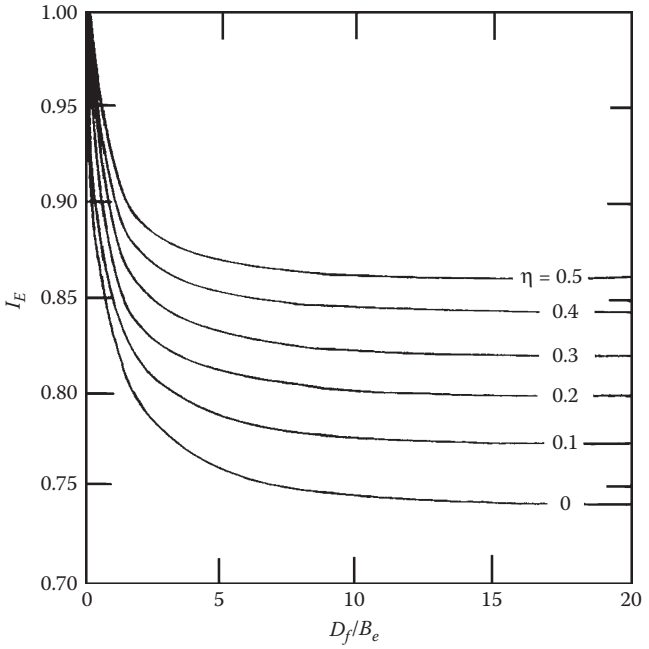


FIGURE 5.24 Variation of I_E.

EXAMPLE 5.10

For a shallow foundation supported by silty clay, as shown in Figure 5.21, given:

Length $L = 1.5$ m
Width $B = 1$ m
Depth of foundation $D_f = 1$ m
Thickness of foundation $t = 0.23$ m
Net load per unit area $q = 190$ kN/m^2
$E_f = 15 \times 10^6$ kN/m^2

The silty clay soil has the following properties:

$H = 2$ m
$\nu = 0.3$
$E_o = 9000$ kN/m^2
$k = 500$ kN/m^2

Estimate the elastic settlement of the foundation.

SOLUTION

From Equation 5.95, the equivalent diameter is

$$B_e = \sqrt{\frac{4BL}{\pi}} = \sqrt{\frac{(4)(1.5)(1)}{\pi}} = 1.38 \text{ m}$$

So,

$$\beta = \frac{E_o}{kB_e} = \frac{9000}{(500)(1.38)} = 13.04$$

and

$$\frac{H}{B_e} = \frac{2}{1.38} = 1.45$$

From Figure 5.22, for $\beta = 13.04$ and $H/B_e = 1.45$, the value of $I_G \approx 0.74$. From Equation 5.99,

$$I_R = \frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{1}{4.6 + 10\left[E_f \Big/ \left(E_o + 0.5B_e k\right)\right](2t/B_e)^3}$$

$$= \frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{1}{4.6 + 10\left(15 \times 10^6 / \left[9000 + (0.5)(1.38)(500)\right]\right)\left[(2(0.23))/1.38\right]^3} = 0.787$$

From Equation 5.100,

$$I_E = 1 - \frac{1}{3.5\exp(1.22\nu - 0.4)[(B_e/D_f) + 1.6]}$$
$$= 1 - \frac{1}{3.5\exp[(1.22)(0.3) - 0.4)][(1.38/1) + 1.6]} = 0.907$$

From Equation 5.98,

$$S_e = \frac{qB_eI_GI_RI_E}{E_o}(1 - \nu^2)$$

So, with $q = 190$ kN/m^2, it follows that

$$S_e = \frac{(190)(1.38)(0.74)(0.787)(0.907)}{9000}(1 - 0.3^2) = 0.014 \text{ m} \approx \mathbf{14 \text{ mm}}$$

5.4.9 Elastic Settlement of Foundations on Granular Soil: Considering Variation of Soil Modulus of Elasticity with Strain

Berardi and Lancellotta[26] proposed a method to estimate the elastic settlement that takes into account the variation of the modulus of elasticity of soil with the strain level. This method is also described by Berardi et al.[27] According to this procedure,

$$S_e = I_F \frac{qB}{E_s} \tag{5.101}$$

where

I_F = influence factor for a rigid foundation

This is based on the work of Tsytovich.[28] The variation of I_F for $\nu = 0.15$ is given in Table 5.15. In this table H_i is the depth of influence.

TABLE 5.15
Variation of I_F

	Depth of Influence H_i/B			
L/B	**0.5**	**1.0**	**1.5**	**2.0**
1	0.35	0.56	0.63	0.69
2	0.39	0.65	0.76	0.88
3	0.4	0.67	0.81	0.96
5	0.41	0.68	0.84	0.89
10	0.42	0.71	0.89	1.06

Berardi et al.[27] noted that, for square foundations, $H_i \approx B$; and, for strip foundations, $H_i \approx 2B$. For rectangular foundations,

$$H_i \approx \left[1 + \log\left(\frac{L}{B}\right)\right] B \tag{5.102}$$

where

L = length of the foundation

[*Note:* Equation 5.102 is for $L/B \leq 10$].

The modulus of elasticity E_s in Equation 5.121 can be expressed as

$$E_s = K_E p_a \left(\frac{\sigma'_o + 0.5\Delta\sigma'}{p_a}\right)^{0.5} \tag{5.103}$$

where

p_a = atmospheric pressure ($\approx$100 kN/m^2)

σ'_o and $\Delta\sigma'$ = effective overburden stress and net effective stress increase due to the foundation loading, respectively, at the center of the influence zone below the foundation

K_E = nondimensional modulus number

Based on Lancellotta[29] (also see Das and Sivakugan[30]), at 0.1% strain level (i.e., S_e/B)

$$K_{E,0.1\%} = 9.1D_r + 92.5 \quad (\text{for } H_i = B) \tag{5.104}$$

and

$$K_{E,0.1\%} = 11.44D_r - 76.5 \quad (\text{for } H_i = 2B) \tag{5.105}$$

where D_r = relative density of sand (%)

It is important to note that, at $D_r = 60\%$, Equations 5.104 and 5.105 will give values for $K_{E,0.1\%}$ as 638.5 and 609.9, respectively. Similarly, at $D_r = 80\%$, Equations 5.104 and 5.105 will give values for $K_{E,0.1\%}$ as 820.5 and 838.7, respectively. These values of $K_{E,0.1\%}$ are relatively close. Most of the foundations are analyzed within a range of $D_r = 60\%$ to 80%. So, $K_{E,0.1\%}$ values for the range of $H_i = B$ and $2B$ can be reasonably interpolated.

The magnitude of D_r can be estimated as (Skempton[31])

$$D_r = \left[\frac{(N_1)_{60}}{60}\right]^{0.5} \tag{5.106}$$

where

$(N_1)_{60}$ = average corrected standard penetration resistance in the zone of influence

The modulus number K_E, as any other strain level, can be estimated as (Berardi et al.[27], and Das and Sivakugan[30])

$$\frac{K_{E(S_e/B\%)}}{K_{E,\,0.1\%}} = 0.008\left(\frac{S_e}{B}\right)^{-0.7} \tag{5.107}$$

It has been suggested by Lancellotta[29] that

$$\frac{E_{s(S_e/B\%)}}{E_{s(0.1\%)}} = 0.008\left(\frac{S_e}{B}\right)^{-0.7} \tag{5.108}$$

where $E_{s(0.1\%)}$ is the modulus of elasticity of sand when the vertical strain level $\varepsilon_v = S_e/B = 0.1\%$. The value of $K_{E,0.1\%}$ determined from Equations 5.104 and 5.105 can be substituted into Equation 5.103 for estimation of $E_{s(0.1)}$.

Again, from Equations 5.101 and 5.108,

$$\left(\frac{S_e}{B}\right)^{0.3} = \frac{125q(I_F)}{E_{s(0.1\%)}} \tag{5.109}$$

EXAMPLE 5.11

Consider a square foundation 2 m × 2 m in plan. Given

- D_f = 0.5 m
- Load on the foundation = 150 kN/m^2
- Unit weight of sand = 19 kN/m^3
- $(N_1)_{60}$ = 28
- Poisson's ratio, ν = 0.15

Estimate S_e.

Solution

From Equation 5.106,

$$D_r = \left[\frac{(N_1)_{60}}{60}\right]^{0.5} = \left[\frac{28}{60}\right]^{0.5} = 0.683 = 68.3\%$$

For a square foundation, $H_i = B$. So the center of the influence zone will be 1.5 m from the ground surface. Hence, from Equation 5.103

$$\sigma'_o = (1.5)(19) = 28.5\ \text{kN/m}^2$$

For estimating $\Delta\sigma'$, we use Table 5.3. For this case,

$$\frac{z}{B} = \frac{(1.5/2)}{1.5} = 0.5; \quad \frac{L}{B} = \frac{1.5}{1.5} = 1$$

Hence,

$$\frac{\Delta\sigma}{q} = 0.701; \Delta\sigma = (0.701)(150) = 105.15 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

From Table 5.15 for $L/B = 1$ and $H_i/B = 1$, the value of $I_F = 0.56$.

$$\left(\frac{\sigma'_o + 0.5\Delta\sigma'}{p_a}\right)^{0.5} = \left(\frac{28.5 + 0.5 \times 105.15}{100}\right)^{0.5} = 0.9$$

From Equation 5.104,

$$K_{E,\,0.1\%} = 9.1D_r + 92.5 = (9.1)(68.3) + 92.5 = 714.03$$

$$E_{s(0.1\%)} = K_{E,\,0.1\%} p_a \left(\frac{\sigma'_o + 0.5\Delta\sigma'}{p_a}\right)^{0.5} = (714.03)(100)(0.9) \approx 64{,}263 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

From Equation 5.109,

$$\left(\frac{S_e}{B}\right)^{0.3} = \frac{(125)(150)(0.56)}{64{,}263} = 0.163$$

$$S_e = 0.00476 \text{ m} = \mathbf{4.76\ mm}$$

5.4.10 Effect of Ground Water Table Rise on Elastic Settlement of Granular Soil

Any future rise in the water table can reduce the ultimate bearing capacity. Similarly, future water table rise in the vicinity of the foundations in granular soil can reduce the soil stiffness and produce additional settlement. Terzaghi[32] concluded that, when the water table rises from very deep to the foundation level, the settlement will be doubled in granular soils. Shahriar et al.[33] recently conducted several laboratory model tests and numerical modeling to show that the *additional settlement* produced by the rise of water table to any height can be expressed as

$$S_{e,\,\text{additional}} = \frac{A_w}{A_t} S_e \tag{5.110}$$

where

S_e = elastic settlement computed in dry soil
A_w = area of the strain-influence diagram submerged due to water table rise
A_t = total area of the strain-influence diagram

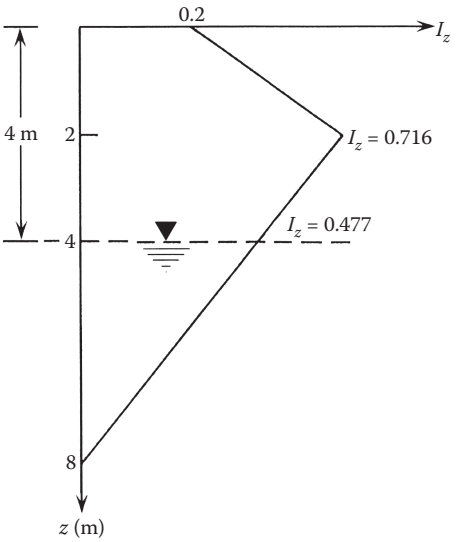


FIGURE 5.25 Strain influence factor with location of ground water table.

EXAMPLE 5.12

Refer to Example 5.7. If the ground water table rises up to 4 m below the bottom of the foundation, what would be the additional elastic settlement of the foundation?

Solution

Refer to Figure 5.25. The strain influence diagram from Example 5.7 has been redrawn.

$$A_t = \frac{1}{2}(0.2+0.716)2+\frac{1}{2}(0.716)(8-2) = 3.064$$

$$A_w = \frac{1}{2}(4)(0.477) = 0.954$$

Additional elastic settlement,

$$S_{e,\text{ additional}} = \frac{A_w}{A_t}S_e = \left(\frac{0.954}{3.064}\right)(76.25) = \mathbf{23.74\ mm}$$

5.5 PRIMARY CONSOLIDATION SETTLEMENT

5.5.1 General Principles of Consolidation Settlement

As explained in Section 5.1, consolidation settlement is a time-dependent process that occurs due to the expulsion of excess pore water pressure in saturated clayey soils below the groundwater table and is created by the increase in stress created by

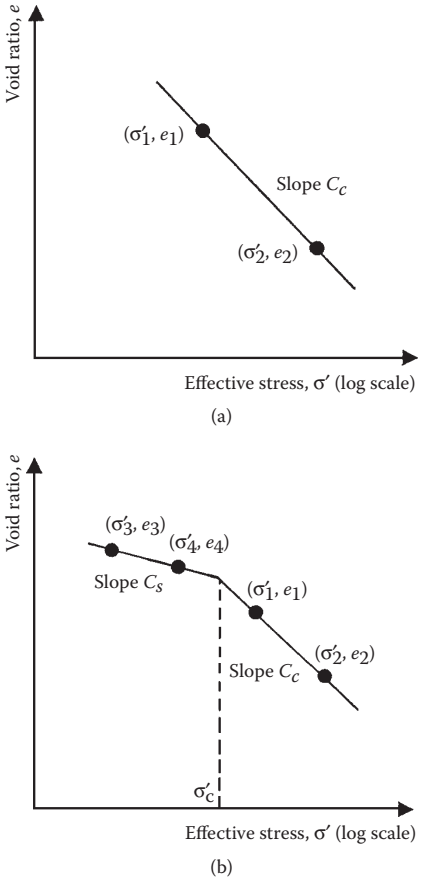


FIGURE 5.26 Nature of variation of void ratio with effective stress: (a) normally consolidated clay and (b) overconsolidated clay.

the foundation load. For *normally consolidated clay*, the nature of the variation of the void ratio e with vertical effective stress σ' is shown in Figure 5.26a. A similar plot for overconsolidated clay is also shown in Figure 5.26b. In this figure, the *preconsolidation pressure* is σ'_c. The slope of the e versus log σ' plot for the normally consolidated portion of the soil is referred to as compression index C_c, or

$$C_c = \frac{e_1 - e_2}{\log(\sigma'_2/\sigma'_1)} \quad (\text{for } \sigma'_1 \geq \sigma'_c) \tag{5.111}$$

Similarly, the slope of the e versus log σ' plot for the overconsolidated portion of the clay is called the swell index C_s, or

$$C_s = \frac{e_3 - e_4}{\log(\sigma'_4/\sigma'_3)} \quad (\text{for } \sigma'_4 \leq \sigma'_c) \tag{5.112}$$

For normally consolidated clays, Terzaghi and Peck[34] gave a correlation for the compression index as

$$C_c = 0.009(LL - 10) \tag{5.113}$$

where
LL = liquid limit

The preceding relation is reliable in the range of ±30% and should not be used for clays with sensitivity ratios greater than four.

Terzaghi and Peck[34] also gave a similar correlation for remolded clays

$$C_c = 0.007(LL - 10) \tag{5.114}$$

Several other correlations for the compression index with the basic index properties of soils have been made, and some of these are given below[35]

$$C_c = 0.01 w_N \quad \text{(for Chicago clays)} \tag{5.115}$$

$$C_c = 0.0046(LL - 9) \quad \text{(for Brazilian clays)} \tag{5.116}$$

$$C_c = 1.21 + 1.055(e_o - 1.87) \quad \text{(for Motley clays, São Paulo city)} \tag{5.117}$$

$$C_c = 0.208 e_o + 0.0083 \quad \text{(for Chicago clays)} \tag{5.118}$$

$$C_c = 0.0115 w_N \text{ (Organic soils, peats, organic silt, and clay)} \tag{5.119}$$

where
w_N = natural moisture content in percent
e_o = in situ void ratio

The swell index C_s for a given soil is about 1/4 to 1/5 C_c.

5.5.2 Relationships for Primary Consolidation Settlement Calculation

Figure 5.27 shows a clay layer of thickness H_c. Let the initial void ratio before the construction of the foundation be e_o, and let the *average effective vertical stress* on the clay layer be σ'_o. The foundation located at a depth D_f is subjected to a net average pressure increase of q. This will result in an increase in the vertical stress in the soil. If the vertical stress increase at any point below the *center line* of the foundation is $\Delta\sigma$, the *average vertical stress increase* $\Delta\sigma_{av}$ in the clay layer can thus be given as

$$\Delta\sigma_{av} = \frac{1}{H_2 - H_1} \int_{z=H_1}^{z=H_2} (\Delta\sigma)\, dz \tag{5.120}$$

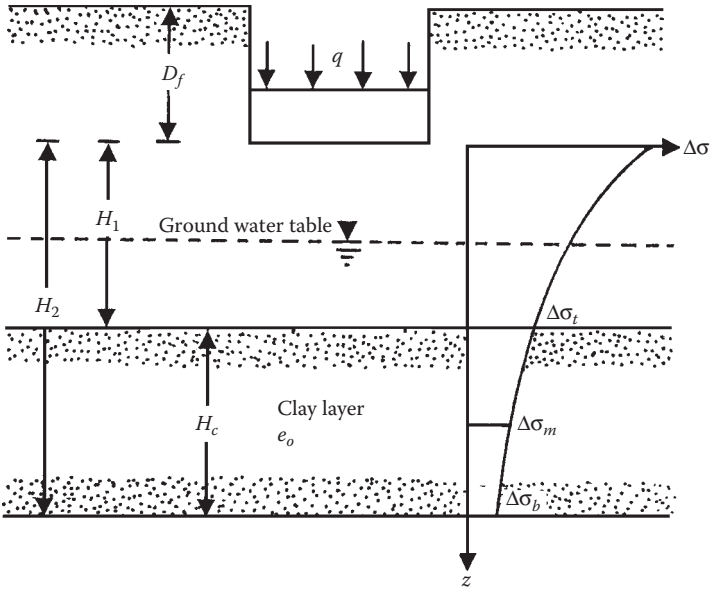


FIGURE 5.27 Primary consolidation settlement calculation.

The consolidation settlement S_c due to this average stress increase can be calculated as follows:

$$S_c = \frac{\Delta e}{1+e_o} = \frac{C_c H_c}{1+e_o}\log\left(\frac{\sigma'_o + \Delta\sigma_{av}}{\sigma'_o}\right) \tag{5.121}$$

(for normally consolidated clay, i.e., $\sigma'_o = \sigma'_c$)

$$S_c = \frac{\Delta e}{1+e_o} = \frac{C_s H_c}{1+e_o}\log\left(\frac{\sigma'_o + \Delta\sigma_{av}}{\sigma'_o}\right) \tag{5.122}$$

(for overconsolidated clay, i.e., $\sigma'_o + \Delta\sigma_{av} \geq \sigma'_c$)

$$S_c = \frac{\Delta e}{1+e_o} = \frac{C_s H_c}{1+e_o}\log\left(\frac{\sigma'_c}{\sigma'_o}\right) + \frac{C_c H_c}{1+e_o}\log\left(\frac{\sigma'_o + \Delta\sigma_{av}}{\sigma'_c}\right) \tag{5.123}$$

(for overconsolidated clay and $\sigma'_o < \sigma'_c < \sigma'_o + \Delta\sigma_{av}$)

where

Δe = change of void ratio due to primary consolidation

Equations 5.121 through 5.123 can be used in two ways to calculate the primary consolidation settlement. They are given below.

Method A

According to this method, σ'_o is the in situ average of effective stress (i.e., the effective stress at the middle of the clay layer). The magnitude of $\Delta\sigma_{av}$ can be calculated as (Figure 5.27)

$$\Delta\sigma_{av} = \frac{1}{6}(\Delta\sigma_t + 4\Delta\sigma_m + \Delta\sigma_b) \tag{5.124}$$

where

$\Delta\sigma_t$, $\Delta\sigma_m$, $\Delta\sigma_b$ = increase in stress at the top, middle, and bottom of the clay layer, respectively

The stress increase can be calculated by using the principles given previously in this chapter.

The average stress increase $\Delta\sigma_{av}$ from $z = 0$ to $z = H$ below the center of a uniformly loaded flexible rectangular area (Figure 5.28) was obtained by (Griffiths[36]) using the integration method, or

$$\Delta\sigma_{av} = qI_{av} \tag{5.125}$$

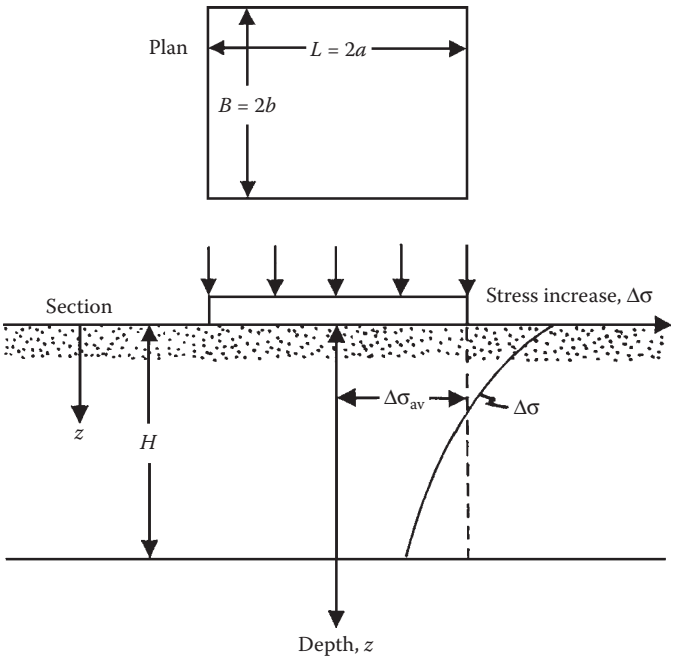


FIGURE 5.28 Average stress increase $\Delta\sigma_{av}$.

where

$$I_{av} = f\left(\frac{a}{H}, \frac{b}{H}\right) \tag{5.126}$$

a, b = half-length and half-width of the foundation

The variation of I_{av} is given in Figure 5.29 as a function of a/H and b/H. It is important to realize that I_{av} calculated by using this figure is for the case of average stress increase from $z = 0$ to $z = H$ (Figure 5.28). For calculating the average stress increase in a clay layer as shown in Figure 5.30,

$$I_{av(H_1/H_2)} = \frac{H_2 I_{av(H_2)} - H_1 I_{av(H_1)}}{H_2 - H_1}$$

where

$$I_{av(H_2)} = f\left(\frac{a}{H_2}, \frac{b}{H_2}\right)$$

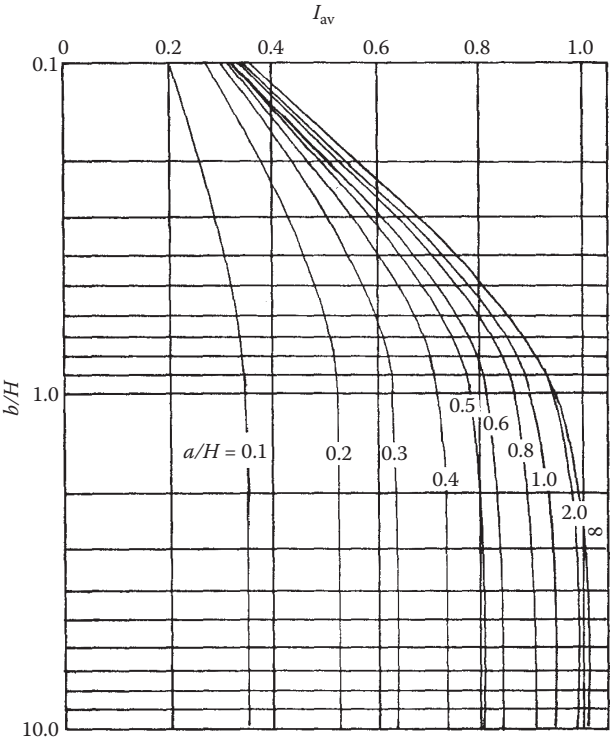


FIGURE 5.29 Variation of I_{av} with a/H and b/H.

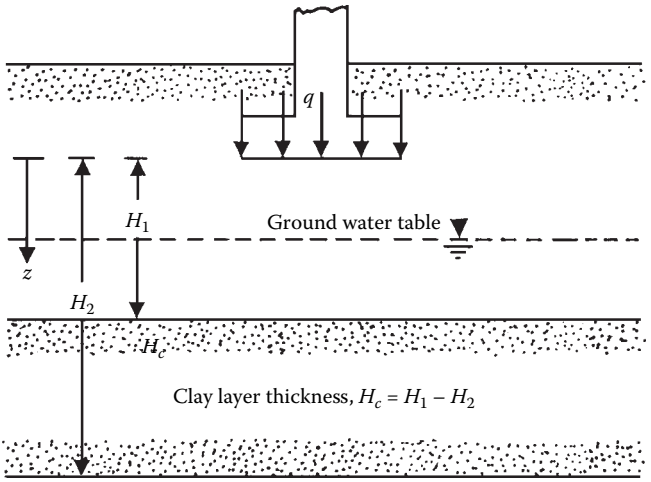


FIGURE 5.30 Average stress increase in a clay layer.

$$I_{\text{av}(H_1)} = f\left(\frac{a}{H_1}, \frac{b}{H_1}\right)$$

$$H_2 - H_1 = H_c$$

So,

$$\Delta\sigma_{\text{av}} = q\left[\frac{H_2 I_{\text{av}(H_2)} - H_1 I_{\text{av}(H_1)}}{H_c}\right] \tag{5.127}$$

Method B

In this method, a given clay layer can be divided into several thin layers having thicknesses of $H_{c(1)}$, $H_{c(2)}$, … , $H_{c(n)}$ (Figure 5.31). The in situ effective stresses at the

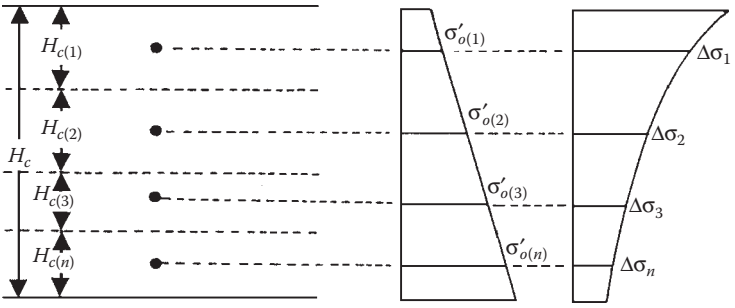


FIGURE 5.31 Consolidation settlement calculation using Method B.

middle of each layer are $\sigma'_{o(1)}, \sigma'_{o(2)}, \ldots, \sigma'_{o(n)}$. The average stress increase for each layer can be approximated to be equal to the vertical stress increase at the middle of each soil layer (i.e., $\Delta\sigma_{av(1)} \approx \Delta\sigma_1$, $\Delta\sigma_{av(2)} \approx \Delta\sigma_2$, … , $\Delta\sigma_{av(n)} \approx \Delta\sigma_n$). Hence, the consolidation settlement of the entire layer can be calculated as

$$S_c = \sum_{i=1}^{i=n} \frac{\Delta e_i}{1 + e_{o(i)}} \tag{5.128}$$

EXAMPLE 5.13

Refer to Figure 5.32. Using Method A, determine the primary consolidation settlement of a foundation measuring 1.5 m × 3 m ($B \times L$) in plan.

Solution

From Equation 5.121 and given: $C_c = 0.27$; $H_c = 3$ m; $e_o = 0.92$, $\sigma'_o = (1 + 1.5)(16.5) + (1.5)(17.8 - 9.81) + 3/2\,(18.2 - 9.81) = 65.82$ kN/m^2

$$a = \frac{L}{2} = \frac{3}{2} = 1.5 \text{ m}$$
$$b = \frac{B}{2} = \frac{1.5}{2} = 0.75 \text{ m}$$
$$H_1 = 1.5 + 1.5 = 3 \text{ m}$$
$$H_2 = 1.5 + 1.5 + 3 = 6 \text{ m}$$

$$\frac{a}{H_1} = \frac{1.5}{3} = 0.5; \frac{b}{H_1} = \frac{0.75}{3} = 0.25$$

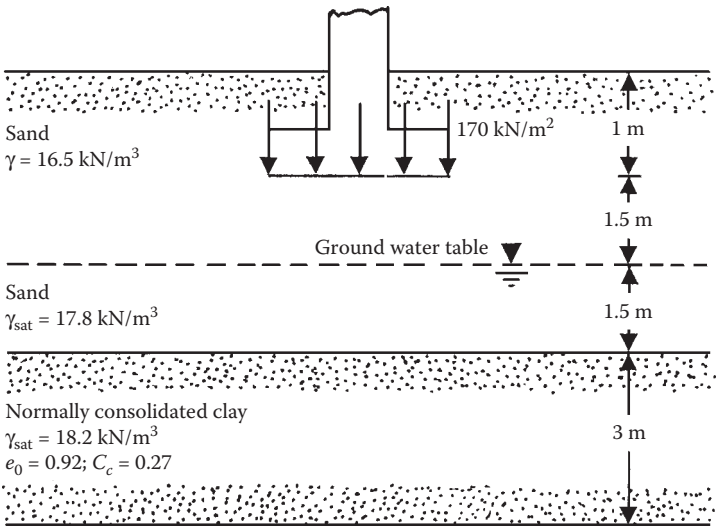


FIGURE 5.32 Consolidation settlement of a shallow foundation.

From Figure 5.29, $I_{av(H_1)} = 0.54$. Similarly,

$$\frac{a}{H_2} = \frac{1.5}{6} = 0.25; \quad \frac{b}{H_2} = \frac{0.75}{6} = 0.125$$

From Figure 5.29, $I_{av(H_2)} = 0.34$.
From Equation 5.127,

$$\Delta\sigma_{av} = q\left[\frac{H_2 I_{av(H_2)} - H_1 I_{av(H_1)}}{H_c}\right] = 170\left[\frac{(6)(0.34) - (3)(0.54)}{3}\right] = 23.8 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

$$S_c = \frac{(0.27)(3)}{1+0.9}\log\left(\frac{65.82 + 23.8}{65.82}\right) = 0.057 \text{ m} = \mathbf{57 \text{ mm}}$$

EXAMPLE 5.14

Solve Example 5.13 by Method B. (*Note:* Divide the clay layer into three layers, each 1 m thick.)

Solution

The following tables can now be prepared:

Calculation of σ'_o

Layer No.	Layer Thickness, H_i (m)	Depth to the Middle of Clay Layer (m)	σ'_o (kN/m²)
1	1	1.0 + 1.5 + 1.5 + 0.5 = 4.5	(1 + 1.5)16.5 + (1.5)(17.8 – 9.81) + (0.5)(18.2 – 9.81) = 57.43
2	1	4.5 + 1 = 5.5	57.43 + (1)(18.2 – 9.81) = 65.82
3	1	5.5 + 1 = 6.5	65.82 + (1)(18.2 – 9.81) = 74.21

Calculation of $\Delta\sigma_{av}$

Layer No.	Layer Thickness H_i (m)	Depth to Middle of Layer from Bottom of Foundation, z (m)	L/B[a]	z/B	$\frac{\Delta\sigma_{(av)}}{q}$[b]	$\Delta\sigma_{av}$[c]
1	1	3.5	2	2.33	0.16	27.2
2	1	4.5	2	3.0	0.095	16.15
3	1	5.5	2	3.67	0.07	11.9

[a] $B = 1.5$ m; $L = 3$ m
[b] Table 5.3
[c] $q = 170$ kN/m²

$$S_c = \sum \frac{C_c H_i}{1+e_o} \log\left(\frac{\sigma'_{o(i)} + \Delta\sigma_{av(i)}}{\sigma'_{o(i)}}\right)$$
$$= \frac{(0.27)(1)}{1+0.9}\left[\log\left(\frac{57.43+27.2}{57.43}\right) + \log\left(\frac{65.82+16.15}{65.82}\right) + \log\left(\frac{74.21+11.9}{74.21}\right)\right]$$
$$= (0.142)(0.168+0.096+0.065) = 0.047 \text{ m} = \mathbf{47\ mm}$$

5.5.3 Three-Dimensional Effect on Primary Consolidation Settlement

The procedure described in the preceding section is for one-dimensional consolidation and will provide a good estimation for a field case where the width of the foundation is large relative to the thickness of the compressible stratum H_c, and also when the compressible material lies between two stiffer soil layers. This is because the magnitude of horizontal strains is relatively less in the above cases.

In order to account for the 3D effect, Skempton and Bjerrum[37] proposed a correction to the 1D consolidation settlement for normally consolidated clays. This can be explained by referring to Figure 5.33, which shows a circularly loaded area (diameter = B) on a layer of normally consolidated clay of thickness H_c. Let the stress increase at a depth z under the center line of the loaded area be $\Delta\sigma_1$ (vertical) and $\Delta\sigma_3$ (lateral). The increase in pore water pressure due to the increase in stress Δu can be given as

$$\Delta u = \Delta\sigma_3 + A(\Delta\sigma_1 - \Delta\sigma_3) \tag{5.129}$$

where

A = pore water pressure parameter

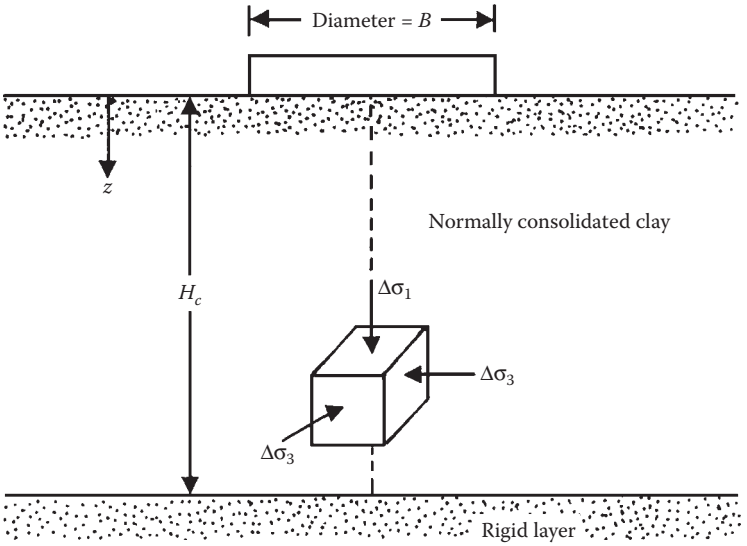


FIGURE 5.33 3D effect on primary consolidation settlement (circular foundation of diameter B).

The consolidation settlement dS_c of an elemental soil layer of thickness dz is

$$dS_c = m_v \cdot \Delta u \cdot dz = \left[\frac{\Delta e}{(1+e_o)\Delta\sigma_1}\right](\Delta u)(dz) \tag{5.130}$$

where

m_v = volume coefficient of compressibility
Δe = change in void ratio
e_o = initial void ratio

Hence,

$$S_c = \int dS_c = \int_0^{H_c}\left[\frac{\Delta e}{(1+e_o)\Delta\sigma_1}\right][\Delta\sigma_3 + A(\Delta\sigma_1 - \Delta\sigma_3]\, dz$$

or

$$S_c = \int_0^{H_c} m_v \Delta\sigma_1 \left[A + \frac{\Delta\sigma_3}{\Delta\sigma_1}(1-A)\right] dz \tag{5.131}$$

For conventional 1D consolidation (Section 5.5.1),

$$S_{c(\text{oed})} = \int_0^{H_c}\frac{\Delta e}{1+e_o}dz = \int_0^{H_c}\frac{\Delta e}{\Delta\sigma_1(1+e_o)}\Delta\sigma_1\, dz = \int_0^{H_c} m_v\Delta\sigma_1\, dz \tag{5.132}$$

From Equations 5.131 and 5.132, the correction factor can be expressed as

$$\begin{aligned}\mu_{c(\text{NC})} &= \frac{S_c}{S_{c(\text{oed})}} = \frac{\int_0^{H_c} m_v\Delta\sigma_1[A + (\Delta\sigma_3/\Delta\sigma_1)(1-A)]\, dz}{\int_0^{H_c} m_v\Delta\sigma_1\, dz} \\ &= A + (1-A)\frac{\int_0^{H_c}\Delta\sigma_3\, dz}{\int_0^{H_c}\Delta\sigma_1\, dz} \\ &= A + (1-A)M_1\end{aligned} \tag{5.133}$$

where

$$M_1 = \frac{\int_0^{H_c}\Delta\sigma_3\, dz}{\int_0^{H_c}\Delta\sigma_1\, dz} \tag{5.134}$$

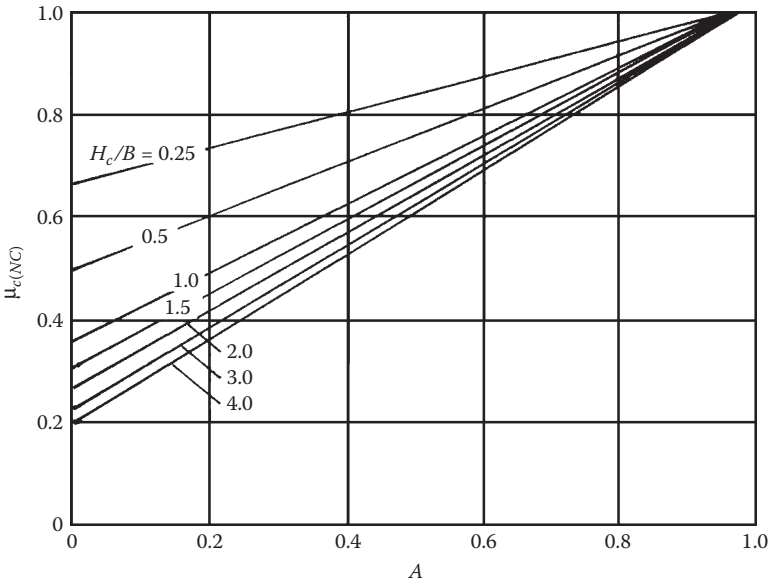


FIGURE 5.34 Variation of $\mu_{c(NC)}$ with A and H_c/B (Equation 5.133).

The variation of $\mu_{c(NC)}$ with A and H_c/B is shown in Figure 5.34.

In a similar manner, we can derive an expression for a uniformly loaded strip foundation of width B supported by a normally consolidated clay layer (Figure 5.35). Let $\Delta\sigma_1$, $\Delta\sigma_2$, and $\Delta\sigma_3$ be the increases in stress at a depth z below the center line of the foundation. For this condition, it can be shown that

$$\Delta u = \Delta\sigma_3 + \left[\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\left(A - \frac{1}{3}\right) + \frac{1}{2}\right](\Delta\sigma_1 - \Delta\sigma_3) \quad (\text{for } \nu = 0.5) \tag{5.135}$$

In a similar manner as Equation 5.131,

$$S_c = \int_0^{H_c} m_v \Delta\sigma_1 \left[N + (1-N)\frac{\Delta\sigma_3}{\Delta\sigma_1}\right] dz \tag{5.136}$$

where

$$N = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\left(A - \frac{1}{3}\right) + \frac{1}{2} \tag{5.137}$$

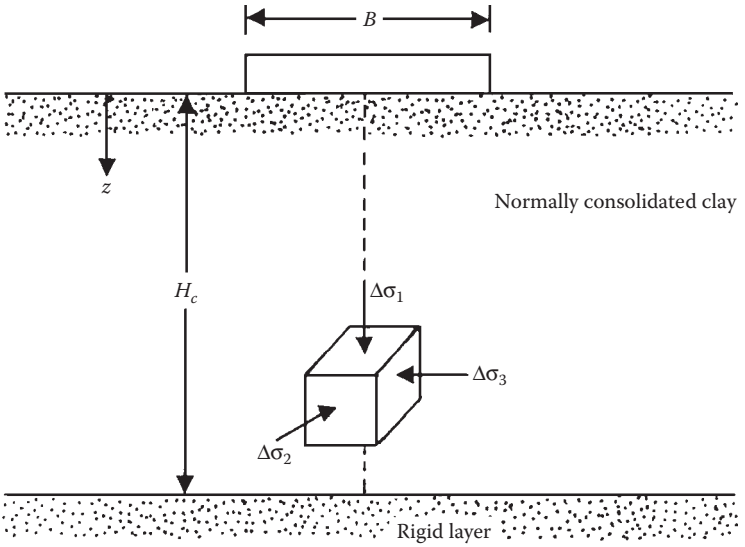


FIGURE 5.35 3D effect on primary consolidation settlement (continuous foundation of width *B*).

Thus,

$$\mu_{s(\mathrm{NC})} = \frac{S_c}{S_{c(\mathrm{oed})}} = \frac{\int_0^{H_c} m_v \Delta\sigma_1 [N + (1-N)(\Delta\sigma_3/\Delta\sigma_1)]dz}{\int_0^{H_c} m_v \Delta\sigma_1 \, dz} = N + (1-N)M_2 \tag{5.138}$$

where

$$M_2 = \frac{\int_0^{H_c} \Delta\sigma_3 \, dz}{\int_0^{H_c} \Delta\sigma_1 \, dz} \tag{5.139}$$

The plot of $\mu_{s(\mathrm{NC})}$ with *A* for varying values of H_c/B is shown in Figure 5.36.

Leonards[38] considered the correction factor $\mu_{c(\mathrm{OC})}$ for 3D consolidation effect in the field for a circular foundation located over *overconsolidated clay*. Referring to Figure 5.37,

$$S_c = \mu_{c(\mathrm{OC})} S_{c(\mathrm{oed})} \tag{5.140}$$

where

$$\mu_{c(\mathrm{OC})} = f\left(\mathrm{OCR}, \frac{B}{H_c}\right) \tag{5.141}$$

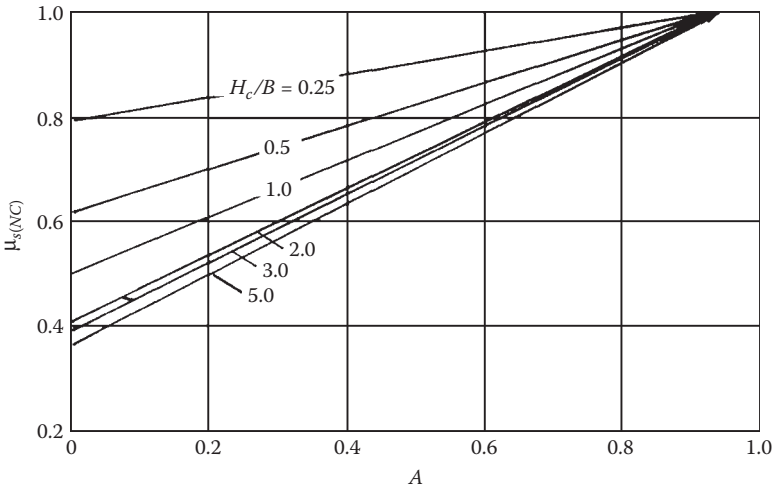


FIGURE 5.36 Variation of $\mu_{c(NC)}$ with A and H_c/B (Equation 5.138).

$$OCR = \frac{\sigma_c'}{\sigma_o'} \tag{5.142}$$

σ_c' = preconsolidation pressure
σ_o' = present effective consolidation pressure

The interpolated values of $\mu_{c(OC)}$ from the work of Leonards[38] are given in Table 5.16.

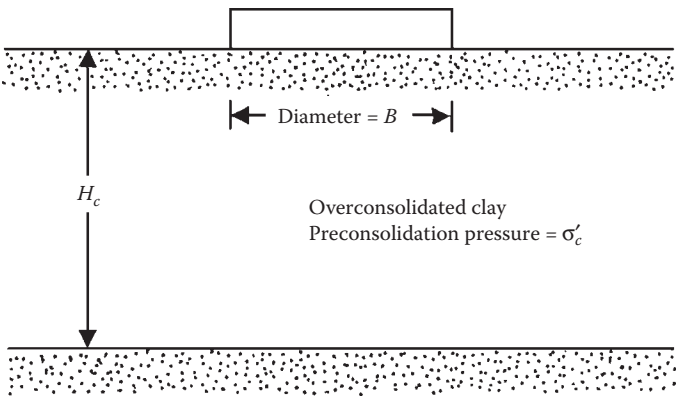


FIGURE 5.37 3D effect on primary consolidation settlement of overconsolidated clays (circular foundation).

TABLE 5.16
Variation of $\mu_{c(OC)}$ with OCR and B/H_c

	$\mu_{c(OC)}$		
OCR	$B/H_c = 4.0$	$B/H_c = 1.0$	$B/H_c = 0.2$
1	1	1	1
2	0.986	0.957	0.929
3	0.972	0.914	0.842
4	0.964	0.871	0.771
5	0.950	0.829	0.707
6	0.943	0.800	0.643
7	0.929	0.757	0.586
8	0.914	0.729	0.529
9	0.900	0.700	0.493
10	0.886	0.671	0.457
11	0.871	0.643	0.429
12	0.864	0.629	0.414
13	0.857	0.614	0.400
14	0.850	0.607	0.386
15	0.843	0.600	0.371
16	0.843	0.600	0.357

EXAMPLE 5.15

Refer to Example 5.13. Assume that the pore water pressure parameter A for the clay is 0.6. Considering the 3D effect, estimate the consolidation settlement.

Solution

Note that Equation 5.133 and Figure 5.34 are valid for only an axisymmetrical case; however, an approximate procedure can be adopted. Refer to Figure 5.38. If we assume that the load from the foundation spreads out along planes having slopes of 2V:1H, then the dimensions of the loaded area on the top of the clay layer are

$$B' = 1.5 + \frac{1}{2}(3) = 3 \text{ m}$$

$$L' = 3 + \frac{1}{2}(3) = 4.5 \text{ m}$$

The diameter of an equivalent circular area B_{eq} can be given as

$$\frac{\pi}{4} B_{eq}^2 = B'L'$$

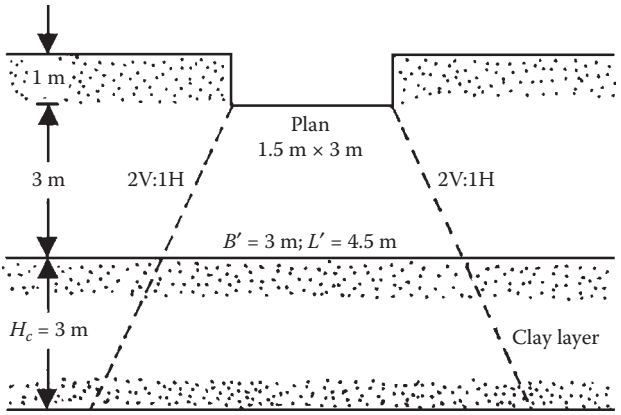


FIGURE 5.38 2V: 1H load distribution under the foundation.

or

$$B_{eq}^2 = \sqrt{\frac{4}{\pi}B'L'} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{4}{\pi}\right)(3)(4.5)} \approx 4.15 \text{ m}$$

$$\frac{H_c}{B} = \frac{3}{4.15} = 0.723$$

From Figure 5.34, for $A = 0.6$ and $H_c/B = 0.723$, the magnitude of $\mu_{c(NC)} \approx 0.76$. So,

$$S_c = S_{c(oed)}\mu_{c(NC)} = (57)(0.76) = \mathbf{43.3\ mm}$$

5.6 SECONDARY CONSOLIDATION SETTLEMENT

5.6.1 Secondary Compression Index

Secondary consolidation follows the primary consolidation process and takes place under essentially constant effective stress as shown in Figure 5.39. The slope of the void ratio versus log-of-time plot is equal to C_α, or

$$C_\alpha = \text{secondary compression index} = \frac{\Delta e}{\log(t_2/t_1)} \tag{5.143}$$

The magnitude of the secondary compression index can vary widely, and some general ranges are as follows:

- Overconsolidated clays (OCR > 2–3)—>0.001
- Organic soils—0.025 or more
- Normally consolidated clays—0.004–0.025

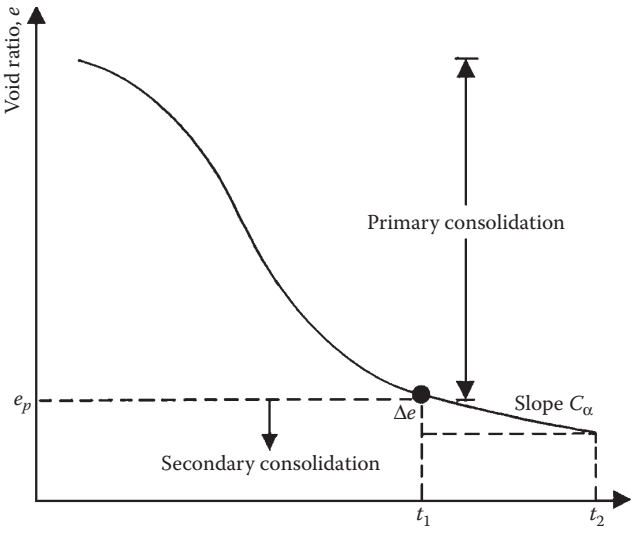


FIGURE 5.39 Secondary consolidation settlement.

5.6.2 Secondary Consolidation Settlement

The secondary consolidation settlement S_s can be calculated as

$$S_s = \frac{C_\alpha H_c}{1+e_p}\log\left(\frac{t_2}{t_1}\right) \tag{5.144}$$

where

e_p = void ratio at the end of primary consolidation
t_2, t_1 = time

In a majority of cases, secondary consolidation is small compared to primary consolidation settlement. It can, however, be substantial for highly plastic clays and organic soils.

EXAMPLE 5.16

Refer to Example 5.13. Assume that the primary consolidation settlement is completed in 3 years. Also, let $C_\alpha = 0.006$. Estimate the secondary consolidation settlement at the end of 10 years.

Solution

From Equation 5.144,

$$S_s = \frac{C_\alpha H_c}{1+e_p}\log\left(\frac{t_2}{t_1}\right)$$

Given: $H_c = 3$ m, $C_\alpha = 0.006$, $t_2 = 10$ years, and $t_1 = 3$ years. From Equation 5.111,

$$C_c = \frac{e_o - e_p}{\log(\sigma_2'/\sigma_1')}$$

From Example 5.13, $\sigma_1' = 65.82$ kN/m^2, $\sigma_2' = 65.82 + 23.8 = 89.62$ kN/m^2, $C_c = 0.27$, $e_o = 0.92$. So,

$$0.27 = \frac{0.92 - e_p}{\log(89.62/65.82)}$$

$e_p = 0.884$,

$$S_s = \frac{(0.006)(3)}{1+0.884}\log\left(\frac{10}{3}\right) \approx 0.005\,\text{m} = \mathbf{5\ mm}$$

5.7 DIFFERENTIAL SETTLEMENT

5.7.1 General Concept of Differential Settlement

In most instances, the subsoil is not homogeneous and the load carried by various shallow foundations of a given structure can vary widely. As a result, it is reasonable to expect varying degrees of settlement in different parts of a given building. The *differential settlement* of various parts of a building can lead to damage of the superstructure. Hence, it is important to define certain parameters to quantify differential settlement and develop limiting values for these parameters for desired safe performance of structures. Burland and Worth[39] summarized the important parameters relating to differential settlement. Figure 5.40 shows a structure in which various foundations at A, B, C, D, and E have gone through some settlement. The settlement at A is AA', and at B it is BB', … Based on this figure the definitions of the various parameters follow:

S_T = total settlement of a given point
ΔS_T = difference between total settlement between any two parts
α = gradient between two successive points
β = angular distortion = $\Delta S_{T(ij)}/l_{ij}$ (*Note:* l_{ij} = distance between points i and j)
ω = tilt
Δ = relative deflection (i.e., movement from a straight line joining two reference points)
Δ/L = deflection ratio

Since the 1950s, attempts have been made by various researchers and building codes to recommend allowable values for the above parameters. A summary of some of these recommendations is given in the following section.

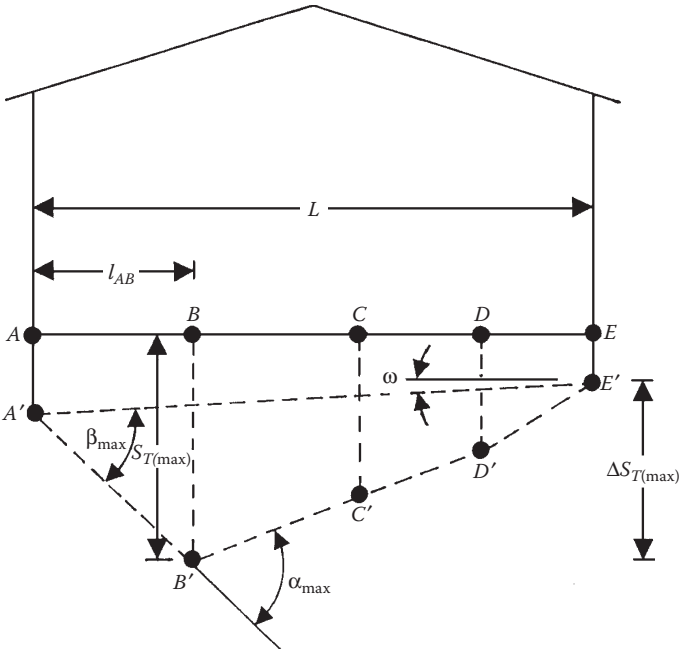


FIGURE 5.40 Definition of parameters for differential settlement.

5.7.2 Limiting Value of Differential Settlement Parameters

In 1956, Skempton and MacDonald[40] proposed the following limiting values for maximum settlement, maximum differential settlement, and maximum angular distortion to be used for building purposes:

Maximum settlement $S_{T(max)}$
- In sand—32 mm
- In clay—45 mm

Maximum differential settlement $\Delta S_{T(max)}$
- Isolated foundations in sand—51 mm
- Isolated foundations in clay—76 mm
- Raft in sand—51–76 mm
- Raft in clay—76–127 mm

Maximum angular distortion β_{max}—1/300

Based on experience, Polshin and Tokar[41] provided the allowable deflection ratios for buildings as a function of L/H (L = length; H = height of building), which are as follows:

$\Delta/L = 0.0003$ for $L/H \leq 2$
$\Delta/L = 0.001$ for $L/H = 8$

The 1955 Soviet Code of Practice gives the following allowable values:

Building Type	L/H	Δ/L
Multistory buildings and civil dwellings	≤3	0.0003 (for sand)
		0.0004 (for clay)
	≥5	0.0005 (for sand)
		0.0007 (for clay)
One-story mills		0.001 (for sand and clay)

Bjerrum[42] recommended the following limiting angular distortions (β_{max}) for various structures:

Category of Potential Damage	β_{max}
Safe limit for flexible brick wall ($L/H > 4$)	1/150
Danger of structural damage to most buildings	1/150
Cracking of panel and brick walls	1/150
Visible tilting of high rigid buildings	1/250
First cracking of panel walls	1/300
Safe limit for no cracking of building	1/500
Danger to frames with diagonals	1/600

Grant et al.[43] correlated $S_{T(max)}$ and β_{max} for several buildings with the following results:

Soil Type	Foundation Type	Correlation
Clay	Isolated shallow foundation	$S_{T(max)}$ (mm) = 30,000 β_{max}
Clay	Raft	$S_{T(max)}$ (mm) = 35,000 β_{max}
Sand	Isolated shallow foundation	$S_{T(max)}$ (mm) = 15,000 β_{max}
Sand	Raft	$S_{T(max)}$ (mm) = 18,000 β_{max}

Using the above correlations, if the maximum allowable value of β_{max} is known, the magnitude of the allowable $S_{T(max)}$ can be calculated.

The European Committee for Standardization provided values for limiting values for serviceability limit states[44] and the maximum accepted foundation movements,[45] and these are given in Table 5.17.

TABLE 5.17
Recommendation of European Committee for Standardization on Differential Settlement Parameters

Item	Parameter	Magnitude	Comments
Limiting values for serviceability[44]	S_T	25 mm	Isolated shallow foundation
		50 mm	Raft foundation
	ΔS_T	5 mm	Frames with rigid cladding
		10 mm	Frames with flexible cladding
		20 mm	Open frames
	β	1/500	–
Maximum acceptable foundation movement[45]	S_T	50	Isolated shallow foundation
	ΔS_T	20	Isolated shallow foundation
	β	≈1/500	–

REFERENCES

1. Boussinesq, J. 1883. *Application des potentials a l'etude de l'equilibre et due mouvement des solides elastiques*. Paris, France: Gauthier-Villars.
2. Ahlvin, R. G. and H. H. Ulery. 1962. Tabulated values for determining the complete pattern of stresses, strains, and deflections beneath a uniform load on a homogeneous half space. *Highway Res. Rec., Bull.*, 342: 1.
3. Westergaard, H. M. 1938. A problem of elasticity suggested by a problem in soil mechanics: Soft material reinforced by numerous strong horizontal sheets. In *Contribution to the Mechanics of Solids, Stephen Timoshenko 60th Anniversary Volume*. New York: Macmillan.
4. Borowicka, H. 1936. Influence of rigidity of a circular foundation slab on the distribution of pressures over the contact surface. In *Proceedings of the First International Conference on Soil Mechanics and Foundation Engineering*, Boston, USA, Vol. 2, p. 144.
5. Trautmann, C. H. and F. H. Kulhawy. 1987. *CUFAD—A computer program for compression and uplift foundation analysis and design*. Report EL-4540-CCM, Vol. 16, Palo Alto, California: Electric Power Research Institute.
6. Schmertmann, J. H. 1970. Static cone to compute settlement over sand. *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div., ASCE*, 96(8): 1011.
7. Schmertmann, J. H., J. P. Hartman, and P. R. Brown. 1978. Improved strain influence factor diagrams. *J. Geotech. Eng. Div., ASCE*, 104(8): 1131.
8. Terzaghi, K., R. B. Peck, and G. Mesri. 1995. *Soil Mechanics in Engineering Practice*. New York: Wiley.
9. Chen, Y. J. and F. H. Kulhawy. 1994. *Case history evaluation of the behavior of drilled shafts under axial and lateral loading*. Final Report, Project 1493-04, EPRI TR-104601. Ithaca, New York: Cornell University.
10. D'Appolonia, D. T., H. G. Poulos, and C. C. Ladd. 1971. Initial settlement of structures on clay. *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div., ASCE*, 97(10): 1359.
11. Duncan, J. M. and A. L. Buchignani. 1976. *An Engineering Manual for Settlement Studies*. Berkeley, California: Department of Civil Engineering, University of California.
12. Janbu, N., L. Bjerrum, and B. Kjaernsli. 1956. *Veiledning ved losning av fundamenteringsoppgaver*. Oslo, Norway: Norwegian Geotechnical Institute Publication 16.

13. Christian, J. T. and W. D. Carrier III. 1978. Janbu, Bjerrum and Kjaernsli's chart reinterpreted. *Canadian Geotech. J.*, 15(1): 124.
14. Terzaghi, K. and R. B. Peck. 1967. *Soil Mechanics in Engineering Practice*, 2nd edn. New York: Wiley.
15. Meyerhof, G. G. 1956. Penetration tests and bearing capacity of cohesionless soils. *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div., ASCE*, 82(1): 1.
16. Meyerhof, G. G. 1965. Shallow foundations. *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div., ASCE*, 91(2): 21.
17. Peck, R. B. and A. R. S. S. Bazaraa. 1969. Discussion of paper by D'Appolonia et al. *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div., ASCE*, 95(3): 305.
18. Burland, J. B. and M. C. Burbidge. 1985. Settlement of foundations on sand and gravel. *Proc. Inst. Civil Eng.*, 78(1): 1325.
19. Eggestad, A. 1963. Deformation measurements below a model footing on the surface of dry sand. In *Proceedings of the European Conference on Soil Mechanics and Foundation Engineering*, Vol. 1, Weisbaden, Germany, p. 223.
20. Salgado, R. 2008. *The Engineering of Foundations*. New York: McGraw-Hill.
21. Akbas, S. O. and F. H. Kulhawy. 2009. Axial compression of footings in cohesion-less soils: I. *J. Geotech. Geoenviron. Eng., ASCE*, 135(11): 1562.
22. Bowles, J. E. 1987. Elastic foundation settlement on sand deposits. *J. Geotech. Eng., ASCE*, 113(8): 846.
23. Steinbrenner, W. 1934. Tafeln zur setzungsberschnung. *Die Strasse*, Munich, Germany, 1: 121.
24. Fox, E. N. 1948. The mean elastic settlement of a uniformly loaded area at a depth below the ground surface. In *Proceedings of the Second International Conference on Soil Mechanics and Foundation Engineering*, Rotterdam, The Netherlands, Vol. 1, p. 129.
25. Mayne, P. W. and H. G. Poulos. 1999. Approximate displacement influence factors for elastic shallow foundations. *J. Geotech. Geoenviron. Eng., ASCE*, 125(6): 453.
26. Berardi, R. and R. Lancellotta. 1991. Stiffness of granular soil from field performance. *Geotechnique*, 41(1): 149.
27. Berardi, R., M. Jamiolkowski, and R. Lancellotta. 1991. Settlement of shallow foundations in sands: Selection of stiffness on the basis of penetration resistance. In *Geotechnical Engineering Congress 1991*, Boulder, CO, USA, Geotech. Special Pub. 27, ASCE, p. 185.
28. Tsytovich, N. A. 1951. *Soil Mechanics*. Moscow: Stroitielstvo I. Archiketura. (In Russian.)
29. Lancellotta, R. 2009. *Geotechnical Engineering*, 2nd edn. London: Taylor & Francis.
30. Das, B. M. and N. Sivakugan. 2017. *Fundamentals of Geotechnical Engineering*, 5th edn. Boston, Massachusetts: Cengage Learning.
31. Skempton, A. W. 1986. Standard penetration test procedures and the effects in sands of overburden pressure, relative density, particle size, aging, and overconsolidation. *Geotechnique*, 36(3): 425.
32. Terzaghi, K. 1943. *Theoretical Soil Mechanics*. New York: Wiley.
33. Shahriar, M. A., N. Sivakugan, B. M. Das, A. Urquhart, and M. Tapiolas. 2014. Water table correction factors for settlement of shallow foundations in granular soil. *Int. J. Geomechanics, ASCE*, 15(1): 1.
34. Terzaghi, K. and R. B. Peck. 1967. *Soil Mechanics in Engineering Practice*, 2nd edn. New York: Wiley.
35. Azzouz, A. S., R. T. Krizek, and R. B. Corotis. 1976. Regression analysis of soil compressibility. *Soils Found.*, 16(2): 19.
36. Griffiths, D. V. 1984. A chart for estimating the average vertical stress increase in an elastic foundation below a uniformly loaded rectangular area. *Canadian Geotech. J.*, 21(4): 710.

37. Skempton, A. W. and L. Bjerrum. 1957. A contribution to settlement analysis of foundations in clay. *Geotechnique*, 7: 168.
38. Leonards, G. A. 1976. *Estimating consolidation settlement of shallow foundations on overconsolidated clay*. Special Report 163. Washington, DC: Transportation Research Board, p. 13.
39. Burland, J. B. and C. P. Worth. 1970. Allowable and differential settlement of structures, including damage and soil-structure interaction. In *Proceedings of the Conference on Settlement of Structures*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University, p. 11.
40. Skempton, A. W. and D. H. MacDonald. 1956. The allowable settlement of buildings. In *Proceedings of the Institution of Civil Engineers*, London, Vol. 5, Part III, p. 727.
41. Polshin, D. E. and R. A. Tokar. 1957. Maximum allowable non-uniform settlement of structures. In *Proceedings of the Fourth International Conference on Soil Mechanics and Foundation Engineering*, Vol. 1, London, p. 402.
42. Bjerrum, L. 1963. Allowable settlement of structures. In *Proceedings of the European Conference on Soil Mechanics and Foundation Engineering*, Vol. 3, Weisbaden, Germany, p. 135.
43. Grant, R., J. T. Christian, and E. H. Vanmarcke. 1974. Differential settlement of buildings. *J. Geotech. Eng. Div., ASCE*, 100(9): 973.
44. European Committee for Standardization. 1994. *Basis of Design and Actions on Structures*. Eurocode 1, Brussels, Belgium: European Committee for Standardization.
45. European Committee for Standardization. 1994. *Geotechnical Design, General Rules—Part I*. Eurocode 7, Brussels, Belgium: European Committee for Standardization.

6 Dynamic Bearing Capacity and Settlement

6.1 INTRODUCTION

Depending on the type of superstructure and type of loading, a shallow foundation may be subjected to dynamic loading. The dynamic loading may be of various types, such as (a) monotonic loading with varying velocities, (b) earthquake loading, (c) cyclic loading, and (d) transient loading. The ultimate bearing capacity and settlement of shallow foundations subjected to dynamic loading are the topics of discussion of this chapter.

6.2 EFFECT OF LOAD VELOCITY ON ULTIMATE BEARING CAPACITY

The static ultimate bearing capacity of shallow foundations was discussed in Chapters 2 through 4. Vesic et al.[1] conducted laboratory model tests to study the effect of the velocity of loading on the ultimate bearing capacity. These tests were conducted on a rigid rough circular model foundation having a diameter of 101.6 mm. The model foundation was placed on the *surface* of a dense sand layer. The velocity of loading to cause failure varied from about 25×10^{-5} to 250 mm/s. The tests were conducted in dry and submerged sand. From Equation 2.90, for a surface foundation in sand subjected to vertical loading,

$$q_u = \frac{1}{2}\gamma B N_\gamma \lambda_{\gamma s}$$

or

$$N_\gamma \lambda_{\gamma s} = \frac{q_u}{(1/2)\gamma B} \tag{6.1}$$

where

q_u = ultimate bearing capacity
γ = effective unit weight of sand
B = diameter of foundation
N_γ = bearing capacity factor
$\lambda_{\gamma s}$ = shape factor

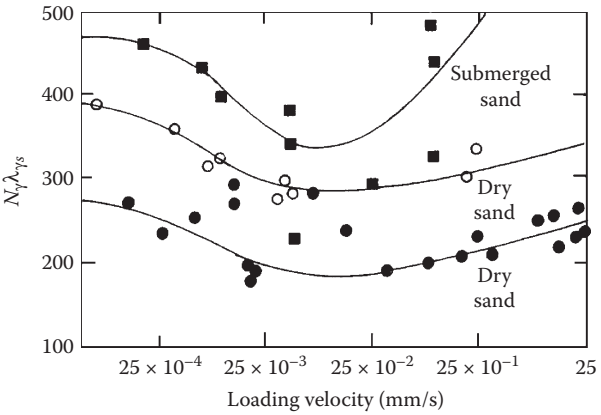


FIGURE 6.1 Variation of $N_\gamma\lambda_{\gamma s}$ with loading velocity. (After Vesic, A. S., D. C. Banks, and J. M. Woodward. 1965. *Proceedings, Sixth Int. Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng.*, Vol. 2, Montreal, Canada, p. 209.)

The variation of $N_\gamma\,\lambda_{\gamma s}$ with the velocity of loading obtained in the study of Vesic et al.[1] is shown in Figure 6.1. It can be seen from this figure that, when the loading velocity is between 25×10^{-3} and 25×10^{-2} mm/s, the ultimate bearing capacity reaches a minimum value. Vesic[2] suggested that the minimum value of q_u in *granular soil* can be obtained by using a soil friction angle of ϕ_{dy} instead of ϕ in the bearing capacity equation (Equation 2.90), which is conventionally obtained from laboratory tests, or

$$\phi_{dy} = \phi - 2^\circ \tag{6.2}$$

The above relationship is consistent with the findings of Whitman and Healy.[3] The increase in the ultimate bearing capacity when the loading velocity is very high is due to the fact that the soil particles in the failure zone do not always follow the path of least resistance, resulting in high shear strength of soil and thus ultimate bearing capacity.

Unlike in the case of sand, the undrained shear strength of saturated clay increases with the increase in the strain rate of loading. An excellent example can be obtained from the unconsolidated undrained triaxial tests conducted by Carroll[4] on buckshot clay. The tests were conducted with a chamber confining pressure ≈ 96 kN/m^2, and the moisture contents of the specimens were 33.5 ± 0.2%. A summary of the test results follows:

Strain Rate (%/s)	Undrained Cohesion c_u (kN/m^2)
0.033	79.5
4.76	88.6
14.4	104
53.6	116.4
128	122.2
314 and 426	125.5

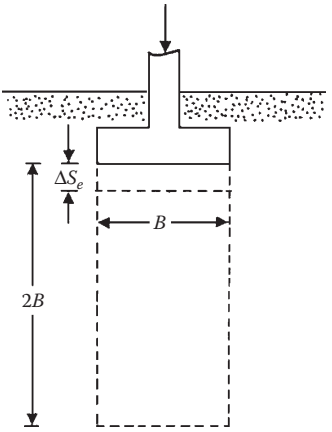


FIGURE 6.2 Strain rate definition under a foundation.

From the above data, it can be seen that $c_{u(\text{dynamic})}/c_{u(\text{static})}$ may be about 1.5. For a given foundation, the strain rate $\dot{\varepsilon}$ can be approximated as (Figure 6.2)

$$\dot{\varepsilon} = \frac{1}{\Delta t}\left(\frac{\Delta S_e}{2B}\right) \tag{6.3}$$

where

t = time
S_e = settlement

So, if the undrained cohesion c_u ($\phi = 0$ condition) for a given soil at a given strain rate is known, this value can be used in Equation 2.90 to calculate the ultimate bearing capacity.

6.3 ULTIMATE BEARING CAPACITY UNDER EARTHQUAKE LOADING

At this time, there are only a limited number of studies available in the literature relating to the bearing capacity of shallow foundations under earthquake loading. A summary of these studies will be presented in the following subsections.

6.3.1 Bearing Capacity Theory of Richards, Elms, and Budhu

Richards et al.[5] proposed a bearing capacity theory for a *continuous* foundation supported by *granular soil* under earthquake loading. This theory assumes a simplified failure surface in soil at ultimate load. Figure 6.3a shows this failure surface under static conditions based on Coulomb's active and passive pressure wedges. Note that,

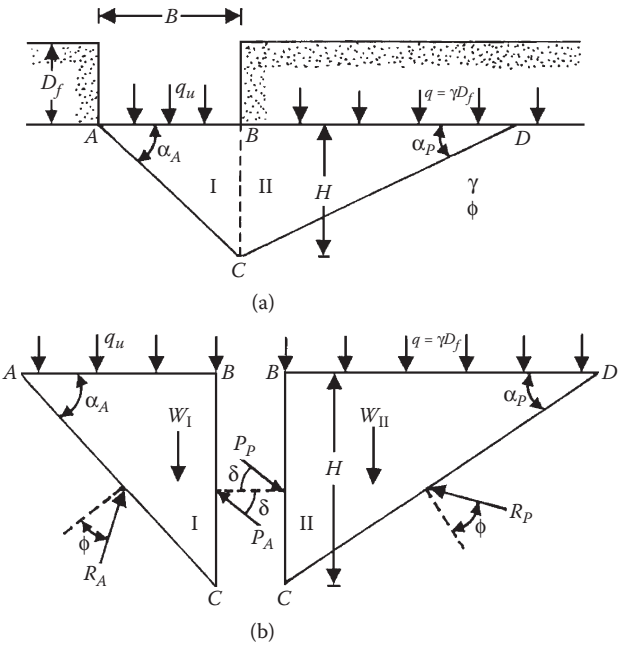


FIGURE 6.3 Bearing capacity of a continuous foundation on sand—static condition: (a) failure surface under static condition; (b) equilibrium analysis of wedges I and II.

in zone I, α_A is the angle that Coulomb's active wedge makes with the horizontal at failure

$$\alpha_A = \phi + \tan^{-1}\left\{\frac{[\tan\phi(\tan\phi + \cot\phi)(1 + \tan\delta\cot\phi)]^{0.5} - \tan\phi}{1 + \tan\delta(\tan\phi + \cot\phi)}\right\} \tag{6.4}$$

Similarly, in zone II, α_P is the angle that Coulomb's passive wedge makes with the horizontal at failure, or

$$\alpha_P = -\phi + \tan^{-1}\left\{\frac{[\tan\phi(\tan\phi + \cot\phi)(1 + \tan\delta\cot\phi)]^{0.5} + \tan\phi}{1 + \tan\delta(\tan\phi + \cot\phi)}\right\} \tag{6.5}$$

where

ϕ = soil friction angle
δ = wall friction angle (*BC* in Figure 6.3a)

Considering a *unit length* of the foundation, Figure 6.3b shows the equilibrium analysis of wedges I and II. In this figure, the following notations are used:

P_A = Coulomb's active pressure
P_P = Coulomb's passive pressure

R_A = resultant of shear and normal forces along AC
R_P = resultant of shear and normal forces along CD
W_{I}, W_{II} = weight of wedges ABC and BCD, respectively

Now, if $\phi \neq 0$, $\gamma = 0$, and $q \neq 0$, then

$$q_u = q'_u$$

and

$$P_A \cos \delta = P_P \cos \delta \tag{6.6}$$

However,

$$P_A \cos \delta = q'_u K_A H \tag{6.7}$$

where
$H = \overline{BC}$
K_A = horizontal component of Coulomb's active earth pressure coefficient, or

$$K_A = \frac{\cos^2 \phi}{\cos \delta \left[1 + \sqrt{\dfrac{\sin(\phi + \delta)\sin \phi}{\cos \delta}}\right]^2} \tag{6.8}$$

Similarly,

$$P_P \cos \delta = q K_P H \tag{6.9}$$

where
K_P = horizontal component of Coulomb's passive earth pressure coefficient, or

$$K_P = \frac{\cos^2 \phi}{\cos \delta \left[1 - \sqrt{\dfrac{\sin(\phi - \delta)\sin \phi}{\cos \delta}}\right]^2} \tag{6.10}$$

Combining Equations 6.6, 6.7, and 6.9,

$$q'_u = q \frac{K_P}{K_A} = q N_q \tag{6.11}$$

where
N_q = bearing capacity factor

Again, if $\phi \neq 0$, $\gamma \neq 0$, and $q = 0$, then $q_u = q_u''$

$$P_A \cos \delta = q_u'' H K_A + \frac{1}{2}\gamma H^2 K_A \tag{6.12}$$

Also,

$$P_P \cos \delta = \frac{1}{2}\gamma H^2 K_P \tag{6.13}$$

Equating the right-hand sides of Equations 6.12 and 6.13,

$$q_u'' H K_A + \frac{1}{2}\gamma H^2 K_A = \frac{1}{2}\gamma H^2 K_P$$

$$q_u'' = \left[\frac{1}{2}\gamma H^2 (K_P - K_A)\right]\frac{1}{H K_A}$$

or

$$q_u'' = \frac{1}{2}\gamma H\left(\frac{K_P}{K_A} - 1\right) \tag{6.14}$$

However,

$$H = B \tan \alpha_A \tag{6.15}$$

Combining Equations 6.14 and 6.15,

$$q_u'' = \frac{1}{2}\gamma B \tan \alpha_A \left(\frac{K_P}{K_A} - 1\right) = \frac{1}{2}\gamma B N_\gamma \tag{6.16}$$

where

$$N_\gamma = \text{bearing capacity factor} = \tan \alpha_A \left(\frac{K_P}{K_A} - 1\right) \tag{6.17}$$

If $\phi \neq 0$, $\gamma \neq 0$, and $q \neq 0$, using the superposition, we can write

$$q_u = q_u' + q_u'' = q N_q + \frac{1}{2}\gamma B N_\gamma \tag{6.18}$$

TABLE 6.1
Variation of N_q, N_γ, and N_c (Assumption: $\delta = \phi/2$)

Soil Friction Angle ϕ (deg)	δ (deg)	N_q	N_γ	N_c
0	0	1	0	6
10	5	2.37	1.38	7.77
20	10	5.9	6.06	13.46
30	15	16.51	23.76	26.86
40	20	59.04	111.9	58.43

Richards et al.[5] suggested that, in calculating the bearing capacity factors N_q and N_γ (which are functions of ϕ and δ), we may assume $\delta = \phi/2$. With this assumption, the variations of N_q and N_γ are given in Table 6.1.

It can also be shown that, for the $\phi = 0$ condition, if Coulomb's wedge analysis is performed, it will give a value of 6 for the bearing capacity factor N_c. For brevity, we can assume

$$N_c = (N_q - 1)\cot\phi \tag{6.19}$$

Using Equation 6.19 and the N_q values given in Table 6.1, the N_c values can be calculated, and these values are also shown in Table 6.1. Figure 6.4 shows the variations of the bearing capacity factors with soil friction angle ϕ. Thus, the ultimate bearing capacity q_u for a continuous foundation supported by a c–ϕ soil can be given as

$$q_u = cN_c + qN_q + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_\gamma \tag{6.20}$$

The ultimate bearing capacity of a continuous foundation under earthquake loading can be evaluated in a manner similar to that for the static condition shown above. Figure 6.5 shows the wedge analysis for this condition for a foundation supported by granular soil. In Figure 6.5a, note that α_{AE} and α_{PE} are, respectively, the angles that the Coulomb's failure wedges would make for active and passive conditions, or

$$\alpha_{AE} = \alpha + \tan^{-1}\left\{\frac{\sqrt{(1+\tan^2\alpha)[1+\tan(\delta+\theta)\cot\alpha]} - \tan\alpha}{1+\tan(\delta+\theta)(\tan\alpha+\cot\alpha)}\right\} \tag{6.21}$$

and

$$\alpha_{PE} = -\alpha + \tan^{-1}\left\{\frac{\sqrt{(1+\tan^2\alpha)[1+\tan(\delta-\theta)\cot\alpha]} + \tan\alpha}{1+\tan(\delta+\theta)(\tan\alpha+\cot\alpha)}\right\} \tag{6.22}$$

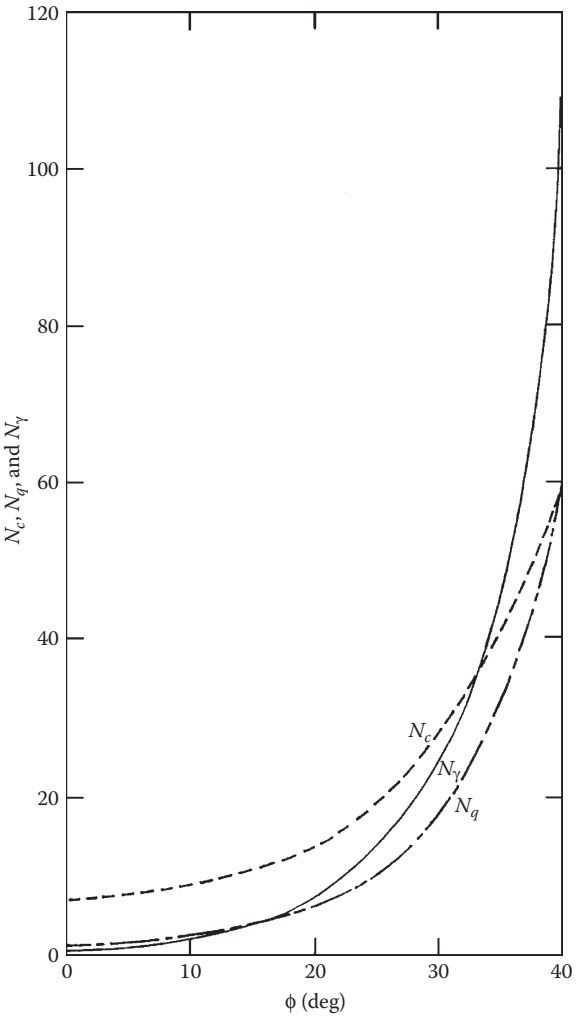


FIGURE 6.4 Variation of N_c, N_q, and N_γ with soil friction angle ϕ.

where

$$\alpha = \phi - \theta \tag{6.23}$$

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{k_h}{1 - k_v} \tag{6.24}$$

k_h = horizontal coefficient of acceleration
k_v = vertical coefficient of acceleration

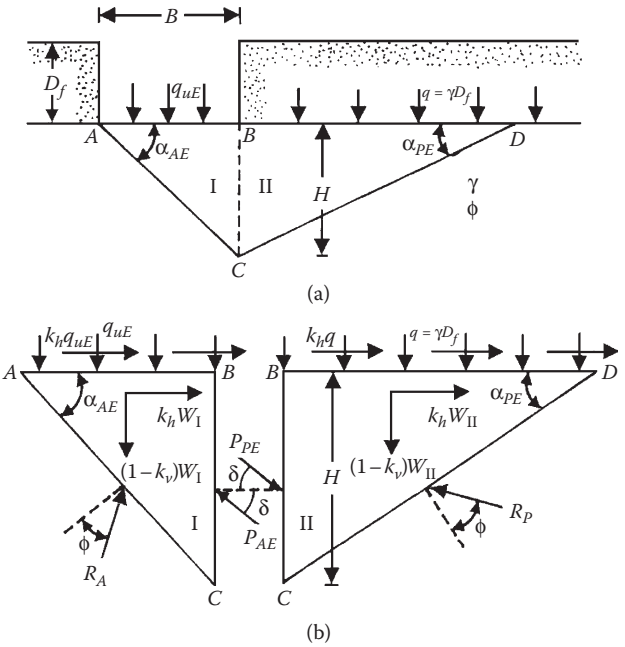


FIGURE 6.5 Bearing capacity of a continuous foundation on sand—earthquake condition: (a) failure surface in soil; (b) equilibrium analysis of wedges I and II.

Figure 6.5b shows the equilibrium analysis of wedges I and II as shown in Figure 6.5a. As in the static analysis (similar to Equation 6.18),

$$q_{uE} = qN_{qE} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_{\gamma E} \tag{6.25}$$

where

q_{uE} = ultimate bearing capacity
N_{qE}, $N_{\gamma E}$ = bearing capacity factors

Similar to Equations 6.11 and 6.17,

$$N_{qE} = \frac{K_{PE}}{K_{AE}} \tag{6.26}$$

$$N_{\gamma E} = \tan \alpha_{AE}\left(\frac{K_{PE}}{K_{AE}} - 1\right) \tag{6.27}$$

where

K_{AE}, K_{PE} = horizontal coefficients of active and passive earth pressure (under earthquake conditions), respectively, or

$$K_{AE} = \frac{\cos^2(\phi - \theta)}{\cos\theta\cos(\delta + \theta)\left[1 + \sqrt{\dfrac{\sin(\phi + \delta)\sin(\phi - \theta)}{\cos(\delta + \theta)}}\right]^2} \tag{6.28}$$

and

$$K_{PE} = \frac{\cos^2(\phi - \theta)}{\cos\theta\cos(\delta + \theta)\left[1 - \sqrt{\dfrac{\sin(\phi + \delta)\sin(\phi - \theta)}{\cos(\delta + \theta)}}\right]^2} \tag{6.29}$$

Using $\delta = \phi/2$ as before, the variations of K_{AE} and K_{PE} for various values of θ can be calculated. They can then be used to calculate the bearing capacity factors N_{qE} and $N_{\gamma E}$. Again, for a continuous foundation supported by a c–ϕ soil,

$$q_{uE} = cN_{cE} + qN_{qE} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_{\gamma E} \tag{6.30}$$

where

N_{cE} = bearing capacity factor

The magnitude of N_{cE} can be approximated as

$$N_{cE} \approx (N_{qE} - 1)\cot\phi \tag{6.31}$$

Figures 6.6 through 6.8 show the variations of $N_{\gamma E}/N_{\gamma}$, N_{qE}/N_q, and N_{cE}/N_c. These plots in combination with those given in Figure 6.4 can be used to estimate the ultimate bearing capacity of a continuous foundation q_{uE}.

EXAMPLE 6.1

Consider a shallow continuous foundation. Given: $B = 1.5$ m; $D_f = 1$ m; $\gamma = 17$ kN/m^3; $\phi = 25°$; $c = 30$ kN/m^2; $k_h = 0.25$; $k_v = 0$. Estimate the ultimate bearing capacity q_{uE}.

Solution

From Equation 6.30,

$$q_{uE} = cN_{cE} + qN_{qE} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_{\gamma E}$$

For $\phi = 25°$, from Figure 6.4, $N_c \approx 20$, $N_q \approx 10$, and $N_\gamma \approx 14$. From Figures 6.6 through 6.8, for $\tan\theta = k_h/(1–k_v) = 0.25/(1–0) = 0.25$,

$$\frac{N_{cE}}{N_c} = 0.44; \quad N_{cE} = (0.44)(20) = 8.8$$

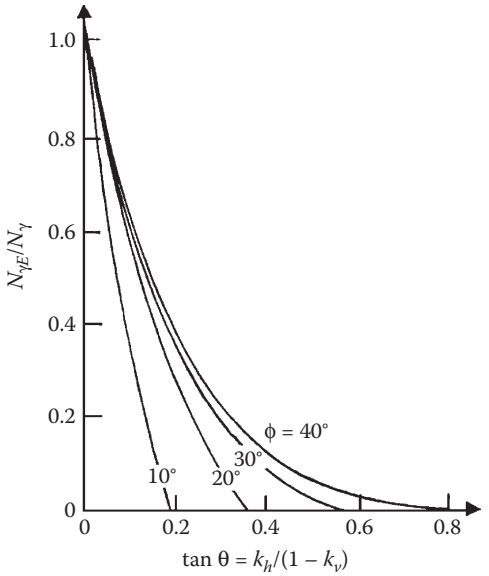


FIGURE 6.6 Variation of $N_{\gamma E}/N_\gamma$ with tan θ and ϕ. (After Richards, R. Jr., D. G. Elms, and M. Budhu. 1993. *J. Geotech. Eng.,* 119(4): 622.)

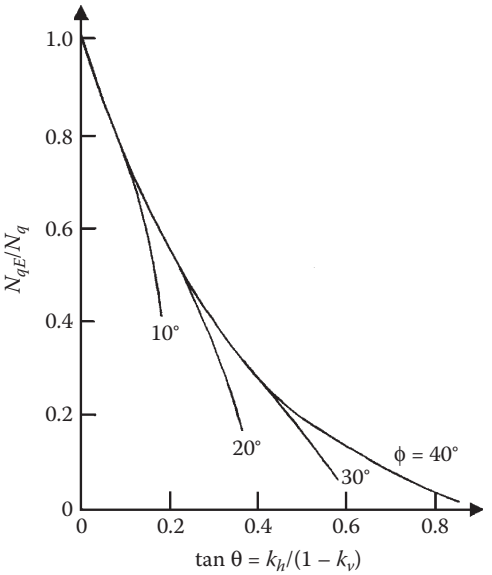


FIGURE 6.7 Variation of N_{qE}/N_q with tan θ and ϕ. (After Richards, R. Jr., D. G. Elms, and M. Budhu. 1993. *J. Geotech. Eng.*, 119(4): 622.)

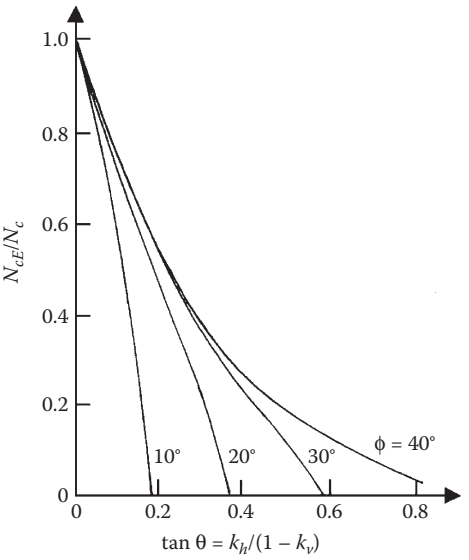


FIGURE 6.8 Variation of N_{cE}/N_c with tan θ and ϕ. (After Richards, R. Jr., D. G. Elms, and M. Budhu. 1993. *J. Geotech. Eng.*, 119(4): 622.)

$$\frac{N_{qE}}{N_q} = 0.38; N_{qE} = (0.38)(10) = 3.8$$

$$\frac{N_{\gamma E}}{N_\gamma} = 0.13; N_{cE} = (0.13)(14) = 1.82$$

So,

$$q_{uE} = (30)(8.8) + (1\times 17)(3.8) + \frac{1}{2}(17)(1.5)(1.82) = \mathbf{351.8\ kN/m^2}$$

6.3.2 Settlement of Foundation on Granular Soil due to Earthquake Loading

Bearing capacity settlement of a foundation (supported by granular soil) during an earthquake takes place only when the critical acceleration ratio $k_h/(1 - k_v)$ reaches a certain critical value. Thus, if $k_v \approx 0$, then

$$\left(\frac{k_h}{1-k_v}\right)_{cr} \approx \left(\frac{k_h}{1-0}\right)_{cr} \approx k_h^*. \tag{6.32}$$

The critical value k_h^* is a function of the factor of safety FS taken over the ultimate static bearing capacity, embedment ratio D_f/B, and the soil friction angle ϕ. Richards et al.[5] developed this relationship, and it is shown in a graphical form in Figure 6.9. According to Richards et al.,[5] the settlement of a foundation during an earthquake can be given as

$$S_e = 0.174 \frac{V^2}{Ag} \left| \frac{k_h^*}{A} \right|^{-4} \tan \alpha_{AE} \tag{6.33}$$

where

S_e = settlement
V = peak velocity of the design earthquake
A = peak acceleration coefficient of the design earthquake

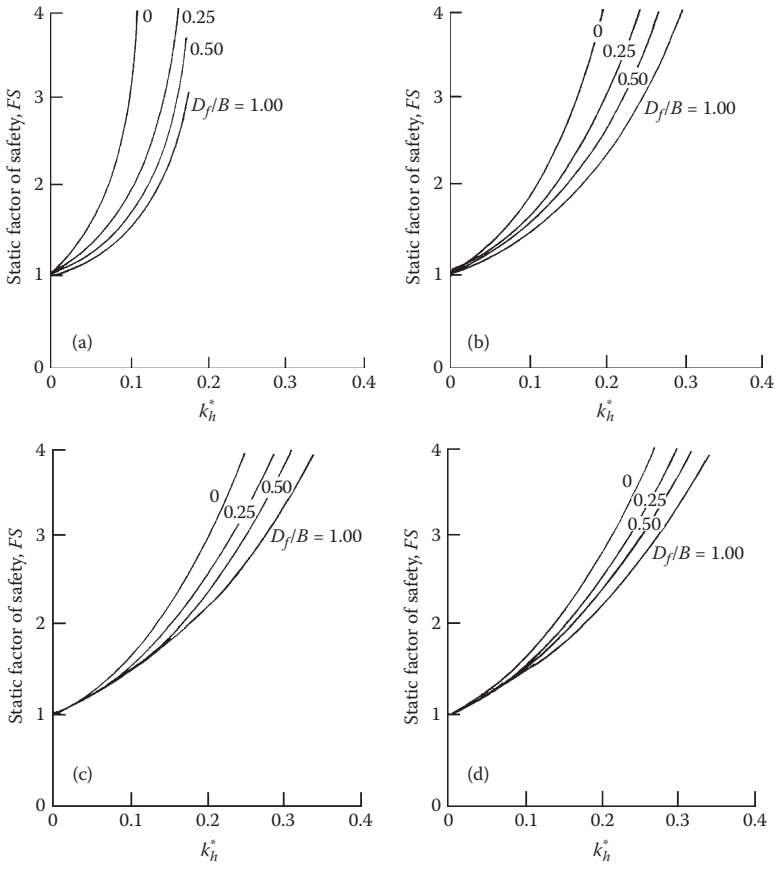


FIGURE 6.9 Critical acceleration k_h^* for incipient foundation settlement. (a) $\phi = 10°$. (b) $\phi = 20°$. (c) $\phi = 30°$. (d) $\phi = 40°$. (After Richards, R. Jr., D. G. Elms, and M. Budhu. 1993. *J. Geotech. Eng.*, 119(4): 622.)

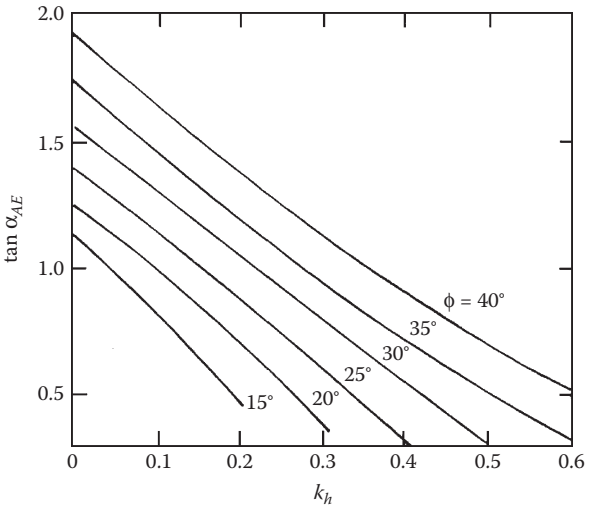


FIGURE 6.10 Variation of tan α_{AE} with k_h and ϕ. (After Richards, R. Jr., D. G. Elms, and M. Budhu. 1993. Seismic bearing capacity and settlement of foundations. *J. Geotech. Eng.*, 119(4): 622.)

The variations of tan α_{AE} with k_h and ϕ are given in Figure 6.10.

EXAMPLE 6.2

Consider a shallow foundation on granular soil with $B = 1.5$ m; $D_f = 1$ m; $\gamma = 16.5$ kN/m^3; $\phi = 35°$. If the allowable bearing capacity is 304 kN/m^2, $A = 0.32$, and $V = 0.35$ m/s, determine the settlement the foundation may undergo.

Solution

From Equation 6.18,

$$q_u = qN_q + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_\gamma$$

From Figure 6.4 for $\phi = 35°$, $N_q \approx 30$; $N_\gamma \approx 42$. So,

$$q_u = (1\times 16.5)(30) + \frac{1}{2}(16.5)(1.5)(42) \approx 1015\ \text{kN/m}^2$$

Given $q_{all} = 340$ kN/m^2,

$$FS = \frac{q_u}{q_{all}} = \frac{1015}{340} = 2.98$$

From Figure 6.9 for $FS = 2.98$ and $D_f/B = 1/1.5 = 0.67$, the magnitude of k_h^* is about 0.28. From Equation 6.33,

$$S_e = 0.174 \frac{V^2}{Ag} \left| \frac{k_h^*}{A} \right|^{-4} \tan \alpha_{AE}$$

From Figure 6.10 for $\phi = 35°$ and $k_h^* = 0.28$, $\tan \alpha_{AE} \approx 0.95$. So,

$$S_e = (0.174) \frac{(0.35\ \text{m/s})^2}{(0.32)\left(9.81\ \text{m/s}^2\right)} \left| \frac{0.28}{0.32} \right|^{-4} (0.95) = 0.011\,\text{m} = \mathbf{11\ mm}$$

6.3.3 Solution of Budhu and Al-Karni

Budhu and al-Karni[6] used the failure surface in soil as shown in Figure 6.11 to determine the ultimate bearing capacity of a shallow foundation q_{uE}. Note that, in this figure, $\overset{\frown}{AB}$ and $\overset{\frown}{EF}$ are arcs of logarithmic spirals. According to this solution,

$$q_{uE} = cN_c\lambda_{cs}\lambda_{cd}\lambda_{ce} + qN_q\lambda_{qs}\lambda_{qd}\lambda_{qe} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_\gamma\lambda_{\gamma s}\lambda_{\gamma d}\lambda_{\gamma e} \tag{6.34}$$

where

c = cohesion
N_c, N_q, N_γ = static bearing capacity factors (see Tables 2.3 and 2.4)
λ_{cs}, λ_{qs}, $\lambda_{\gamma s}$ = static shape factors (see Table 2.8)
λ_{cd}, λ_{qd}, $\lambda_{\gamma d}$ = static depth factors (see Table 2.8)
λ_{ce}, λ_{qe}, $\lambda_{\gamma e}$ = seismic factors

The relationships for the seismic factors can be given as follows:

$$\lambda_{ce} = \exp(-4.3k_h^{1+D}) \tag{6.35}$$

$$\lambda_{qe} = (1 - k_v)\exp\left[-\left(\frac{5.3k_h^{1.2}}{1 - k_v}\right)\right] \tag{6.36}$$

$$\lambda_{\gamma e} = \left(1 + \frac{2}{3}k_v\right)\exp\left[-\left(\frac{9k_h^{1.2}}{1 - k_v}\right)\right] \tag{6.37}$$

where k_h and k_v = horizontal and vertical acceleration coefficients, respectively,

$$D = \frac{c}{\gamma H} \tag{6.38}$$

$$H = \frac{0.5B}{\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{\phi}{2}\right)} \exp\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\tan\phi\right) + D_f \tag{6.39}$$

EXAMPLE 6.3

Consider a foundation measuring 1 m × 1.5 m supported by a soil with $\gamma = 18$ kN/m^3, $c = 36$ kN/m^2, $\phi = 27°$. Given $D_f = 1$ m. Assume $k_v = 0.25$ and $k_h = 0$ and estimate the ultimate bearing capacity q_{uE}. Use Equation 6.34, Vesic's bearing capacity factors, DeBeer's shape factors, and Hansen's depth factors.

SOLUTION

Equation 6.34

$$q_{uE} = cN_c\lambda_{cs}\lambda_{cd}\lambda_{ce} + qN_q\lambda_{qs}\lambda_{qd}\lambda_{qe} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_\gamma\lambda_{\gamma s}\lambda_{\gamma d}\lambda_{\gamma e}$$

$c = 36$ kN/m^2; $\phi = 27°$ (Tables 2.3 and 2.4); $N_c = 23.94$; $N_q = 13.2$; $N_\gamma = 14.47$

From Table 2.8,

$$\lambda_{cs} = 1 + \left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\left(\frac{N_q}{N_c}\right) = 1 + \left(\frac{1}{1.5}\right)\left(\frac{13.2}{23.94}\right) = 1.368$$

$$\lambda_{qs} = 1 + \left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\tan\phi = 1 + \left(\frac{1}{1.5}\right)\tan 27 = 1.34$$

$$\lambda_{\gamma s} = 1 - 0.4\left(\frac{B}{L}\right) = 1 - 0.4\left(\frac{1}{1.5}\right) = 0.733$$

Again, from Table 2.8,

$$\lambda_{qd} = 1 + 2\tan\phi(1 - \sin\phi)^2\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right) = 1 + 2\tan 27(1 - \sin 27)^2\left(\frac{1}{1}\right) = 1.304$$

$$\lambda_{\gamma d} = 1$$

$$\lambda_{cd} = \lambda_{qd} - \frac{1 - \lambda_{qd}}{N_q \tan\phi} = 1.304 - \frac{1 - 1.304}{(13.2)(\tan 27)} = 1.259$$

From Equations 6.38 and 6.39,

$$H = \frac{0.5B}{\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{\phi}{2}\right)}\exp\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\tan\phi\right) + D_f$$

$$= \frac{(0.5)(1)}{\cos(45 + 13.5)}\exp\left(\frac{\pi}{2} \times \tan 27\right) + 1 = 3.13 \text{ m}$$

$$D = \frac{c}{\gamma H} = \frac{36}{(18)(3.13)} = 0.639$$

$$\lambda_{ce} = \exp(-4.3k_h^{1+D}) = \exp\left[(-4.3)(0.25)^{1+0.639}\right] = 0.642$$

$$\lambda_{qe} = (1-k_v)\exp\left[-\left(\frac{5.3k_h^{1.2}}{1-k_v}\right)\right] = (1-0)\exp\left[-\left(\frac{5.3\times 0.25^{1.2}}{1-0}\right)\right] = 0.366$$

$$\lambda_{\gamma e} = \left(1+\frac{2}{3}k_v\right)\exp\left[-\left(\frac{9k_h^{1.2}}{1-k_v}\right)\right] = (1+0)\exp\left[-\left(\frac{9\times 0.25^{1.2}}{1-0}\right)\right] = 0.182$$

Hence,

$$\begin{aligned} q_{uE} &= (36)(23.94)(1.368)(1.259)(0.642) + (18\times 1)(13.2)(1.34)(1.304)(0.366) \\ &\quad + \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)(18)(1)(14.47)(0.733)(1)(0.182) \\ &= 1122.28\ \text{kN/m}^2 \approx \mathbf{1122\ kN/m^2} \end{aligned}$$

6.3.4 Solution by Choudhury and Subba Rao

Choudhury and Subba Rao[7] assumed a similar failure surface in soil as shown in Figure 6.11 and, using limit equilibrium method by the pseudo-static approach, expressed the ultimate bearing capacity q_{uE} for a strip foundation as

$$q_{uE} = cN_{cE} + qN_{qE} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_{\gamma E} \tag{6.40}$$

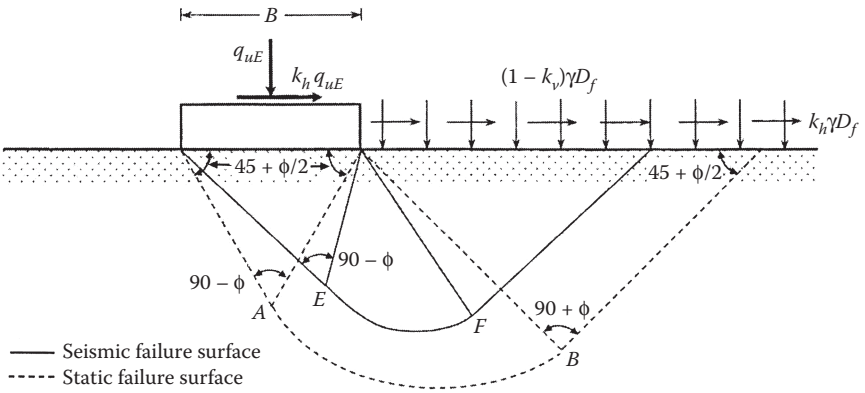


FIGURE 6.11 Failure surface under a strip foundation as assumed by Budhu and al-Karni.[6] (*Note:* D_f = depth of foundation.)

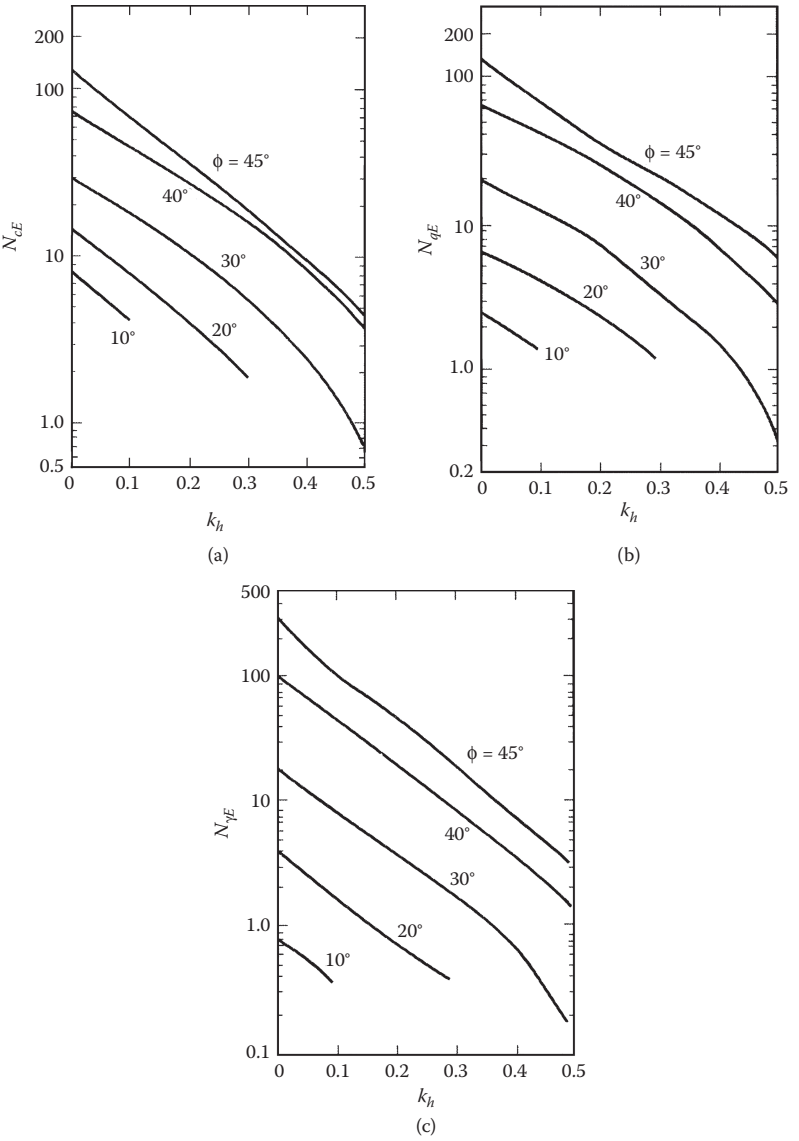


FIGURE 6.12 Variation of N_{cE}, N_{qE}, and $N_{\gamma E}$ with k_h and ϕ (Equation 6.50). *Note:* $k_v = 0$: (a) N_{cE} versus k_h; (b) N_{qE} versus k_h; (c) $N_{\gamma E}$ versus k_h.

The variations of N_{cE}, N_{qE}, and $N_{\gamma E}$ with k_h and ϕ with $k_v = 0$ are shown in Figure 6.12. The depth and shape factors can be incorporated in Equation 6.40 to estimate q_{uE} for rectangular foundations, or

$$q_{uE} = cN_{cE}\lambda_{cs}\lambda_{cd} + qN_{qE}\lambda_{qs}\lambda_{qd} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma BN_{\gamma}\lambda_{\gamma s}\lambda_{\gamma d} \tag{6.41}$$

where

λ_{cs}, λ_{qs}, $\lambda_{\gamma s}$ = static shape factors (see Table 2.8)
λ_{cd}, λ_{qd}, $\lambda_{\gamma d}$ = static depth factors (see Table 2.8)

EXAMPLE 6.4

Solve Example 6.3 using Equation 6.41.

SOLUTION

Given: $\phi = 27°$ and $k_h = 0.25$. Thus, from Figure 6.12, $N_{cE} \approx 8$, $N_{qE} \approx 5$, and $N_{\gamma E} \approx 3$. From Example 6.3, $\lambda_{cs} = 1.368$, $\lambda_{qs} = 1.34$, $\lambda_{\gamma s} = 0.733$, $\lambda_{cd} = 1.259$, $\lambda_{qd} = 1.304$, and $\lambda_{\gamma d} = 1$. Hence,

$$\begin{aligned} q_{uE} &= cN_{cE}\lambda_{cs}\lambda_{cd} + qN_{qE}\lambda_{qs}\lambda_{qd} + \frac{1}{2}\gamma B N_{\gamma}\lambda_{\gamma s}\lambda_{\gamma d} \\ &= (36)(8)(1.368)(1.259) + (18 \times 1)(5)(1.34)(1.304) \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{2}(18)(1)(3)(0.733)(1) \\ &\approx \mathbf{673\ kN/m^2} \end{aligned}$$

Note: The ultimate bearing capacity of 673 kN/m^2 is approximately 67% of that estimated in Example 6.3. The difference is due to the contribution of cohesion. If c would have been zero, q_{uE} in Examples 6.3 and 6.4 would have been about 169 and 177 kN/m^2, respectively. The results of field tests are not available yet to verify the results.

6.4 CONTINUOUS FOUNDATION AT THE EDGE OF A GRANULAR SLOPE SUBJECTED TO EARTHQUAKE LOADING

Yamamoto[8] analyzed the ultimate bearing capacity of a continuous foundation located at the edge of a slope made of granular material (Figure 6.13). The granular slope shown in the figure makes an angle β with the horizontal. The width and embedment depth of the foundation are, respectively, B and D_f. The analysis was

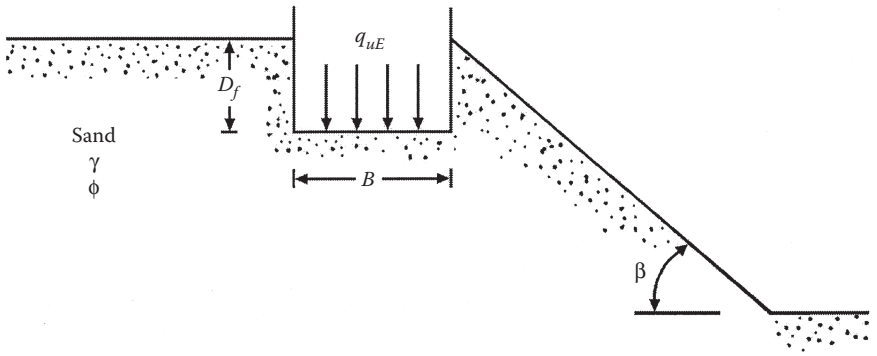


FIGURE 6.13 Continuous foundation at the edge of a granular slope.

conducted by using the upper-bound method of limit analysis. According to this analysis with cohesion $c = 0$ and vertical coefficient of acceleration $k_v = 0$, the ultimate bearing capacity can be expressed as

$$q_{uE} = \frac{1}{2}\gamma B N_{\gamma qE} \tag{6.42}$$

where

$N_{\gamma qE}$ = bearing capacity factor

The factor $N_{\gamma qE}$ is a function of soil friction angle ϕ, β, D_f/B, and k_h. Figure 6.14 shows the results of the analysis for $D_f/B = 0$ and $\phi = 30°$ and 40°. Similarly, Figure 6.15 is for the case of $D_f/B = 1$.

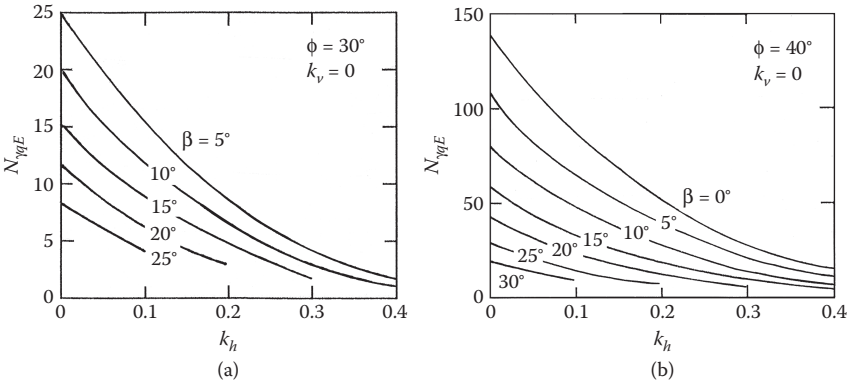


FIGURE 6.14 Variation of $N_{\gamma qE}$ with β and k_h—Equation 6.42: (a) $D_f/B = 0$ and $\phi = 30°$ and (b) $D_f/B = 0$ and $\phi = 40°$. (After Yamamoto, K. 2010. *Int. J. Geotech. Eng.*, 4(2): 255.)

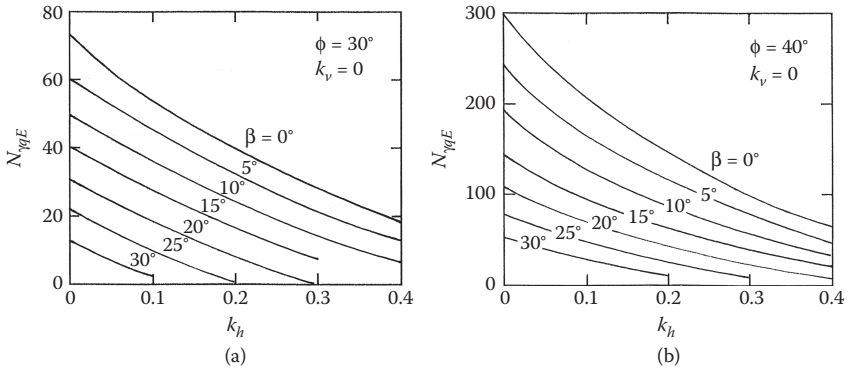


FIGURE 6.15 Variation of $N_{\gamma qE}$ with β and k_h—Equation 6.42: (a) $D_f/B = 1$ and $\phi = 30°$ and (b) $D_f/B = 1$ and $\phi = 40°$. (After Yamamoto, K. 2010. *Int. J. Geotech. Eng.*, 4(2): 255.)

6.5 FOUNDATION SETTLEMENT DUE TO CYCLIC LOADING: GRANULAR SOIL

Raymond and Komos[9] reported laboratory model test results on surface continuous foundations ($D_f = 0$) supported by granular soil and subjected to a low-frequency (1 cps) cyclic loading of the type shown in Figure 6.16. In this figure, σ_d is the amplitude of the intensity of the cyclic load. The laboratory tests were conducted for foundation widths (B) of 75 and 228 mm. The unit weight of sand was 16.97 kN/m^3. Since the settlement of the foundation S_e after the first cycle of load application was primarily due to the placement of the foundation rather than the foundation behavior, it was taken to be zero (i.e., $S_e = 0$ after the first cycle load application). Figures 6.17 and 6.18 show the variation of S_e (after the first cycle) with the number of load cycles, N, and σ_d/q_u (q_u = ultimate static bearing capacity). Note that (a) for a given number of load cycles, the settlement increased with the increase in σ_d/q_u and (b) for a given

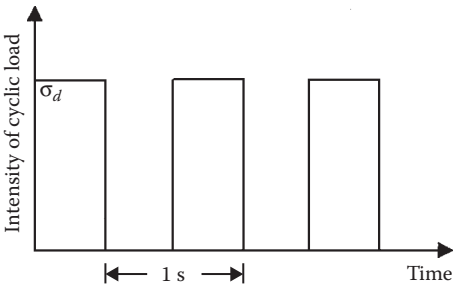


FIGURE 6.16 Cyclic load on a foundation.

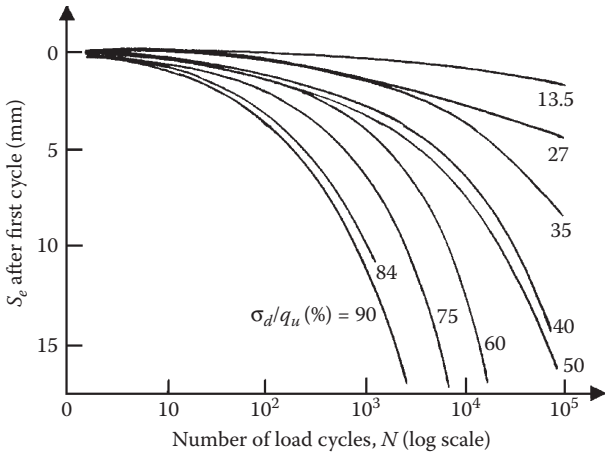


FIGURE 6.17 Variation of S_e (after first load cycle) with σ_d/q_u and N—B = 75 mm. (From Raymond, G. P. and F. E. Komos. 1978. *Canadian Geotech. J.,* 15(2): 190.)

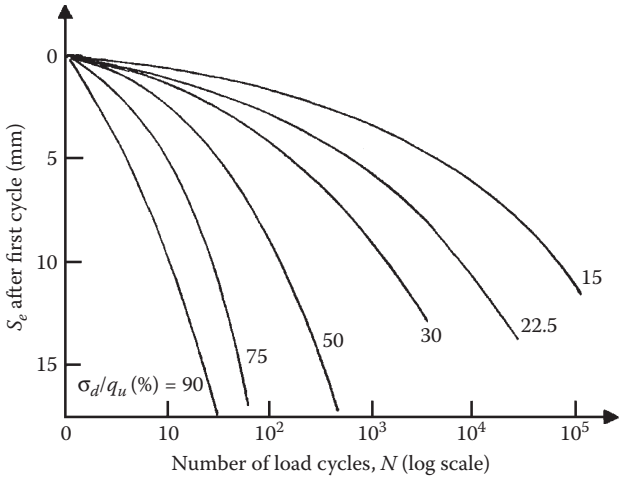


FIGURE 6.18 Variation of S_e (after first load cycle) with σ_d/q_u and N—B = 228 mm. (From Raymond, G. P. and F. E. Komos. 1978. *Canadian Geotech. J.*, 15(2): 190.)

σ_d/q_u, S_e increased with N. These load-settlement curves can be approximated by the relation (for $N = 2–10^5$)

$$S_e = \frac{a}{\frac{1}{\log N} - b} \tag{6.43}$$

where

$$a = -0.15125 + 0.0000693B^{1.18}\left(\frac{\sigma_d}{q_u} + 6.09\right) \tag{6.44}$$

$$b = -0.153579 + 0.0000363B^{0.821}\left(\frac{\sigma_d}{q_u} - 23.1\right) \tag{6.45}$$

In Equations 6.44 and 6.45, B is in mm and σ_d/q_u is in percent.

Figures 6.19 and 6.20 show the contours of the variation of S_e with σ_d and N for B = 75 and 228 mm. Studies of this type are useful in designing railroad ties.

6.5.1 Settlement of Machine Foundations

Machine foundations subjected to *sinusoidal vertical vibration* (Figure 6.21) may undergo permanent settlement S_e. In Figure 6.21, the weight of the machine and the

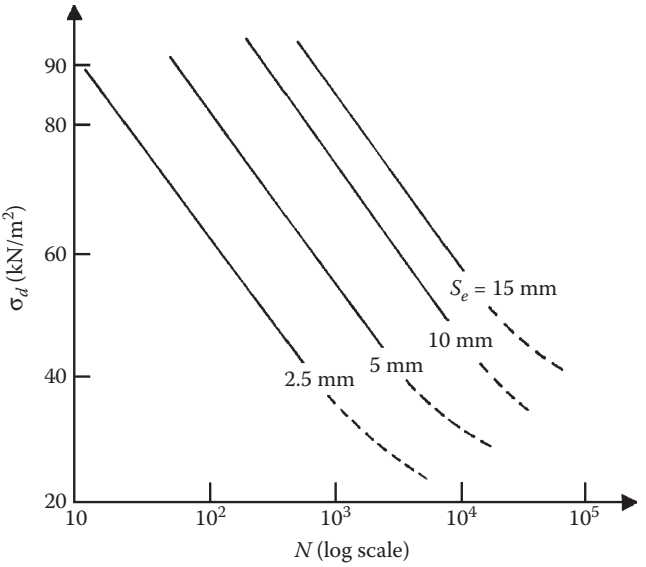


FIGURE 6.19 Contours of variation of S_e with σ_d and N—$B = 75$ mm. (From Raymond, G. P. and F. E. Komos. 1978. *Canadian Geotech. J.*, 15(2): 190.)

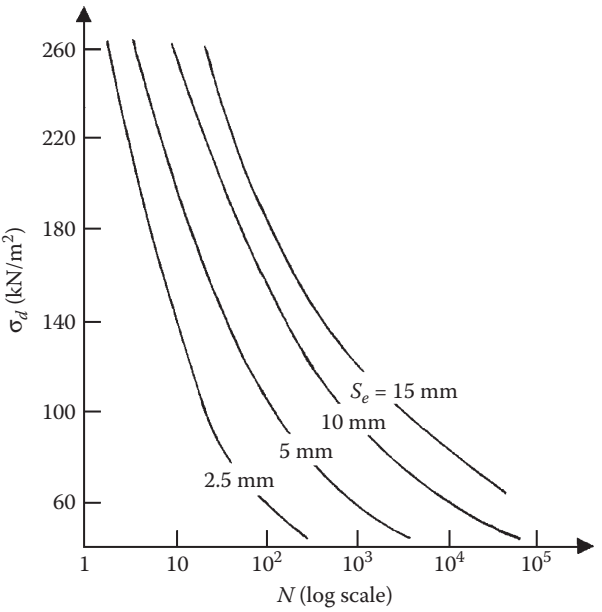


FIGURE 6.20 Contours of variation of S_e with σ_d and N—$B = 228$ mm. (From Raymond, G. P. and F. E. Komos. 1978. *Canadian Geotech. J.*, 15(2): 190.)

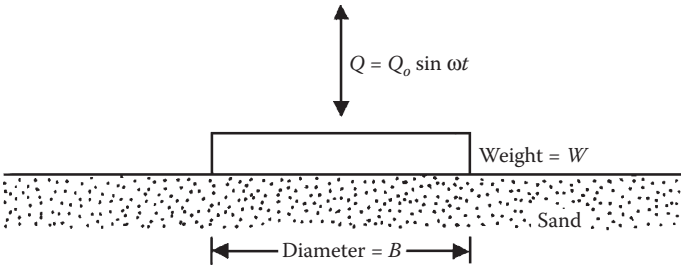


FIGURE 6.21 Sinusoidal vertical vibration of machine foundation.

foundation is W and the diameter of the foundation is B. The impressed cyclic force Q is given by the relationship

$$Q = Q_o \sin \omega t \tag{6.46}$$

where

Q_o = amplitude of the force
ω = angular velocity
t = time

Many investigators believe that the *peak acceleration* is the primary controlling parameter for the settlement. Depending on the degree of compaction of the granular soil, the solid particles come to an equilibrium condition for a given peak acceleration resulting in a settlement $S_{e(\max)}$ as shown in Figure 6.22. This *threshold acceleration* must be attained before additional settlement can take place.

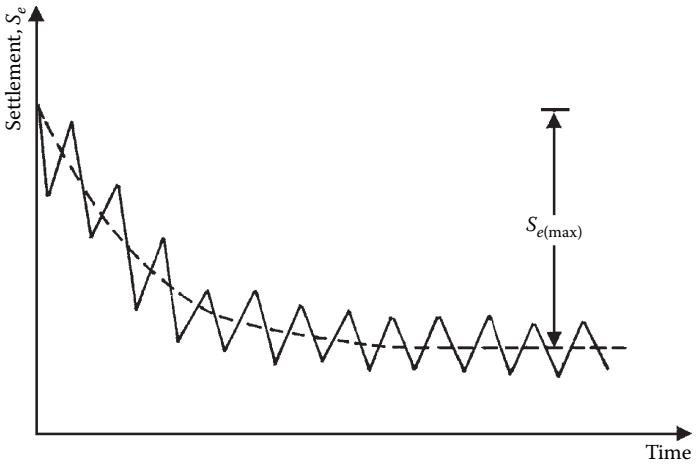


FIGURE 6.22 Settlement S_e with time due to cyclic load application.

Brumund and Leonards[10] evaluated the settlement of *circular foundations* subjected to vertical sinusoidal loading by laboratory model tests. For this study, the model foundation had a diameter of 101.6 mm, and 20–30 Ottawa sand compacted at a relative density of 70% was used. Based on their study, it appears that *energy per cycle of vibration* can be used to determine $S_{e(\max)}$. Figure 6.23 shows the variation of $S_{e(\max)}$ versus peak acceleration for weights of foundation, $W = 217$, 327, and 436 N. The frequency of vibration was kept constant at 20 Hz for all tests. For a given value of W, it is obvious that the magnitude of S_e increases linearly with the peak acceleration level.

The maximum energy transmitted to the foundation per cycle of vibration can be theorized as follows. Figure 6.24 shows the schematic diagram of a lumped-parameter one-degree-of-freedom vibrating system for the machine foundation. The soil supporting the foundation has been taken to be equivalent to a *spring* and a *dashpot*. Let the spring constant be equal to k and the viscous damping constant of the dashpot be c. The spring constant k and the viscous damping constant c can be given by the following relationships (for further details, see any soil dynamics text, e.g., Das[11]):

$$k = \frac{2GB}{1 - \nu_s} \tag{6.47}$$

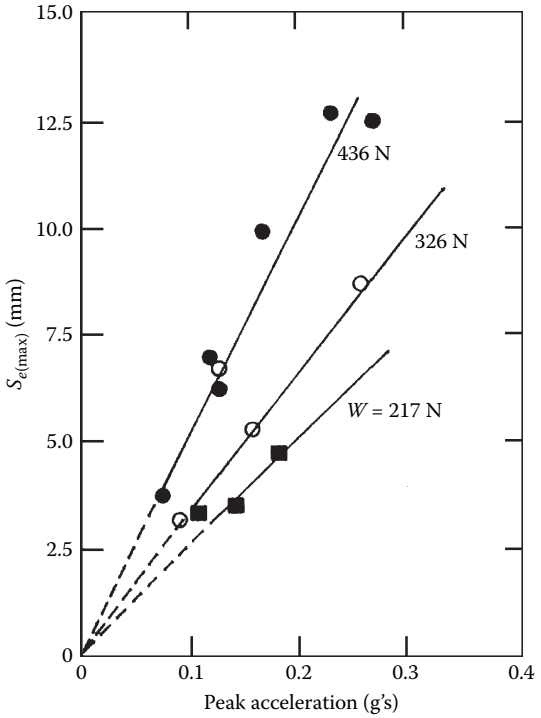


FIGURE 6.23 Variation of $S_{e(\max)}$ with peak acceleration and weight of foundation. (From Brumund, W. F. and G. A. Leonards. 1972. *J. Soil Mech. Found. Eng. Div.,* 98(1): 27.)

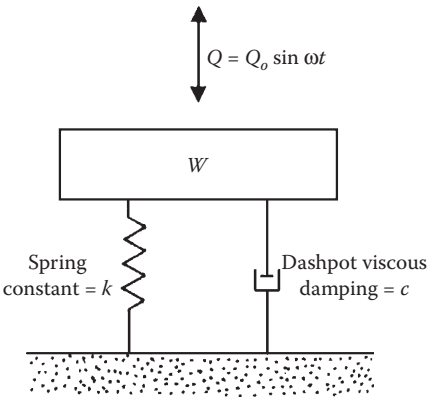


FIGURE 6.24 Lumped-parameter one-degree-of-freedom vibrating system.

$$c = \frac{0.85}{1 - \nu_s} B^2 \sqrt{\frac{G\gamma}{g}} \tag{6.48}$$

where
G = shear modulus of the soil
ν_s = Poisson's ratio of the soil
B = diameter of the foundation
γ = unit weight of soil
g = acceleration due to gravity

The vertical motion of the foundation can be expressed as

$$z = Z \cos(\omega t + \alpha) \tag{6.49}$$

where
Z = amplitude of the steady-state vibration of the foundation
α = phase angle by which the motion lags the impressed force

The *dynamic force* transmitted by the foundation can be given as

$$F_{\text{dynamic}} = kz + c\frac{dz}{dt} \tag{6.50}$$

Substituting Equation 6.49 into 6.50, we obtain

$$F_{\text{dynamic}} = kZ \cos(\omega t + \alpha) - c\omega Z \sin(\omega t + \alpha)$$

Let $kZ = A \cos \beta$ and $c\omega Z = A \sin \beta$. So,

$$F_{\text{dynamic}} = A\cos\beta\cos(\omega t+\alpha) - A\sin\beta\sin(\omega t+\alpha)$$

or

$$F_{\text{dynamic}} = A\cos(\omega t+\alpha+\beta) \tag{6.51}$$

where

$$A = \text{magnitude of maximum dynamic force} = F_{\text{dynamic(max)}}$$
$$= \sqrt{(A\cos\beta)^2+(A\sin\beta)^2} = Z\sqrt{k^2+(c\omega)^2} \tag{6.52}$$

The energy transmitted to the soil per cycle of vibration E_{tr} is

$$E_{tr} = \int F dz = F_{av} Z \tag{6.53}$$

where
F = total contact force on soil
F_{av} = average contact force on the soil

However,

$$F_{av} = \frac{1}{2}(F_{\max}+F_{\min}) \tag{6.54}$$

$$F_{\max} = W + F_{\text{dynamics(max)}} \tag{6.55}$$

$$F_{\max} = W - F_{\text{dynamics(max)}} \tag{6.56}$$

Combining Equations 6.54 through 6.56,

$$F_{av} = W \tag{6.57}$$

Hence, from Equations 6.53 and 6.57,

$$E_{tr} = WZ \tag{6.58}$$

Figure 6.25 shows the experimental results of Brumund and Leonards,[7] which is a plot of $S_{e(\max)}$ versus E_{tr}. The data include (a) a frequency range of 14–59.3 Hz, (b) a range of W varying from $0.27q_u$ to $0.55q_u$, (q_u = static beaning capacity), and (c) the maximum downward dynamic force of $0.3W$ to $1.0W$. The results show that $S_{e(\max)}$ increases linearly with E_{tr}. Figure 6.26 shows a plot of the experimental results of $S_{e(\max)}$ against peak acceleration for different ranges of E_{tr}. This clearly demonstrates that, if the value of the transmitted energy is constant, the magnitude of $S_{e(\max)}$ remains constant irrespective of the level of peak acceleration.

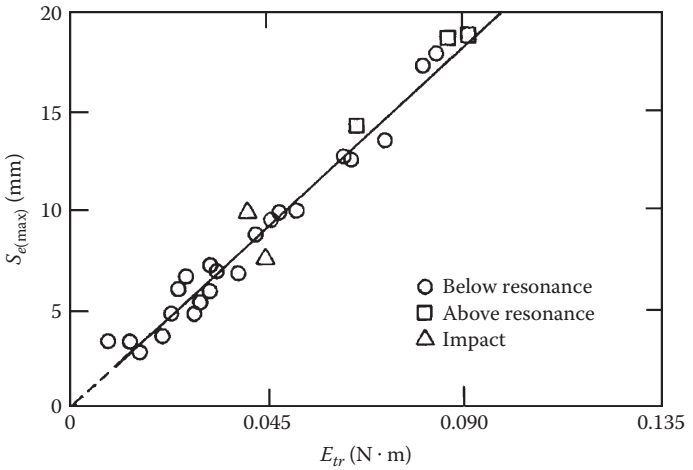


FIGURE 6.25 Plot of $S_{e(\max)}$ versus E_{tr}. (From Brumund, W. F. and G. A. Leonards. 1972. *J. Soil Mech. Found. Eng. Div.*, 98(1): 27.)

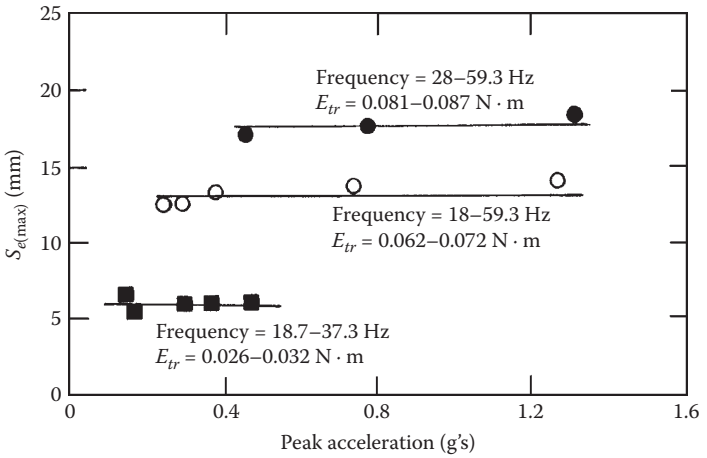


FIGURE 6.26 $S_{e(\max)}$ versus peak acceleration for three levels of transmitted energy. (From Brumund, W. F. and G. A. Leonards. 1972. *J. Soil Mech. Found. Eng. Div.*, 98(1): 27.)

6.6 FOUNDATION SETTLEMENT DUE TO CYCLIC LOADING IN SATURATED CLAY

Das and Shin[12] provided small-scale model test results for the settlement of a continuous surface foundation ($D_f = 0$) supported by saturated clay and subjected to cyclic loading. For these tests, the width of the model foundation B was 76.2 mm, and the

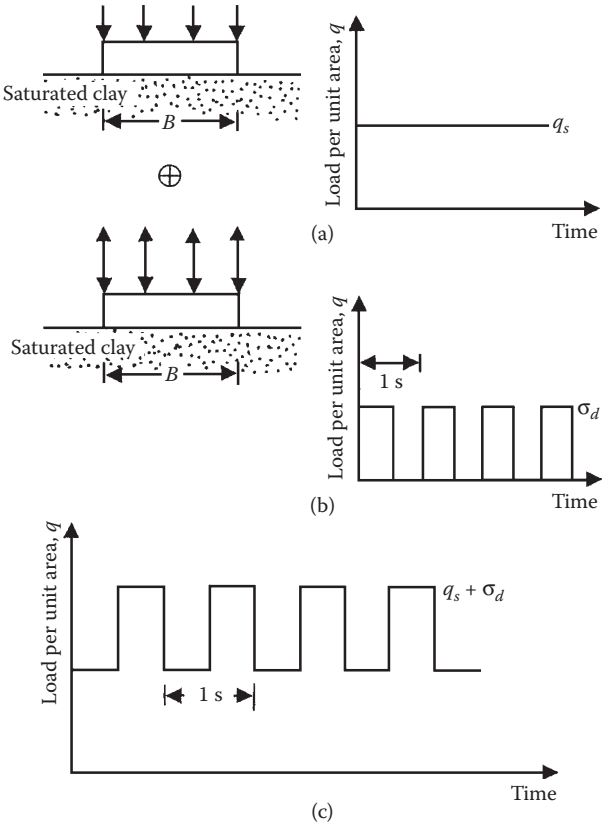


FIGURE 6.27 Load application sequence to observe foundation settlement in saturated clay due to cyclic loading based on laboratory model tests of Das and Shin: (a) variation of q_s with time; (b) variation of σ_d with time; (c) variation of $q_s + \sigma_d$ with time. (From Das, B. M. and E. C. Shin. 1996. *Geotech. Geol. Eng.*, 14: 213.)

average undrained shear strength of the clay was 11.9 kN/m^2. The load to the foundation was applied in two stages (Figure 6.27):

Stage I. Application of a static load per unit area of $q_s = q_u/FS$ (where q_u = ultimate bearing capacity; FS = factor of safety) as shown in Figure 6.27a.
Stage II. Application of a cyclic load, the intensity of which has an amplitude of σ_d as shown in Figure 6.27b.

The frequency of the cyclic load was 1 Hz. Figure 6.27c shows the variation of the total load intensity on the foundation. Typical experimental plots obtained from these laboratory tests are shown by the dashed lines in Figure 6.28 (FS = 3.33; σ_d/q_u = 4.38%, 9.38%, and 18.75%). It is important to note that S_e in this figure refers to the *settlement obtained due to cyclic load only* (i.e., after application of stage

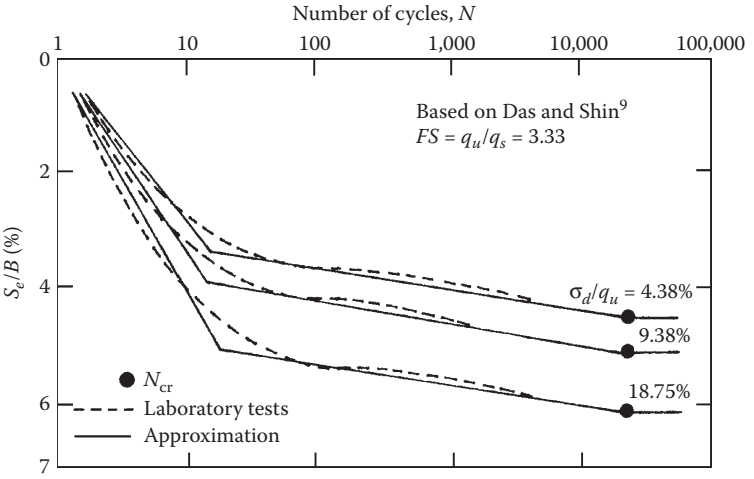


FIGURE 6.28 Typical plots of S_e/B versus N for $FS = 3.33$ and $\sigma_d/q_u = 4.38\%$, 9.38%, and 18.75%. (From Das, B. M. and E. C. Shin. 1996. *Geotech. Geol. Eng.*, 14: 213.)

II load; Figure 6.27b). The general nature of these plots is shown in Figure 6.29. They consist of approximately three linear segments, and they are

1. An initial rapid settlement $S_{e(r)}$ (branch O_a).
2. A secondary settlement at a slower rate $S_{e(s)}$ (branch ab). The settlement practically ceases after application of $N = N_{cr}$ cycles of load.
3. For $N > N_{cr}$ cycles of loading, the settlement of the foundation due to cyclic load practically ceases (branch bc).

The linear approximations of S_e with number of load cycles N are shown in Figure 6.28 (solid lines). Hence, the total settlement of the foundation is

$$S_{e(\max)} = S_{e(r)} + S_{e(s)} \tag{6.59}$$

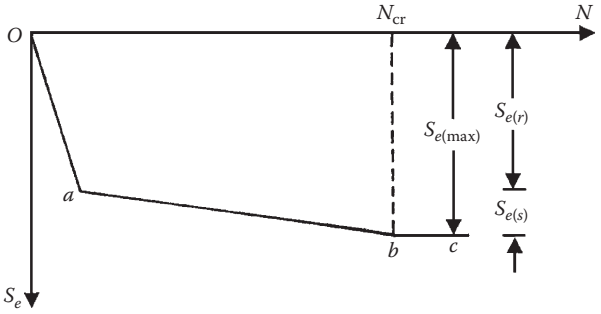


FIGURE 6.29 General nature of plot of S_e versus N for given values of FS and σ_d/q_u.

The tests of Das and Shin[12] had a range of $FS = 3.33–6.67$ and $\sigma_d/q_u = 4.38\%–18.75\%$. Based on these test results, the following general conclusions were drawn:

1. The initial rapid settlement is completed within the first 10 cycles of loading
2. The magnitude of N_{cr} varied between 15,000 and 20,000 cycles. This is independent of FS and σ_d/q_u
3. For a given FS, the magnitude of S_e increased with an increase of σ_d/q_u
4. For a given σ_d/q_u, the magnitude of S_e increased with a decrease in FS

Figure 6.30 shows a plot of $S_{e(\max)}/S_{e(u)}$ versus σ_d/q_u for various values of FS. Note that $S_{e(u)}$ is the settlement of the foundation corresponding to the static ultimate bearing capacity. Similarly, Figure 6.31 is the plot of $S_{e(r)}/S_{e(\max)}$ versus σ_d/q_u for various values of FS. From these plots, it can be seen that

$$\frac{S_{e(\max)}}{S_{e(u)}} = \underbrace{m_1\left(\frac{\sigma_d}{q_u}\right)^{n_1}}_{\text{Figure 6.30}}$$

and for any FS and σ_d/q_u (Figure 6.31), the limiting value of $S_{e(r)}$ may be about $0.8\ S_{e(\max)}$.

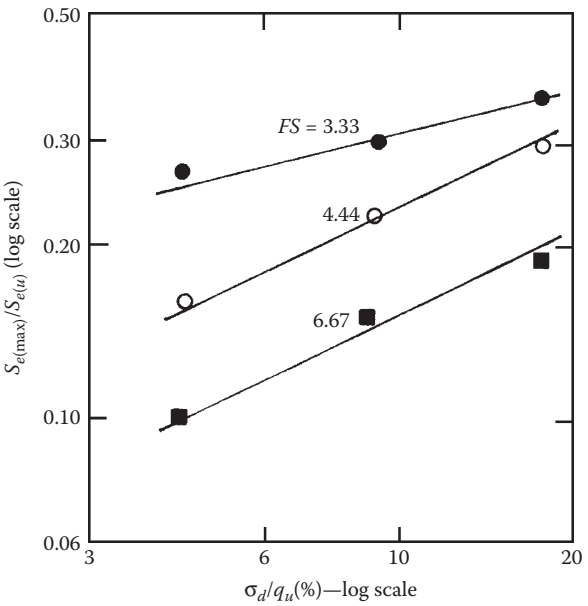


FIGURE 6.30 Results of laboratory model tests of Das and Shin—plot of $S_{e(\max)}/S_{e(u)}$ versus σ_d/q_u. (From Das, B. M. and E. C. Shin. 1996. *Geotech. Geol. Eng.*, 14: 213.)

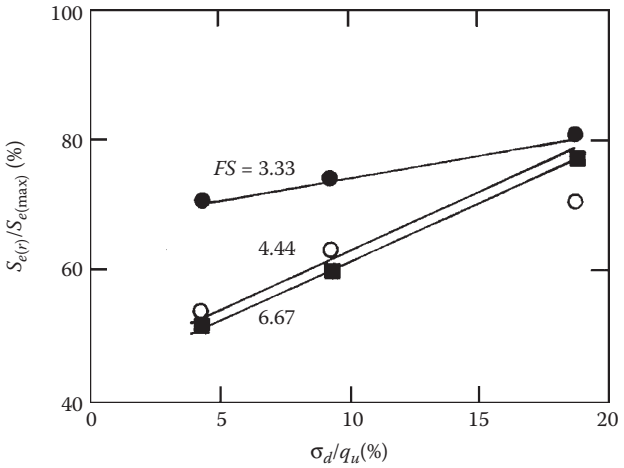


FIGURE 6.31 Results of laboratory model tests of Das and Shin—plot of $S_{e(r)}/S_{e(\max)}$ versus σ_d/q_u. (From Das, B. M. and E. C. Shin. 1996. *Geotech. Geol. Eng.*, 14: 213.)

6.7 SETTLEMENT DUE TO TRANSIENT LOAD ON FOUNDATION

A limited number of test results are available in the literature that relate to the evaluation of settlement of shallow foundations (supported by sand and clay) subjected to transient loading. The findings of these tests are discussed in this section.

Cunny and Sloan[13] conducted several model tests on square surface foundations ($D_f = 0$) to observe the settlement when the foundations were subjected to transient loading. The nature of variation of the transient load with time used for this study is shown in Figure 6.32. Tables 6.2 and 6.3 show the results of these tests conducted in sand and clay, respectively. Other details of the tests are as follows:

Tests in Sand (Table 6.2)

Dry unit weight $\gamma = 16.26$ kN/m^3
Relative density of compaction = 96%
Triaxial angle of friction = 32°

Tests in Clay (Table 6.3)

Compacted moist unit weight = 14.79–15.47 kN/m^3
Moisture content = 22.5 ± 1.7%
Angle of friction (undrained triaxial test) = 4°
Cohesion (undrained triaxial test) = 115 kN/m^2

For all tests, the settlement of the model foundation was measured at three corners by linear potentiometers. Based on the results of these tests, the following general conclusions can be drawn:

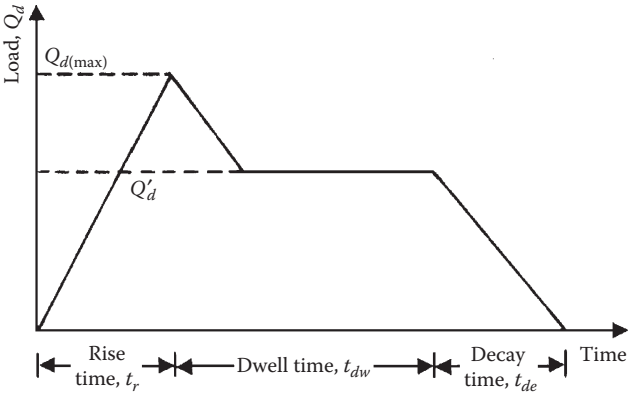


FIGURE 6.32 Nature of transient load in the laboratory tests of Cunny and Sloan. (From Cunny, R. W. and R. C. Sloan. 1961. *Spec. Tech. Pub. 305*, ASTM, p. 65.)

1. The settlement of the foundation under transient loading is generally uniform.
2. Failure in soil below the foundation may be in punching mode.
3. Settlement under transient loading may be substantially less than that observed under static loading. As an example, for test 4 in Table 6.2, the settlement at ultimate load Q_u (static bearing capacity test) was about 66.55 mm. However, when subjected to a transient load with $Q_{d(\max)} = 1.35$

TABLE 6.2
Load-Settlement Relationship of Square Surface Model Foundation on Sand due to Transient Loading

Parameter	Test 1	Test 2	Test 3	Test 4
Width of model foundation B (mm)	152	203	203	229
Ultimate static load-carrying capacity Q_u (kN)	3.42	8.1	8.1	11.52
$Q_{d(\max)}$ (kN)	3.56	13.97	10.12	15.57
Q'_d (kN)	3.56	12.45	9.67	14.46
$Q_{d(\max)}/Q_u$	1.04	1.73	1.25	1.35
t_r (ms)	18	8	90	11
t_{dw} (ms)	122	420	280	0
t_{de} (ms)	110	255	290	350
S_e (Pot. 1) (mm)	7.11	—	21.08	10.16
S_e (Pot. 2) (mm)	1.27	—	23.62	10.67
S_e (Pot. 3) (mm)	2.79	—	24.13	10.16
Average S_e (mm)	3.73	—	22.94	10.34

Source: Cunny, R. W. and R. C. Sloan. 1961. *Spec. Tech. Pub. 305*, ASTM, p. 65.

TABLE 6.3
Load–Settlement Relationship of Square Surface Model Foundation on Clay due to Transient Loading

Parameter	Test 1	Test 2	Test 3	Test 4
Width of model foundation B (mm)	114	114	114	127
Ultimate static load-carrying capacity Q_u (kN)	10.94	10.94	10.94	13.52
$Q_{d(\max)}$(kN)	12.68	13.79	15.39	15.92
Q'_d (kN)	10.12	12.54	13.21	13.12
$Q_{d(\max)}/Q_u$	1.16	1.26	1.41	1.18
t_r (ms)	9	9	10	9
t_{dw} (ms)	170	0	0	0
t_{de} (ms)	350	380	365	360
S_e (Pot. 1) (mm)	12.7	16.76	43.18	14.73
S_e (Pot. 2) (mm)	12.7	18.29	42.67	13.97
S_e (Pot. 3) (mm)	12.19	17.78	43.18	13.97
Average S_e (mm)	12.52	17.60	43.00	14.22

Source: Cunny, R. W. and R. C. Sloan. 1961. *Spec. Tech. Pub. 305*, ASTM, p. 65.

Q_u, the observed settlement was about 10.4 mm. Similarly, for test 2 in Table 6.3, the settlement at ultimate load was about 51 mm. Under transient load with $Q_{d(\max)} = 1.26\ Q_u$, the observed settlement was only about 18 mm.

Jackson and Hadala[14] reported several laboratory model test results on square surface foundations with width B varying from 114 to 203 mm that were supported by saturated buckshot clay. For these tests, the nature of the transient load applied to the foundation is shown in Figure 6.33. The rise time t_r varied from 2 to 16 ms and

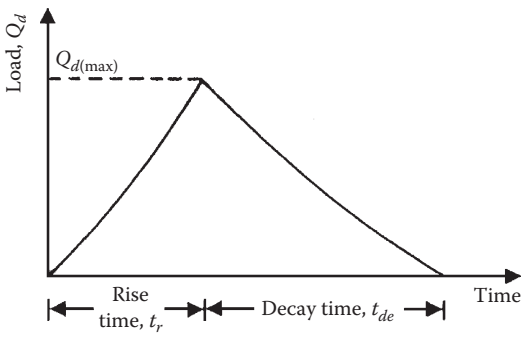


FIGURE 6.33 Nature of transient load in the laboratory tests of Jackson and Hadala. (From Jackson, J. G. Jr. and P. F. Hadala. 1964. *Dynamic bearing capacity of soils. Report 3: The Application Similitude to Small-Scale Footing Tests*. US Army Corps of Engineers, Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, Mississippi.)

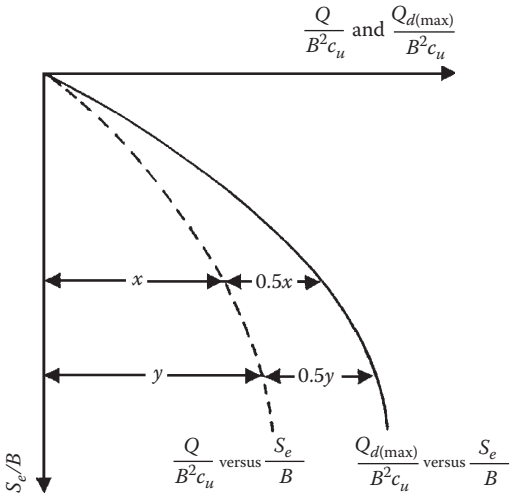


FIGURE 6.34 Relationship of $Q_{d(\max)}/B^2c_u$ versus S_e/B from plate load tests (plate size $B \times B$).

the decay time from 240 to 425 ms. Based on these tests, it was shown that there is a unique relationship between $Q_{d(\max)}/(B^2c_u)$ and S_e/B. This relationship can be found in the following manner:

1. From the plate load test (square plate, $B \times B$) in the field, determine the relationship between load Q and S_e/B.
2. Plot a graph of Q/B^2c_u versus S_e/B as shown by the dashed line in Figure 6.34.
3. Since the strain-rate factor in clays is about 1.5 (see Section 6.2), determine 1.5 Q/B^2c_u and develop a plot of 1.5 Q/B^2c_u versus S_e/B as shown by the solid line in Figure 6.34. This will be the relationship between $Q_{d(\max)}/(B^2c_u)$ versus S_e/B.

REFERENCES

1. Vesic, A. S., D. C. Banks, and J. M. Woodward. 1965. An experimental study of dynamic bearing capacity of footings on sand. In *Proceedings, Sixth Int. Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng.*, Vol. 2, Montreal, Canada, p. 209.
2. Vesic, A. S. 1973. Analysis of ultimate loads of shallow foundations. *J. Soil Mech. Found. Eng. Div.,* 99(1): 45.
3. Whitman, R. V. and K. A. Healy. 1962. Shear strength of sands during rapid loading. *J. Soil Mech. Found. Eng. Div.,* 88(2): 99.
4. Carroll, W. F. 1963. *Dynamic Bearing Capacity of Soils: Vertical Displacement of Spread Footing on Clay: Static and Impulsive Loadings.* Technical Report 3-599, Report 5, Vicksburg, Mississippi: US Army Corps of Engineers, Waterways Experiment Station.
5. Richards, R., Jr., D. G. Elms, and M. Budhu. 1993. Seismic bearing capacity and settlement of foundations. *J. Geotech. Eng.,* 119(4), 622.

6. Budhu, M. and A. al-Karni. 1993. Seismic bearing capacity of soils. *Geotechnique*, 43(1): 181.
7. Choudhury, D. and K. Subba Rao. 2005. Seismic bearing capacity of shallow strip footings. *Geotech. Geol. Eng.*, 23(4): 403.
8. Yamamoto, K. 2010. Seismic bearing capacity of shallow foundations using upper-bound method. *Int. J. Geotech. Eng.,* 4(2): 255.
9. Raymond, G. P. and F. E. Komos. 1978. Repeated load testing of a model plane strain footing. *Canadian Geotech. J.*, 15(2): 190.
10. Brumund, W. F. and G. A. Leonards. 1972. Subsidence of sand due to surface vibration. *J. Soil Mech. Found. Eng. Div.,* 98(1): 27.
11. Das, B. M. 1993. *Principles of Soil Dynamics*. Boston, Massachusetts: PWS Publishers.
12. Das B. M. and E. C. Shin. 1996. Laboratory model tests for cyclic load-induced settlement of a strip foundation on a clayey soil. *Geotech. Geol. Eng.,* 14: 213.
13. Cunny, R. W. and R. C. Sloan. 1961. Dynamic loading machine and results of preliminary small-scale footing tests. *Spec. Tech. Pub. 305, ASTM*, p. 65.
14. Jackson, J. G., Jr. and P. F. Hadala. 1964. *Dynamic Bearing Capacity of Soils. Report 3: The Application Similitude to Small-Scale Footing Tests,* Vicksburg, Mississippi: US Army Corps of Engineers, Waterways Experiment Station.

7 Shallow Foundations on Reinforced Soil

7.1 INTRODUCTION

Reinforced soil, or mechanically stabilized soil, is a construction material that consists of soil that has been strengthened by tensile elements such as metallic strips, geotextiles, or geogrids. In the 1960s, the French Road Research Laboratory conducted extensive research to evaluate the beneficial effects of using reinforced soil as a construction material. Results of the early work were well documented by Vidal.[1] During the last 40 years, many retaining walls and embankments were constructed all over the world using reinforced soil and they have performed very well.

The beneficial effects of soil reinforcement derive from (a) the soil's increased tensile strength and (b) the shear resistance developed from the friction at the soil-reinforcement interfaces. This is comparable to the reinforcement of concrete structures. At this time, the design of reinforced earth is done with *free-draining granular soil* only. Thus, one avoids the effect of pore water pressure development in cohesive soil, which in turn controls the cohesive bond at the soil-reinforcement interfaces.

Since the mid-1970s, a number of studies have been conducted to evaluate the possibility of constructing shallow foundations on reinforced soil to increase their load-bearing capacity and reduce settlement. In these studies, *metallic strips and geogrids* were used primarily as reinforcing material in *granular soil*. The findings of these studies are summarized in the following sections.

7.2 FOUNDATIONS ON METALLIC-STRIP-REINFORCED GRANULAR SOIL

7.2.1 Metallic Strips

The metallic strips used for reinforcing granular soil for foundation construction are usually thin galvanized steel strips. These strips are laid in several layers under the foundation. For any given layer, the strips are laid at a given center-to-center spacing. The galvanized steel strips are subject to corrosion at the rate of about 0.025–0.05 mm/year. Hence, depending on the projected service life of a given structure, allowances must be made during the design process for the rate of corrosion.

7.2.2 Failure Mode

Binquet and Lee[2,3] conducted several laboratory tests and proposed a theory for designing a continuous foundation on sand reinforced with metallic strips. Figure 7.1

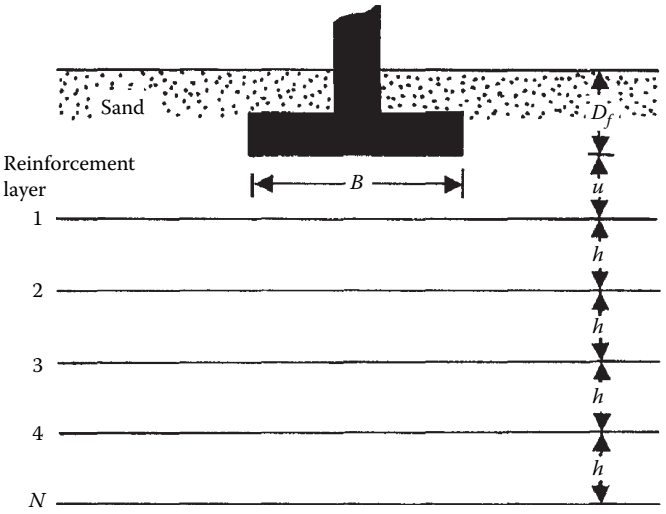


FIGURE 7.1 Foundation on metallic-strip-reinforced granular soil.

defines the general parameters in this design procedure. In Figure 7.1, the width of the continuous foundation is B. The first layer of reinforcement is placed at a distance u measured from the bottom of the foundation. The distance between each layer of reinforcement is h. It was experimentally shown[2,3] that the most beneficial effect of reinforced earth is obtained when u/B is less than about two-thirds B and the number of layers of reinforcement N is greater than four but no more than six to seven. If the length of the ties (i.e., reinforcement strips) is sufficiently long, failure occurs when the upper ties break. This phenomenon is shown in Figure 7.2.

Figure 7.3 shows an idealized condition for the development of a failure surface in reinforced earth that consists of two zones. Zone I is immediately below the foundation, which settles with the foundation during the application of load. In zone II, the soil is pushed outward and upward. Points A_1, A_2, A_3, …, and B_1, B_2, B_3, …, which define the limits of zones I and II, are points at which maximum shear stress τ_{max} occurs in the xz plane. The distance $x = x'$ of the points measured from the

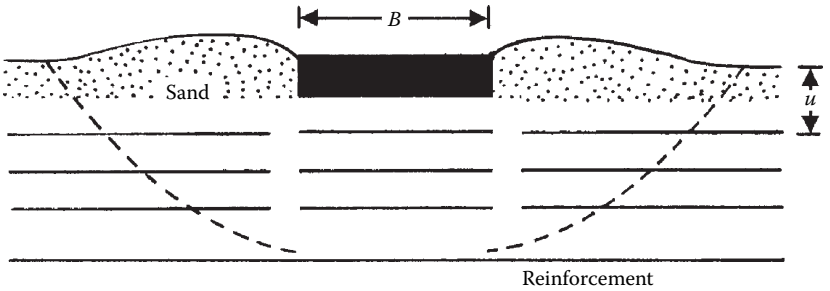


FIGURE 7.2 Failure in reinforced earth by tie break ($u/B < 2/3$ and $N \geq 4$).

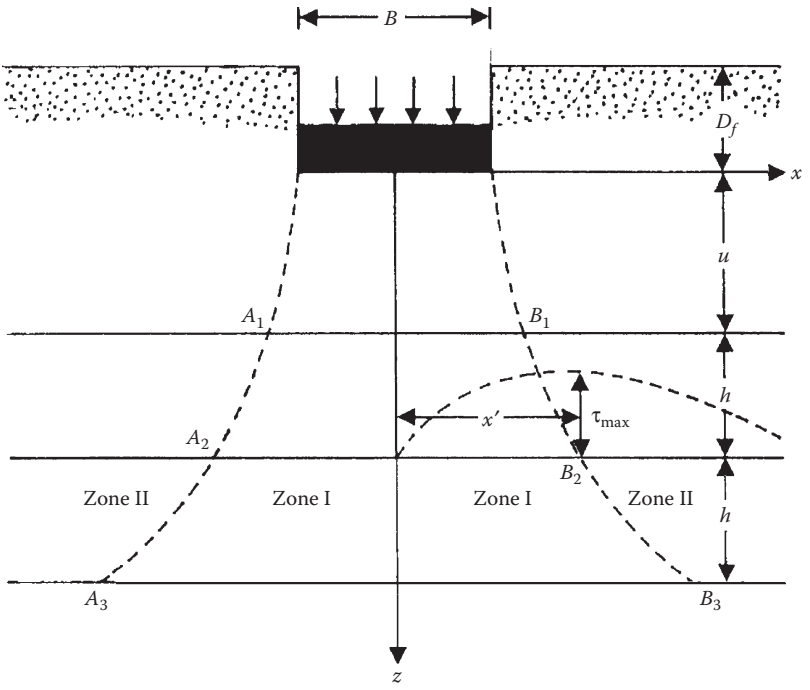


FIGURE 7.3 Failure surface in reinforced soil at ultimate load.

center line of the foundation where maximum shear stress occurs is a function of z/B. This is shown in a nondimensional form in Figure 7.4.

7.2.3 Forces in Reinforcement Ties

In order to obtain the forces in the reinforcement ties, Binquet and Lee[3] made the following assumptions:

1. Under the application of bearing pressure by the foundation, the reinforcing ties at points A_1, A_2, A_3, …, and B_1, B_2, B_3, … (Figure 7.3) take the shape shown in Figure 7.5a; that is, the tie takes two right angle turns on each side of zone I around two frictionless rollers.
2. For N reinforcing layers, the ratio of the load per unit area on the foundation supported by reinforced earth q_R to the load per unit area on the foundation supported by unreinforced earth q_o is constant, irrespective of the settlement level S_e (see Figure 7.5b). Binquet and Lee[2] proved this relation by laboratory experimental results.

With the above assumptions, it can be seen that

$$T = \frac{1}{N}\left[q_o\left(\frac{q_R}{q_o} - 1\right)(\alpha B - \beta h)\right] \tag{7.1}$$

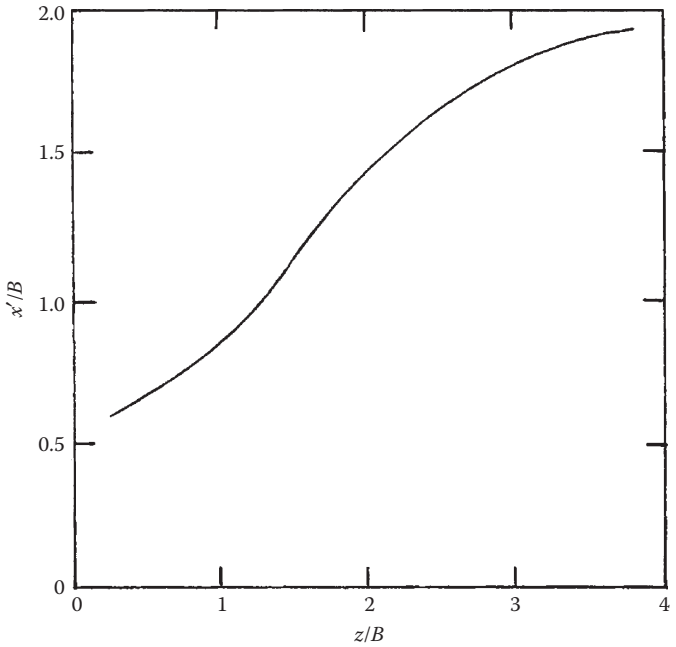


FIGURE 7.4 Variation of x'/B with z/B.

where

T = tie force per unit length of the foundation at a depth z (kN/m)
N = number of reinforcement layers
q_o = load per unit area of the foundation on unreinforced soil for a foundation settlement level of $S_e = S_e'$
q_R = load per unit area of the foundation on reinforced soil for a foundation settlement level of $S_e = S_e'$
α, β = parameters that are functions of z/B

The variations of α and β with z/B are shown in Figures 7.6 and 7.7, respectively.

7.2.4 Factor of Safety against Tie Breaking and Tie Pullout

In designing a foundation, it is essential to determine if the reinforcement ties will fail either by breaking or by pullout. Let the width of a single tie (at right angles to the cross section shown in Figure 7.1) be w and its thickness t. If the number of ties per unit length of the foundation placed at any depth z is equal to n, then the factor of safety against the possibility of tie break FS_B is

$$FS_B = \frac{wtnf_y}{T} = \frac{tf_y(\text{LDR})}{T} \tag{7.2}$$

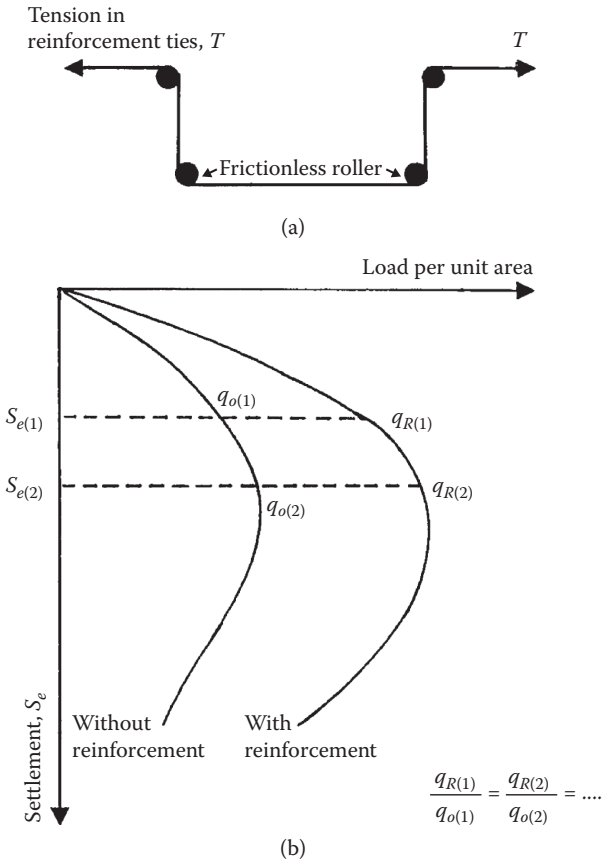


FIGURE 7.5 Assumptions to calculate the force in reinforcement ties: (a) shape of reinforcing strip under bearing pressure; (b) nature of variation of q_R/q_o at various settlement levels.

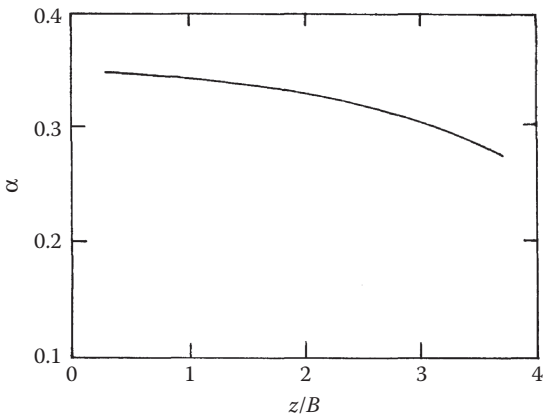


FIGURE 7.6 Variation of α with z/B.

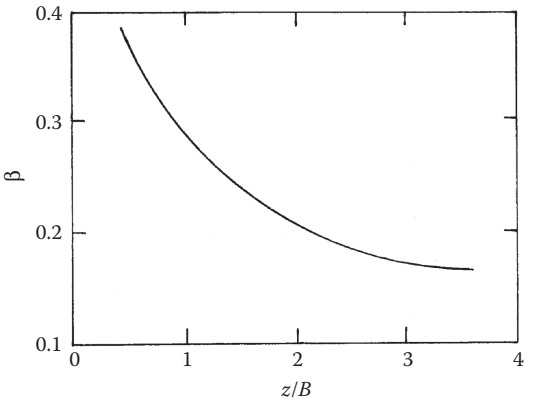


FIGURE 7.7 Variation of β with z/B.

where
f_y = yield or breaking strength of tie material

$$\text{LDR} = \text{linear density ratio} = wn \tag{7.3}$$

Figure 7.8 shows a layer of reinforcement located at a depth z. The frictional resistance against tie pullout at that depth can be calculated as

$$F_p = 2\tan\phi_\mu \left[wn \int_{x=x'}^{x=X} \sigma dx + wn\gamma(X - x')(z + D_f) \right] \tag{7.4}$$

where
ϕ_μ = soil–tie interface friction angle
σ = effective normal stress at a depth z due to the uniform load per unit area q_R on the foundation
X = distance at which $\sigma = 0.1q_R$
D_f = depth of the foundation
γ = unit weight of soil

Note that the second term in the right-hand side of Equation 7.4 is due to the fact that frictional resistance is derived from the tops and bottoms of the ties. Thus, from Equation 7.4,

$$F_p = 2\tan\phi_\mu (\text{LDR}) \left[\delta B q_o \left(\frac{q_R}{q_o} \right) + \gamma(X - x')(z + D_f) \right] \tag{7.5}$$

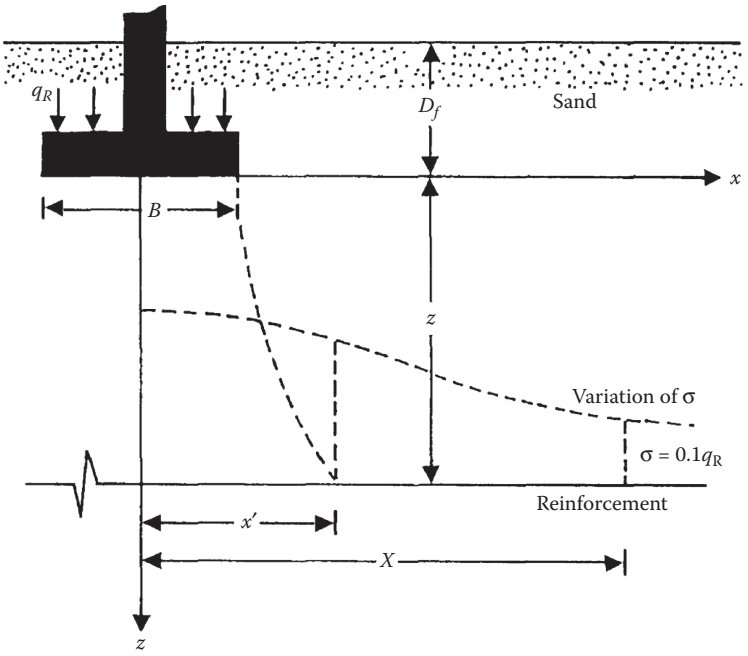


FIGURE 7.8 Frictional resistance against tie pullout.

The term δ is a function of z/B and is shown in Figure 7.9. Figure 7.10 shows a plot of X/B versus z/B. Hence, at any given depth z, the factor of safety against tie pullout FS_P can be given as

$$FS_P = \frac{F_P}{T} \tag{7.6}$$

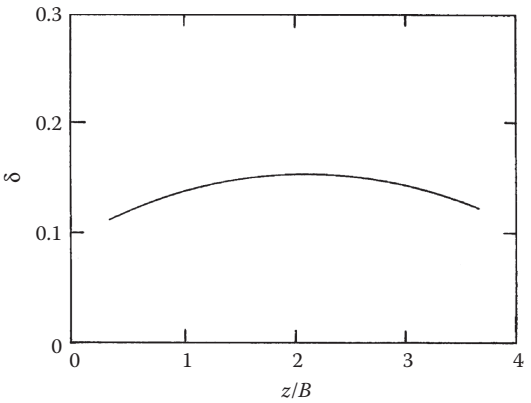


FIGURE 7.9 Variation of δ with z/B.

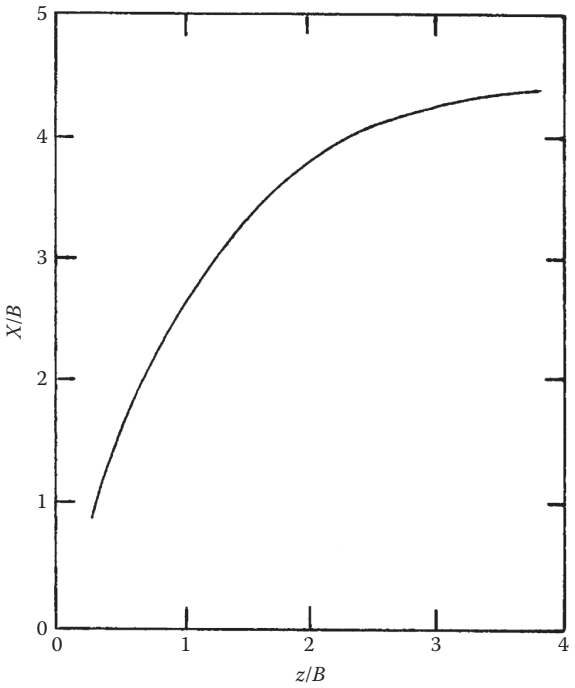


FIGURE 7.10 Variation of X/B with z/B.

7.2.5 Design Procedure for a Continuous Foundation

Following is a step-by-step procedure for designing a continuous foundation on granular soil reinforced with metallic strips:

Step 1. Establish the following parameters:

A. Foundation:
   Net load per unit length Q
   Depth D_f
   Factor of safety FS against bearing capacity failure on unreinforced soil
   Allowable settlement S_e

B. Soil:
   Unit weight γ
   Friction angle ϕ
   Modulus of elasticity E_s
   Poisson's ratio ν_s

C. Reinforcement ties:
   Width w
   Soil–tie friction angle ϕ_μ
   Factor of safety against tie pullout FS_P
   Factor of safety against tie break FS_B

Step 2. Assume values of B, u, h, and number of reinforcement layers N. Note the depth of reinforcement d from the bottom of the foundation

$$d = u + (N-1)h \le 2B \tag{7.7}$$

Step 3. Assume a value of LDR = wn

Step 4. Determine the allowable bearing capacity q'_{all} on unreinforced *sand*, or

$$q'_{all} \approx \frac{q_u}{FS} = \frac{qN_q + (1/2)\gamma BN_\gamma}{FS} \tag{7.8}$$

where

q_u = ultimate bearing capacity on unreinforced soil
$q = \gamma D_f$
N_q, N_γ = bearing capacity factors (Table 2.3)

Step 5. Determine the allowable bearing capacity q''_{all} based on allowable settlement as follows:

$$S_{e(\text{rigid})} = q''_{all} B \frac{(1-\nu^2)}{E_s} I$$

or

$$q''_{all} = \frac{E_s S_{e(\text{rigid})}}{B(1-\nu^2)I} \tag{7.9}$$

The variation of I with L/B (L = length of foundation) is given in Table 7.1.

Step 6. The smaller of the two allowable bearing capacities (i.e., q'_{all} or q''_{all}) is equal to q_o.

TABLE 7.1
Variation of *I* with *L/B*

L/B	*I*
1	0.886
2	1.21
3	1.409
4	1.552
5	1.663
6	1.754
7	1.831
8	1.898
9	1.957
10	2.010

Step 7. Calculate q_R (load per unit area of the foundation on reinforced soil) as

$$q_R = \frac{Q}{B} \tag{7.10}$$

Step 8. Calculate T for all layers of reinforcement using Equation 7.1.
Step 9. Calculate the magnitude of F_P/T for each layer to see if $F_P/T \geq FS_P$. If $F_P/T < FS_P$, the length of the reinforcing strips may have to be increased by substituting X' ($>X$) in Equation 7.5 so that F_P/T is equal to FS_P.
Step 10. Use Equation 7.2 to obtain the thickness of the reinforcement strips.
Step 11. If the design is unsatisfactory, repeat steps 2 through 10.

EXAMPLE 7.1

Design a continuous foundation with the following:

Foundation:
- Net load to be carried $Q = 1.5$ MN/m
- $D_f = 1.2$ m
- Factor of safety against bearing capacity failure in unreinforced soil $F_s = 3.5$
- Tolerable settlement $S_e = 25$ mm

Soil:
- Unit weight $\gamma = 16.5$ kN/m^3
- Friction angle $\phi = 36°$
- $E_s = 3.4 \times 10^4$ kN/m^2
- $\nu = 0.3$

Reinforcement ties:
- Width $w = 70$ mm
- $\phi_\mu = 25°$
- $FS_B = 3$
- $FS_P = 2$
- $f_y = 2.5 \times 10^5$ kN/m^2

Solution

Let $B = 1.2$ m, $u = 0.5$ m, $h = 0.5$ m, $N = 4$, and LDR = 60%. With LDR = 60%,

$$\text{Number of strips } n = \frac{\text{LDR}}{w} = \frac{0.6}{0.07} = 8.57/\text{m}$$

From Equation 7.8,

$$q'_{all} = \frac{qN_q + (1/2)\gamma BN_\gamma}{FS}$$

From Table 2.3 for $\phi = 36°$, the magnitudes of N_q and N_γ are 37.75 and 44.43, respectively. So,

$$q'_{all} = \frac{(1.2\times16.5)(37.75)+(0.5)(16.5)(1.2)(44.43)}{3.5} = 339.23 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

From Equation 7.9,

$$q''_{all} = \frac{E_s S_e}{B(1-\nu^2)I} = \frac{(3.4\times10^4)(0.025)}{(1.2)[1-(0.3)^2](2)} = 389.2 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

Since $q''_{all} > q'_{all}$, $q_o = q'_{all} = 339.23 \text{ kN/m}^2$. Thus,

$$q_R = \frac{Q}{B} = \frac{1.5\times10^3 \text{ kN}}{1.2} = 1250 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

Now the tie forces can be calculated using Equation 7.1

$$T = \left(\frac{q_o}{N}\right)\left(\frac{q_R}{q_o}-1\right)(\alpha B - \beta h)$$

Layer No.	$\left(\frac{q_o}{N}\right)\left(\frac{q_R}{q_o}-1\right)$	z (m)	z/B	$\alpha B-\beta h$	T (kN/m)
1	227.7	0.5	0.47	0.285	64.89
2	227.7	1.0	0.83	0.300	68.31
3	227.7	1.5	1.25	0.325	74.00
4	227.7	2.0	1.67	0.330	75.14

Note: $B = 1.2$ m; α from Figure 7.6; β from Figure 7.7; and $h = 0.5$ m.

The magnitudes of F_p/T for each layer are calculated in the following table. From Equations 7.5 and 7.6,

$$\frac{F_p}{T} = \frac{2\tan\phi_\mu(\text{LDR})}{T}\left[\delta B q_o\left(\frac{q_R}{q_o}\right)+\gamma(X-x')(z+D_f)\right]$$

	Layer			
Parameter	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**
$\frac{2\tan\phi_\mu(\text{LDR})}{T}$ (m/kN)	0.0086	0.0082	0.0076	0.0075
z/B	0.47	0.83	1.25	1.67
δ	0.12	0.14	0.15	0.16
$\delta B q_o\left(\frac{q_R}{q_o}\right)$ (kN/m)	180	210	225	240

(*Continued*)

	Layer			
Parameter	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**
X/B	1.4	2.3	3.2	3.6
X(m)	1.68	2.76	3.84	4.32
x'/B	0.7	0.8	1.0	1.3
x'(m)	0.84	0.96	1.2	1.56
$\gamma(X-x')(z+D_f)$(kN/m)	23.56	65.34	117.6	145.7
F_P/T	1.75	2.26	2.6	2.89

The minimum factor of safety FS_P required is two. In all layers except layer 1, F_P/T is greater than two. So, we need to find a new value of $x = X'$ so that F_P/T is equal to two. So, for layer 1,

$$\frac{F_p}{T} = \frac{2\tan\phi_\mu(\text{LDR})}{T}\left[\delta B q_o\left(\frac{q_R}{q_o}\right) + \gamma(X - x')(z + D_f)\right]$$

or

$$2 = 0.0086[180 + 16.5(X' - 0.84)(0.5 + 1.2)]; \quad X' = 2.71\text{m}$$

Tie thickness t:

From Equation 7.2,

$$FS_B = \frac{tf_y(\text{LDR})}{T}$$

$$t = \frac{(FS_B)(T)}{(f_y)(\text{LDR})} = \frac{(3)(T)}{(2.5\times10^5)(0.6)} = 2\times10^{-5}T$$

The following table can now be prepared:

Layer No.	***T* (kN/m)**	***t* (mm)**
1	64.89	≈1.3
2	68.31	≈1.4
3	74.00	≈1.5
4	75.14	≈1.503

A tie thickness of **1.6 mm** will be sufficient for all layers. Figure 7.11 shows a diagram of the foundation with the ties.

7.3 FOUNDATIONS ON GEOGRID-REINFORCED GRANULAR SOIL

7.3.1 Geogrids

A geogrid is defined as a polymeric (i.e., geosynthetic) material consisting of connected parallel sets of tensile ribs with apertures of sufficient size to allow the

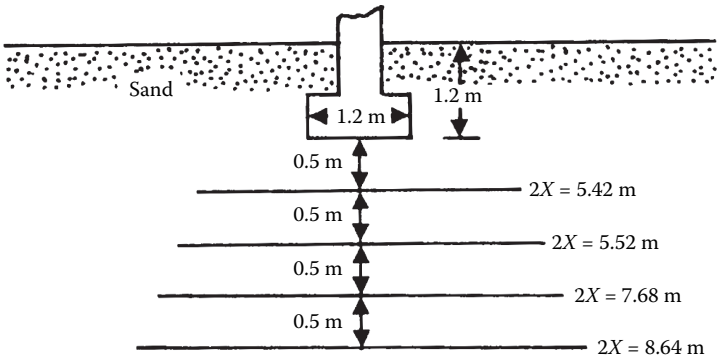


FIGURE 7.11 Length of reinforcement under the foundation.

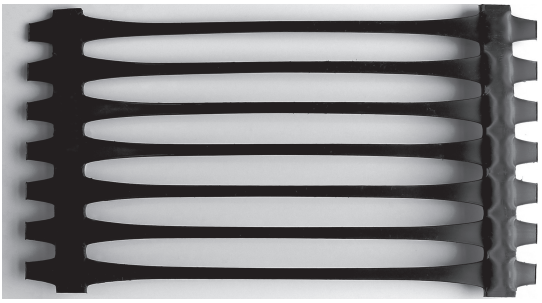
strike-through of surrounding soil, stone, or other geotechnical material. The primary function of geogrids is reinforcement. Reinforcement refers to the mechanism(s) by which the engineering properties of the composite soil/aggregate can be mechanically improved.

Geogrids are high-modulus polymer materials, such as polypropylene and polyethylene, and are prepared by tensile drawing. Netlon Ltd. of the United Kingdom was the first producer of geogrids. In 1982, the Tensar Corporation, presently Tensar International Corporation, introduced geogrids into the United States.

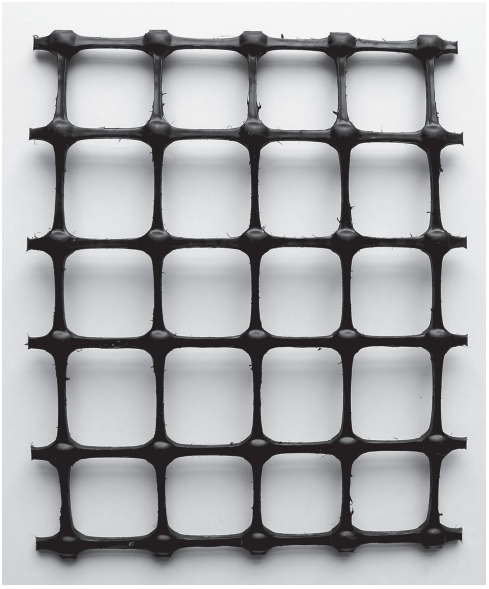
Geogrids generally are of two types: (a) uniaxial and (b) biaxial. Figure 7.12a and b shows these two types of geogrids. Commercially available geogrids may be categorized by manufacturing process, principally: extruded, woven, and welded. Extruded geogrids are formed using a thick sheet of polyethylene or polypropylene that is punched and drawn to create apertures and to enhance engineering properties of the resulting ribs and nodes. Woven geogrids are manufactured by grouping polymeric—usually polyester and polypropylene—and weaving them into a mesh pattern that is then coated with a polymeric lacquer. Welded geogrids are manufactured by fusing junctions of polymeric strips. Extruded geogrids have shown good performance when compared to other types for pavement reinforcement applications.

The commercial geogrids currently available for soil reinforcement have nominal rib thicknesses of about 0.6–1.5 mm and junctions of about 2.5–5 mm. The grids used for soil reinforcement usually have openings or apertures that are rectangular or elliptical. The dimensions of the apertures vary from about 25 to 150 mm. Geogrids are manufactured so that the open area of the grids are greater than 50% of the total area. They develop reinforcing strength at low strain levels, such as 2%.

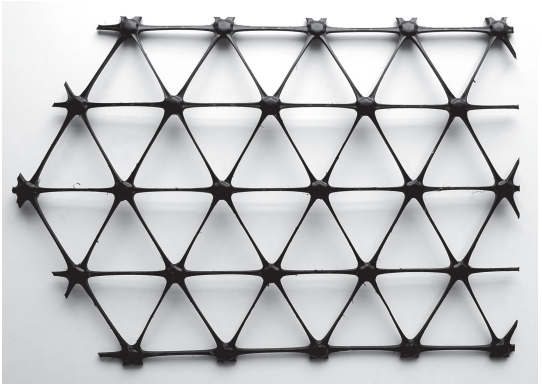
More recently, geogrids with triangular apertures (Figure 7.12c) were introduced for construction purposes. Geogrids with triangular apertures are manufactured from a punched polypropylene sheet, which is then oriented in three substantially equilateral directions so that the resulting ribs shall have a high degree of molecular orientation.



(a)



(b)



(c)

FIGURE 7.12 Extruded geogrids: (a) uniaxial; (b) biaxial; and (c) triaxial.

7.3.2 General Parameters

Since the mid-1980s, a number of laboratory model studies have been reported relating to the evaluation of the ultimate and allowable bearing capacities of shallow foundations supported by soil reinforced with multiple layers of geogrids. The results obtained so far seem promising. The general parameters of the problem are defined in this section.

Figure 7.13 shows the general parameters of a rectangular surface foundation on a soil layer reinforced with several layers of geogrids. The size of the foundation

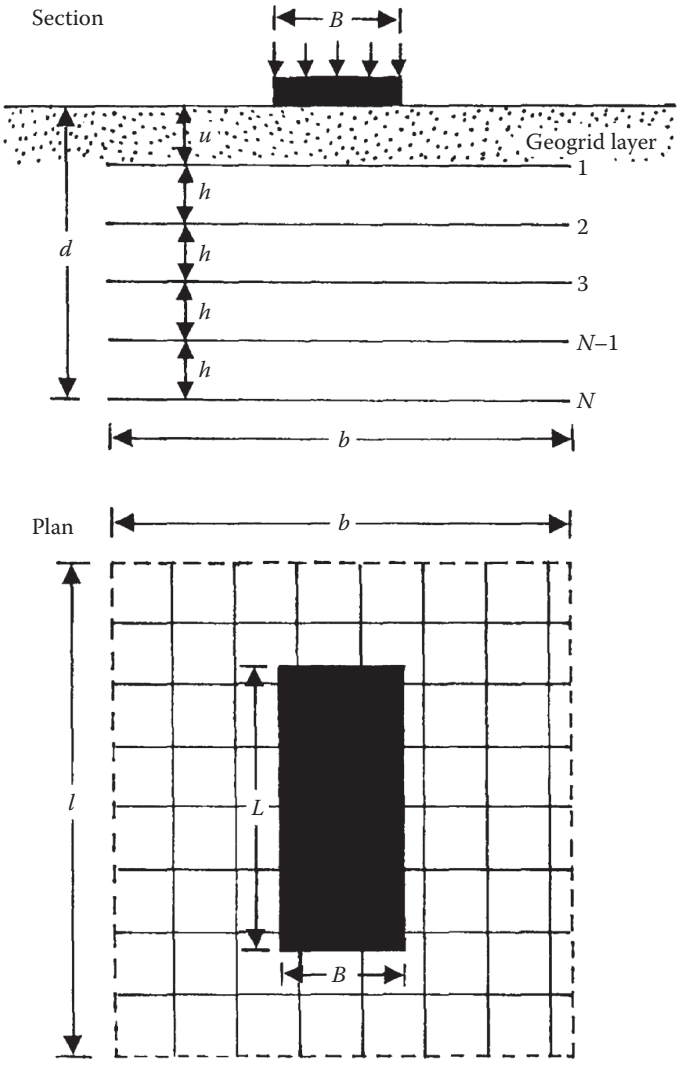


FIGURE 7.13 Geometric parameters of a rectangular foundation supported by geogrid-reinforced soil.

is $B \times L$ (width × length) and the size of the geogrid layers is $b \times l$ (width × length). The first layer of geogrid is located at a depth u below the foundation, and the vertical distance between consecutive layers of geogrids is h. The total depth of reinforcement d can be given as

$$d = u + (N-1)h \tag{7.11}$$

where

N = number of reinforcement layers

The beneficial effects of reinforcement to increase the bearing capacity can be expressed in terms of a nondimensional parameter called the bearing capacity ratio (BCR). The BCR can be expressed with respect to the ultimate bearing capacity or the allowable bearing capacity (at a given settlement level of the foundation). Figure 7.14 shows the general nature of the load–settlement curve of a foundation both with and without geogrid reinforcement. Based on this concept, the BCR can be defined as

$$\text{BCR}_u = \frac{q_{u(R)}}{q_u} \tag{7.12}$$

and

$$\text{BCR}_s = \frac{q_R}{q} \tag{7.13}$$

where

BCR_u = bearing capacity ratio with respect to the ultimate load

BCR_s = bearing capacity ratio at a given settlement level S_e for the foundation

For a given foundation and given values of b/B, l/B, u/B, and h/B, the magnitude of BCR_u increases with d/B and reaches a maximum value at $(d/B)_{cr}$, beyond which the bearing capacity remains practically constant. The term $(d/B)_{cr}$ is the critical-reinforcement-depth ratio. For given values of l/B, u/B, h/B, and d/B, BCR_u attains a maximum value at $(b/B)_{cr}$, which is called the critical-width ratio. Similarly, a critical-length ratio $(l/B)_{cr}$ can be established (for given values of b/B, u/B, h/B, and d/B) for a maximum value of BCR_u. This concept is schematically illustrated in Figure 7.15. As an example, Figure 7.16 shows the variation of BCR_u with d/B for four model foundations (B/L = 0, 1/3, 1/2, and 1) as reported by Omar et al.[4] It was also shown from laboratory model tests[4,5] that, for a given foundation, if b/B, l/B, d/B, and h/B are kept constant, the nature of variation of BCR_u with u/B will be as shown in Figure 7.17. Initially (zone 1), BCR_u increases with u/B to a maximum value at $(u/B)_{cr}$. For $u/B > (u/B)_{cr}$, the magnitude of BCR_u decreases (zone 2). For $u/B > (u/B)_{max}$, the plot of BCR_u versus u/B generally flattens out (zone 3).

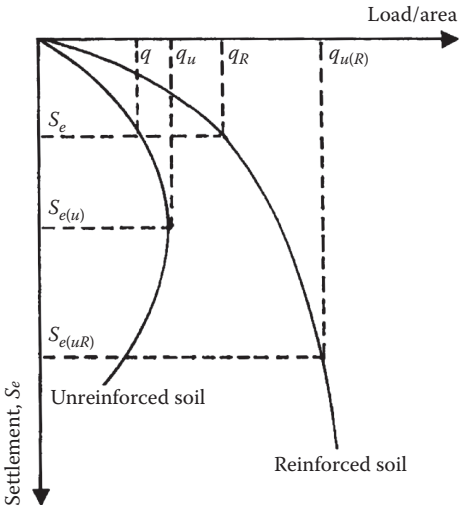


FIGURE 7.14 General nature of the load-settlement curves for unreinforced and geogrid-reinforced soil supporting a foundation.

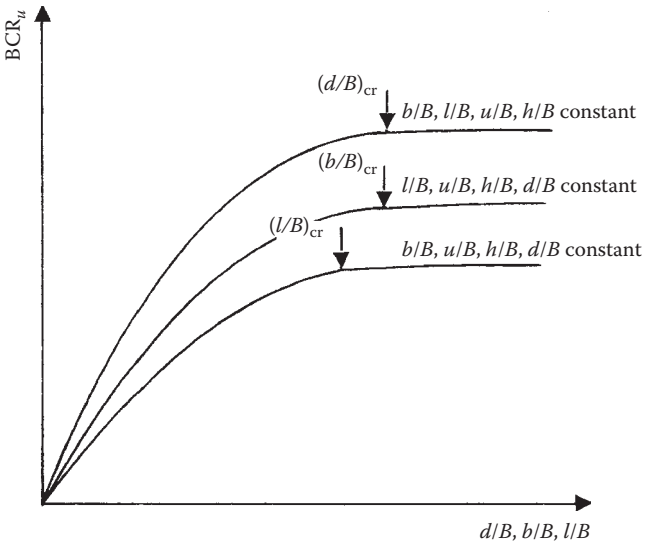


FIGURE 7.15 Definition of critical nondimensional parameters—$(d/B)_{cr}$, $(b/B)_{cr}$, and $(l/B)_{cr}$.

7.3.3 Relationships for Critical Nondimensional Parameters for Foundations on Geogrid-Reinforced Sand

Based on the results of their model tests and other existing results, Omar et al.[4] developed the following empirical relationships for the nondimensional parameters $(d/B)_{cr}$, $(b/B)_{cr}$, and $(l/B)_{cr}$ described in the preceding section.

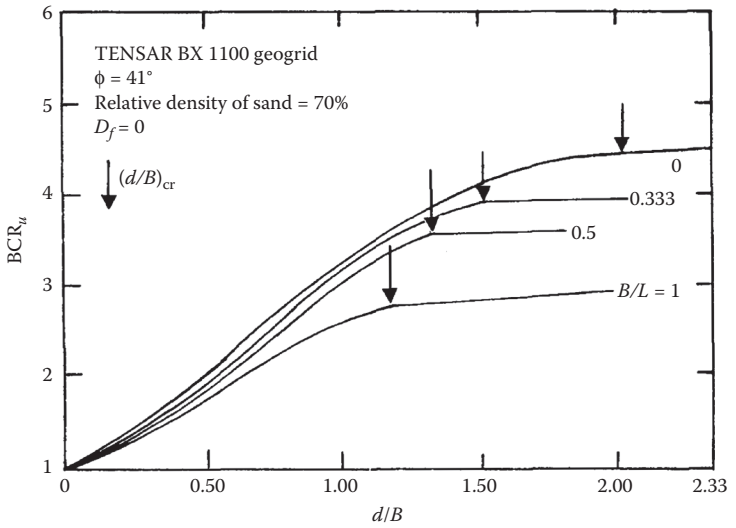


FIGURE 7.16 Variation of BCR$_u$ with d/B. (Based on the results of Omar, M. T. et al. 1993. *Geotech. Testing J.*, 16(2): 246.)

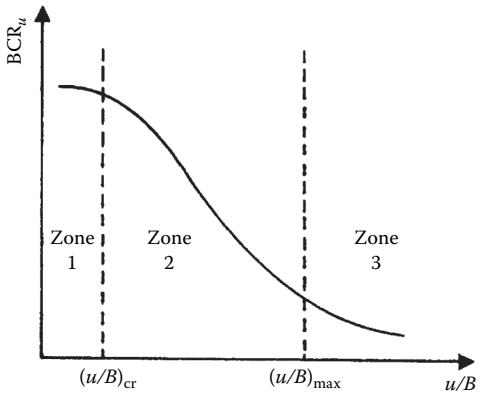


FIGURE 7.17 Nature of variation of BCR$_u$ with u/B.

7.3.3.1 Critical Reinforcement: Depth Ratio

$$\left(\frac{d}{b}\right)_{cr} = 2 - 1.4\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\left(\text{for } 0 \le \frac{B}{L} \le 0.5\right) \tag{7.14}$$

$$\left(\frac{d}{b}\right)_{cr} = 1.43 - 0.26\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\left(\text{for } 0.5 \le \frac{B}{L} \le 1\right) \tag{7.15}$$

The preceding relationships suggest that the bearing capacity increase is realized only when the reinforcement is located within a depth of $2B$ for a continuous foundation and a depth of $1.2B$ for a square foundation.

7.3.3.2 Critical Reinforcement: Width Ratio

$$\left(\frac{b}{B}\right)_{cr} = 8 - 3.5\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)^{0.51} \tag{7.16}$$

According to Equation 7.16, $(b/B)_{cr}$ is about 8 for a continuous foundation and about 4.5 for a square foundation. It needs to be realized that, generally, with other parameters remaining constant, about 80% or more of BCR_u is realized with $b/B \approx 2$. The remaining 20% of BCR_u is realized when b/B increases from about 2 to $(b/B)_{cr}$.

7.3.3.3 Critical Reinforcement: Length Ratio

$$\left(\frac{l}{B}\right)_{cr} = 3.5\left(\frac{B}{L}\right) + \frac{L}{B} \tag{7.17}$$

7.3.3.4 Critical Value of *u/B*

Figure 7.18 shows the laboratory model test results of Guido et al.,[5] Akinmusuru and Akinbolade,[6] and Yetimoglu et al.[7] for bearing capacity tests conducted on *surface foundations* supported by multilayered reinforced sand. Details of these tests are given in Table 7.2. Based on the definition given in Figure 7.17, it appears from these test results that $(u/B)_{max} \approx 0.9–1$. From Figure 7.18, it may also be seen that $(u/B)_{cr}$ as defined by Figure 7.17 is about 0.25–0.5. An analysis of the test results

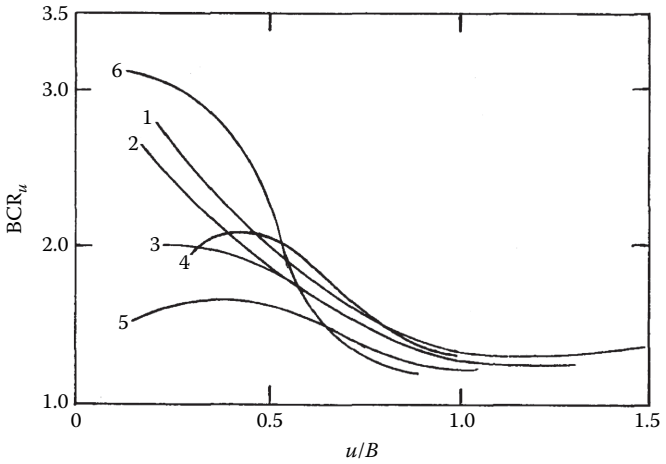


FIGURE 7.18 Variation of BCR_u with u/B from various published works (see Table 7.2 for details).

TABLE 7.2
Details of Test Parameters for Plots Shown in Figure 7.18

Curve	Investigator	Type of Model Foundation	Type of Reinforcement	Parametric Details
1	Guido et al.[5]	Square	Tensar® BX1100	$h/B = 0.25$; $b/B = 3$; $N = 3$
2	Guido et al.[5]	Square	Tensar® BX1200	
3	Guido et al.[5]	Square	Tensar® BX1300	
4	Akinmusuru and Akinbolade[6]	Square	Rope fibers	$h/B = 0.5$; $b/B = 3$; $N = 5$
5	Yetimoglu et al.[7]	Rectangular; $L/B = 8$; L = length of foundation	Terragrid® GS100	$b/B = 4$; $N = 1$
6	Yetimoglu et al.[7]	Rectangular; $L/B = 8$; L = length of foundation	Terragrid® GS100	$h/B = 0.3$; $b/B = 4.5$; $N = 4$

of Schlosser et al.[8] yields a value of $(u/B)_{cr} \approx 0.4$. Large-scale model tests by Adams and Collin[9] showed that $(u/B)_{cr}$ is approximately 0.25.

7.3.4 BCR_U for Foundations with Depth of Foundation D_f Greater than Zero

To the best of the author's knowledge, the only tests for bearing capacity of shallow foundations with $D_f > 0$ are those reported by Shin and Das.[10] These results were for laboratory model tests on a strip foundation in sand. The physical properties of the geogrid used in these tests are given in Table 7.3.

The model tests were conducted with d/B from 0 to 2.4, $u/B = 0.4$, $h/B = 0.4$, and $b/B = 6$ [$\approx (b/B)_{cr}$]. The sand had relative densities D_r of 59% and 74%, and D_f/B

TABLE 7.3
Physical Properties of the Geogrid Used by Shin and Das for the Results Shown in Figure 7.19

Physical Property	Value
Polymer type	Polypropylene
Structure	Biaxial
Mass per unit area	320 g/m^2
Aperture size	41 mm (MD) × 31 mm (CMD)
Maximum tensile strength	14.5 kN/m (MD) × 20.5 kN/m (CMD)
Tensile strength at 5% strain	5.5 kN/m (MD) × 16.0 kN/m (CMD)

Source: Shin, E. C. and B. M. Das. 2000. *Geosynthetics Intl.*, 7(1): 59.
Note: CMD, cross-machine direction; MD, machine direction.

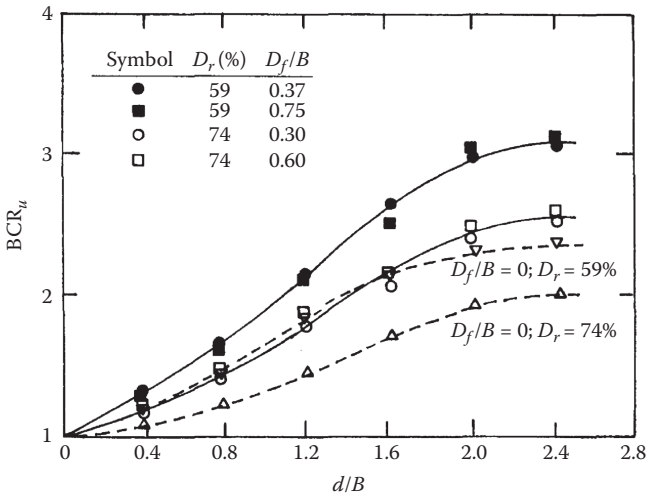


FIGURE 7.19 Comparison of BCR_u for tests conducted at $D_f/B = 0$ and $D_f/B > 0$—strip foundation; $u/B = h/B = 0.4$; $B = 67$ mm; $b/B = 6$. (Compiled from the results of Shin, E. C. and B. M. Das. 2000. *Geosynthetics Intl.*, 7(1): 59.)

was varied from 0 to 0.75. The variation of BCR_u with d/B, D_f/B, and D_r is shown in Figure 7.19. From this figure, the following observations can be made:

1. For all values of D_f/B and D_r, the magnitude of $(d/B)_{cr}$ is about two for strip foundations
2. For given b/B, D_r, u/B, and h/B, the magnitude of BCR_u increases with D_f/B

Based on their laboratory model test results, Das and Shin[10] have shown that the ratio of BCR_s:BCR_u for strip foundations has an approximate relationship with the embedment ratio (D_f/B) for a settlement ratio S_e/B less than or equal to 5%. This relationship is shown in Figure 7.20 and is valid for any values of d/B and b/B. The definition of BCR_s was given in Equation 7.13.

7.3.4.1 Settlement at Ultimate Load

As shown in Figure 7.14, a foundation supported by geogrid-reinforced sand shows a greater level of settlement at ultimate load $q_{u(R)}$. Huang and Hong[11] analyzed the laboratory test results of Huang and Tatsuoka,[12] Takemura et al.,[13] Khing et al.,[14] and Yetimoglu et al.[7] and provided the following approximate relationship for settlement at ultimate load. Or,

$$\frac{S_{e(uR)}}{S_{e(u)}} = 1 + 0.385(BCR_u - 1) \tag{7.18}$$

Refer to Figure 7.14 for definitions of $S_{e(uR)}$ and $S_{e(u)}$.

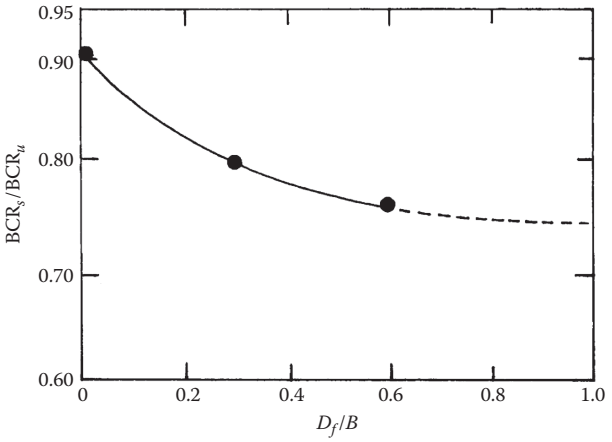


FIGURE 7.20 Plot of BCR$_s$/BCR$_u$ with D_f/B (at settlement ratios <5%).

7.3.5 Ultimate Bearing Capacity of Shallow Foundations on Geogrid-Reinforced Sand

Huang and Tatsuoka[12] proposed a failure mechanism for a strip foundation supported by reinforced earth where the width of reinforcement b is equal to the width of the foundation B, and this is shown in Figure 7.21. This is the so-called *deep foundation mechanism* where a quasi-rigid zone is developed beneath the foundation. Schlosser[8] proposed a *wide slab mechanism* of failure in soil at ultimate load for the condition where $b > B$, and this is shown in Figure 7.22. Huang and Meng[15] provided an analysis to estimate the ultimate bearing capacity of *surface* foundations supported by geogrid-reinforced sand. This analysis took into account the wide slab mechanism as shown in Figure 7.22. According to this analysis and referring to Figure 7.22,

$$q_{u(R)} = \left[0.5 - 0.1\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\right](B + \Delta B)\gamma B N_\gamma + \gamma d N_q \tag{7.19}$$

where

L = length of foundation

γ = unit weight of soil

and

$$\Delta B = 2d \tan\beta \tag{7.20}$$

The relationships for the bearing capacity factors N_γ and N_q are given in Equations 2.66 and 2.74 (see Table 2.3 for values of N_q and Table 2.4 for values of N_γ).

The angle β is given by the relation

$$\tan\beta = 0.68 - 2.071\left(\frac{h}{B}\right) + 0.743(\text{CR}) + 0.03\left(\frac{b}{B}\right) \tag{7.21}$$

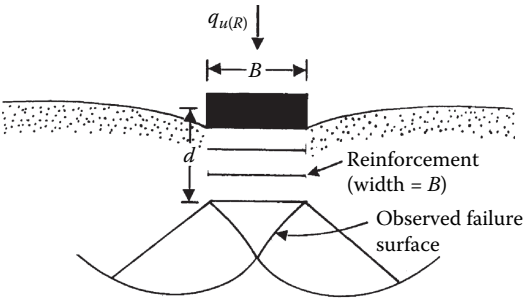


FIGURE 7.21 Failure surface observed by Huang and Tatsuoka. (From Huang, C. C. and F. Tatsuoka. 1990. *Geotext. Geomembr.*, 9: 51.)

where

$$\text{CR} = \text{cover ratio} = \frac{\text{width of reinforcing strip}}{\text{center-to-center horizontal spacing of the strips}}$$

Equation 7.21 is valid for the following ranges:

$$0 \le \tan\beta \le 1 \qquad 1 \le \frac{b}{B} \le 10$$

$$0.25 \le \frac{h}{B} \le 0.5 \qquad 1 \le N \le 5$$

$$0.02 \le \text{CR} \le 1.0 \qquad 0.3 \le \frac{d}{B} \le 2.5$$

In Equation 7.21, it is important to note that the parameter h/B plays the *primary* role in predicting β, and CR plays the secondary role. The effect of b/B is small.

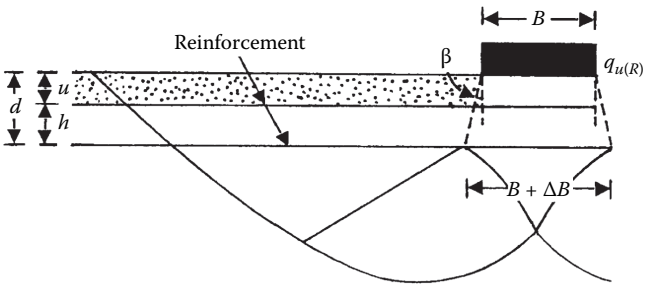


FIGURE 7.22 Failure mechanism of reinforced ground proposed by Schlosser et al. (From Schlosser, F., H. M. Jacobsen, and I. Juran. 1983. *Proc. Eighth European Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Engg.,* Helsinki, Balkema, p. 83.)

7.3.6 Tentative Guidelines for Bearing Capacity Calculation in Sand

Considering the bearing capacity theories presented in the preceding section, the following is a tentative guideline (mostly conservative) for estimating the ultimate and allowable bearing capacities of foundations supported by geogrid-reinforced sand:

Step 1. The magnitude of u/B should be kept between 0.25 and 0.33.
Step 2. The value of h/B should not exceed 0.4.
Step 3. For most practical purposes and for economic efficiency, b/B should be kept between 2 and 3 and $N \leq 4$.
Step 4. Use Equation 7.19, slightly modified, to calculate $q_{u(R)}$, or

$$q_{u(R)} = \left[0.5 - 0.1\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\right](B + 2d\tan\beta)\gamma N_\gamma + \gamma(D_f + d)N_q \tag{7.22}$$

where

$$\beta \approx \tan^{-1}\left[0.68 - 2.071\left(\frac{h}{B}\right) + 0.743(\text{CR}) + 0.03\left(\frac{b}{B}\right)\right] \tag{7.23}$$

Step 5. For determining q_R at $S_e/B \leq 5\%$,

a. Calculation of $\text{BCR}_u = q_{u(R)}/q_u$. The relationship for $q_{u(R)}$ is given in Equation 7.22. Also,

$$q_u = \left[0.5 - 0.1\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\right]B\gamma N_\gamma + \gamma D_f N_q \tag{7.24}$$

b. With known values of D_f/B and using Figure 7.20, obtain $\text{BCR}_s/\text{BCR}_u$.
c. From steps a and b, obtain $\text{BCR}_s = q_R/q$.
d. Estimate q from the relationships given in Equations 5.47 and 5.48 as

$$q = \frac{S_e N_{60}}{1.25\left[1 - \left(\frac{D_f}{4B}\right)\right]} = \frac{0.8 S_e N_{60}}{1 - \left(\frac{D_f}{4B}\right)} \quad (\text{for } B \leq 1.22 \text{ m}) \tag{7.25}$$

and

$$q = \frac{S_e N_{60}}{2\left[1 - \left(\frac{D_f}{4B}\right)\right]}\left(\frac{B + 0.3}{B}\right)^2 = \frac{0.5 S_e N_{60}}{1 - \left(\frac{D_f}{4B}\right)}\left(\frac{B + 0.3}{B}\right)^2 \quad (\text{for } B > 1.22 \text{ m}) \tag{7.26}$$

where

q is in kN/m^2, S_e is in mm, and D_f and B are in m
N_{60} = average field standard penetration number

e. Calculate $q_R = q(\text{BCR}_s)$

7.3.7 Bearing Capacity of Eccentrically Loaded Rectangular Foundation

Sahu et al.[16] conducted several model tests in the laboratory to determine the ultimate bearing capacity of rectangular surface foundations ($D_f/B = 0$) on geogrid-reinforced sand and subjected to vertical eccentric loading. The load eccentricity (e) was in the width direction, and the eccentricity ratio (e/B) was varied from 0 to 0.15. For these tests, B/L was varied as 1, 0.5, 0.33, and 0. (*Note:* B = width of the foundation and L = length of the foundation.) The magnitude of B was kept at 100 mm for all tests. The average relative density during the tests was 69%. Based on the test results, it was proposed that,

$$\frac{q_{u(R)-e}}{q_{u(R)}} = 1 - R_{Kr} \tag{7.27}$$

where,

$q_{u(R)}$ = ultimate bearing capacity for $e/B = 0$
$q_{u(R)-e}$ = average ultimate load per unit area for $e/B > 0$
R_{kr} = reduction factor

Note that, for continuous foundations (i.e., $B/L = 0$),

$$q_{u(R)-e} = \frac{Q_{u(R)-e}}{B} \tag{7.28}$$

where,

$Q_{u(R)-e}$ = ultimate eccentric load per unit length of the continuous foundation

Similarly, for rectangular foundations ($B/L > 0$),

$$q_{u(R)-e} = \frac{Q_{u(R)-e}}{BL} \tag{7.29}$$

where,

$Q_{u(R)-e}$ = ultimate eccentric load on the rectangular foundation

The reduction factor as derived from these tests can be expressed as

$$R_{Kr} = a\left(\frac{d}{B}\right)^b \left(\frac{e}{B}\right)^c \tag{7.30}$$

where,

$$a = -1.02\left(\frac{B}{L}\right) + 3.99 \tag{7.31}$$

$$b = 0.18\left(\frac{B}{L}\right) + 0.43 \tag{7.32}$$

$$c = -0.15\left(\frac{B}{L}\right) + 1.16 \tag{7.33}$$

For the definition of d in Equation 7.30, see Figure 7.13.

7.3.8 Bearing Capacity of Continuous Foundation Subjected to Inclined Load

Figure 7.23 shows a shallow continuous foundation supported by a geogrid-reinforced sand layer that is being subjected to an inclined load $Q_{u(\alpha)}$ per unit length of the foundation. The depth of the foundation is D_f, and α is the angle of inclination of the load with respect to the vertical. Hence, the inclined load per unit area is

$$q_{u(\alpha)} = \frac{Q_{u(\alpha)}}{B} \tag{7.34}$$

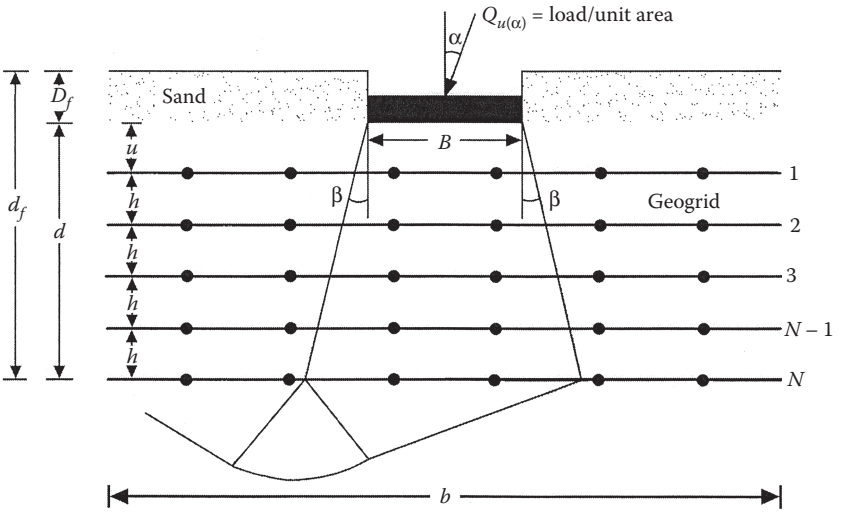


FIGURE 7.23 Continuous foundation over geogrid-reinforced sand subjected to inclined ultimate load.

Sahu et al.[17] conducted several model tests in the laboratory to determine the ultimate bearing capacity of strip foundation under inclined loading. The tests were conducted in dense and loose conditions with soil friction angles of 40.9° and 34°, respectively. The load inclination α was varied from 0 to 20°. Based on the model test results, it was suggested that

$$\frac{q_{u(\alpha)}}{q_{u(\alpha=0)}} = 1 - R_{Kr} \tag{7.35}$$

where,

$q_{u(\alpha=0)}$ = ultimate bearing capacity under vertical loading condition (i.e., $\alpha = 0$)
R_{Kr} = reduction factor

The reduction factor can be expressed as

$$R_{Kr} = \left[1.36 - 0.46\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)\right]\left(\frac{d_f}{B}\right)^{0.07+0.27(D_f/B)} \times \left(\frac{\alpha}{\phi}\right)^{0.78+0.3(D_f/B)} \tag{7.36}$$

7.3.9 Settlement of Foundations on Geogrid-Reinforced Soil due to Cyclic Loading

In many cases, shallow foundations supported by geogrid-reinforced soil may be subjected to cyclic loading. This problem will primarily be encountered by vibratory machine foundations. Das[18] reported laboratory model test results on settlement caused by cyclic loading on surface foundations supported by reinforced sand. The results of the tests are summarized below.

The model tests were conducted with a square model foundation on unreinforced and geogrid-reinforced sand. Details of the sand and geogrid parameters were

Model foundation:
Square; $B = 76.2$ mm
Sand:
Relative density of compaction $D_r = 76\%$
Angle of friction $\phi = 42°$
Reinforcement:
Geogrid: Tensar® BX1000
Reinforcement–width ratio:

$$\left(\frac{b}{B}\right) \approx \left(\frac{b}{B}\right)_{cr} \text{ (see Equation 7.16)}$$

$$\left(\frac{u}{B}\right) \approx \left(\frac{u}{B}\right)_{cr} = 0.33$$

$$\frac{h}{B} = 0.33$$

Reinforcement–depth ratio:

$$\left(\frac{d}{B}\right) \approx \left(\frac{d}{B}\right)_{cr} = 1.33 \text{ (see Equation 7.15)}$$

Number of layers of reinforcement:

$$N = 4$$

The laboratory tests were conducted by first applying a static load of intensity q_s ($=q_{u(R)}/FS$; FS = factor of safety) followed by a cyclic load of low frequency (1 cps). The amplitude of the intensity of cyclic load was $q_{dc(\max)}$. The nature of load application described is shown in Figure 7.24. Figure 7.25 shows the nature of variation of foundation settlement due to cyclic load application S_{ec} with $q_{dc(\max)}/q_{u(R)}$ and number of load cycles n. This is for the case of $FS = 3$. Note that, for any given test, S_{ec} increases with n and reaches practically a maximum value $S_{ec(\max)}$ at $n = n_{cr}$. Based on these tests, the following conclusions can be drawn:

1. For given values of FS and n, the magnitude of S_{ec}/B increases with the increase in $q_{dc(\max)}/q_{u(R)}$.
2. If the magnitudes of $q_{dc(\max)}/q_{u(R)}$ and n remain constant, the value of S_{ec}/B increases with a decrease in FS.
3. The magnitude of n_{cr} for all tests in reinforced soil is approximately the same, varying between 1.75×10^5 and 2.5×10^5 cycles. Similarly, the magnitude of n_{cr} for all tests in unreinforced soil varies between 1.5×10^5 and 2.0×10^5 cycles.

The variations of $S_{ec(\max)}/B$ obtained from these tests for various values of $q_{dc(\max)}/q_{u(R)}$ and FS are shown in Figure 7.26. This figure clearly demonstrates the reduction of the level of permanent settlement caused by geogrid reinforcement due to cyclic

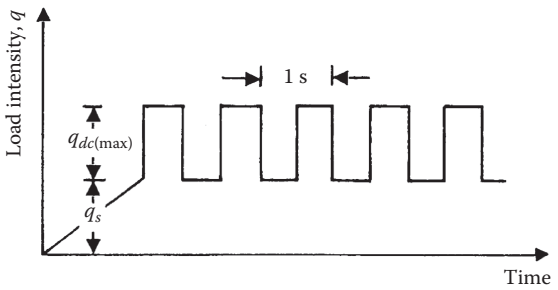


FIGURE 7.24 Nature of load application—cyclic load test.

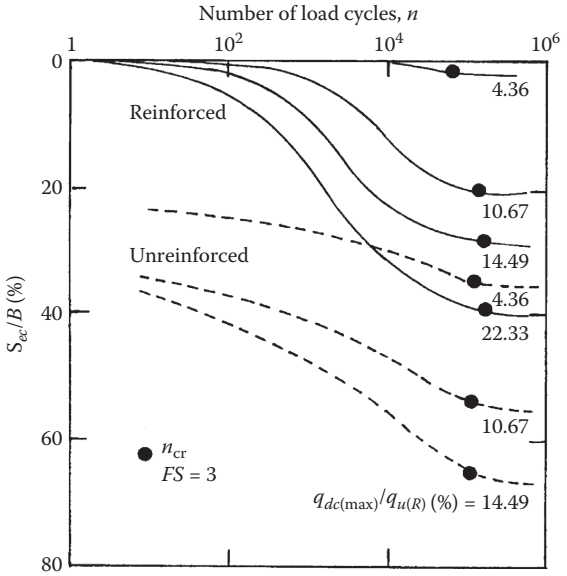


FIGURE 7.25 Plot of S_{ec}/B versus n. (*Note:* For reinforced sand, $u/B = h/B = 1/3$; $b/B = 4$; $d/B = 1.33$.) (After Das, B. M. 1998. *Geosynthetics in Foundation Reinforcement and Erosion Control Systems*, eds. J. J. Bowders, H. B. Scranton, and G. P. Broderick. ASCE, Geotech. Special Pub., 76, p. 19.)

loading. Using the results of $S_{ec(\max)}$ given in Figure 7.26, the variation of settlement ratio ρ for various combinations of $q_{dc(\max)}/q_{u(R)}$ and FS are plotted in Figure 7.27. The settlement ratio is defined as

$$\rho = \frac{S_{ec(\max)} - \text{reinforced}}{S_{ec(\max)} - \text{unreinforced}} \tag{7.37}$$

From Figure 7.27, it can be seen that, although some scattering exists, the settlement ratio is only a function of $q_{dc(\max)}/q_{u(R)}$ and not the factor of safety FS.

7.3.10 Settlement due to Impact Loading

Geogrid reinforcement can reduce the settlement of shallow foundations that are likely to be subjected to impact loading. This is shown in the results of laboratory model tests in sand reported by Das.[18] The tests were conducted with a square surface foundation ($D_f = 0$; $B = 76.2$ mm). Tensar® BX1000 geogrid was used as reinforcement. Following are the physical parameters of the soil and reinforcement:

Sand:
Relative density of compaction = 76%
Angle of friction $\phi = 42°$

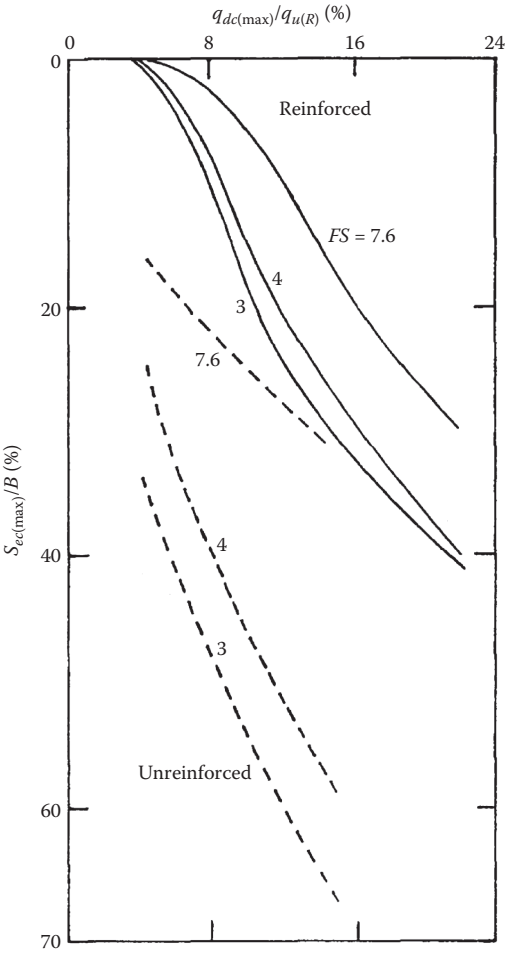


FIGURE 7.26 Plot of $S_{ec(\max)}/B$ versus $q_{dc(\max)}/q_{u(R)}$. (*Note:* For reinforced sand, $u/B = h/B = 1/3$; $b/B = 4$; $d/B = 1 - 1/3$.) (After Das, B. M. 1998. *Geosynthetics in Foundation Reinforcement and Erosion Control Systems*, eds. J. J. Bowders, H. B. Scranton, and G. P. Broderick. ASCE, Geotech. Special Pub., 76, p. 19.)

Reinforcement:

$$\frac{u}{B} = 0.33; \quad \frac{b}{B} = 4; \quad \frac{h}{B} = 0.33$$

Number of reinforcement layers $N = 0$, 1, 2, 3, and 4.

The idealized shape of the impact load applied to the model foundation is shown in Figure 7.28, in which t_r and t_d are the rise and decay times and $q_{t(\max)}$ is the maximum intensity of the impact load. For these tests, the average values of t_r and t_d were

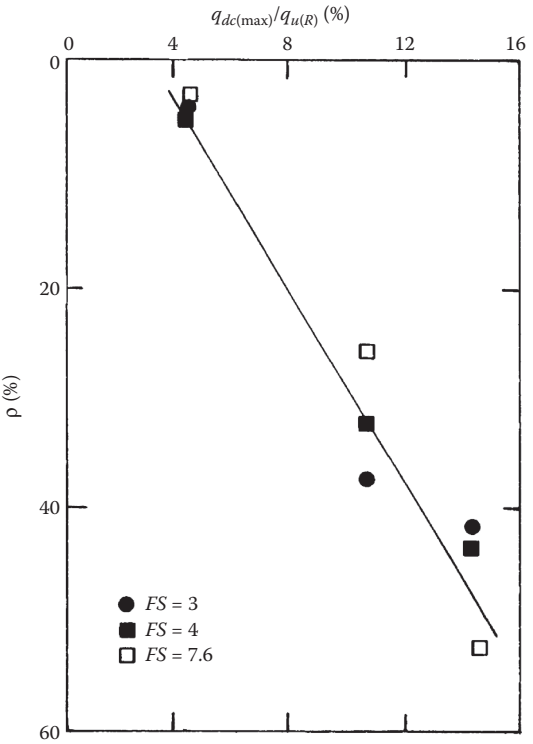


FIGURE 7.27 Variation of $q_{dc(\max)}/q_{u(R)}$ with ρ. (*Note:* For reinforced sand, $u/B = h/B = 1/3$; $b/B = 4$; $d/B = 1 - 1/3$.) (After Das, B. M. 1998. Dynamic loading on foundation on reinforced soil. In *Geosynthetics in Foundation Reinforcement and Erosion Control Systems*, eds. J. J. Bowders, H. B. Scranton, and G. P. Broderick. ASCE, Geotech. Special Pub., 76, p. 19.)

approximately 1.75 and 1.4 s, respectively. The maximum settlements observed due to the impact loading $S_{et(\max)}$ are shown in a nondimensional form in Figure 7.29. In this figure, q_u and $S_{e(u)}$, respectively, are the ultimate bearing capacity and the corresponding foundation settlement on unreinforced sand. From this figure, it is obvious that

1. For a given value of $q_{t(\max)}/q_u$, the foundation settlement decreases with an increase in the number of geogrid layers
2. For a given number of reinforcement layers, the magnitude of $S_{et(\max)}$ increases with the increase in $q_{t(\max)}/q_u$

The effectiveness with which geogrid reinforcement helps reduce the settlement can be expressed by a quantity called the settlement reduction factor R, or

$$R = \frac{S_{et(\max)-d}}{S_{et(\max)-d=0}}$$

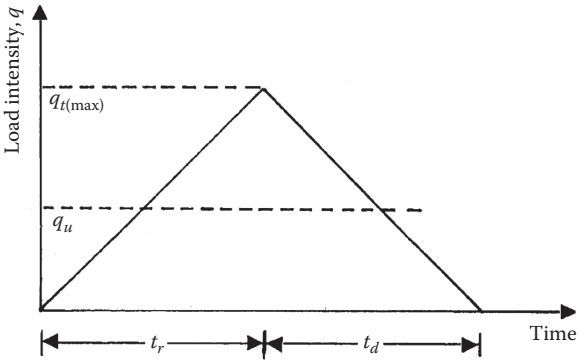


FIGURE 7.28 Nature of transient load.

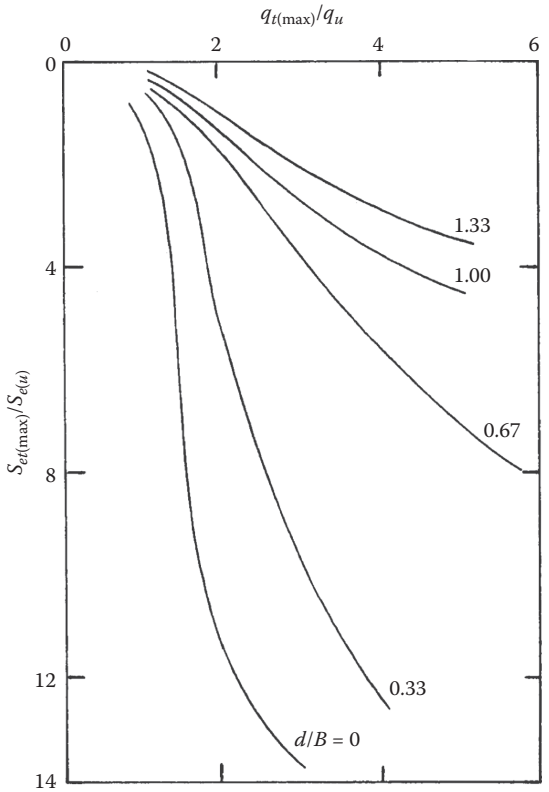


FIGURE 7.29 Variation of $S_{et(\max)}/S_{e(u)}$ with $q_{t(\max)}/q_u$ and d/B. (After Das, B. M. 1998. *Geosynthetics in Foundation Reinforcement and Erosion Control Systems*, eds. J. J. Bowders, H. B. Scranton, and G. P. Broderick. ASCE, Geotech. Special Pub., 76, p. 19.)

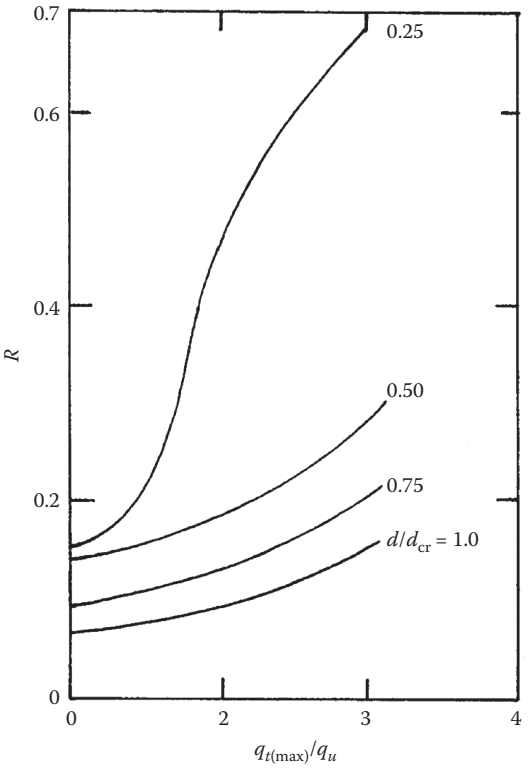


FIGURE 7.30 Plot of settlement reduction factor with $q_{t(max)}/q_u$ and d/d_{cr}. (After Das, B. M. 1998. *Geosynthetics in Foundation Reinforcement and Erosion Control Systems*, eds. J. J. Bowders, H. B. Scranton, and G. P. Broderick. ASCE, Geotech. Special Pub., 76, p. 19.)

where

$S_{et(max)-d}$ = maximum settlement due to impact load with reinforcement depth of d

$S_{et(max)-d=0}$ = maximum settlement with no reinforcement (i.e., $d = 0$ or $N = 0$)

Based on the results given in Figure 7.29, the variation of R with $q_{t(max)}/q_u$ and d/d_{cr} is shown in Figure 7.30. From the plot, it is obvious that the geogrid reinforcement acts as an excellent settlement retardant under impact loading.

REFERENCES

1. Vidal, H. 1966. La terre Armée. In *Anales de l'institut Technique du Bâtiment et des Travaus Publiques*, Paris, France, July–August, p. 888.
2. Binquet, J. and K. L. Lee. 1975. Bearing capacity tests on reinforced earth mass. *J. Geotech. Eng. Div.*, 101(12): 1241.
3. Binquet, J. and K. L. Lee. 1975. Bearing capacity analysis of reinforced earth slabs. *J. Geotech. Eng. Div.*, 101(12): 1257.

4. Omar, M. T., B. M. Das, S. C. Yen, V. K. Puri, and E. E. Cook. 1993. Ultimate bearing capacity of rectangular foundations on geogrid-reinforced sand. *Geotech. Test. J., ASTM*, 16(2): 246.
5. Guido, V. A., J. D. Knueppel, and M. A. Sweeney. 1987. Plate load tests on geogrid-reinforced earth slabs. In *Proc. Geosynthetics,* New Orleans, USA, 1987, p. 216.
6. Akinmusuru, J. O. and J. A. Akinbolade. 1981. Stability of loaded footings on reinforced soil. *J. Geotech. Eng. Div.*, 107: 819.
7. Yetimoglu, T., J. T. Wu, and A. Saglamer. 1994. Bearing capacity of rectangular footings on geogrid-reinforced sand. *J. Geotech. Eng.*, 120(12): 2083.
8. Schlosser, F., H. M. Jacobsen, and I. Juran. 1983. Soil reinforcement—General report. In *Proc. Eighth European Conf. Soil Mech. Found. Eng.*, May 23–26, Helsinki, Balkema, p. 83.
9. Adams, M. T. and J. G. Collin. 1997. Large model spread footing load tests on geosynthetic reinforced soil foundation. *J. Geotech. Geoenviron. Eng.*, 123(1): 66.
10. Shin, E. C. and B. M. Das. 2000. Experimental study of bearing capacity of a strip foundation on geogrid-reinforced sand. *Geosynthetics Intl.*, 7(1): 59.
11. Huang, C. C. and L. K. Hong. 2000. Ultimate bearing capacity and settlement of footings on reinforced sandy ground. *Soils Found.*, 49(5): 65.
12. Huang, C. C. and F. Tatsuoka. 1990. Bearing capacity of reinforced horizontal sandy ground. *Geotext. Geomembr.*, 9: 51.
13. Takemura, J., M. Okamura, N. Suesmasa, and T. Kimura. 1992. Bearing capacity and deformations of sand reinforced with geogrids. In *Proc. Int. Symp. Earth Reinforcement Practice*, November 11–13, Fukuoka, Japan, p. 695.
14. Khing, K. H., B. M. Das, V. K. Puri, E. E. Cook, and S. C. Yen. 1992. Bearing capacity of two closely-spaced strip foundations on geogrid-reinforced sand. In *Proc. Int. Symp. Earth Reinforcement Practice*, November 11–13, Fukuoka, Japan, p. 619.
15. Huang, C. C. and F. Y. Meng. 1997. Deep footing and wide-slab effects on reinforced sandy ground. *J. Geotech. Geoenviron. Eng.*, 123(1): 30.
16. Sahu, R., C. R. Patra, B. M. Das, and N. Sivakugan. 2016. Ultimate bearing capacity of rectangular foundation on geogrid-reinforced sand under eccentric load. *Int. J. Geotech. Eng.*, Taylor and Francis, 10(1): 52.
17. Sahu, R., C. R. Patra, B. M. Das, and N. Sivakugan. 2016. Bearing capacity of shallow strip foundation on geogrid-reinforced sand subjected to inclined load. *Int. J. Geotech. Eng.*, Taylor and Francis, 10(2): 183–189.
18. Das, B. M. 1998. Dynamic loading on foundation on reinforced soil. In *Geosynthetics in Foundation Reinforcement and Erosion Control Systems*, eds. J. J. Bowders, H. B. Scranton, and G. P. Broderick. ASCE, Geotech. Special Pub., Boston, USA, 76, p. 19.

8 Uplift Capacity of Shallow Foundations

8.1 INTRODUCTION

Foundations and other structures may be subjected to uplift forces under special circumstances. For those foundations, it is desirable to apply a sufficient factor of safety against failure by uplift during the design process. During the last 40 or so years, several theories have been developed to estimate the ultimate uplift capacity of foundations embedded in sand and clay soils, and some of those theories are detailed in this chapter. The chapter is divided into two major parts: foundations in granular soil and foundations in saturated clay soil ($\phi = 0$).

Figure 8.1 shows a shallow foundation of width B and depth of embedment D_f. The ultimate uplift capacity of the foundation Q_u can be expressed as

$$Q_u = \text{frictional resistance of soil along the failure surface} + \text{weight of soil in the failure zone and the foundation} \quad (8.1)$$

If the foundation is subjected to an uplift load of Q_u, the failure surface in the soil for relatively small D_f/B values will be of the type shown in Figure 8.1. The intersection of the failure surface at the ground level will make an angle α with the horizontal. However, the magnitude of α will vary with the relative density of compaction in the case of sand, and with the consistency in the case of clay soils.

When the failure surface in soil extends up to the ground surface at ultimate load, it is defined as a *shallow foundation under uplift*. For larger values of D_f/B, failure takes place around the foundation and the failure surface does not extend to the ground surface. These are called *deep foundations under uplift*. The *embedment ratio* D_f/B at which a foundation changes from shallow to deep condition is referred to as the critical embedment ratio $(D_f/B)_{cr}$. In sand, the magnitude of $(D_f/B)_{cr}$ can vary from 3 to about 11, and in saturated clay, it can vary from 3 to about 7.

8.2 FOUNDATIONS IN SAND

During the last 40 years, several theoretical and semiempirical methods have been developed to predict the net ultimate uplifting load of continuous, circular, and rectangular foundations embedded in sand. Some of these theories are briefly described in the following sections.

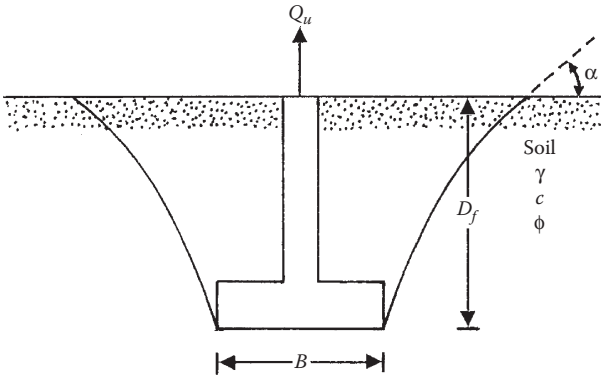


FIGURE 8.1 Shallow foundation subjected to uplift.

8.2.1 Balla's Theory

Based on the results of several model and field tests conducted in dense soil, Balla[1] established that, for *shallow circular foundations*, the failure surface in soil will be as shown in Figure 8.2. Note from the figure that aa' and bb' are arcs of a circle. The angle α is equal to $45 - \phi/2$. The radius of the circle, of which aa' and bb' are arcs, is equal to

$$r = \frac{D_f}{\sin(45 + \phi/2)} \tag{8.2}$$

As mentioned before, the ultimate uplift capacity of the foundation is the sum of two components: (a) the weight of the soil and the foundation in the failure zone and (b) the shearing resistance developed along the failure surface. Thus, assuming that the unit weight of soil and the foundation material are approximately the same,

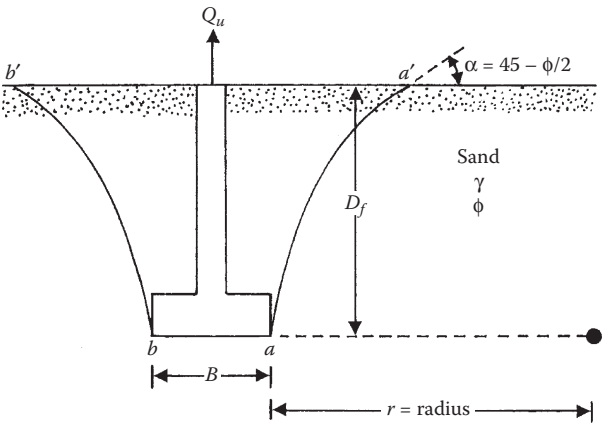


FIGURE 8.2 Balla's theory for shallow circular foundations.

$$Q_u = D_f^3 \gamma \left[F_1\left(\phi, \frac{D_f}{B}\right) + F_3\left(\phi, \frac{D_f}{B}\right) \right] \tag{8.3}$$

where

γ = unit weight of soil
ϕ = soil friction angle
B = diameter of the circular foundation

The sums of the functions $F_1(\phi, D_f/B)$ and $F_3(\phi, D_f/B)$ developed by Balla[1] are plotted in Figure 8.3 for various values of the soil friction angle ϕ and the embedment ratio, D_f/B.

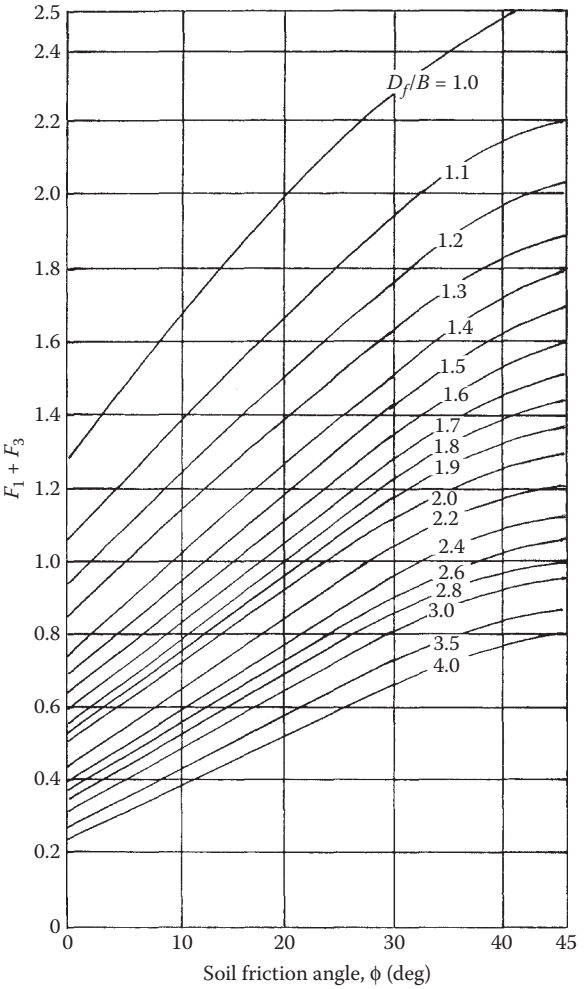


FIGURE 8.3 Variation of $F_1 + F_3$ (Equation 8.3).

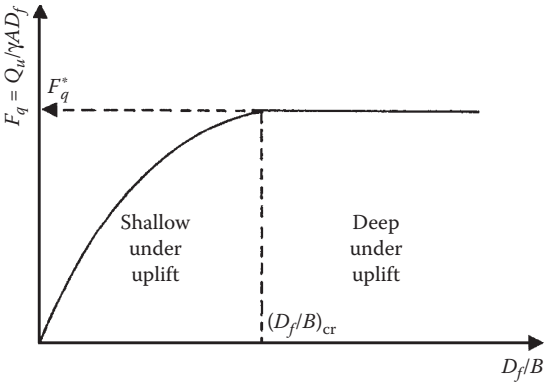


FIGURE 8.4 Nature of variation of F_q with D_f/B.

In general, Balla's theory is in good agreement with the uplift capacity of shallow foundations embedded in dense sand at an embedment ratio of $D_f/B \leq 5$. However, for foundations located in loose and medium sand, the theory overestimates the ultimate uplift capacity. The main reason Balla's theory overestimates the ultimate uplift capacity for $D_f/B >$ about 5 even in dense sand is because it is essentially a deep foundation condition, and the failure surface does not extend to the ground surface.

The simplest procedure to determine the embedment ratio at which the deep foundation condition is reached may be determined by plotting the nondimensional breakout factor F_q against D_f/B as shown in Figure 8.4. The breakout factor is derived as

$$F_q = \frac{Q_u}{\gamma A D_f} \tag{8.4}$$

where

A = area of the foundation

The breakout factor increases with D_f/B up to a maximum value of $F_q = F_q^*$ at $D_f/B = (D_f/B)_{cr}$. For $D_f/B > (D_f/B)_{cr}$, the breakout factor remains practically constant (i.e., F_q^*).

8.2.2 Theory of Meyerhof and Adams

One of the most rational methods for estimating the ultimate uplift capacity of a shallow foundation was proposed by Meyerhof and Adams,[2] and it is described in detail in this section. Figure 8.5 shows a continuous foundation of width B subjected to an uplifting force. The ultimate uplift capacity per unit length of the foundation is equal to Q_u. At ultimate load, the failure surface in soil makes an angle α with the horizontal. The magnitude of α depends on several factors, such as the relative density of compaction and the angle of friction of the soil, and it varies between $90° - 1/3\,\phi$ and $90° - 2/3\,\phi$. Let us consider the free body diagram of the zone *abcd*. For stability

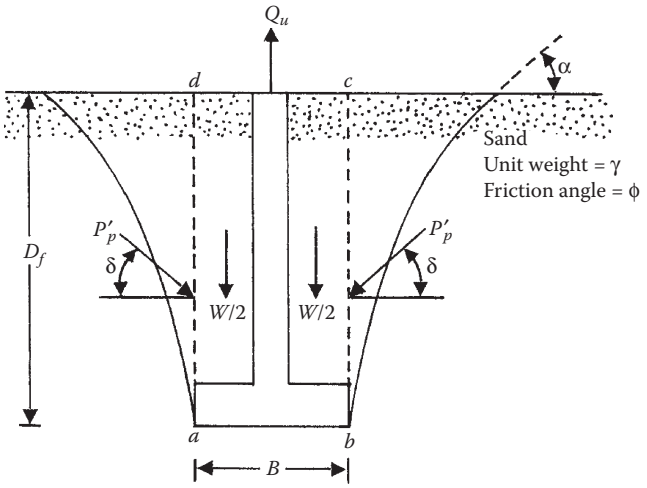


FIGURE 8.5 Continuous foundation subjected to uplift.

consideration, the following forces *per unit length of the foundation* need to be considered: (a) the weight of the soil and concrete W and (b) the passive force P'_p per unit length along the faces *ad* and *bc*. The force P'_p is inclined at an angle δ to the horizontal. For an average value of $\alpha = 90 - \phi/2$, the magnitude of δ is about 2/3 ϕ.

If we assume that the unit weights of soil and concrete are approximately the same, then

$$W = \gamma D_f B$$

$$P'_p = \frac{P'_h}{\cos\delta} = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)\left(\frac{1}{\cos\delta}\right)\left(K_{ph}\gamma D_f^2\right) \tag{8.5}$$

where

P'_h = horizontal component of the passive force, P'_p
K_{ph} = horizontal component of the passive earth pressure coefficient

Now, for equilibrium, summing the vertical components of all forces,

$$\sum F_v = 0$$

$$Q_u = W + 2P'_p \sin\delta$$

$$Q_u = W + 2(P'_p\cos\delta)\tan\delta$$

$$Q_u = W + 2P_h' \tan\delta$$

or

$$Q_u = W + 2\left(\frac{1}{2}K_{ph}\gamma D_f^2\right)\tan\delta = W + K_{ph}\gamma D_f^2 \tan\delta \tag{8.6}$$

The passive earth pressure coefficient based on the curved failure surface for $\delta = 2/3\ \phi$ can be obtained from Caquot and Kerisel.[3] Furthermore, it is convenient to express $K_{ph} \tan\delta$ in the form

$$K_u \tan\phi = K_{ph} \tan\delta \tag{8.7}$$

Combining Equations 8.6 and 8.7,

$$Q_u = W + K_u \gamma D_f^2 \tan\phi \tag{8.8}$$

where

K_u = nominal uplift coefficient

The variation of the nominal uplift coefficient K_u with the soil friction angle ϕ is shown in Figure 8.6. It falls within a narrow range and may be taken as equal to 0.95 for all values of ϕ varying from 30° to about 48°. The ultimate uplift capacity can now be expressed in a nondimensional form (i.e., the breakout factor, F_q) as

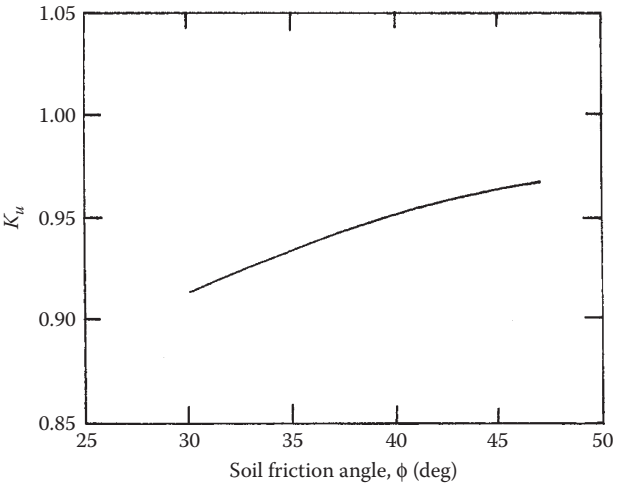


FIGURE 8.6 Variation of K_u.

defined in Equation 8.4.[4] Thus, for a continuous foundation, the breakout factor per unit length is

$$F_q = \frac{Q_u}{\gamma A D_f}$$

or

$$F_q = \frac{W + K_u \gamma D_f^2 \tan\phi}{W} = 1 + K_u \left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right) \tan\phi \tag{8.9}$$

For circular foundations, Equation 8.8 can be modified to the form

$$Q_u = W + \frac{\pi}{2} S_F \gamma B D_f^2 K_u \tan\phi \tag{8.10}$$

$$W \approx \frac{\pi}{4} B^2 D_f \gamma \tag{8.11}$$

where

S_F = shape factor
B = diameter of the foundation

The shape factor can be expressed as

$$S_F = 1 + m\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right) \tag{8.12}$$

where

m = coefficient that is a function of the soil friction angle ϕ

Thus, combining Equations 8.10 through 8.12, we obtain

$$Q_u = \frac{\pi}{4} B^2 D_f \gamma + \frac{\pi}{2}\left[1 + m\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)\right] \gamma B D_f^2 K_u \tan\phi \tag{8.13}$$

The breakout factor F_q can be given as

$$\begin{aligned} F_q = \frac{Q_u}{\gamma A D_f} &= \frac{(\pi/4) B^2 D_f \gamma + (\pi/2)\left[1 + m\left(D_f/B\right)\right] \gamma B D_f^2 K_u \tan\phi}{\gamma\left[(\pi/4) B^2\right] D_f} \\ &= 1 + 2\left[1 + m\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)\right]\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right) K_u \tan\phi \end{aligned} \tag{8.14}$$

For rectangular foundations having dimensions of $B \times L$, the ultimate capacity can also be expressed as

$$Q_u = W + \gamma D_f^2 (2S_F B + L - B) K_u \tan\phi \tag{8.15}$$

The preceding equation was derived with the assumption that the two end portions of length $B/2$ are governed by the shape factor S_F, while the passive pressure along the central portion of length $L - B$ is the same as the continuous foundation. In Equation 8.15,

$$W \approx \gamma B L D_f \tag{8.16}$$

and

$$S_F = 1 + m\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right) \tag{8.17}$$

Thus,

$$Q_u = \gamma B L D_f + \gamma D_f^2 \left\{2\left[1 + m\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)\right] B + L - B\right\} K_u \tan\phi \tag{8.18}$$

The breakout factor F_q can now be determined as

$$F_q = \frac{Q_u}{\gamma B L D_f} \tag{8.19}$$

Combining Equations 8.18 and 8.19, we obtain[4]

$$F_q = 1 + \left\{\left[1 + 2m\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)\right]\left(\frac{B}{L}\right) + 1\right\}\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right) K_u \tan\phi \tag{8.20}$$

The coefficient m given in Equation 8.12 was determined from experimental observations[2] and its values are given in Table 8.1. As shown in Figure 8.4, the breakout factor F_q increases with D_f/B to a maximum value of F_q^* at $(D_f/B)_{cr}$ and remains constant thereafter. Based on experimental observations, Meyerhof and Adams[2] recommended the variation of $(D_f/B)_{cr}$ for square and circular foundations with soil friction angle ϕ and this is shown in Figure 8.7.

Thus, for a given value of ϕ for square ($B = L$) and circular (diameter = B) foundations, we can substitute m (Table 8.1) into Equations 8.14 and 8.20 and calculate the breakout factor F_q variation with embedment ratio D_f/B. The maximum value of

TABLE 8.1
Variation of *m* (Equation 8.12)

Soil Friction Angle ϕ	*m*
20	0.05
25	0.1
30	0.15
35	0.25
40	0.35
45	0.5
48	0.6

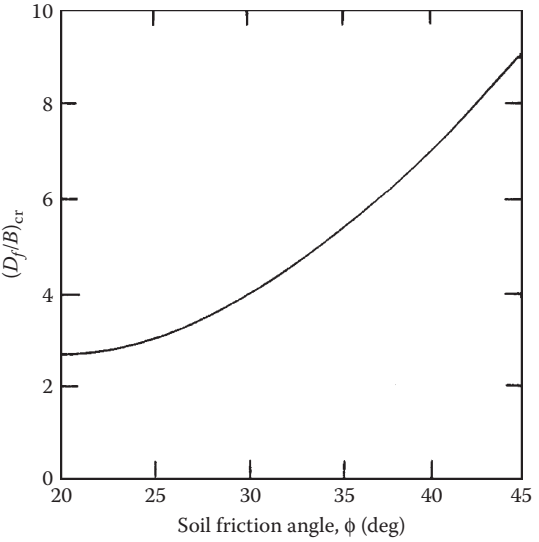


FIGURE 8.7 Variation of $(D_f/B)_{cr}$ for square and circular foundations.

$F_q = F_q^*$ will be attained at $D_f/B = (D_f/B)_{cr}$. For $D_f/B > (D_f/B)_{cr}$, the breakout factor will remain constant as F_q^*. The variation of F_q with D_f/B for various values of ϕ made in this manner is shown in Figure 8.8. Figure 8.9 shows the variation of the maximum breakout factor F_q^* for deep square and circular foundations with the soil friction angle ϕ.

Laboratory experimental observations have shown that the critical embedment ratio (for a given soil friction angle ϕ) increases with the *L*/*B* ratio. For a given value of ϕ, Meyerhof[5] indicated that

$$\frac{\left(D_f/B\right)_{\text{cr-continuous}}}{\left(D_f/B\right)_{\text{cr-square}}} \approx 1.5 \tag{8.21}$$

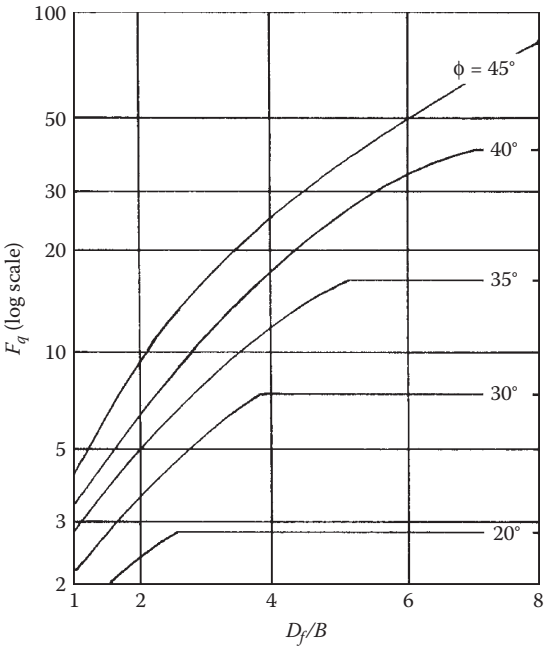


FIGURE 8.8 Plot of F_q for square and circular foundations (Equations 8.14 and 8.20).

Based on laboratory model test results, Das and Jones[6] gave an empirical relationship for the critical embedment ratio of rectangular foundations in the form

$$\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)_{\text{cr-R}} = \left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)_{\text{cr-S}}\left[0.133\left(\frac{L}{B}\right)+0.867\right] \le 1.4\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)_{\text{cr-S}} \tag{8.22}$$

where

$\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)_{\text{cr-R}}$ = critical embedment ratio of a rectangular foundation with dimensions of $L \times B$

$\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)_{\text{cr-S}}$ = critical embedment ratio of a square foundation with dimensions of $B \times B$

Using Equation 8.22 and the $(D_f/B)_{\text{cr-S}}$ values given in Figure 8.7, the magnitude of $(D_f/B)_{\text{cr-R}}$ for a rectangular foundation can be estimated. These values of $(D_f/B)_{\text{cr-R}}$ can be substituted into Equation 8.20 to determine the variation of $F_q = F^*$ with the soil friction angle ϕ.

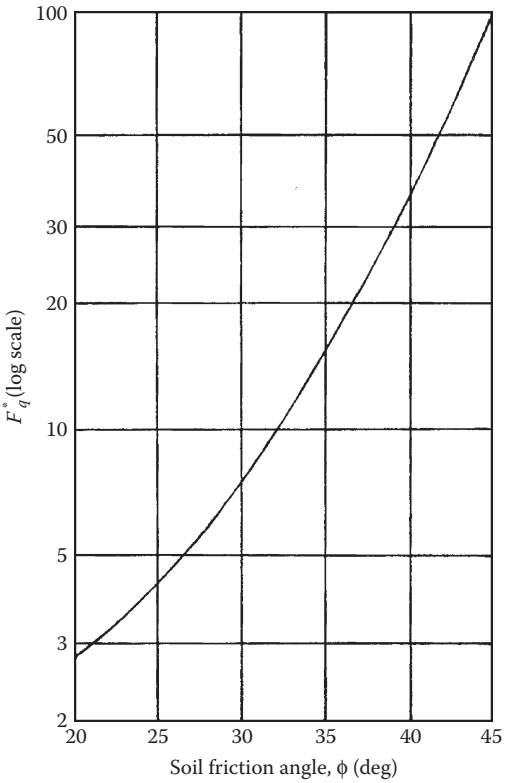


FIGURE 8.9 F_q^* for deep square and circular foundations.

8.2.3 Theory of Vesic

Vesic[7] studied the problem of an explosive point charge expanding a spherical cavity close to the surface of a semi-infinite, homogeneous, and isotropic solid (in this case, the soil). Referring to Figure 8.10, it can be seen that if the distance D_f is small enough, there will be an ultimate pressure p_o that will shear away the soil located above the cavity. At that time, the diameter of the spherical cavity is equal to B. The slip surfaces ab and cd will be tangent to the spherical cavity at a and c. At points b and d, they make an angle $\alpha = 45 - \phi/2$. For equilibrium, summing the components of forces in the vertical direction, we can determine the ultimate pressure p_o in the cavity. Forces that will be involved are

1. Vertical component of the force inside the cavity P_V
2. Effective self-weight of the soil $W = W_1 + W_2$
3. Vertical component of the resultant of internal forces F_V

For a c–ϕ soil, we can thus determine that

$$p_o = c\bar{F}_c + \gamma D_f \bar{F}_q \tag{8.23}$$

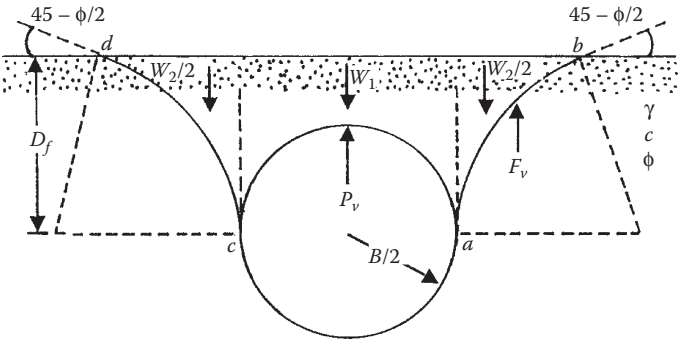


FIGURE 8.10 Vesic's theory of expansion of cavities.

where

$$\bar{F} = 1.0 - \frac{2}{3}\left[\frac{(B/2)}{D_f}\right] + A_1\left[\frac{D_f}{(B/2)}\right] + A_2\left[\frac{D_f}{(B/2)}\right]^2 \tag{8.24}$$

$$\bar{F}_c = A_2\left[\frac{D_f}{(B/2)}\right] + A_4\left[\frac{D_f}{(B/2)}\right] \tag{8.25}$$

where

A_1, A_2, A_3, A_4 = functions of the soil friction angle ϕ

For granular soils $c = 0$, so

$$p_o = \gamma D_f \bar{F}_q \tag{8.26}$$

Vesic[8] applied the preceding concept to determine the ultimate uplift capacity of shallow circular foundations. In Figure 8.11, consider that the circular foundation *ab* with a diameter B is located at a depth D_f below the ground surface. Assuming that the unit weight of the soil and the unit weight of the foundation are approximately the same, if the hemispherical cavity above the foundation (i.e., *ab*) is filled with soil, it will have a weight of

$$W_3 = \frac{2}{3}\pi\left(\frac{B}{2}\right)^3 \gamma \tag{8.27}$$

This weight of soil will increase the pressure by p_1, or

$$p_1 = \frac{W_3}{\pi(B/2)^2} = \frac{(2/3)\pi(B/2)^3\gamma}{\pi(B/2)^2} = \frac{2}{3}\pi\left(\frac{B}{2}\right)$$

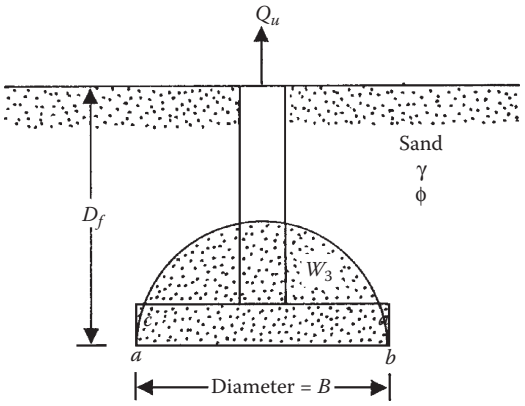


FIGURE 8.11 Cavity expansion theory applied to circular foundation uplift.

If the foundation is embedded in a cohesionless soil ($c = 0$), the pressure p_1 should be added to Equation 8.26 to obtain the force per unit area of the anchor q_u needed for a complete pullout. Thus,

$$q_u = \frac{Q_u}{A} = \frac{Q_u}{(\pi/2)(B)^2} = p_o + p_1 = \gamma D_f \bar{F}_q + \frac{2}{3}\gamma\left(\frac{B}{2}\right)$$
$$= \gamma D_f\left[\bar{F}_q + \frac{(2/3)(B/2)}{D_f}\right] \tag{8.28}$$

or

$$q_u = \frac{Q_u}{A} = \gamma D_f\left\{1 + A_1\left[\frac{D_f}{(B/2)}\right] + A_2\left[\frac{D_f}{(B/2)}\right]^2\right\} = \gamma D_f \underbrace{F_q}_{\substack{\text{breakout}\\ \text{factor}}} \tag{8.29}$$

The variations of the breakout factor F_q for *shallow circular foundations* are given in Table 8.2 and Figure 8.12. In a similar manner, Vesic determined the variation of the breakout factor F_q for *shallow continuous foundations* using the analogy of expansion of long cylindrical cavities. These values are given in Table 8.3 and are also plotted in Figure 8.13.

8.2.4 Saeedy's Theory

A theory for the ultimate uplift capacity of *circular foundations* embedded in sand was proposed by Saeedy[9] in which the trace of the failure surface was assumed to be an arc of a logarithmic spiral. According to this solution, for shallow foundations, the failure surface extends to the ground surface. However, for deep foundations

TABLE 8.2
Vesic's Breakout Factor F_q for Circular Foundations

	D_f/B				
Soil Friction Angle ϕ (deg)	**0.5**	**1.0**	**1.5**	**2.5**	**5.0**
0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
10	1.18	1.37	1.59	2.08	3.67
20	1.36	1.75	2.20	3.25	6.71
30	1.52	2.11	2.79	4.41	9.89
40	1.65	2.41	3.30	5.43	13.0
50	1.73	2.61	3.56	6.27	15.7

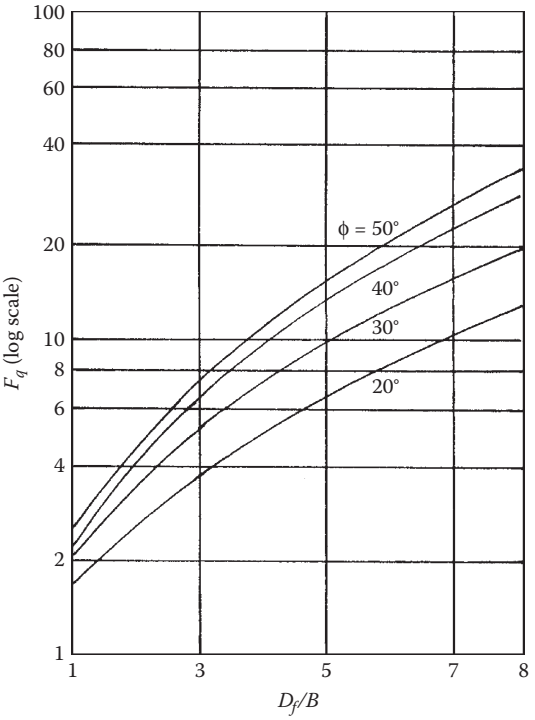


FIGURE 8.12 Vesic's breakout factor F_q for shallow circular foundations.

(i.e., $D_f > D_{f(\text{cr})}$), the failure surface extends only to a distance of $D_{f(\text{cr})}$ above the foundation. Based on this analysis, Saeedy[9] proposed the ultimate uplift capacity in a nondimensional form ($Q_u/\gamma B^2 D_f$) for various values of ϕ and the D_f/B ratio. The author converted the solution into a plot of breakout factor $F_q = Q_u/\gamma A D_f$ (A = area of the foundation) versus the soil friction angle ϕ as shown in Figure 8.14. According to Saeedy, during the foundation uplift the soil located above the anchor gradually

TABLE 8.3
Vesic's Breakout Factor F_q for Continuous Foundations

	D_f/B				
Soil Friction Angle ϕ (deg)	**0.5**	**1.0**	**1.5**	**2.5**	**5.0**
0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
10	1.09	1.16	1.25	1.42	1.83
20	1.17	1.33	1.49	1.83	2.65
30	1.24	1.47	1.71	2.19	3.38
40	1.30	1.58	1.87	2.46	3.91
50	1.32	1.64	2.04	2.60	4.20

becomes compacted, in turn increasing the shear strength of the soil and hence the ultimate uplift capacity. For that reason, he introduced an empirical *compaction factor* μ, which is given in the form

$$\mu = 1.044D_r + 0.44 \tag{8.30}$$

where

D_r = relative density of sand

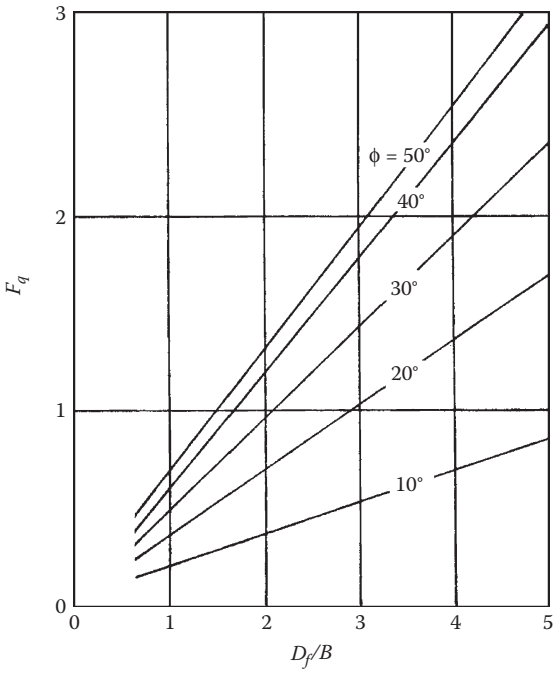


FIGURE 8.13 Vesic's breakout factor F_q for shallow continuous foundations.

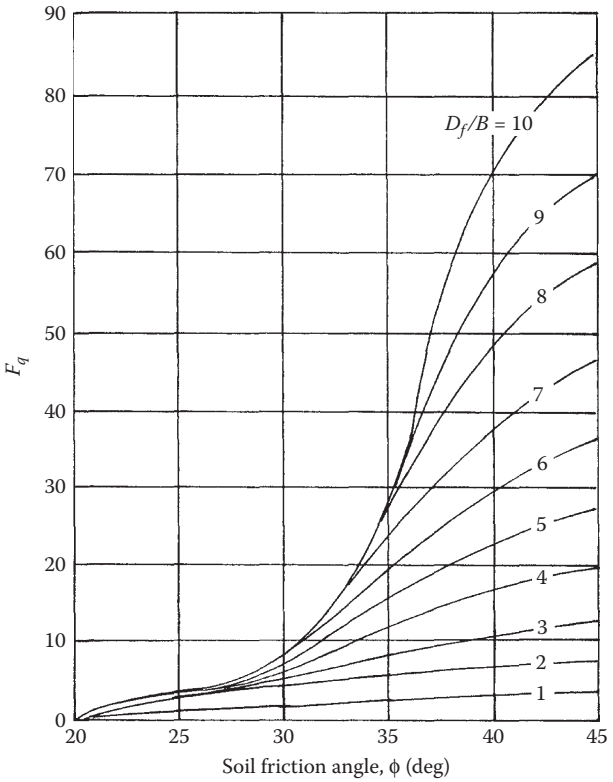


FIGURE 8.14 Plot of F_q based on Saeedy's theory.

Thus, the actual ultimate capacity can be expressed as

$$Q_{u(\text{actual})} = (F_q \gamma A D_f)\mu \tag{8.31}$$

8.2.5 Discussion of Various Theories

Based on the various theories presented in the preceding sections, we can make some general observations:

1. The only theory that addresses the problem of rectangular foundations is that given by Meyerhof and Adams.[2]
2. Most theories assume that shallow foundation conditions exist for $D_f/B \leq 5$. Meyerhof and Adams' theory provides a critical embedment ratio $(D_f/B)_{\text{cr}}$ for *square and circular* foundations as a function of the soil friction angle.
3. Experimental observations generally tend to show that, for shallow foundations in loose sand, Balla's theory[1] overestimates the ultimate uplift capacity. Better agreement, however, is obtained for foundations in dense soil.

4. Vesic's theory[8] is, in general, fairly accurate for estimating the ultimate uplift capacity of shallow foundations in loose sand. However, laboratory experimental observations have shown that, for shallow foundations in dense sand, this theory can underestimate the actual uplift capacity by as much as 100% or more.

Figure 8.15 shows a comparison of some published laboratory experimental results for the ultimate uplift capacity of *circular* foundations with the theories of Balla, Vesic, and Meyerhof and Adams. Table 8.4 gives the references to the laboratory experimental curves shown in Figure 8.15. In developing the theoretical plots for $\phi = 30°$ (loose sand condition) and $\phi = 45°$ (dense sand condition), the following procedures were used:

1. According to Balla's theory,[1] from Equation 8.3 for circular foundations,

$$Q_u = D_f^3 \gamma (F_1 + F_3)$$

So,

$$F_1 + F_3 = \frac{Q_u}{\gamma D_f^3} = \frac{\left[(\pi/4)B^2\right]Q_u}{\gamma D_f^3\left[(\pi/4)B^2\right]} = \frac{\left[(\pi/4)\left(B/D_f\right)^2\right]Q_u}{\gamma D_f A}$$

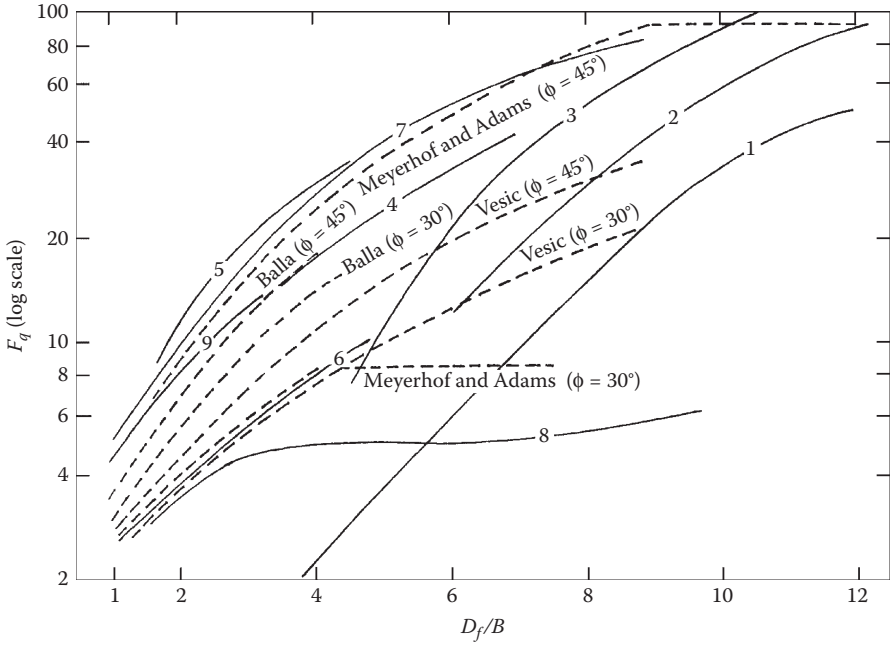


FIGURE 8.15 Comparison of theories with laboratory experimental results for circular foundations.

TABLE 8.4
References to Laboratory Experimental Curves Shown in Figure 8.15

Curve	Reference	Circular Foundation Diameter B (mm)	Soil Properties
1	Baker and Kondner[10]	25.4	$\phi = 42°$; $\gamma = 17.61$ kN/m^3
2	Baker and Kondner[10]	38.1	$\phi = 42°$; $\gamma = 17.61$ kN/m^3
3	Baker and Kondner[10]	50.8	$\phi = 42°$; $\gamma = 17.61$ kN/m^3
4	Baker and Kondner[10]	76.2	$\phi = 42°$; $\gamma = 17.61$ kN/m^3
5	Sutherland[11]	38.1–152.4	$\phi = 45°$
6	Sutherland[11]	38.1–152.4	$\phi = 31°$
7	Esquivel-Diaz[12]	76.2	$\phi \approx 43°$; $\gamma = 14.81$–15.14 kN/m^3
8	Esquivel-Diaz[12]	76.2	$\phi = 33°$; $\gamma = 12.73$–12.89 kN/m^3
9	Balla[1]	61–119.4	Dense sand

or

$$F_q = \frac{Q_u}{\gamma A D_f} = \frac{F_1 + F_3}{(\pi/4)\left(B/D_f\right)^2} \tag{8.32}$$

So, for a given soil friction angle, the sum of $F_1 + F_3$ was obtained from Figure 8.3, and the breakout factor was calculated for various values of D_f/B. These values are plotted in Figure 8.15.

1. For Vesic's theory,[8] the variations of F_q versus D_f/B for circular foundations are given in Table 8.2. These values of F_q are also plotted in Figure 8.15.
2. The breakout factor relationship for circular foundations based on Meyerhof and Adams' theory[3] is given in Equation 8.14. Using $K_u \approx 0.95$, the variations of F_q with D_f/B were calculated, and they are also plotted in Figure 8.15.

Based on the comparison between the theories and the laboratory experimental results shown in Figure 8.15, it appears that Meyerhof and Adams' theory[2] is more applicable to a wide range of foundations and provides as good an estimate as any for the ultimate uplift capacity. So, this theory is recommended for use. However, it needs to be kept in mind that the majority of the experimental results presently available in the literature for comparison with the theory are from laboratory model tests. When applying these results to the design of an actual foundation, the *scale effect* needs to be taken into consideration. For that reason, a judicious choice is necessary in selecting the value of the soil friction angle ϕ.

EXAMPLE 8.1

Consider a circular foundation in sand. Given, for the foundation: diameter $B = 1.5$ m; depth of embedment $D_f = 1.5$ m. Given, for the sand: unit weight

$\gamma = 17.4$ kN/m^3; friction angle $\phi = 35°$. Using Balla's theory, calculate the ultimate uplift capacity.

Solution

From Equation 8.3,

$$Q_u = D_f^3 \gamma (F_1 + F_3)$$

From Figure 8.3 for $\phi = 35°$ and $D_f/B = 1.5/1.5 = 1$, the magnitude of $F_1 + F_3 \approx 2.4$. So,

$$Q_u = (1.5)^3(17.4)(2.4) = \mathbf{140.9\ kN}$$

EXAMPLE 8.2

Redo Example 8.1 problem using Vesic's theory.

Solution

From Equation 8.29,

$$Q_u = A\gamma D_f F_q$$

From Figure 8.12 for $\phi = 35°$ and $D_f/B = 1$, F_q is about 2.2. So,

$$Q_u = \left[\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right)(1.5)^2\right](17.4)(1.5)(2.2) = \mathbf{101.5\ kN}$$

EXAMPLE 8.3

Redo Example 8.1 problem using Meyerhof and Adams' theory.

Solution

From Equation 8.14,

$$F_q = 1 + 2\left[1 + m\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)\right]\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)K_u \tan\phi$$

For $\phi = 35°$, $m = 0.25$ (Table 8.1). So,

$$F_q = 1 + 2[1 + (0.25)(1)](1)(0.95)(\tan 35) = 2.66$$

So,

$$Q_u = F_q \gamma A D_f = (2.66)(17.4)\left[\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right)(1.5)^2\right](1.5) = \mathbf{122.7\ kN}$$

8.3 FOUNDATIONS IN SATURATED CLAY ($\phi = 0$ CONDITION)

8.3.1 Ultimate Uplift Capacity: General

Theoretical and experimental research results presently available for determining the ultimate uplift capacity of foundations embedded in saturated clay soil are rather limited. In the following sections, the results of some of the existing studies are reviewed.

Figure 8.16 shows a shallow foundation in saturated clay. The depth of the foundation is D_f, and the width of the foundation is B. The undrained shear strength and the unit weight of the soil are c_u and γ, respectively. If we assume that the unit weights of the foundation material and the clay are approximately the same, then the ultimate uplift capacity can be expressed as[8]

$$Q_u = A(\gamma D_f + c_u F_c) \tag{8.33}$$

where

A = area of the foundation
F_c = breakout factor
γ = saturated unit weight of the soil

8.3.2 Vesic's Theory

Using the analogy of the expansion of cavities, Vesic[8] presented the theoretical variation of the breakout factor F_c (for $\phi = 0$ condition) with the embedment ratio D_f/B, and these values are given in Table 8.5. A plot of these same values of F_c against D_f/B is also shown in Figure 8.17. Based on the laboratory model test results available at the present time, it appears that Vesic's theory gives a closer estimate only for shallow foundations embedded in softer clay.

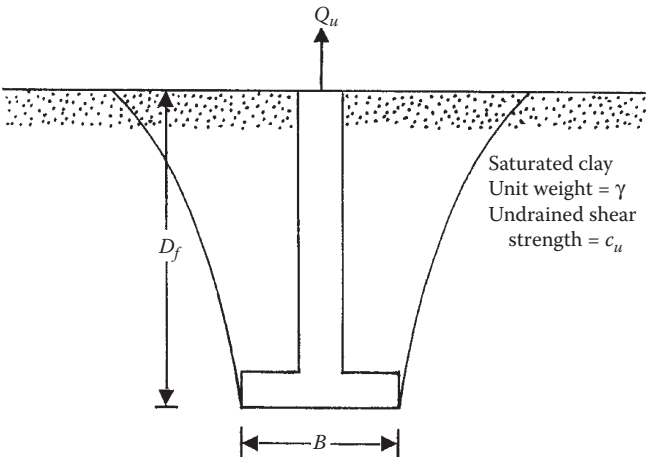


FIGURE 8.16 Shallow foundation in saturated clay subjected to uplift.

TABLE 8.5
Variation of F_c ($\phi = 0$ Condition)

	D_f/B				
Foundation Type	**0.5**	**1.0**	**1.5**	**2.5**	**5.0**
Circular (diameter = B)	1.76	3.80	6.12	11.6	30.3
Continuous (width = B)	0.81	1.61	2.42	4.04	8.07

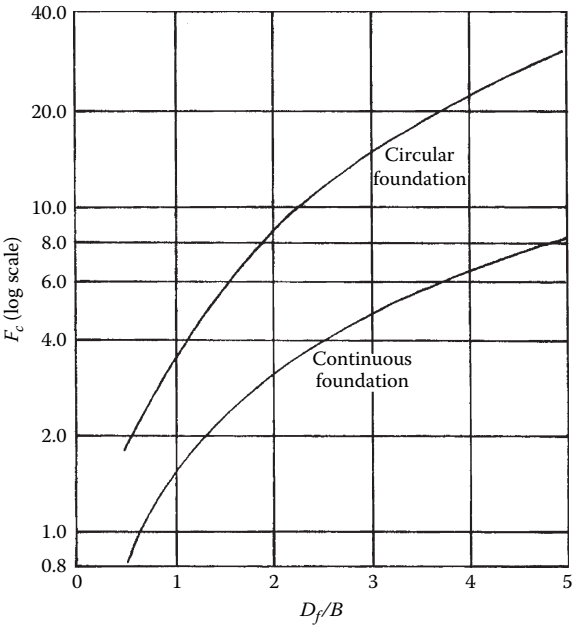


FIGURE 8.17 Vesic's breakout factor F_c.

In general, the breakout factor increases with the embedment ratio up to a maximum value and remains constant thereafter, as shown in Figure 8.18. The maximum value of $F_c = F_c^*$ is reached at $D_f/B = (D_f/B)_{cr}$. Foundations located at $D_f/B > (D_f/B)_{cr}$ are referred to as deep foundations for uplift capacity consideration. For these foundations at ultimate uplift load, local shear failure in soil located around the foundation takes place. Foundations located at $D_f/B \leq (D_f/B)_{cr}$ are shallow foundations for uplift capacity consideration.

8.3.3 Meyerhof's Theory

Based on several experimental results, Meyerhof[5] proposed the following relationship:

$$Q_u = A(\gamma D_f + F_c c_u) \tag{8.34}$$

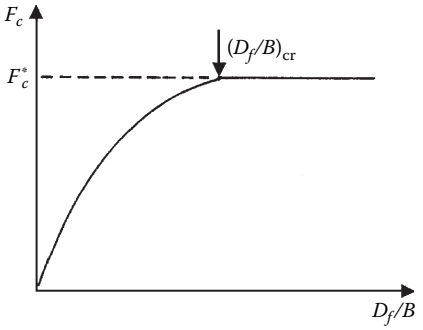


FIGURE 8.18 Nature of variation of F_c with D_f/B.

For circular and square foundations,

$$F_c = 1.2\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right) \leq 9 \tag{8.35}$$

and for strip foundations,

$$F_c = 0.6\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right) \leq 8 \tag{8.36}$$

The preceding two equations imply that the critical embedment ratio $(D_f/B)_{cr}$ is about 7.5 for square and circular foundations and about 13.5 for strip foundations.

8.3.4 Modifications to Meyerhof's Theory

Das[13] compiled a number of laboratory model test results[13–17] on circular foundations in saturated clay with c_u varying from 5.18 to about 172.5 kN/m^2. Figure 8.19 shows the average plots of F_c versus D_f/B obtained from these studies along with the critical embedment ratios. From Figure 8.19, it can be seen that, for shallow foundations,

$$F_c \approx n\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right) \leq 8 \text{ to } 9 \tag{8.37}$$

where

n = a constant

The magnitude of n varies from 5.9 to 2.0 and is a function of the undrained cohesion. Since n is a function of c_u and $F_c = F_c^*$ is about eight to nine in all cases, it is obvious that the critical embedment ratio $(D_f/B)_{cr}$ will be a function of c_u.

Das[13] also reported some model test results with square and rectangular foundations. Based on these tests, it was proposed that

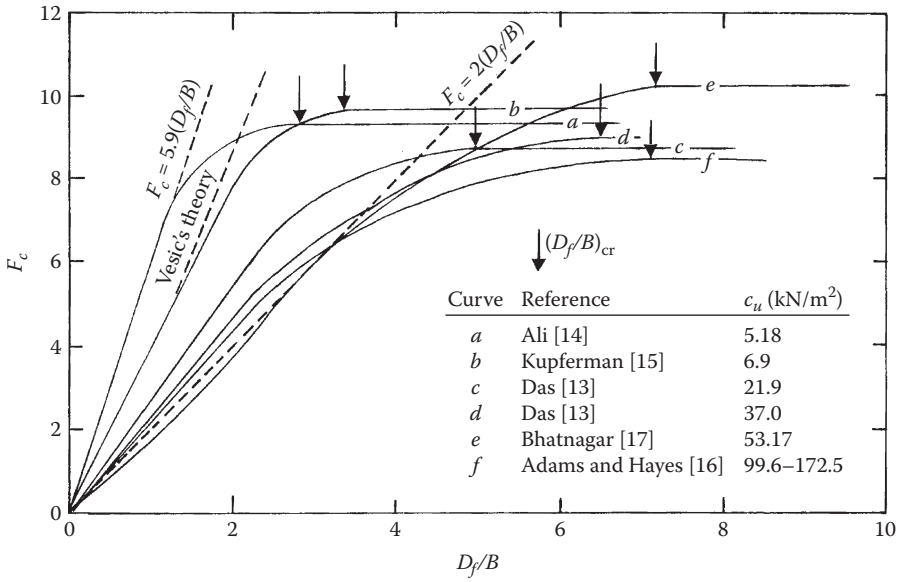


FIGURE 8.19 Variation of F_c with D_f/B from various experimental observations—circular foundation; diameter = B.

$$\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)_{\text{cr-S}} = 0.107c_u + 2.5 \le 7 \tag{8.38}$$

where

$\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)_{\text{cr-S}}$ = critical embedment ratio of square foundations (or circular foundations)

c_u = undrained cohesion, in kN/m^2

It was also observed by Das[18] that

$$\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)_{\text{cr-R}} = \left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)_{\text{cr-S}}\left[0.73 + 0.27\left(\frac{L}{B}\right)\right] \le 1.55\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)_{\text{cr-S}} \tag{8.39}$$

where

$\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)_{\text{cr-R}}$ = critical embedment ratio of rectangular foundations

L = length of foundation

Based on the above findings, Das[18] proposed an empirical procedure to obtain the breakout factors for shallow and deep foundations. According to this procedure, α' and β' are two nondimensional factors defined as

$$\alpha' = \frac{D_f/B}{\left(D_f/B\right)_{\text{cr}}} \tag{8.40}$$

and

$$\beta' = \frac{F_c}{F_c^*} \tag{8.41}$$

For a given foundation, the critical embedment ratio can be calculated using Equations 8.38 and 8.39. The magnitude of F_c^* can be given by the following empirical relationship:

$$F_{c\text{-R}}^* = 7.56 + 1.44\left(\frac{B}{L}\right) \tag{8.42}$$

where

$F_{c\text{-R}}^*$ = breakout factor for deep rectangular foundations

Figure 8.20 shows the experimentally derived plots (upper limit, lower limit, and average of β' and α'). Following is a step-by-step procedure to estimate the ultimate uplift capacity:

1. Determine the representative value of the undrained cohesion c_u.
2. Determine the critical embedment ratio using Equations 8.38 and 8.39.
3. Determine the D_f/B ratio for the foundation.
4. If $D_f/B > (D_f/B)_{\text{cr}}$ as determined in step 2, it is a deep foundation. However, if $D_f/B \le (D_f/B)_{\text{cr}}$, it is a shallow foundation.
5. For $D_f/B > (D_f/B)_{\text{cr}}$,

$$F_c = F_c^* = 7.56 + 1.44\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)$$

Thus,

$$Q_u = A\left\{\left[7.56 + 1.44\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\right]c_u + \gamma D_f\right\} \tag{8.43}$$

where

A = area of the foundation

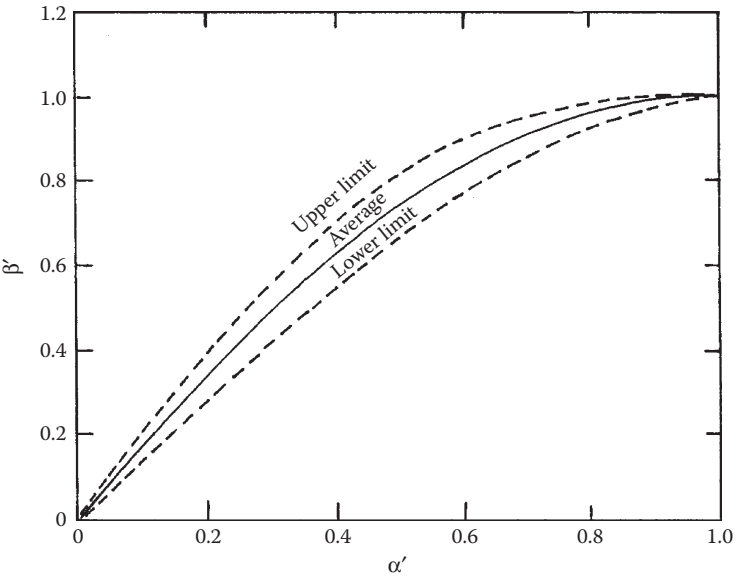


FIGURE 8.20 Plot of β′ versus α′.

6. For $D_f/B \le (D_f/B)_{cr}$,

$$Q_u = A(\beta' F_c^* c_u + \gamma D_f) = A\left\{\beta'\left[7.56 + 1.44\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\right]c_u + \gamma D_f\right\} \tag{8.44}$$

The value of β′ can be obtained from the average curve of Figure 8.20. The procedure outlined above gives fairly good results in estimating the net ultimate capacity of foundations.

EXAMPLE 8.4

A rectangular foundation in saturated clay measures 1.5 m×3 m. Given: $D_f = 1.8$ m; $c_u = 52$ kN/m²; $\gamma = 18.9$ kN/m³. Estimate the ultimate uplift capacity.

SOLUTION

From Equation 8.38,

$$\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)_{cr\text{-}S} = 0.107c_u + 2.5 = (0.107)(52) + 2.5 = 8.06$$

So use $(D_f/B)_{cr\text{-}S} = 7$. Again, from Equation 8.39,

$$\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)_{cr\text{-}R} = \left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)_{cr\text{-}S}\left[0.73 + 0.27\left(\frac{L}{B}\right)\right] = (7)\left[0.73 + 0.27\left(\frac{3}{1.5}\right)\right] = 8.89$$

Check

$$1.55\left(\frac{D_f}{B}\right)_{\text{cr-S}} = (1.55)(7) = 10.85$$

So, use $(D_f/B)_{\text{cr-R}} = 8.89$. The actual embedment ratio is $D_f/B = 1.8/1.5 = 1.2$. Hence, this is a shallow foundation

$$\alpha' = \frac{D_f/B}{(D_f/B)_{\text{cr}}} = \frac{1.2}{8.89} = 0.13$$

Referring to the average curve of Figure 8.20 for $\alpha' = 0.13$, the magnitude of $\beta' = 0.2$. From Equation 8.44,

$$Q_u = A\left\{\beta'\left[7.56 + 1.44\left(\frac{B}{L}\right)\right]c_u + \gamma D_f\right\} = (1.5)(3)$$
$$\left\{(0.2)\left[7.56 + 1.44\left(\frac{1.5}{3}\right)\right](52) + (18.9)(1.8)\right\} = \mathbf{540.6\ kN}$$

8.3.5 Three-Dimensional Lower Bound Solution

Merifield et al.[19] used a three-dimensional (3D) numerical procedure based on a finite element formulation of the lower bound theorem of limit analysis to estimate the uplift capacity of foundations. The results of this study, along with the procedure to determine the uplift capacity, are summarized below in a step-by-step manner:

1. Determine the breakout factor in a homogeneous soil with no unit weight (i.e., $\gamma = 0$) as

$$F_c = F_{co} \tag{8.45}$$

   The variation of F_{co} for square, circular, and rectangular foundations is shown in Figure 8.21.
2. Determine the breakout factor in a homogeneous soil with unit weight (i.e., $\gamma \neq 0$) as

$$F_c = F_{c\gamma} = F_{co} + \frac{\gamma D_f}{c_u} \tag{8.46}$$

3. Determine the breakout factor for a deep foundation $F_c = F_c^*$ as follows:

   $F_c^* = 12.56$ (for circular foundations)
   $F_c^* = 11.9$ (for square foundations)
   $F_c^* = 11.19$ (for strip foundations with $L/B \geq 10$)

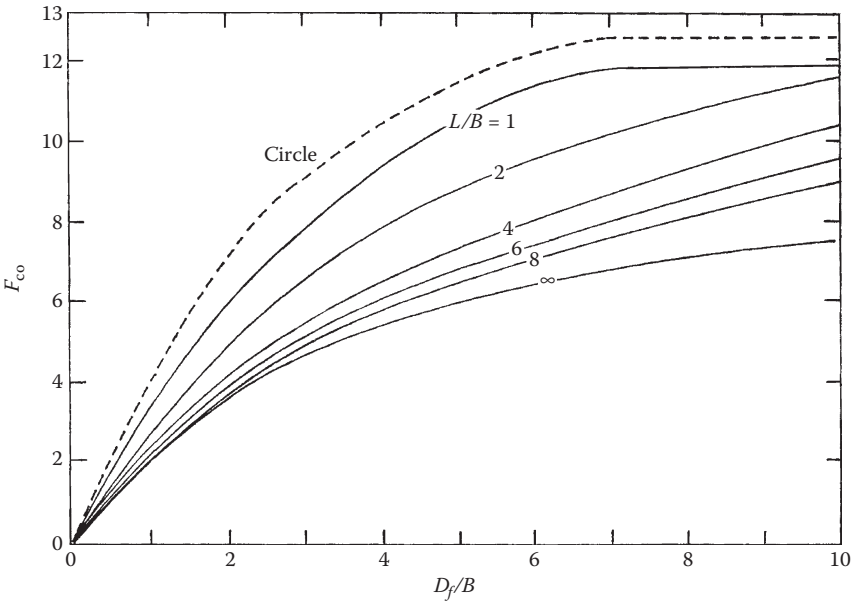


FIGURE 8.21 Numerical lower bound solution of Merifield et al.—plot of F_{co} versus D_f/B for circular, square, and rectangular foundations. (Adapted from Merifield, R. S. et al. 2003. *J. Geotech. Geoenviron. Eng.*, 129(3): 243.)

4. If $F_{c\gamma} \geq F_c^*$, it is a deep foundation. Calculate the ultimate load as

$$Q_u = Ac_u F_c^* \tag{8.47}$$

However, if $F_{c\gamma} \leq F_c^*$, it is a shallow foundation. Thus,

$$Q_u = Ac_u F_{c\gamma} \tag{8.48}$$

EXAMPLE 8.5

Solve the Example 8.4 problem using the procedure outlined in Section 8.3.5.

SOLUTION

Given: $L/B = 3/1.5 = 2$; $D_f/B = 1.8/1.5 = 1.2$. From Figure 8.21, for $L/B = 2$ and $D_f/B = 1.2$, the value of $F_{co} \approx 3.1$

$$F_{c\gamma} = F_{co} + \frac{\gamma D_f}{c_u} = 3.1 + \frac{(18.9)(1.8)}{52} = 3.754$$

For a foundation with $L/B = 2$, the magnitude of $F_c^* \approx 11.5$. Thus, $F_{c\gamma} < F_c^*$
Hence,

$$Q_u = Ac_u F_{c\gamma} = (3 \times 1.5)(52)(3.754) \approx \mathbf{878\ kN}$$

8.3.6 Factor of Safety

In most cases of foundation design, it is recommended that a minimum factor of safety of 2–2.5 be used to arrive at the allowable ultimate uplift capacity.

8.4 FOUNDATIONS ON MULTI-HELIX ANCHORS

In certain circumstances, foundation of transmission towers and other such structures are constructed with multi-helix anchors that resist the uplift load on the foundations. Figure 8.22 shows the dimensions of a typical multi-helix anchor used in the United States. In this section, a brief outline for the estimation of the ultimate uplift capacity of multi-helix anchors will be discussed.

8.4.1 Multi-Helix Anchor in Sand

Figure 8.23 shows a tapered multi-helix anchor embedded in soil subjected to a vertical uplifting force. The diameter of the top helix is D_1 and that of the bottom helix is

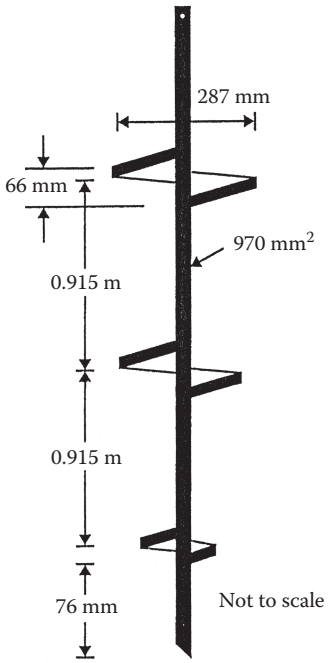


FIGURE 8.22 Dimensions of a typical multi-helix anchor used in the United States.

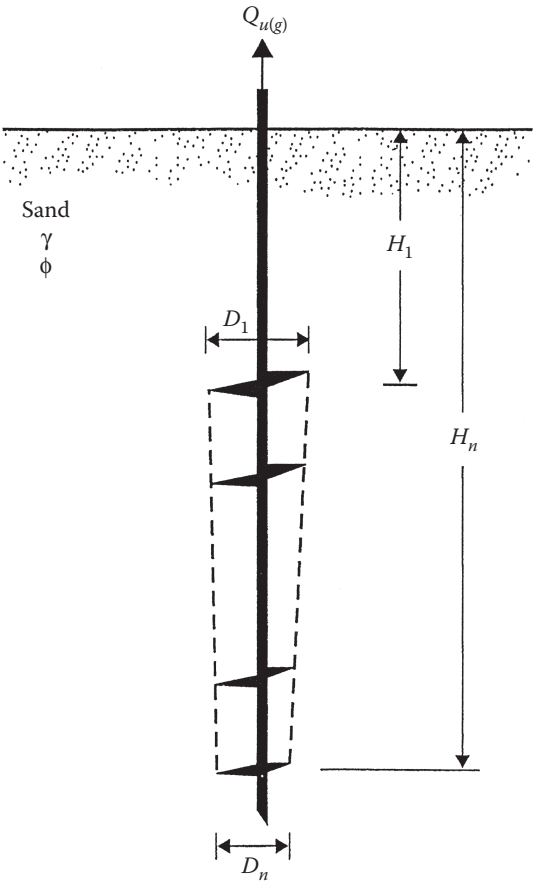


FIGURE 8.23 Tapered multi-helix anchor embedded in sand and subject to uplift.

D_n. The distance between the ground surface and the top helix is H_1 and, similarly, the distance between the bottom helix and the ground surface is H_n. The gross and net ultimate uplift capacities of the anchor can be expressed as

$$Q_{u(g)} = Q_u + W_a \tag{8.49}$$

where

$Q_{u(g)}$ = gross ultimate uplift capacity
Q_u = net ultimate uplift capacity
W_a = effective self-weight of the anchor

Using laboratory model tests, Mitsch and Clemence[20] studied the failure surface in soil around a helical anchor at ultimate load. Figure 8.24 shows a schematic

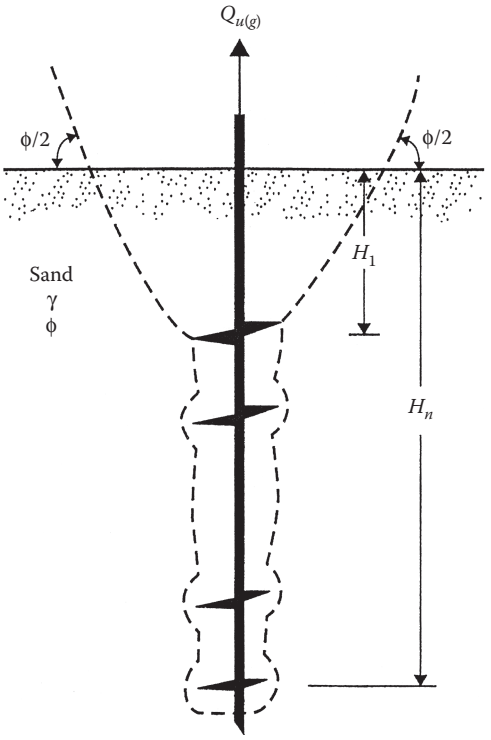


FIGURE 8.24 Typical failure pattern in sand around a multi-helix anchor for shallow anchor condition.

diagram of the failure pattern for the condition where the embedment ratio H_1/D_1 is relatively small. For this case, it can be seen that,

1. The failure surface above the top helix is a truncated cone extending to the ground surface. The central angle of the truncated cone is approximately equal to the soil friction angle ϕ.
2. Below the top helix, the failure surface in soil is approximately cylindrical. This means that the interhelical soil below the top helix acts similar to a pile foundation with shear failure occurring along the interface boundary.

When the conical failure surface of soil located above the top helix extends to the ground surface, it is referred to as shallow anchor condition. However, if the anchor is located in such a way that H_1/D_1 is fairly large, the failure surface in soil does not extend to the ground surface as shown in Figure 8.25. This is referred to as deep anchor condition.

In granular soils, the limiting value of $H_1/D_1 = (H_1/D_1)_{cr}$ at which the anchor condition changes from shallow to deep is similar to that suggested by Meyerhof and Adams[2]. Table 8.6 gives the values of $(H_1/D_1)_{cr}$ for various soil friction angles.

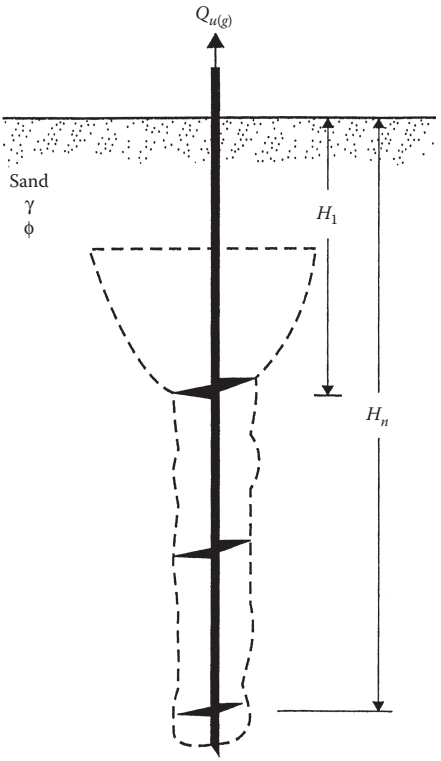


FIGURE 8.25 Typical failure pattern in sand around a multi-helix anchor for deep anchor condition.

TABLE 8.6
Variation of $(H_1/D_1)_{cr}$ with Soil Friction Angle ϕ

Soil Friction Angle, ϕ (deg)	$(H_1/D_1)_{cr}$
25	3
30	4
35	5
40	7
45	9
48	11

8.4.1.1 Ultimate Uplift Capacity at Shallow Anchor Condition

Figure 8.26 shows an idealized failure surface in soil around a helical anchor at ultimate load. The net ultimate load can be approximately estimated according to the procedure outlined by Mitsch and Clemence,[20] or

$$Q_u = Q_p + Q_f \tag{8.50}$$

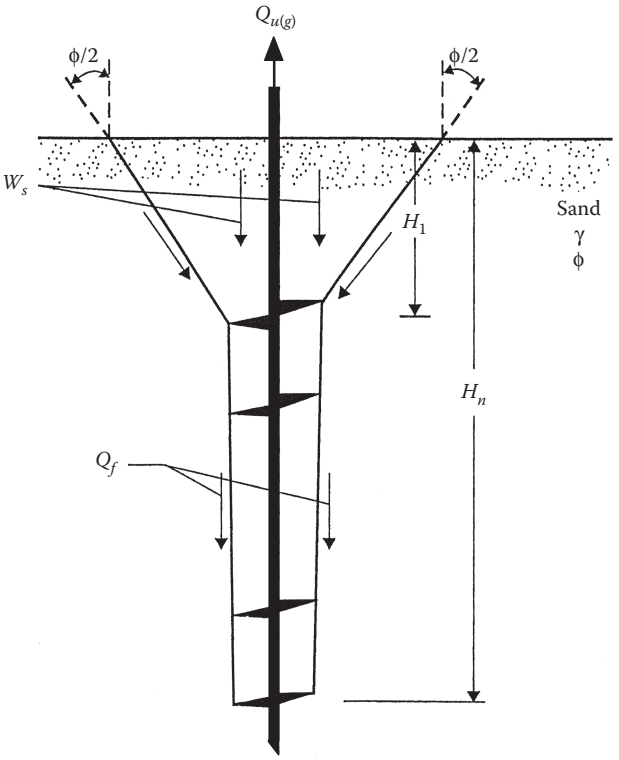


FIGURE 8.26 Idealized failure surface in sand for shallow anchor condition where $(H_1/D_1) \leq (H_1/D_1)_{cr}$.

where

Q_p = bearing resistance for the top helix
Q_f = frictional resistance derived at the interface of the interhelical soil which is cylindrical in shape

The bearing resistance Q_p can be expressed as

$$Q_p = \frac{\pi}{4} F_q \gamma D_1^2 H_1 \tag{8.51}$$

where F_q is the breakout factor, or

$$F_q = 4G^2 K_u' \tan\phi \left[\cos^2\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right)\right]\left[\frac{0.5}{G} + 0.333\tan\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right)\right] + 1 + 1.33G^2 \tan^2\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right) + 2G^2 \tan\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right) \tag{8.52}$$

TABLE 8.7
Variation of m' with Soil Friction Angle ϕ

Soil Friction Angle ϕ (deg)	m'
25	0.033
30	0.075
35	0.18
40	0.25
45	0.289

$$G = \frac{H_1}{D_1} \tag{8.53}$$

$$K'_u = 0.6 + m'\left(\frac{H_1}{D_1}\right) \tag{8.54}$$

The variation of m' with soil friction angle ϕ is given in Table 8.7. With known values of m' and K'_u, the magnitudes of F_q have been calculated and are shown in Figure 8.27.

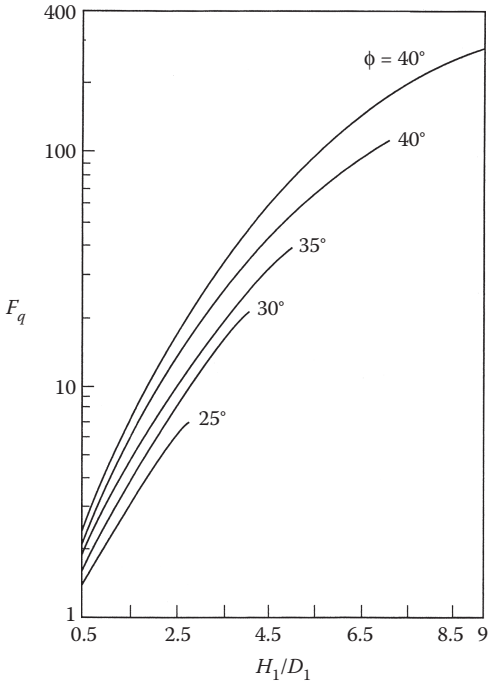


FIGURE 8.27 Variation of breakout factor with H_1/D_1 for shallow condition.

The frictional resistance Q_f can be expressed as

$$Q_f = \frac{\pi}{2}\left(\frac{D_1 + D_n}{2}\right)\gamma(H_n^2 - H_1^2)K'_{u(\text{cr})}\tan\phi \tag{8.55}$$

where

$$K'_{u(\text{cr})} = 0.6 + m'\left(\frac{H_1}{D_1}\right)_{\text{cr}} \tag{8.56}$$

EXAMPLE 8.6

Refer to Figure 8.26. Given,

For the soil: $\gamma = 16$ kN/m^3 $\phi = 35°$

For the anchor: $D_1 = 0.3$ m $D_n = 0.19$ m

$H_1 = 0.9$ m $H_n = 3.05$ m

Determine the net ultimate uplift capacity, Q_u.

Solution

$$G = \frac{H_1}{D_1} = \frac{0.9}{0.3} = 3$$

$$K'_u = 0.6 + 0.18(3) = 1.14$$

With $\phi = 35°$ (Equation 8.52),

$$F_q = 4G^2K'_u\tan\phi\left[\cos^2\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right)\right]\left[\frac{0.5}{G} + 0.333\tan\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right)\right] + 1 + 1.33G^2\tan^2\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right) + 2G^2\tan\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right)$$

$$F_q = (4)(3)^2(1.14)(\tan 35)\left[\cos^2\left(\frac{35}{2}\right)\right]\left[\frac{0.5}{3} + 0.333\tan\left(\frac{35}{2}\right)\right] + 1 + (1.33)(3)^2\tan^2\left(\frac{35}{2}\right) + (2)(3)^2\tan\left(\frac{35}{2}\right)$$

$$= 14.97$$

From Equation 8.51,

$$Q_p = \frac{\pi}{4}F_q\gamma D_1^2 H_1 = \left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right)(14.97)(16)(0.3)^2(0.9) = 15.24\text{ kN}$$

Again, from Equation 8.55,

$$Q_f = \frac{\pi}{2}\left(\frac{D_1 + D_n}{2}\right)\gamma(H_n^2 - H_1^2)K'_{u(\text{cr})}\tan\phi$$

$$K'_{u(\text{cr})} = 0.6 + m'\left(\frac{H_1}{D_1}\right)_{\text{cr}} = 0.6 + (0.18)(5) = 1.5$$

$$Q_f = \left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right)\left(\frac{0.3 + 0.19}{2}\right)(16)[(3.05)^2 - (0.9)^2](1.5)\tan(35) = 54.93\,\text{kN}$$

Hence,

$$Q_u = Q_p + Q_f = 15.24 + 54.93$$
$$= \mathbf{70.17\ kN}$$

8.4.1.2 Ultimate Uplift Capacity for Deep Anchor Condition

Figure 8.28 shows the idealized failure surface in soil around a deep helical anchor embedded in sand. For this condition,[20]

$$Q_u = Q_p + Q_f + Q_s \tag{8.57}$$

In the preceding equation, Q_p and Q_f, respectively, are the bearing resistance of the top helix and the frictional resistance at the interface of the interhelical soil. The term Q_s is the frictional resistance derived from friction at the soil-anchor shaft interface above the top helix. It is recommended that, due to various uncertainties involved in the determination of the soil parameters, the term Q_s may be neglected. Hence,

$$Q_u \approx Q_p + Q_f \tag{8.58}$$

The bearing resistance Q_p of the top helix can easily be determined in terms of the breakout factor (as in Equation 8.51), or

$$Q_p = \frac{\pi}{4}F_q^*\gamma D_1^2 H_1 \tag{8.59}$$

where F_q^* = deep anchor breakout factor

The magnitude of $F_q = F_q^*$ can be determined by substituting G and G_{cr} [i.e., $(H_1/D_1)_{\text{cr}}$] and $K'_u = K'_{u(\text{cr})}$ (see Equation 8.56) in Equation 8.52. The variation of F_q^* has been calculated in this manner and is plotted against the soil friction angle ϕ in Figure 8.29 (also see Table 8.8).

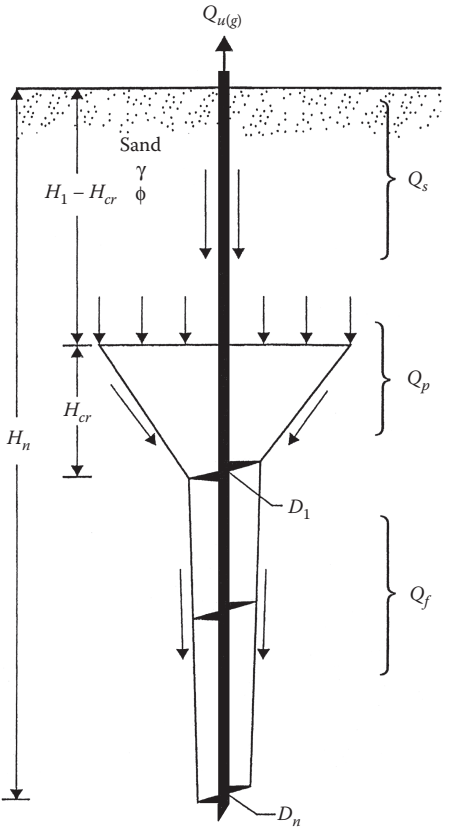


FIGURE 8.28 Idealized failure surface in sand for deep anchor condition.

The frictional resistance Q_f can conservatively be estimated as (similar to Equation 8.55)

$$Q_f = \frac{\pi}{2}\left(\frac{D_1 + D_n}{2}\right)\gamma(H_n^2 - H_1^2)K'_{u(\mathrm{cr})}\tan\phi \tag{8.60}$$

8.4.2 Multi-Helix Anchor in Saturated Clay ($\phi = 0$ Concept)

For shallow anchors in clay where the failure surface reaches the ground surface, the net ultimate capacity can be expressed as

$$Q_u = Q_p + Q_f \tag{8.61}$$

where

Q_p = bearing resistance of the top helix
Q_f = resistance due to cohesion at the interface of the interhelical soil

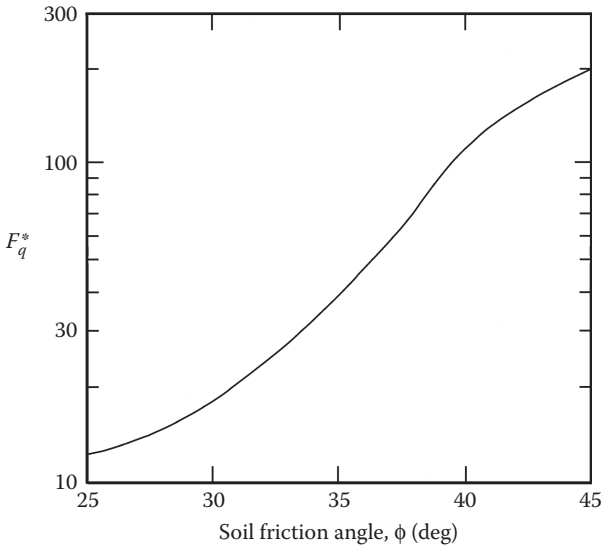


FIGURE 8.29 Variation of F_q^* with soil friction angle ϕ.

Following the procedure for estimation of the uplift capacity of shallow foundations in clay (Equation 8.35), we can say that,

$$Q_p = A\left(c_u F_c + \gamma H_1\right) \tag{8.62}$$

where

A = area of the top helix = $(\pi / 4)(D_1^2)$
F_c = breakout factor
γ = unit weight of soil
c_u = undrained cohesion of clay
H_1 = distance between the top helix and the ground surface

TABLE 8.8
Variation of F_q^* with Soil Friction Angle ϕ

Soil Friction Angle, ϕ (deg)	F_q^*
25	11.97
30	17.75
35	35.67
40	110.03
45	186.7

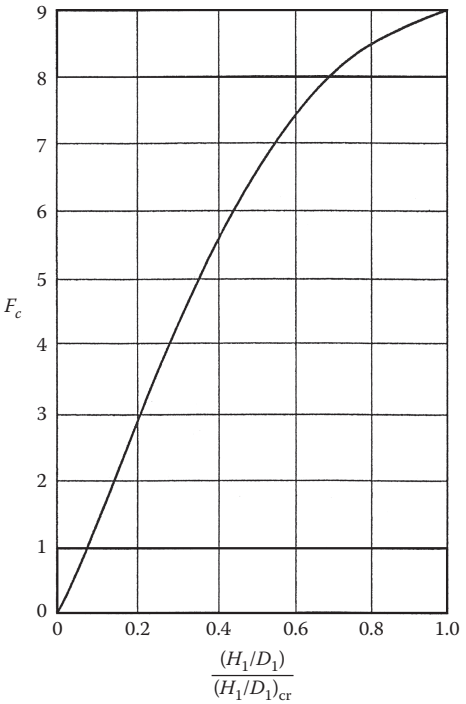


FIGURE 8.30 Variation of F_c with $(H_1/D_1)/(H_1/D_1)_{cr}$.

The magnitude of F_c increases with the H_1/D_1 ratio up to a maximum value of 9 at $(H_1/D_1)_{cr}$. The critical value of H_1/D_1 is a function of the undrained cohesion and can be expressed as[18]

$$\left(\frac{H_1}{D_1}\right)_{cr} = 0.107c_u + 2.5 \leq 7 \tag{8.63}$$

where c_u is in kN/m^2.

The variation of the breakout factor F_c can be estimated from Figure 8.30, which is a plot of F_c versus $(H_1/D_1)/(H_1/D_1)_{cr}$.

The resistance due to cohesion at the interface of the interhelical soil can be approximated[21] as

$$Q_f = \pi\left(\frac{D_1 + D_n}{2}\right)(H_n - H_1)c_u \tag{8.64}$$

In a similar manner, for deep anchor condition,

$$Q_u = Q_p + Q_f + Q_s \tag{8.65}$$

where

Q_s = resistance due to adhesion at the interface of the clay and the anchor shaft located above the top helix

The bearing resistance is

$$Q_p = \frac{\pi}{4}\left(D_1^2\right)\left(9c_u + \gamma H_1\right) \tag{8.66}$$

The expression for Q_f will be the same as given for shallow anchor condition (Equation 8.64). The resistance due to adhesion at the interface of the clay and the anchor shaft located above the top helix can be approximated as

$$Q_s = p_s H_1 c_a \tag{8.67}$$

where

p_s = perimeter of the anchor shaft
c_a = adhesion

The adhesion c_a may vary from about $0.3c_u$ for stiff clays to about $0.9c_u$ for very soft clays. Now, combining Equations 8.64 through 8.67, for deep anchor condition,

$$Q_u = \frac{\pi}{4}(D_1^2)(9c_u + \gamma H_1) + \pi\left(\frac{D_1 + D_n}{2}\right)(H_n - H_1)c_u + p_s H_1 c_a \tag{8.68}$$

In all cases, a factor of safety of at least 3.0 is recommended for determination of the net allowable uplift capacity.

EXAMPLE 8.7

Consider a multi-helix anchor embedded in a saturated clay. Given:

For the clay: $\gamma = 18.5$ kN/m^3

$c_u = 35$ kN/m^2

For the anchor: $D_1 = 0.4$ m $D_n = 0.25$ m

$H_1 = 3$ m $H_n = 7$ m

Diameter of the anchor shaft = 50 mm

Estimate the net ultimate uplift capacity.

SOLUTION

$H_1 = 3$ m; $D_1 = 0.4$ m

$$\frac{H_1}{D_1} = \frac{3}{0.4} = 7.5$$

From Equation 8.63, it can be seen that the maximum value of $(H_1/D_1)_{cr}$ is 7. Since the value of H_1/D_1 is 7.5, it is a deep anchor condition. So, from Equation 8.68,

$$Q_u = \frac{\pi}{4}(D_1^2)(9c_u + \gamma H_1) + \pi\left(\frac{D_1 + D_n}{2}\right)(H_n - H_1)c_u + p_s H_1 c_a$$

$$p_s = (\pi)\left(\frac{50}{1000}\right) = 0.157 \text{ m}$$

Assume $c_a \approx 0.5c_u = (0.5)(35) = 17.5$ kN/m^2. So,

$$\begin{aligned} Q_u &= \left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right)(0.4)^2\left[(9)(35) + (18.5)(3)\right] + (\pi)\left(\frac{0.4 + 0.25}{2}\right)(7 - 3)(35) + (0.157)(3)(17.5) \\ &= 47.6 + 142.9 + 8.24 \\ &= \mathbf{197.74\ kN} \end{aligned}$$

REFERENCES

1. Balla, A. 1961. The resistance to breaking out of mushroom foundations for pylons. In *Proceedings of the Fifth International Conference on Soil Mechanics and Foundation Engineering*, Vol. 1, Paris, France, p. 569.
2. Meyerhof, G. G. and J. I. Adams. 1968. The ultimate uplift capacity of foundations. *Canadian Geotech. J.*, 5(4): 225.
3. Caquot, A. and J. Kerisel. 1949. *Tables for Calculation of Passive Pressure, Active Pressure, and Bearing Capacity of Foundations*. Paris: Gauthier-Villars.
4. Das, B. M. and G. R. Seeley. 1975. Breakout resistance of horizontal anchors. *J. Geotech. Eng. Div.*, 101(9): 999.
5. Meyerhof, G. G. 1973. Uplift resistance of inclined anchors and piles. In *Proceedings of the Eighth International Conference on Soil Mechanics and Foundation Engineering*, Vol. 2.1, Moscow, USSR, p. 167.
6. Das, B. M. and A. D. Jones. 1982. Uplift capacity of rectangular foundations in sand. *Trans. Res. Rec. 884*, National Research Council, Washington, DC, p. 54.
7. Vesic, A. S. 1965. Cratering by explosives as an earth pressure problem. In *Proceedings of the Sixth International Conference on Soil Mechanics and Foundation Engineering*, Vol. 2, Montreal, Canada, p. 427.
8. Vesic, A. S. 1971. Breakout resistance of objects embedded in ocean bottom. *J. Soil Mech. Found. Div.*, 97(9): 1183.
9. Saeedy, H. S. 1987. Stability of circular vertical earth anchors. *Canadian Geotech. J.*, 24(3): 452.
10. Baker, W. H. and R. L. Kondner. 1966. Pullout load capacity of a circular earth anchor buried in sand. *Highway Res. Rec.108*, National Research Council, Washington, DC, p. 1.
11. Sutherland, H. B. 1965. Model studies for shaft raising through cohesionless soils. In *Proceedings of the Sixth International Conference on Soil Mechanics and Foundation Engineering*, Vol. 2, Montreal, Canada, p. 410.
12. Esquivel-Diaz, R. F. 1967. Pullout resistance of deeply buried anchors in sand. MS thesis, Duke University, Durham, North Carolina.

13. Das, B. M. 1978. Model tests for uplift capacity of foundations in clay. *Soils Found., Japan*, 18(2): 17.
14. Ali, M. 1968. Pullout resistance of anchor plates in soft bentonite clay. MS Thesis, Duke University, Durham, North Carolina.
15. Kupferman, M. 1971. The vertical holding capacity of marine anchors in clay subjected to static and dynamic loading. MS Thesis, University of Massachusetts, Amherst, Massachusetts.
16. Adams, J. K. and D. C. Hayes. 1967. The uplift capacity of shallow foundations. *Ontario Hydro. Res. Quarterly*, 19(1): 1.
17. Bhatnagar, R. S. 1969. Pullout resistance of anchors in silty clay. MS Thesis, Duke University, Durham, North Carolina.
18. Das, B. M. 1980. A procedure for estimation of ultimate uplift capacity of foundations in clay. *Soils Found., Japan*, 20(1): 77.
19. Merifield, R. S., A. V. Lyamin, S. W. Sloan, and H. S. Yu. 2003. Three-dimensional lower bound solutions for stability of plate anchors in clay. *J. Geotech. Geoenviron. Eng.*, 129(3): 243.
20. Mitsch, M. P. and S. P. Clemence. 1985. The uplift capacity of helix anchors in sand. In *Proc. Uplift Behavior of Anchor Foundations in Sand*., ed. S. P. Clemence, Detroit, ASCE: 20.
21. Mooney, J. S., S. Adamczak, S., Jr,. and S. P. Clemence. 1985. Uplift capacity of helix anchors in clay and silt. In *Proc. Uplift Behavior of Anchor Foundations in Soil*, ed. S. P. Clemence, Detroit, ASCE: 48.

Index

T

U

V

W